

## **Tsez Syntax: A Description**

Maria Polinsky  
Harvard University  
[polinsky@fas.harvard.edu](mailto:polinsky@fas.harvard.edu)

Updated draft January 5, 2015

## Foreword

This description of Tsez syntax was created as part of the volume “A Grammar of Tsez” prepared by Bernard Comrie and myself. Because this work is still a draft, chapters are not numbered, and each chapter has its own example numbering. I will be grateful for comments, criticisms, and suggestions.

I am immensely grateful to the native speakers of Tsez who have generously shared their language with me over many years: Ramazan Rajabov, Paxrudin Magomedinov and especially Arsen Abdulaev. I am also very grateful to my friends, colleagues, and students who have commented on various aspects of this work: Ivano Caponigro, Isabelle Charnavel, Peter Cole, Jessica Coon, Greville Corbett, Diana Forker, Annie Gagliardi, Michael Goncalves, Scott Grimm, Beth Levin, Nick Longenbaugh, Ora Matushansky, Eric Potsdam, Omer Preminger, Nina Radkevich, Barbara Stiebels, Yakov Testelets, and †Helma van den Berg. Timothy Doner, Caitlin Keenan, and Kenneth Mai have helped in organizing the manuscript and updating the glosses. Some of the work presented here was funded by the National Science Foundation, the Max-Planck Institute for Evolutionary Anthropology, and the Davis Center for Russian and Eurasian Studies at Harvard University, whose support is gratefully acknowledged. All errors are my sole responsibility.

## Abbreviations

Interlinear morpheme-by-morpheme glosses follow the Leipzig Glossing Rules (<http://www.eva.mpg.de/lingua/resources/glossingrules.php>).

Additional abbreviations, not present in the Leipzig list:

- ATTR—attributive form
- EXCL—exclamative particle
- HYP—hypothetical particle
- IND.EVID—indirect evidence
- IR—indexical reading
- OS—oblique stem
- SR—shifted reading
- UNCERT—particle of uncertainty
- VAL—validator particle

Complex glosses consist of two or more simple glosses, divided by a dot, e.g.,  
PST.WIT.NEG ‘Witnessed past negative’.

Gender classes are indicated by Roman numerals, with genders I-IV distinguished in the singular, and IPL and nIPL distinguished in the plural. For nouns in absolute, we indicate gender after the case gloss, e.g., ABS.III ‘Gender III, absolute’. For those noun phrases whose gender may vary and is determined contextually, it is shown in parentheses, e.g., ABS(.II).

Compound lexical items are presented with the = sign, for example, *muži=q* ‘uri’ ‘bedding’, *gaga=cagari-* ‘be smooth, even’.

## Contents

### **Part 1: Phrases**

- Nouns
- Nominalizations
- Attributives
- Adverbials and postpositions
- Predicates

### **Part 2: Clauses**

- Basic clause types
- Interrogatives
- Exclamatives

### **Part 3: Sentences**

- Complement clauses
- Relative clauses
- Adverbial clauses
- Clausal coordination

### **Part 4: Clause level phenomena**

- Agreement
- Reflexives and anaphora
- Clause and discourse particles
- Word order and information structure

**Part 1: Phrases**

## Noun Phrase

## 1 General remarks

A noun phrase can be expressed by a pronoun, by a head noun preceded optionally by various modifiers, or by one of a number of nominalized verb phrase structures. The latter are discussed in the chapters on nominalizations and complement clauses. Noun phrases can occur in argument positions or they can serve as complements to postpositions—the latter are discussed in the chapter on adverbial and postpositional phrases. Predicate nominals are discussed in the chapter on predicate phrase.

Some examples of noun phrases are given below. Example (1) illustrates pronouns in the noun phrase position:

- (1) a. Di-q q'anoquno λeb (yoł).  
     1SG-POSS.ESS forty year be.PRS  
     'I am forty years old.'

b. Eli sadaq b-ik'-ān.  
     IPL.ABS.(IPL)together IPL-go-FUT.DEF  
     'We will go together.'

Tsez does not have third person pronouns; the language uses demonstratives in this function. An example containing two noun phrases expressed by demonstratives is given below:

- (2) Žed-ä yiña č'aq'ir-no.  
DEM.IPL-ERG DEM.nI.ABS kill-PST.nWIT  
‘They killed it.’ (of an animal)

The following example has two full noun phrases, both with modifiers:

- (3) Dä-z        y<sup>č</sup>way-ä    yisi    uži        han-si.  
     1SG-GEN2    dog-ERG    DEM.I boy.ABS.I    bite-PST.WIT  
     'My dog bit this boy.'

NPs can also be expressed by a substantivized adjective (4), participle (5), demonstrative (6), numeral (7), or deverbal noun (8):

- (4) B-<sup>t</sup>eya-t'a-ni-z-ä                            b-<sup>t</sup>eže-t'a-ni-za-s                            hurmat  
  IPL-young-DISTR-DEF- PL.OS-ERG        IPL-old-DISTR-DEF- PL.OS-GEN1        respect.ABS.III  
  b-oy-x.  
  III-do-PRS  
  'The young respect the old.'

(5) Ø-āy-ru-n-ä                                    magalu                            eser-si.  
  I-come-PST.PTCP-DEF-ERG    bread.ABS.III    ask-PST.WIT  
  'The one who came asked for bread'

- (6) a. Heme-z-ä sis kayat y-is-si.  
DEM-PL.OS-ERG one letter.ABS.II II-take-PST.WIT  
‘They (those) received one letter.’
- b. Yizi-ra-bi huni-x b-oq-xo.  
DEM-PL.OS-PL.ABS.IPL road-AD.ESS IPL-become-PRS  
‘They get on their way.’ (Ražbadinno, Tawadin: 5)
- (7) Sida-q micxir zow-s.  
one-POSS.ESS money.ABS.III be-PST.WIT  
‘One person (lit. one) had money.’
- (8) B<sup>e</sup>λ'-e-z b<sup>c</sup>ab<sup>c</sup>a-n-ä eli b-iz-ir-si.  
sheep-OS-GEN2 bleat-DVB-ERG 1PL.ABS.IPL IPL-rise-CAUS-PST.WIT  
‘The sheep’s bleating woke us up.’

Nominalized verb phrases in NP positions are illustrated below. Example (9) shows a nominalized clause in the absolute position, and example (10) shows a masdar clause in the sub-ablative form.

- (9) [Eni-y-ä kid becizi y-āy-ru-li] elu-r r-iy-x.  
mother-OS-ERG girl.ABS.II praise II-do-PST.PTCP-NMLZ.ABS.IV 1PL-LAT IV-know-PRS  
‘We know that Mother praised the girl.’
- (10) [Debe-r neλ-ani]-λ-äy r-aħir-x-ānu reλ.  
2SG-LAT give-MASD-SUB-ABL IV-boil-PRS-NEG meat.ABS.IV  
‘I am not boiling the meat just to give it to you.’ (based on Imnajšvili 1963:237)

## 2 Generic noun phrases

Tsez does not have determiners; the meaning of definiteness or specificity is conveyed by several other means, including definiteness marking on noun-modifying adjectives or participles (discussed in section 3.3 below), word order, and the use of demonstratives (see section 4.1 below). Generic noun phrases do not differ in form from non-generic ones. Generic forms of mass nouns appear in the singular:

- (11) Mesed xiriyaw (yoł).  
gold.ABS.III expensive be.PRS  
‘Gold is expensive.’

If a mass noun is used in the plural form, that form refers to kinds:

- (12) Elu-s bat'=bat'iyaw akri-bi (yoł).  
IPL-GEN1 various cheese-PL.ABS.nIPL be.PRS  
‘We have different kinds of cheeses.’

Generic forms of count nouns usually appear in the plural:

- (13) a. Dinozawra-bi                    r-exu-s.  
           dinosaur-PL.ABS.nIPL        nIPL-die-PST.WIT  
           ‘Dinosaurs are extinct (lit.: died).’
- b. Dinozawra-bi                    ānu.  
           dinosaur-PL.ABS.nIPL        be.PRS.NEG  
           ‘Dinosaurs are extinct (lit.: do not exist).’

The generic reading is often suppressed in nouns that appear post-verbally, at the right periphery of the clause, as that position is associated with topicality. Compare (13a) to (14), which does not have a generic reading:

- (14) R-exu-s                            dinozawra-bi.  
           nIPL-die-PST.WIT        dinosaur-PL.ABS.nIPL  
           “As for dinosaurs, they died out.”  
           #‘Dinosaurs are extinct.’

As long as the noun phrase appears preverbally, the generic reading can be associated with any case form; compare the generic genitive in (15) and lative/absolutive in (16):

- (15) K’et’u-s        uyno      k’onč’u        (yoł).  
       cat-GEN1       four        leg.ABS.III     be.PRS  
       ‘A cat has four legs.’
- (16) Xex-zā-r        maroženi                    r-eti-x.  
       child-PL.OS-LAT    ice cream.ABS.IV     IV-like-PRS  
       ‘Children like/want ice-cream.’

Noun phrases in Tsez are strictly head final, and many of the concepts conveyed by post-nominal PPs in languages such as English are expressed by prenominal modifiers, most commonly genitives and relative clauses (for the latter, see the chapter on relative clauses).

In what follows, we will first discuss noun modification by adjectives, demonstratives, and numerals, then turn to quantifiers and measure phrases, and lastly to NPs containing genitive expressions. The order of elements in the noun phrase is addressed in section 9.

### 3 Agreement and concord in the noun phrase

#### 3.1 Case concord

Many (not all) modifiers show case concord with the head noun; the distinction is between the direct form, used with the head noun in the absolute case, and the oblique form, used elsewhere.<sup>1</sup> Modifiers that have two distinct forms include attributives with the suffix *-si* (oblique suffix *-zo*); numerals; a subset of demonstratives (section 4.1); and adnominal genitives

---

<sup>1</sup> We will be referring to this formal contrast as “direct vs. oblique”; we mark only the oblique form explicitly in the glosses.

(direct form genitive 1 in *-s*, and oblique form genitive 2 in *-z*, discussed in section 5).<sup>2</sup> The examples below show case concord on an adjective, a demonstrative, a numeral, and an adnominal genitive. More examples will appear in the individual sections.

- (17) a. sasaqo-si/ža zaman  
morning-ATTR/DEM time.ABS.III  
'morning time/that time'
- b. sasaqo-zo/neł zaman-a-ł  
morning-ATTR.OS/DEM.nI.OS time-OS-CONT.ESS  
'in the morning time/at that time'
- (18) a. oč'ino otaxi  
nine room.ABS.IV  
'nine rooms'
- b. oč'ira otax-ā  
nine.OSroom-IN.ESS  
'in nine rooms'
- (19) a. ɬaλo-s xalq'i  
village-GEN1 people.ABS.IPL  
'villagers' (lit.: village's people)
- b. ɬaλo-z xalq'i-mo-r  
village-GEN2 people-OS-LAT  
'to (the) villagers'

### 3.2 Agreement in the noun phrase

Not all adjectival modifiers register agreement with the head noun; in that regard this category is similar to verbs which also include just a subset of agreeing forms. Those adjectival modifiers that have a prefixal agreement slot show obligatory agreement with the head noun in gender, distinguishing four genders in the singular and two in the plural. The agreement prefixes on adjectives are the same as the agreement prefixes on verbs (see also chapter "Agreement"). For example:

- (20) a. Ø-exora žek'u  
I-tall person.ABS.I  
'a tall person/man'
- b. y-exora y'anabi  
II-tall woman.ABS.II  
'a tall woman'
- c. b-exora got'i  
III-tall haystack.ABS.III  
'a high haystack'

---

<sup>2</sup> The attributive suffix distinction *si/zo* and the genitive suffix distinction *s/z* (discussed in section 5 below) are presumably related, at least etymologically, although the relationship between them does not precisely match any synchronically valid morphophonemic rule.

- |    |               |                   |
|----|---------------|-------------------|
| d. | r-exora       | yun               |
|    | IV-tall       | tree.ABS.IV       |
|    | 'a tall tree' |                   |
| e. | b-exora       | uži-bi            |
|    | IPL-tall      | boy-PL.ABS.IPL    |
|    | 'tall boys'   |                   |
| f. | r-exora       | gulu-bi           |
|    | nIPL-tall     | horse-PL.ABS.nIPL |
|    | 'tall horses' |                   |

Case concord with the head noun is marked only on those attributive modifiers that are derived with the suffix *-si*. Compare the invariant use of a regular adjective (*ixiw*) in (21) and a definite adjective (with *-ni*) in (22) with the direct–oblique contrast in (23):

- (21) a. Sis ixiw cey b-ay-n.  
one big eagle.ABS.III III-come-PST.nWIT  
'A big eagle flew in.' (Yizałäy hič'č'a ixiw šebi yoł?:2)
- b. Ixiw t'ek-zo šila-z-ä eger-no.  
big billy.goat-GEN2 horn-PL.OS-IN.ESS put-PST.nWIT  
'(The eagle) put (it) between the horns of a big billy goat.'  
(Yizałäy hič'č'a ixiw šebi yoł?:3)
- (22) Tuturu-ni xex-z-ä y-čež-e-ni eniw q'wāridi y-oy-x.  
naughty-DEF child-OS-ERG II-old-DEF mother.ABS.II sad II-do-PRS  
'The naughty children have upset the grandmother.'
- (23) Q'čuq'čuta-zo palatenc-ä q'čuq'čuta-si reč'a-bi bac'ad  
dirty-ATTR.OS towel-ERG dirty-ATTR hand-PL.ABS.nIPL clean  
r-äd-inč'i.  
nIPL-do.FUT-NEG  
'A dirty towel will not make dirty hands clean.'

Some demonstratives agree with the head noun in gender, but only distinguish gender I from the rest of the genders (nI), in both the singular and the plural. The agreeing demonstratives maintain the same I/nI gender distinction when they are used as noun phrases, most often in the function of a third person pronoun—consider example (2) above. For further details, see chapter "Agreement".

#### 4 Expression of definiteness on adjectival and participial modifiers

Definiteness can be expressed by the suffix *-ni* on any attributive modifier, be it a relative clause, an adjective, or an attributive noun/noun phrase modifying a noun with a unique, definite, or familiar interpretation. Definite marking is illustrated in (24) and (25) for a relative clause, in (26) for an adjective, and in (27) for a locative expression used as a dependent.<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>3</sup> Attributive forms that register case concord still show concord when the suffix *-ni* follows the attributive suffix (as in (24) and (27)).

- (24) Ø-ik'i-xo-si-ni uži  
I-go-PRS-ATTR-DEF boy  
'the boy who is going (e.g. as opposed to others)'
- (25) sis-tow sis yäł-ru\*(-ni) esiw  
one-FOC one be.PRS-PST.PTCP-DEF sibling.ABS.I/II  
'the only sister/brother'
- (26) bercinaw-ni γ'utku  
beautiful-DEF house  
'the beautiful house (e.g. as opposed to others)'
- (27) λ'ā-λ'o-si-ni uži  
roof-SUPER.ESS-ATTR-DEF boy  
'the boy on the roof (e.g. as opposed to others)'

Definite marking is preferred once a referent has been introduced, especially in contexts of contrast. Consider the following examples. In (28) and (29), the referent is first introduced as a noun phrase with an indefinite adjective and subsequently referred to with a noun phrase containing a definite adjective. The head noun can be omitted if it is modified by a definite adjective, as shown below; such omissions are quite common in texts and spontaneous speech.

- (28) Dä-r b-ukay-s sis b-šeže(\*-ni) is.  
1SG-LAT III-see-PST.WIT one III-big-DEF ox.ABS.III  
Ža b-eše\*(-ni) (is) yun-o-x-ayor b-ik'i-s.  
DEM III-big-DEF ox.ABS.III tree-OS-AD-ALL III-go-PST.WIT  
'I saw a big ox. The big ox/the big one went toward a tree.'  
(based on Imnajšvili 1963: 71)
- (29) Dey c'uda heneš-no ičiw heneš-no zow-s.  
1SG.GEN1 red apple.ABS.III-and green apple.ABS.III-and be-PST.WIT  
Neła-r c'uda-ni (heneš) gurow b-et-inč'u.  
DEM.NI-LAT red-DEF apple.ABS.III except III-want-PST.WIT.NEG  
'I had a red and a green apple. She only wanted the red one.'
- (30) Žoy-ä yun-o-qo-si aluk'a-ni-n c'uda-ni-n  
lad-ERG tree-OS-POSS.ESS-ATTR white-DEF-and red-DEF-and  
heneš-no b-ut'i-n.  
apple.ABS.III-and III-collect-PST.NWIT  
'The young man plucked the white one and the red apple from the tree.' (Xanes Ḵono užin, sis kidno:76)

In the following example, the context implies that there are only two rams; the first one is introduced by the indefinite *sis* 'one', and the other noun phrase is marked for definiteness:

- (31) Sis aluk'a side-ni q'aba miλ'-bi r-ihanay-xosi  
one white one-DEF black ram-PL.ABS.nIPL nIPL-fight-PRS.PTCP  
yoł.  
AUX.PRS  
'Two rams, one white, the other black, are fighting.' (Aliqilič:116)

Definite marking also appears in non-specific definite noun phrases ('such an X'), where the attributive form is modified by 'such':

- (32) Hemece      b-ihayaw-ni    sual-yo-r      žawab  
       such           III-simple-DEF question-OS-LAT      answer.ABS.III  
       b-iqi-nč'ey      mi.  
       III-catch-PST.NEG      2SG.ERG  
       'You could not answer such a simple question.' (lit.: did not get an answer to such a simple question) (fAq'ilawni kid:11)

Definite modifiers are used in discourse-linked wh-phrases with the overall interpretation 'which X'. Indefinite modifiers are judged marginal in such expressions:

- (33) Didiw b-igu-ni/??b-igu      kamanda      b-eti-x-ä      debe-r?  
       which IPL-good-DEF/IPL-good      team.ABS.IPL    IPL-like-PRS-INTERR    2SG-LAT  
       'Which strong team do you like?'

Definite modifiers are also used in forms of address, which appear in the absolute:

- (34) dey      Ø-igu-ni      uži...  
       1SG.GEN      I-good-DEF      boy.ABS.I  
       'my good boy/my dear son...'  
 (35) hudu,      xiriyaw-ni...  
       yes           dear/expensive-DEF  
       'yes, my dear'

As examples (28) and (29) indicate, the marking of definiteness on the adjectival modifier is independent of whether or not a demonstrative is present in the noun phrase.

Some examples with definiteness marked on modifiers appeared earlier in this chapter; consider nominalized adjectives with the definite marker in (4), (5), and definite adjectives in (44a,b) and in (22). Adjectives and participles marked for definiteness with the suffix *-ni* do not distinguish between direct and oblique forms; for instance, the example in (32) shows the definite adjective modifying a head noun in the lative.

## 5 Distributive marking in the noun phrase

The distributive suffix *-t'a* occurs widely and can combine with any category except finite verbs.<sup>4</sup> The general function of *-t'a* is to mark distributivity; the relevant distribution can occur over a plural entity, a plural eventuality, or a plurality of times or locations. Such distributive ambiguity (ranging over participants and events) is well attested cross-linguistically (cf. Gil 1982, 1988, 1992; Choe 1987; Zimmermann 2002; Schwartzschild 1996; 2011; Cabredo Hofherr and Laca 2012, a.o.).

---

<sup>4</sup> For the use of the distributive suffix outside noun phrases, see CH. YY[PredP] and CH. YY[Adverbial clauses].

In order to discuss distributive marking in Tsez, we will start by introducing the notions of *distributive key* and *distributive share* (following Gil's work). DISTRIBUTIVE KEY is a concept that forces the plural reading. In that sense, its function is similar to that of a wide-scope-taking expression. It defines the domain within which entities are distributed. DISTRIBUTIVE SHARE designates the entities that are distributed, thus resembling a narrow-scope-taking expression. In the famous sentence below, a set of unhappy families defines the domain in which distribution occurs. This set of families serves as the distributive key; the way in which they are unhappy is the distributive share linked to the unhappy families:

- (36) Every unhappy family is unhappy in its own way. (Tolstoy, *Anna Karenina*)

For a distributive reading to hold, there has to be a pairing of key and share, although these expressions do not have to be explicit.

The statement in (36) is actually only the second part of the maxim; in the original text of *Anna Karenina*, (36) is preceded by the following statement:

- (37) Happy families are alike.

In (37), there is no distribution; the set of happy families is not broken into units, each with its own mode of happiness. Instead, the happy families can be viewed as an aggregate (a collective). Within that aggregate, the units can still be recognized as separate, distinct entities. Such recognition of separate units would amount to individuation: the distinctness of an entity from its own background. So, if (37) presents 'happy families' as an aggregate, the example below individuates those families:

- (38) Every happy family is the same.

English uses the same word, *every*, both in distributive expressions and in expressions of individuation, and it seems that the two concepts receive the same encoding across languages.

The Tsez suffix *-t'a* also encodes both notions, that of distribution over sets, and that of individuation within a set. The distributional properties of the suffix determine in most cases the interpretation to be selected. Informally, the principles governing this distribution can be summarized as follows:

- (39)
- i. If the suffix *-t'a* appears on the head noun, it marks the respective noun phrase as distributive share with respect to an overt or understood distributive key.
  - ii. If the suffix *-t'a* appears on a modifier other than a numeral or possessor-genitive within a noun phrase, its serves to individuate the members of the set expressed by the noun phrase.

Ambiguity arises only with numerical modifiers, which are typically interpreted as distributive share, as in (39-i), but can also be interpreted as individuating, per the principle in (39-ii). In what follows, we will briefly present the operation of principle (39-i) and will then concentrate

on (39-ii).<sup>5</sup> We will then propose an analysis that subsumes these two values under a single principle.

If the distributive marker appears on the head of a noun phrase, it marks that noun phrase as distributive share: a referent whose distribution has to be evaluated with respect to either the event denoted by the predicate or another referent named or presupposed in the clause. For example, the sentence below can only mean that the girl stayed in the cowshed multiple times, not that she stayed in multiple cowsheds, although such a meaning is perfectly plausible from the standpoint of world knowledge. The cowshed is the distributive share, and the event of being frequently locked up is the distributive key.

- (40) Šomorax-no ziya-de puräza reču-λ-t'a  
often-TOP cow-APUD.ESS near cowshed-CONT.ESS-DISTR  
yiz-ä ža y-iši-x zow-n.  
DEM.IPL-ERG DEM.ABS.(II) II-lock.up-IPFV.CVB be.PST-PST.nWIT  
‘They often locked her up in the cowshed next to the cow.’ (Best’al kid:4)  
NOT: ‘They locked her up in cowsheds next to a cow.’

In the next example, the singular noun *miλ'i* ‘ram’ occurs with the distributive suffix. The sentence encodes an event that is distributed over a plurality of times; the same ram comes back each day to lick the salt. Again, the ram is the distributive share and “every day” is the distributive key.

- (41) Šibaw yud-λ'o šuda-λ'-āy ciyo r-ag-ani-x  
every day-SUPER.ESS grave-SUPER-ABL salt.ABS.IV IV-lick-MASD-AD.ESS  
sis ixiw miλ'i-t'a b-ay-x zow-n.  
one big ram.ABS.III-DISTR III-come-IPFV.CVB AUX.PST-PST.nWIT  
‘Every day a big ram would come to lick salt off the gravestone.’ (Miλ'i:5)

Let us now turn to the use of *-t'a* on NP-internal modifiers, starting with count nouns. Noun phrases with a modifier marked with *-t'a* are typically plural. The main function of *-t'a*, in keeping with principle (ii) above, is to indicate that items within the set denoted by a plural noun phrase are recognized as separate — that is, are individuated. To illustrate, imagine a bunch of red flowers. This bunch can be described as an aggregate of flowers without special attention being paid to its individual units, or as a collection within which each separate flower is recognized. To express the aggregate meaning, Tsez uses a noun phrase with a regular adjective, and to express the individuated meaning, it employs the distributive marker on the adjective:

- (42) a. c'uda gagali-bi  
red flower-PL.ABS.nIPL  
b. c'uda-t'a gagali-bi  
red-DISTR flower-PL.ABS.nIPL

---

<sup>5</sup> A more detailed discussion of clausal distributive phrases can be found in CH. YY[AdvP].

Several Tsez nouns have the same form in the singular and plural; for example, *xexbi* ‘child; children’, *y'anabi* ‘woman; women’; *šebin* ‘thing; things’; *boc'i/boc'a* ‘wolf; wolves’. If such nouns occur with a modifier that does not have the *-t'a* suffix, they are ambiguous between singular and plural; if accompanied by a distributive modifier, they are necessarily interpreted as plural.<sup>6</sup> Compare the interpretive differences between (43a) and (43b):

- (43) a. lalay-xosi xexbi  
          cry-PRS.PTCP child.ABS  
          ‘a crying child; crying children’  
       b. lalay-xosi-t'a xexbi  
          cry-PRS.PTCP-DISTR child.ABS  
          ‘crying children’  
          NOT: ‘a crying child’

The individuating function of *-t'a* is further confirmed by its co-occurrence with definite marking. The suffix *-t'a* is strongly preferred when the adjective is marked as definite with the suffix *-ni*, as in (44a-b) (see also the nominalized adjectives with *-t'a* in ex. (4) above and (45c) below).

- (44) a. c'uda-t'a-ni ged-ma-bi  
          red-DISTR-DEF garment-OS-PL.ABS.nIPL  
          ‘the red dresses’  
       b. t'ek-mo-za-s-t'a-ni humer-ya-bi  
          book-OS-PL.OS-GEN1-DISTR-DEF page-OS-PL.ABS.nIPL  
          ‘the pages of books’

Examples in (45) all involve what Schwartzschild (2011) calls “stubbornly distributive predicates” such as ‘big’ or ‘tall’. Regardless of the context or noun that these predicates combine with, they always impose a distributive interpretation; note that *-t'a* cannot be omitted. It is possible that the distributive interpretation in (45a,b) is reinforced by the fact that the head nouns denote paired objects. However, in (45d), the head noun is neither a denotation of a finite set nor definite, yet the distributive marking is still required:

- (45) a. r-exora-\*(t'a) aħ-ya-bi  
          nIPL-tall-DISTR ear-OS-PL.ABS.nIPL  
          ‘long ears’  
       b. kot'on-\*(t'a) foy-re-bi  
          short-DISTR leg-OS-PL.ABS.nIPL  
          ‘short legs’  
       c. r-čeye-\*(t'a)-ni miša-r-bi  
          nIPL-small-DISTR-DEF vein-OS-PL.ABS.nIPL  
          ‘the small blood vessels’

---

<sup>6</sup> If the modifier shows agreement with the head noun, then the difference between the singular and plural agreement markers on the verb means that this ambiguity does not arise.

- d. r-<sup>s</sup>eže-\*(t'a) y<sup>s</sup>utk-a-bi  
 nIPL-big-DISTR house-OS-PL.ABS.nIPL  
 'big buildings'

The modifier combining with *-t'a* can be an adjective, as already shown in examples (42b), (44a), and (45a-c). It can also be a demonstrative (46), an adverb or postposition used attributively (47), a participle (48) (see also (43b)), or a relative clause (49).

- (46) nediw-t'a gulu-bi  
 such-DISTR horse-PL.ABS.nIPL  
 'such horses'
- (47) a. sidä sidde igo-t'a q'<sup>s</sup>ano šud-bi  
 REFL-APUD.ESS next-DISTR two grave-PL.ABS.nIPL  
 'two graves next to each other' (Bilq'isdi:60)
- b. ruyü-ł xizay-t'a gulu-bi  
 footprint-CONT.ESS behind-DISTR horse-PL.ABS.nIPL  
 'horses whose steps one follows'
- (48) a. r-oλ-xosi-t'a ziya-bi  
 nIPL-be.sick-PRS.PTCP-DISTR cow-PL.ABS.nIPL  
 'sick cows'
- b. λäxu-ru-t'a xexbi  
 leave-PST.PTCP-DISTR children.ABS.nIPL  
 'abandoned children'
- (49) a. reλ-i-s r-ic'xo-t'a huru-bi  
 meat-OS-GEN1 nIPL-fill-PRS.PTCP-DISTR tray-PL.ABS.nIPL  
 'trays filled with meat'
- b. boc'-ä zey-z-ä r-exu-r-äsi-t'a  
 wolf-ERG bear-PL.OS-ERG nIPL-die-CAUS-RES.PTCP-DISTR  
 posu cattle.ABS.nIPL  
 'the cattle killed by wolves and bears' (QAt'idno, Q'arumno:42)

Genitive adnominal modifiers can take the distributive suffix as long as the genitive denotes a material or a general property (see section 5.2 below), as in (44b) above and (50) below:

- (50) a. fomoy-s-t'a aħ-ya-bi  
 donkey-GEN1-DISTR ear-OS-PL.ABS.nIPL  
 'donkey ears' (NOT: 'the ears of a certain donkey')
- b. qaci-s-t'a kuro-bi  
 wood-GEN1-DISTR fence-PL.ABS.nIPL  
 'wooden fences'

However, if the genitive denotes a genuine possessor or appears in a measure phrase (see 5.3 below), the distributive suffix is unacceptable:

If an adnominal genitive is phrasal, the distributive suffix can appear on one of its subconstituents, thus circumventing the restrictions illustrated in (51). For example, in (52), the distributive suffix appears on the adverbial *hemedur*, a subconstituent of the nominalized relative clause; the nominalized participle appears as the adnominal genitive:



A distributive modifier can co-occur with a numeral in the collective form, as in the following example (the collective suffix is optional). The use of the collective form underscores the notion of plurality, and the use of the modifier with *-t'a* indicates individuation within that set.

- (53) *fono(-n)*      *bercinaw-t'a*      *kid-ba-bi*  
       three-COLL     beautiful-DISTR     girl-PL.OS-PL.ABS.IPL  
       '(the) three beautiful girls'

Let us now turn to mass nouns. Mass nouns denote an aggregate with poorly distinguished units, so the use of the distributive suffix on adnominal modifiers of mass nouns may appear incongruous. The differences are indeed subtler than what we observed with count nouns, but some interpretive generalizations still emerge. Consider the following three sentences:

- (54) a. Eni-y-ä gimušaw qiqi r-oy-x.  
           mother-OS-ERG     tasty       porridge.ABS.IV     IV-do-PRS  
           ‘Mother makes/is making good porridge.’

b. Eni-y-ä gimušaw-t’ɑ qiqi r-oy-x.  
           mother-OS-ERG     tasty-DISTR    porridge.ABS.IV     IV-do-PRS  
           ‘Mother makes good porridge (generally).’

c. Eni-y-ä gimušaw qiqi-t’ɑ r-oy-x.  
           mother-OS-ERG     tasty       porridge.ABS.IV-DISTR     IV-do-PRS  
           ‘Mother regularly makes good porridge.’

(54a) can refer to a single event, including an ongoing one. (54b) describes the general quality of mother's porridge, and (54c) means roughly "every time mother cooks she makes good porridge". Thus, in (54b), 'tasty' is the distributive share, and 'porridge' is the key, as in the examples above with count nouns. Here, the head noun is mass, coming without a prototypical unit of counting. However, the distributive marking forces the hearer to construct such a unit,

and the obvious choice is *portions of*, implying that every portion of porridge that Mother makes is delicious; hence, the reading “generally”, indicating a habitual interpretation. In (54c), ‘tasty porridge’ is the distributive share, and the associated event is the key: every cooking (key) results in tasty porridge. This reading makes (54c) most appropriate when used as a commentary on Mother’s qualifications as a cook (so-called dispositional interpretation). In both (54b) and (54c), the use of the distributive marker rules out the episodic interpretation.

Finally, let us examine adnominal numerals. Such numerals easily combine with the distributive suffix, but the interpretation of noun phrases with distributive numerals is unlike what we observed for noun phrases with other types of modifiers. A noun phrase modified by cardinal numeral with the suffix *-t'a* can have the reading of individuation or distributivity. For instance, (55) could mean either that they had two or three animals and these animals are viewed as individuated, or that each person in the group had two or three animals (distributive reading):

- (55) Žedu-s        q'čano-k'ono-t'a        posu-re-s        šebin  
           DEM.IPL-GEN1 two-three-DISTR        cattle-OS-GEN1        thing.ABS.IV  
           zow-s.  
           be.PST-PST.WIT  
           ‘They had two or three heads of cattle.’ (individuation)  
           ‘They had two or three heads of cattle each.’ (distributive)

Likewise, in the following example with a suffix on the numeral, the preferred interpretation of the noun phrase is distributive, with *čožnot'a tetrad* ‘seven notebooks’ functioning as a distributive share; however, the interpretation that we bought seven individuated notebooks is also possible.

- (56) El-ä        čožno-t'a        tetrad        y-is-si.  
           IPL-ERG        seven-DISTR        notebook.ABS.II        II-take-PST.WIT  
           ‘We bought seven notebooks each.’ (distributive)  
           ‘We bought seven notebooks.’ (individuation)

Distributive phrases with the numeral ‘one’ are comparable to those phrases where *-t'a* appears on a head count noun without a numeral. Compare (57) and (58), which seem to be truth-conditionally equivalent; our consultants consider them completely interchangeable:<sup>7</sup>

- (57) Neł-ä        sis-t'a        heneš        xex-za-r        teł-si.  
           DEM.ni-ERG        one-DISTR        apple.ABS.III        child-OS-LAT        give-PST.WIT  
           ‘She gave the children an apple each.’  

(58) Neł-ä        heneš-t'a        xex-za-r        teł-si.  
           DEM.ni-ERG        apple.ABS.III-DISTR        child-OS-LAT        give-PST.WIT

---

<sup>7</sup> Examples such as (57), used without the distributive marker, have a different meaning:

- (i)        Neł-ä        heneš        xex-za-r        teł-si.  
           DEM.ni-ERG        apple.ABS.III        child-OS-LAT        give-PST.WIT  
           ‘She gave the children an apple.’ (e.g., to split amongst them)

'She gave the children an apple each.'

To summarize, the suffix *-t'a* generally contributes the meaning of individuation when it appears on adnominal modifiers, and contributes a distributive interpretation if it appears on the head noun. Although the two functions of *-t'a* may seem distinct, we propose that they should be unified under the following principle:<sup>8</sup>

- (59) *-t'a* marks a constituent that it attaches to as distributive share; this share then selects an overt or presupposed element as its key

Under this approach, the principle in (39-i) above covers event distributivity, with the distributively marked noun phrase looking outside for its key. The principle in (39-ii) covers distributivity internal to a noun phrase, where the modifier marked with *-t'a* is the share and the head noun is its key, and the modifier distributes over its head NP-internally. Finally, if a noun phrase appears without the distributive marker, it can be construed as referring to an aggregate collective, something that is impossible for the distributive form. Compare (60a) and (60b); in (60a), two interpretations are possible: either each ring is expensive (the distributive reading) or individual rings may be inexpensive, but as a totality, the rings are costly. In (60b), however, only the distributive reading is possible; each ring must be expensive on its own.

- (60) a. xiriyaw      bašiqoy-bi  
           expensive     ring-PL.ABS.nIPL  
  b. xiriyaw-*t'a*      bašiqoy-bi  
       expensive-DISTR     ring-PL.ABS.nIPL  
       'expensive rings'

## 6 Noun phrases with attributive modifiers

Attributive modifiers of nouns include adjectives proper; participles; relative clauses of different types, including participial relatives (see the chapter on relative clauses); derived attributive modifiers; demonstratives; numerals; and quantificational expressions.

The examples in this chapter have already illustrated a number of adjectival modifiers; cf. (20), (22), (23), (26), (29) through (34). See also the chapter on attributive phrases for more details on adjectival phrases and Chapter YY for adjectival morphology. Some examples of participles have also appeared earlier in this chapter, e.g., (24), (43), (48), (49), (52). For details of relative clauses (which include but are not limited to participial relatives), see the chapter on relative clauses, and for the formation of participles, see CH.YY[VERB MORPHOLOGY].

Attributive modifiers can also be derived from a variety of categories (nouns, noun phrases, adverbs, postpositions) with the help of the attributive morpheme *-si* (direct form)/*-zo* (oblique form). The examples in (61a-d) show attributive modifiers derived from oblique forms of nouns

---

<sup>8</sup> We are grateful to David Gil for proposing this analysis to us. The unified approach to *-t'a* is similar to his analysis of Georgian distributives (Gil 1988). The contrast between (59a) and (59b) is reminiscent of the contrast between non-reduplicated and reduplicated expressions in Georgian, where reduplication forces the distributive reading.

and those in (62a,b) show modifiers derived from oblique forms of demonstratives. Finally (62a, b) illustrate attributives derived from adverbs (see also the chapter on adjectival phrases for further examples and discussion). In terms of their function in the noun phrase, attributive modifiers are not different from adjectives proper.

- (61) a. λ'čā-λ'o-si uži  
roof-SUPER.ESS-ATTR boy.ABS.I  
'the boy on the roof'
  - b. žek'u-ł-er-si žek'u  
person-CONT-LAT-ATTR person.ABS.I  
'a person that made something out of himself' (lit.: into the midst of people's person)
  - c. q'im-zo oz-ā-si λexu  
self-GEN2 eye-IN.ESS-ATTR log.ABS.II  
'the beam in one own's eye'
  - d. nuc-o-λ'o-si t'ut'  
honey-OS-SUPER.ESS-ATTR fly.ABS.III  
'bee' (lit.: fly that is on honey)
- (62) a. nesi-r-si daru  
DEM.I-LAT-ATTR medication.ABS.III  
'a medication for/against him' (Riynoxu:25)
  - b. žedu-qo-si posu  
DEM.IPL-POSS.ESS-ATTR cattle.ABS.IV  
'the property on them/related to them'
- (63) a. elo-si li  
there-ATTR water.ABS.IV  
'the water over there'
  - b. heme-si halt'i  
so-ATTR work.ABS.III  
'such work'

## 6.1 Noun phrases with demonstratives

Demonstratives and their derivation are described in Ch. YY. Recall that demonstratives distinguish three degrees of deixis: "this", "that (visible)", and "that, yonder (invisible)". All types of demonstratives can occur with nouns, and these demonstratives always precede the head noun. While common nouns in the singular belong to four genders, demonstratives distinguish only gender I vs. the other genders:

- (64) a. yeda/enda/yisi uži  
this.I/that.I/that.I boy.ABS.I  
'this/that boy'
- b. yedu/endu/yiła kid  
this.NI/that.NI/that.NI girl.ABS.II  
'this/that girl'

The following demonstratives do not have gender distinctions in the singular: *ža* 'this', *howža* 'that'. Older descriptions of Tsez mention gender distinctions in plural demonstratives (Bokarev

1959: 198; Imnajšvili 1963: 101-116), but these seem to have disappeared from the modern language, at least in some dialects:

- (65) a. izi(-ri)/enzi-(ri) uži-bi  
           this.PL/that.PL boy-PL.ABS.IPL  
           ‘these/those boys’
- b. izi(-ri)/enzi-(ri) kid-ba-bi  
           this.PL/that.PL girl-OS-PL.ABS.nIPL  
           ‘these/those girls’

Some demonstratives show case concord with the head noun, following the distinction *direct* (co-occurring with the absolute) versus *oblique* (co-occurring with all other cases). Thus:

- (66) a. ža žek'u  
           DEM man.ABS.I  
           ‘this man’
- b. nesä žek'u-r  
           DEM.OS.I man-LAT  
           ‘to this man’
- (67) a. ža k'et'u  
           DEM cat.ABS.III  
           ‘this cat’
- b. nelä k'et'u-r  
           DEM.OS.I cat-LAT  
           ‘to this cat’

A number of demonstratives have lost the direct–oblique contrast; a comparison with earlier descriptions of Tsez suggests that the loss of this contrast is ongoing.<sup>9</sup>

When two or more nouns modified by demonstratives are coordinated, it is typical for the demonstrative to be repeated even when both forms are the same:

- (68) a. ža kid-no \*(ža) uži-n  
           DEM girl.ABS.II-and DEM boy.ABS.I-and  
           ‘this girl and this boy’
- b. yizi kid-ba-bi-n \*(yizi) uži-bi-n  
           DEM girl-OS-PL.ABS.nIPL-and DEM boy-PL.ABS.IPL-and  
           ‘these girls and these boys’
- c. ža kid-no yizi uži-bi-n  
           DEM girl.ABS.II-and DEM boy-PL.ABS.IPL-and  
           ‘this girl and these boys’
- (69) a. yizi kid-ba-bi-n \*(ža) uži-n  
           DEM girl-OS-PL.ABS.nIPL-and DEM boy.ABS.I-and

---

<sup>9</sup> There is some dialectal variation with respect to which demonstratives have a specialized oblique form (Bokarev 1959: 198; Imnajšvili 1963: 101-116).

- b. 'these girls and this boy'
- |                                |                 |               |
|--------------------------------|-----------------|---------------|
| ža                             | kid-no          | uži-n         |
| DEM                            | girl.ABS.II-and | boy.ABS.I-and |
| 'this girl and a/some/the boy' |                 |               |

If the first coordinated noun is in the plural, the plural demonstrative can be understood only as modifying that noun (i), not the entire coordinated noun phrase (ii):

- (70) izi(-ri)      kid-ba-bi-n      uži-n  
 DEM.PL      girl-OS-PL.ABS. nIPL-and      boy.ABS.I-and  
 'these girls and boy'  
 (i) [these girls] and a/the boy  
 NOT: (ii) these [girls and boy]

Plural demonstratives modifying several coordinated singular nouns are judged as awkward and dispreferred:

- (71) #izi(-ri)      kid-no      uži-n  
 DEM.PL      girl.ABS.II-and boy.ABS.I-and  
 'these girl and this boy'

Demonstratives are commonly used to indicate the definiteness of a noun phrase, whereas the numeral *sis* ‘one’ is used to underscore indefiniteness. However, such use is never grammaticalized, and the respective modifiers can be omitted in context.

## 6.2 Noun phrases with numerals

### 6.2.1 Cardinal numerals

Numerals appear as modifiers of nouns and, as such, precede nouns. Nouns modified by a numeral are not marked for plural; consider example (1) above and the examples below. As (72) shows, a noun modified by a numeral is singular for the purposes of verbal agreement as well; the verb AGR-oya agrees with the absolute ‘two-three friends’ in the singular.

- (72) Nes-ä      q'ano-łono-n      halmay-no      sadaq  
 DEM.I-ERG      two-three-COLL      friend.ABS.I-TOP      together  
 Ø-oy-no.  
 i-take/pull-PST.nWIT  
 'He put two or three friends together.' (based on Ražbadinno, Tawadin: 72)
- (73) Nesi-s      łono      uži      zow-n.  
 DEM.I-GEN1      three      boy.ABS.I      be-PST.nWIT  
 'He had three sons.'

Numerals modifying an overt head noun often occur in the collective form, as in (72). This form is not used when the numerical expression is used predicatively:

- (74) [Eli]      [łono(\*-n)]      halmay      zow-s].

IPL.ABS	three-COLL	friend.ABS.I	be-PST.WIT
SUBJECT	PREDICATE		
'We were three friends.'			

Cardinal numerals show case concord with the head noun; they distinguish two forms: the direct form co-occurring with the absolute, as in the examples above, and the oblique form co-occurring with all other cases. The formation of direct and oblique forms is discussed in Ch. YY. Compare the direct form of the numeral ‘three’, above, and its oblique form below.

- (75) a.  $\{\text{ora}$        $\text{uži-q-āy}$   
           three.OS      boy-POSS-ABL  
           'from three boys'  
 b.  $\{\text{ora}$        $\text{uži-s}$   
           three.OS      boy-GEN1  
           'three boys', belonging to three boys', etc.

In complex numerals, all the subconstituents of the numeral appear in the oblique form:

- (76)    oc'ira                <sup>f</sup>ora                uži-r  
          ten.OS three.OS        boy-LAT  
          'to thirteen boys'

A numeral preceding two or more nouns coordinated with ‘and’ can take scope over the first noun or over the entire noun phrase. Thus, the following example can mean ten animals all together (cats and puppies) or eleven animals (ten cats and a puppy). The second reading, however, is less preferred; it requires a slightly longer pause between the coordinated constituents.



Approximate amounts are expressed by a numeral in the equative form in *-ce*, usually followed by the adjective AGR-*ile* ‘similar’, which agrees with the head noun. The numeral in such forms does not show case concord with the head noun. For example, in (78), ‘three’ is in the direct form because the head noun is in the absolute, and in (79), it is in the direct form again, although the head noun is not in the absolute case:

- (78) Dä-q              ꝑono-ce              y-iłe              ſuruš              (yoł).  
       1SG-POSS.ESS three-EQUAT II-similar          rouble.ABS.II be.PRS  
       'I have about three roubles.'

(79) Nes-ä              kayat              ꝑono-ce              b-iłe              saꝑat-y-ā  
       DEM.I-ERG          letter.ABS.II three-EQUAT III-similar          hour-OS-IN.ESS  
       cax-sis

write-PST.WIT  
 ‘He wrote the letter in about three hours.’

### 6.2.2 Ordinal numerals

Ordinal numerals are formed from cardinal ones with the addition of the form *äλiru/āλiru* (originally the past participle of the verb *eλa* ‘say’, a non-agreeing verb). Ordinal numerals have the same direct/oblique distinction observed in the cardinals. Compare simple numerals in (80) and compound numerals in (81):

- (80) a. *fono-äλiru* muq  
          three-ORD row.ABS.III  
          ‘third row’
- b. *ħuł* eli *fora-äλiru* muq-re-ł  
      yesterday 1PL.ABS.IPL three.OS-ORD row-OS-CONT.ESS  
      *b-iči-s,* *žaqsuł* *q”una-äλiru-za-ł* *b-iči-x.*  
      IPL-stay-PST.WIT today two.OS-ORD-OS-CONT.ESS IPL-stay-PRS  
      ‘Yesterday we sat in the third row, and today, in the second.’
- (81) a. *Yedu* *oc’ino iłno-äλiru* *otaxi* yoł.  
      DEM.ABS ten six-ORD room.ABS.IV be-PRS  
      ‘This is apartment 16.’
- b. *Ža* *oc’ira* *iłłira-äλiru* *t’ala-m-ā* y-iči-x.  
      DEM.ABS ten.OS six.OS-ORD floor-OS-IN.ESS II-stay-PRS  
      ‘S/he lives on the sixteenth floor.’

Since ordinal numerals show the same case concord with nouns as cardinals do, we can conclude that the participial form marking ordinality is frozen and no longer functions as a participle; if it did function as a participle, the numeral would be part of the relative clause and would always appear in the same form. The form appearing in (80b) would be unmotivated.

### 6.2.3 Fractions

The word for ‘half’ is AGR-*oλik’u*, which is used as a prenominal modifier agreeing with its head in gender. This word is different in its function from all other words and expressions representing parts/fractions. It has distinct direct and oblique forms:

- (82) Di *b-oλik’u* micxir pasad b-oy-s.  
      1SG.ERG III-half money.ABS.III spending III-do-PST.EVID  
      ‘I spent half of the money.’
- (83) Di *debe-r* *b-oλik’ä* sařat-y-ä kwat’izi  
      1SG.ABS 2SG-LAT III-half.OS hour-OS-IN.ESS waiting  
      y-oq-xo.  
      II-become-PRS  
      ‘I (woman speaking) have been waiting for you for half an hour.’

Fractions other than ‘half’ are represented by complex expressions including the word *but’ā* ‘part, fraction, share’ (gender III). The denominator appears as a numerical expression in the

cont-ablative, preceding the numerator. Some examples with the numerator in the absolutive case are presented below:

- (84) a. *þora* but'a-ł-āy q'āno but'a  
       three.OS part-CONT-ABL two part.ABS  
       DENOMINATOR NUMERATOR  
       ‘two thirds’ (lit.: from three parts two parts)
- b. *uyra* but'a-ł-āy sis but'a  
       four.OS part-CONT-ABL one part.ABS  
       DENOMINATOR NUMERATOR  
       ‘one fourth’
- c. *biłłira* but'a-ł-āy iłno but'a  
       eight.OS part-CONT-ABL seven part.ABS  
       DENOMINATOR NUMERATOR  
       ‘seven eightths’
- d. *oc'ira* iłłira but'a-ł-āy łeno but'a  
       ten.OS six.OS part-CONT-ABL five part.ABS  
       DENOMINATOR NUMERATOR  
       ‘five sixteenths’

If a fractional expression bears a case other than absolutive, the numeral in the numerator also appears in the oblique form, as shown in the example below. Compare the oblique form *q'āuna* ‘two’ in the numerator, with the direct form *q'āno* in the result below. The details of the structure are shown in (85b):

- (85) a. *Biłłira* but'a-ł-āy sis but'a  
       eight.OS part-CONT-ABL one part.ABS  
*oc'ira* iłłira-ł-āy q'āuna but'a-ł'o-r  
       ten.OS six.OS-PART-CONT-ABL two.OS part-SUPER-LAT  
*kur-nāy* biłłira but'a-ł-āy q'āno but'a  
       throw-COND eight.OS part-CONT-ABL two part.ABS.II  
       y-od-in.  
       II-do-FUT  
       ‘One eighth plus two sixteenths will make two eighths.’
- b. [pro *biłłira* but'a-ł-āy sis but'a  
       [[eight.OS part-CONT-ABL] one part].ABS  
*oc'ira* iłłira-ł-āy q'āuna but'a-ł'o-r  
       [[ten.OS six.OS-PART-CONT-ABL] two.OS part]-SUPER-LAT  
*kur-nāy]* *pro* *biłłira* but'a-ł-āy q'āno but'a  
       throw-COND [eight.OS part-CONT-ABL] two part].ABS.II  
       y-od-in.  
       II-do-FUT1  
       (“If one throws 1/8 on 2/16, one will make 2/8.”)

## 6.3 Quantified noun phrases

A number of quantificational modifiers are formed on the basis of the indeterminate element *nāsi* (direct form)/*nāz-* (oblique form) ‘which; some’. This form can be traced back to the combination of the adverbial *nā* ‘where’ and the attributive suffix *-si*, from which it still has a direct and an oblique form. However, we consider it synchronically indivisible. The forms below are derived from *nāsi* with the addition of particles (we present the direct and oblique forms separated by a slash). As in a number of other cases, the topic particle *-λa* and the contrastive particle *-go* are used to derive more specific forms from indeterminates:



These modifiers contain elements corresponding to discourse particles (*-n(o)* marks topic, *-λa* marks ‘as for’ topics, and *-go* indicates contrast), but it is unclear whether these particles are synchronically still segmentable in (86a-c). The quantificational modifier *nāsigo* alternates with the composite *nāsigo* AGR-*oqλin*, where *oqλin* can be decomposed into the future of the verb AGR-*oqa* ‘become’ and the quotative marker *λin*. Within this composite form, *nāsigo* does not alternate between direct and oblique.

Other quantificational modifiers which distinguish between the direct and oblique forms are based on the numeral *sis* ‘one’ (see example (7) above for the oblique form *sida*):

- (87) a. sis(kin)/sida(kin) (*< sis-kin*)  
           ‘some’ (in affirmative contexts) one-FOC  
       b. sis(kin)/sida(kin)  
           ‘any, none’ (under the scope of negation)

The following quantificational modifiers do not distinguish between direct and oblique forms:

- (88) a. boλ'araw  
‘any’ (free choice)

b. AGR-āttiru  
‘any’ (free choice)

c. AGR-iqi-AGR-āqiru  
‘any’ (free choice), reduplicated participial form of *-iqa* ‘get, receive’

d. didiwin  
‘any, none’ (under the scope of negation)

d. didiw  
‘such’, ‘which; what/what kind’ (in questions)

e. šomo/dice  
‘how many/how much’ (used in questions)

f. šomoλa/diceλa

- |    |  |
|----|--|
| g. | žiwžiw<br>‘several’                          |
| h. | šibaw<br>‘every’                             |
| i. | c’ik’iw<br>‘each’                            |
| j. | AGR-a <sup>č</sup> q’u<br>‘all’              |
| k. | furaw<br>‘many, much’                        |
| l. | furaw<br>‘many, much; numerous’              |
| m. | xoli<br>‘many, much’                         |
| n. | dahaw<br>‘few, little’                       |
| o. | t’āk’i<br>‘few, little; a few, a little’     |
|    | muk’uce<br>‘a little’ (only with mass nouns) |

The meanings of *nāsin* and *c'ik'iw*, on the one hand, and *žiwžiw* and *šibaw*, on the other, seem very close, and in fact native speakers often offer *nāsin* as their first choice for expressions denoting an exhaustive set. However, these modifiers have distinct morphological and syntactic properties. First, the words *nāsin* ‘all’ and *c'ik'iw* ‘all’, when modifying a count noun, combine with a head noun in the plural; the words *žiwžiw* and *šibaw* co-occur with singular head nouns. Compare the following examples:

- (89) a. Nāsin kid-ba-bi/\*kid guruλ-xo.  
           all girl-OS-PL.ABS.nIPL/girl.ABS.II cry-PRS  
           ‘All the girls are crying.’

b. Žiwžiw kid/\*kid-ba-bi guruλ-xo.  
       every girl.ABS.II/girl-OS-PL.ABS.nIPL cry-PRS  
       ‘Every girl is crying.’

(90) a. C’ik’iw es-na-bi/\*esiw idu yoł.  
       all sibling-PL.OS-PL.ABS.IPL/sibling.SG.ABS.I/II at.home be.PRS  
       ‘All the siblings are home.’

b. Šibaw esiw/\*es-na-bi idu yoł.  
       every sibling.SG.ABS.I/II/sibling-PL.OS-PL.ABS.IPL at.home be.PRS  
       ‘Every sibling is home.’

Only *nāsin* and *c'ik'iw*, but not *žiwžiw* or *šibaw*, can modify mass nouns:

- (91) a. Nāsin/c'ik'iw ciyo hi-s.  
           all/all           salt.ABS.II     be.over-PST.EVID  
           ‘All the salt has run out.’

b.	*Žiwžiw/šibaw	ciyo	hiy-s.
	every/each	salt.ABS.II	be.over-PST.EVID

Only noun phrases containing *nāsin/c'ik'iw*, but not *žiwžiw* or *šibaw*, can combine with collective predicates; thus, (92b) is as unacceptable as its English translation:

- (92) a. Nāsin kid-ba-bi sadaq guruž-xo.  
           all     girl-OS-PL.ABS.nIPL together cry-PRS  
           ‘All the girls are crying together (in unison).’
- b. \*Žiwžiw    kid       sadaq      guruž-xo.  
       every     girl.SG.ABS.II together    cry-PRS  
       (“Every girl is crying together.”)

Quantificational modifiers are not used in expressions of time and place such as ‘every year’, ‘any day’, ‘every village’, etc. Such expressions of time and place are represented by spatial forms of the respective nouns (‘day’, ‘year’, ‘village’, etc.) and are discussed in the chapter on adverbial phrases; see also the denominal form *sasaqazdā* in example (93) below.

Below, we present examples of quantified noun phrases used in clauses:

- (93) Sasaqazdā           než-ä       r-ačq'u      cet'o-bi      ħažu-x.  
       every morning    DEM.nI-ERG   nIPL-many   pill-PL.ABS.nIPL   drink-PRS  
       ‘She takes (lit.: drinks) many pills every morning.’
- (94) huł                  než-ä       dahaw    cet'o-bi      ħažu-za-ž'  
       yesterday        DEM.nI-ERG   few       pill-PL.ABS.nIPL   drink-NMLZ-SUPER.ESS  
       než-as           b-igu       ħal       zow-nč'u.  
       DEM.nI-GEN1   III-good     health.ABS.III   be-PST.WIT.NEG  
       ‘Because she took too few pills yesterday, she was not feeling well.’
- (95) Než-ä               didiwkin     cet'o-bi      ħaž-inč'u.  
       DEM.nI-ERG       any           pill-PL.ABS.nIPL   drink-PST.WIT.NEG  
       ‘She did not take any pills.’
- (96) Elu-z               magazin-ŷā   nāsiža   kanpit-ya-bi      tež-xo.  
       1PL-GEN2       store-IN.ESS   some     candy-OS-PL.ABS.nIPL give-PRS  
       ‘There is some candy in our store.’
- (97) Nāsigo              b-oqžin      magalu      b-is-o.  
       whatever        III-whatever   bread.ABS.III   III-take.IMPER  
       ‘Buy whatever bread there is.’
- (98) Siskin t'ek        ānu         dä-q.  
       any     book.ABS.II   be.PRS.NEG   1SG-POSS.ESS  
       ‘I don't have any books.’
- (99) Bož'araw           xex-za-r    kanpit-ya-bi      r-eti-x.  
       any     child-OS-LAT   candy-OS-PL.ABS.nIPL   nIPL-like-PRS  
       ‘Any child likes candy.’
- (100) Nāzon              xex-za-r    maroženi     r-eti-x.  
       all.OS    child-OS-LAT   ice cream.ABS.IV   IV-like-PRS  
       ‘All children like ice cream.’

A more detailed discussion of quantified expressions with discourse particles can be found in the chapter on particles.

## 7 Noun phrases with nominal modifiers

Nominal modifiers of nouns do a great deal of work in Tsez noun phrases, introducing a variety of concepts ranging from possession to complement clauses with a head noun. These widely varied conceptual relations are uniformly encoded by the genitive suffix on the adnominal modifier that precedes the head noun. As with some other modifiers, adnominal genitives show concord with the head noun, appearing in the direct form (Genitive 1) when the head noun is in the absolute, and in the oblique form (Genitive 2) with all other forms of the head noun.

Genitive markers can only combine with a noun; if a given modifier is not nominal, it must be substantivized in order to combine with the genitive. For example, the past participle formed from AGR-*eigir* ‘send’ is nominalized with the abstract suffix *-li* below, and this form can appear as an adnominal genitive modifying the word ‘reason’. The nominalized participle still retains its agreement with the absolute object, which allows the hearer to deduce in this particular case that the person sent somewhere was a man:

- (101) Ø-egä-ru-li-s                            bahana  
      I-send-PST.PTCP-NMLZ-GEN1 reason.ABS.III  
      ‘the reason for sending someone’

## 7.1 Adnominal possessor

Tsez does not distinguish between alienable and inalienable possession. Possessive phrases consist of an adnominal genitive (possessor) followed by the head noun (possession). Possessors can be expressed by a pronoun, noun, substantivized or nominalized expression— i.e., any form that can appear as a noun phrase (see section 1 above). Some examples of pronominal possessors follow (note that 1sg and 2sg pronouns have an irregular form in genitive 1; see Ch. YY [pronouns]):

- (102) a. dey/debi                      *mec*  
1SG.GEN1/2SG.GEN1    language.ABS.III  
'my/your language'  
b. žedu-s                      *q'ut'i*  
IPL-GEN1                      agreement.ABS.III  
'our agreement'  
c. nesi-s                      *xabar*  
DEM.I-GEN1                      news.ABS.III  
'his news'  
d. gamuš-yo-s                      *šilu*  
bull-OS-GEN1                      horn.ABS.II  
'bull's horn'

Examples of possessors expressed by a noun phrase, with and without modifiers, are shown below. In (103c), the possessor in the genitive is modified by a relative clause.

- (103) a. bahadur-e-s pikru  
           brave man-OS-GEN1 thought.ABS.III  
           ‘the brave man’s idea’
- b. ža ɬaɬo-s raʃall̩i  
       DEM village-GEN1 edge.ABS.IV  
       ‘the edge of this village’
- c. [nes-ä y-ow-xosi] kid-b-es eni-babiw  
   DEM.nI-ERG II-marry-PRS.PTCP girl-OS-GEN1 parents.ABS.IPL  
   ‘the parents of the girl he is going to marry’

Next, we show examples of possessors expressed by substantivized expressions, with an attributive oblique stem:

- (104) Ø-eyno-xo-zo-s moči  
       I-work-PRS-ATTR.OS-GEN1 space.ABS.III  
       ‘the place of the one who worked’
- (105) y-ig-a-z-as ɬal  
       II-good-OS-ATTR.OS-GEN1 health.ABS.III  
       ‘the health of the good one (female)’
- (106) Ø-exu-r-ani-s murad  
       I-die-CAUS-MASD-GEN1 goal.ABS.III  
       ‘the goal to kill’ (lit.: the goal of killing) (Imnajšvili 1963:238)

In principle, possessive phrases can be iterated indefinitely, although such recursive phrases are rare in naturally occurring discourse. Some examples:

- (107) Ražbadin-zo halmay-za-z ɬaɬo-s kid-ba-bi  
       Rajbaddin-GEN2 friend-PL.OS-GEN2 village-GEN1 girl-OS-PL.ABS.nIPL  
       ‘girls from Rajbaddin’s friends’ village’
- (108) neļa kid-b-ez eni-babiw-z y'utka-z q'awari-ɬ'o  
       DEM.nI.OS girl-OS-GEN2 parents-GEN2 house-GEN2 roof-SUPER.ESS  
       ‘on the roof of the house belonging to that girl’s parents’

As these examples show, the genitive can express general possession, part-whole relationships, and some general affinity relations. Possessive phrases with the genitive are also used in proper names, with the genitive corresponding to the last name, and the head noun, to the first name. Thus:<sup>10</sup>

- (109) a. ɬumaxan-is ɬumar  
           Umaxan-GEN1 Omar  
           ‘Omar Umaxanov’

<sup>10</sup> See Ch. YYY for a description of the traditional clans known as *tugum's*.

- b. karamazow-za-s es-na-bi  
 Karamazov- PL.OS-GEN1 sibling-  
 'the brothers Karamazov' PL.OS-L.ABS.(IPL)

Possessive phrases can also denote the author of some work, although in this particular function the genitive can alternate with a relative clause modifying the head noun. For example:

- (110) a. Tolstoy-a-s roman  
 Tolstoy-OS-GEN1 novel.ABS.II  
 'Tolstoy's novel'  
 b. Tolstoy-ä cāx-ru roman  
 Tolstoy-ERG write-PST.PTCP novel.ABS.II  
 'a/the novel written by Tolstoy'

Without a proper context, possessive expressions may be ambiguous:

- (111) Mažid-e-s surat  
 Majjid-OS-GEN1 picture.ABS.III  
 'Majjid's picture'  
 (a picture of Majjid; a picture made by Majjid; a picture belonging to Majjid)

If two genitives with different meanings modify the same noun, their order is fixed: the genitive of possessor precedes the genitive of author. Unlike the recursive possessive phrases shown above, such phrases can have multiple direct genitives. For example, in (112b), the noun phrase is grammatical in the irrelevant meaning "the novel by the teacher that belongs to Tolstoy," and (112c) could mean something bizarre like "the novel by Tolstoy who belongs to the teacher."

- (112) a. učitel-e-s Tolstoy-a-s roman  
 teacher-OS-GEN1 Tolstoy-OS-GEN1 novel.ABS.II  
 'the/a novel by Tolstoy that belongs to the teacher'  
 b. \*Tolstoy-a-s učitel-e-s roman  
 Tolstoy-OS-GEN1 teacher-OS-GEN1 novel.ABS.II  
 'the/a novel by Tolstoy that belongs to the teacher'  
 c. \*učitel-e-z Tolstoy-a-s roman  
 teacher-OS-GEN2 Tolstoy-OS-GEN1 novel.ABS.II  
 'the/a novel by Tolstoy that belongs to the teacher'

## 7.2 Adnominal genitive in the function of attributive modifier

A genitive can denote the source or material from which the referent of the head noun is made; for example:

- (113) a. micxir-yo-s aka  
 silver-OS-GEN1 bracelet.ABS.III  
 'a silver bracelet'

- b. gere-s t'as  
iron-GEN1 washbasin.ABS.III  
'an iron washbasin'
- c. noxu-s λ'u<sup>f</sup>  
straw-GEN1 roof.ABS.III  
'a straw-covered roof'
- d. izumrud-e-s šahar  
emerald-OS-GEN1 city.ABS.III  
'an emerald city'<sup>11</sup>

Such noun phrases can co-occur with a preceding genitive denoting possessor, with fixed order as discussed in section 5.1: the possessor genitive must precede the other genitive:

- (114) a. [zair-e-s] [micxir-yo-s] aka  
Zaira-OS-GEN1 silver-OS-GEN1 bracelet.ABS.III  
POSSESSOR MATERIAL  
'Zaira's silver bracelet'
- b. \*[micxir-yo-s] [zair-e-s] aka  
silver-OS-GEN1 Zaira-OS-GEN1 bracelet.ABS.III
- (115) a. [dä-z xex-za-s] [yun-o-s] q'uti  
1SG-GEN2 child-OS-GEN1 tree-OS-GEN1 box.ABS.IV  
POSSESSOR MATERIAL  
'my children's wooden box'
- b. \*yun-o-s dä-z xex-za-s q'uti  
tree-OS-GEN1 1SG-GEN2 child-OS-GEN1 box.ABS.IV

In the proverb in (116), the two possessor genitive phrases are expressed by substantivized participial constructions, and the genitives immediately preceding the head noun *dunyal* denote material:

- (116) [B-od-a käλ'i-ru-za-s] [hiso-s] dunyal,  
III-do-INF learn-PST.PTCP-PL.OS-GEN1 wool-GEN1 world.ABS.III  
[b-ac'-a käλ'i-ru-za-s] [rili-s] dunyal.  
III-eat.TR-INF learn-PST.PTCP- PL.OS-GEN1 butter-GEN1 world.ABS.III  
'Nothing ventured, nothing gained.' (lit.: the ones who learn how to make (things) get the woolen [~rich] world; the ones who learn how to eat get the butter world)

---

<sup>11</sup> The Russian version of "The Wizard of Oz" was known as *Volšebnik izumrudnogo goroda* ("The Wizard from the Emerald City"), and the corresponding Tsez equivalent proudly exhibits its multiple genitive 1s:

(i) izumrud-es šahar-yo-s šeyx  
emerald-GEN1 city-OS-GEN1 wizard.ABS.I

### 7.3 Measure phrases

There are no special constructions for measure phrases. Most of the things that normally fall into this category are expressed in Tsez by a noun phrase where the head noun, denoting unit or measure, follows the genitive form of the noun denoting the measured/quantified substance:

- (117) substance-GEN                    unit-of-measure  
    MODIFIER                            HEAD NOUN

For example:

- (118) a. at'-e-s                            t'akan  
    flour-OS-GEN1                            glass.ABS.II  
    'a cup of flour'  
   b. hek'u-ya-s                            ixin  
    potato-OS-GEN1                            bag.ABS.IV  
    'a bag of potatoes'  
   c. benzin-yo-s                            litra  
    gasoline-OS-GEN1                            liter.ABS.IV  
    'a liter of gasoline'  
   d. heneš-yo-s                            kilo  
    apple-OS-GEN1                            kilogram.ABS.II  
    'a kilo of apples'  
   e. ša-de-s                                    axu  
    wine-OS-GEN1                            drop.ABS.II  
    'a drop of wine'  
   f. pula-ya-s                                    muhu  
    rice-OS-GEN1                            seed. ABS.III  
    'a grain of rice'  
   g. giba-s/ciyo-s                            չ'it'  
    sand-GEN1/salt-GEN1                            piece.ABS.IV  
    'a grain of sand/salt (lit.: a piece of sand/salt)'  
   h. b'eλ'-e-s                                    reqen  
    sheep-OS-GEN1                            herd.ABS.III  
    'a herd of sheep'  
   i. xalq'i-mo-s                            q'oq'a  
    people-OS-GEN1                            crowd.ABS.III  
    'a crowd/a group of people'

This is the main strategy for encoding container measures, weights, or units of mass nouns such as sand or rice. Genitive measure phrases can be used interchangeably with equative phrases, where the measure/quantity appears as the equative modifier of the noun that denotes the substance being measured. Thus:

- (119) unit-of-measure-EQUATIVE                    substance-GEN  
    MODIFIER                                    HEAD NOUN

The minimal pair in (120) and (121) illustrates these two patterns; (120) is a measure phrase patterned on (117), and (121) is patterned on (119):

- (120) bix-e-s                            q<sup>’</sup>og  
           grass/hay-OS-GEN1            armful.ABS.IV  
           ‘an armful of hay’

(121) q<sup>’</sup>og-ce                         bix  
           armful-EQUAT grass/hay.ABS.IV  
           ‘an armful of hay’

The following two examples illustrate a genitive phrase (122) and an equative modifier (123) producing the same measure phrase. The difference in the head nouns is reflected in agreement; in (122), the head noun is the unit of measure ('cup'), modified by the genitive with a relative clause attached; in (123), it is the substance ('blood'), which has two separate modifiers, the relative clause and the equative modifier:



The equative measure construction is used to denote abstract expressions of amount; such abstract expressions never appear in the genitive. Compare the following examples, which include expressions of distance (124) or time (125):

- (124) a. Halt'uqan-z-ä q'ano kilometra-ce ec'no huni  
           worker-PL.OS-ERG two kilometer.ABS-EQUAT new road.ABS.IV  
           r-oy-s.  
           IV-do-PST.WIT  
           ‘The workers built two kilometers of the new road.’

b. \*Halt'uqan-z-ä ec'no huni-s q'ano kilometra  
           worker-PL.OS-ERG new road-GEN1 two kilometer  
           r-oy-s.  
           IV-do-PST.WIT

(125) a. T'o l'ora sa'at-yā-ce halt'i (yoł).  
           here three.OS hour-IN.ESS-EQUAT work.ABS.III be.PRS  
           ‘There are three hours of work here.’

- b. \*T'o ḥalt'i-s ḫono sa<sup>c</sup>at (yoḥ).  
 here work-GEN1 three hour.ABS.III be.PRS

The following examples illustrate the use of the equative construction for amount expressions:

- (126) ɬAli Ø-āš-ru-(ḥi-)ce Ø-iš-a k'<sup>w</sup>eze  
 Ali.ABS.I I-eat.INTR-PST.PTCP-NMLZ-EQUAT I-eat-INF.ABS.IV be able  
 r-äq dä-q.  
 IV-become.FUT 1SG-POSS.ESS  
 'I can eat as much as Ali ate.' (lit.: it is possible for me to eat...)
- (127) ɬAl-ä hat'an-λ'o ḥäλi-ru-(ḥi-)ce  
 Ali-ERG Sunday-SUPER.ESS drink-PST.PTCP-NMLZ-EQUAT  
 ḥaλu-s ḥuł nes-ä.  
 drink-PST.EVID yesterday DEM.I-ERG  
 'Yesterday he drank as much as Ali did on Sunday.'

## 7.4 Genitive forms of numerals

Genitive forms of numerals mainly combined with head nouns to express properties: figure/number, date, or size. For example:

- (128) a. bišomr-a-s tarix  
 hundred-OS-GEN1 number.ABS.II  
 'the number 100' (lit.: the number of one hundred)  
 b. iłhir-a-s surat  
 six-OS-GEN1 picture.ABS.II  
 'the image of 6' (lit.: six's image)  
 c. q'unaqur-a-z razmer-a-de  
 forty-OS-GEN2 size-OS-APUD.ESS  
 'about size forty'

## 8 Nouns taking clausal complements

Head nouns such as ‘news’, ‘story’, ‘rumor’,<sup>12</sup> ‘claim’, ‘fact’, ‘suggestion’, and so on can take complement clauses; such nouns often but not always correspond to equivalent complement-clause-taking verbs. Clausal complements to nouns can be encoded in two main ways. First, finite clausal complement may be introduced by the quotative enclitic *-λin* (see the chapter on nominalizations for details). For example,

- (129) [ža gulu-λ' zow-no-λin] xabar  
 DEM.ABS horse-SUPER.ESS climb-PST.nWIT-QUOT story  
 'the story/news that s/he rode a horse'  
 (130) [t'ok'ow b-ik'-ač'in-λin] r-exu-x-anu-si roži

---

<sup>12</sup> These three meanings are expressed by the common Tsez noun, *xabar*. In the glosses, we indicate the translation that is most appropriate in a given context.

any.more III-go-FUT.NEG-QUOT IV-die-PRS-NEG-ATTR word  
 ‘the firm (lit.: undying) promise that it [the rooster] won’t go there anymore’  
 (Onočun mamalayn:24)

Such complements are possible but quite rare. One should be careful not to confuse them with quotative complements of complex verbs consisting of a nominal component such as ‘promise’, ‘word’, ‘thought’ plus a light verb. Complements of nouns cannot be separated from the head noun by material that does not belong in the same noun phrase. For instance, in (130), both the complement clause and the modifier *rexuxanusi* ‘undying’ belong to the head noun *roži*.<sup>13</sup> By contrast, complement clauses selected by verbs can be dislocated from the head. In (131), the complement clause introduced by the enclitic *-xin* is separated from the noun *roži* by the ergative subject, which indicates that this clause is a complement of the complex verb *roži tež-* ‘promise’.

- (131) [Xexbi r-odi-näy mi äži-ru di-n  
 children.ABS.nIPL nIPL-do-COND 2SG.ERG say-PST.PTCP.ABS.IV 1SG.ERG-TOP  
 r-od-ān-xin] xedi-y-ä-n roži tež-no.  
 IV-do-FUT.DEF-QUOT husband-OS-ERG-TOP word.ABS.IV give-PST.nWIT  
 ‘If we have children, I will do what you say,’ the husband promised.’ (Hasanno Husenno:7)

A much more common way of expressing a complement to a nominal head is through a nominalized participial clause, which attaches to the noun by a genitive, just as nominal modifiers do (see section 5).

Two participles can appear as predicates in nominalized clausal complements: the past participle in *-ru* and the present participle in *-xosi*. These participles also appear as predicates of relative clauses (see the chapter on relative clauses). A noun complement clause with a past participial predicate has the final nominalizer *-li* (which can be omitted; see the chapter on complement clauses, section 5). The nominalized participial clause appears in the genitive, attached to the head noun. Whether or not the nominalizer is used, Tsez treats the resulting structure as a noun phrase; this suggests that (132a) is just an abbreviated version of (132b), with the nominalizer *-li* omitted. The omission of the linking genitive after the suffix *-li* is impossible, as shown in (132b):

- (132) a. [xalq'i-mo-r mesed b-älsru]s xabar  
 people-OS-LAT gold.ABS.III III-find-PST.PTCP-GEN1 news  
 b. [xalq'i-mo-r mesed b-älsruli]-\*(s) xabar  
 people-OS-LAT gold.ABS.III III-find-PST.PTCP-NMLZ-GEN1 news  
 ‘the news/story that the people found gold’
- (133) [Yodu qaca r-ay-ēr-ru]-s kayat  
 DEM firewood.ABS.IV IV-come-CAUS-PST.PTCP-GEN1 letter.ABS.II  
 než elu-r.  
 give.IMPER 1SG-LAT

<sup>13</sup> The order shown here is preferred, given that the complement clause is the longer segment, and such segments tend to appear at the left edge of the noun phrase (see section 9). Still, the opposite order, with the attributive modifier preceding the complement clause, is also possible.

‘Give us a letter that we brought you this firewood.’ (Shaitli dialect, from Imnajšvili 1963:236)

If the nominalizer is not used, judgments on the acceptability of the non-genitive-linked variant are unclear; compare (132a, b) and (134).

- (134) xalq’i-mo-r        mesed        b-älsru        xabar  
           people-OS-LAT    gold.ABS.III    III-find-PST.PTCP    news  
           ‘the news that the people found gold’

As with other genitive dependents of nouns, the genitive here shows case concord with the head noun; compare (132a, b), where the head noun is in the absolute, and (135), where it is in an oblique case:

- (135) xalq’i-mo-r        mesed        b-älsruli-z        xabar-yo-ł  
           people-OS-LAT    gold.ABS.III    III-find-PST.PTCP-NMLZ-GEN2news-OS-CONT.ESS  
           ‘in the news/in the story that the people found gold’

If the predicate of the complement clause is a present participle, it can also combine with the nominalizing suffix *-li*.<sup>14</sup> In such instances, the participle must appear in the oblique form, with the suffix *-z(o)-*, as shown below. Note that in (136), the complement-taking noun *xabar* is in the absolute but only the oblique form of the participle is allowed. This morphological property sets complement clauses apart from relative clauses with the present-participial predicate; in the latter, the participle can appear in the direct form in *-si* if the head noun is in the absolute. The substantival clause in *-zo(-li)* is attached to the head noun by the genitive:

- (136) a. yedu kamanda        putbol-ye-r        b-<sup>c</sup>eži-xo-zo-(li)-s        xabar  
           DEM    team.ABS.IPL    football-OS-LAT    IPL-win-PRS-ATTR.OS-NMLZ-GEN1    news  
           ‘the news of this team winning in football’  
       b. \*yedu kamanda        putbol-ye-r        b-<sup>c</sup>eži-xo-si-(li)-s        xabar  
           DEM    team.ABS.IPL    football-OS-LAT    IPL-win-PRS-ATTR-NMLZ-GEN1    news

The similarity between relative clauses and complement clauses is well known cross-linguistically, and for some languages, it is possible that only one type of clause is used (see Matsumoto 1988, 1997 for a similar proposal concerning a potential syntactic identity between relative clauses and complement clauses in Japanese). In Tsez, however, the two types of clauses may be similar, but they are not identical.

## 9 Appositives

Appositive phrases are composed of two noun phrases, one of which expands or clarifies the meaning of the other, as in the English *you travelers* or *we the linguists...* We will refer to the identified portion (*you, we* in the English example) as the “antecedent”, and the noun phrase that expands its meaning (*travelers, the linguists* in the English example) as the “identifier”.

---

<sup>14</sup> As in (131), the suffix *li* can be omitted.

In Tsez appositive phrases, the antecedent appears in the absolutive, and the identifier appears in the case determined by its function in the clause. For example, in (137), *eli* is the antecedent, and *q'uneset*, the identifier; in (138), we find two appositive phrases, one in the ergative case (*dey way walizā*), the other in the absolutive (*yisi uži ūisa*).

- (137) Yedu ḥažat ānu-si šebin-no  
DEM necessity be.NEG-ATTR thing.ABS.IV-TOP  
eli q'uneset tel r-oq-si.  
1PL.ABS. NIPL two.OS-CONT.ESS inside IV-become-PST.WIT  
‘This unnecessary thing has happened between the two of us.’

- (138) Dey ȳsway wali-z-ä yisi uži ūisa  
1SG.GEN1 dog.ABS.III Wali-OS-ERG DEM boy.ABS.I Isa.ABS.I  
ḥan-si.  
bite-PST.EVID  
‘My dog, Wali, bit this boy, Isa.’

## 10 Coordination of nouns

Below, we will be using the term ‘coordinate structure’ to refer to a combination of two or more nouns linked by ‘and’ (conjunction) or ‘or’ (disjunction). Nouns in a coordinate structure can be expressed in any of the previously identified nominal forms: by a pronoun, by a head noun preceded by various modifiers, or by a nominalized verb phrase. Neither of the coordination strategies described below is exclusive to noun phrases; they are also used to coordinate adjectival phrases, adverbial phrases, and postpositional phrases, but not finite verbs.

Nominal coordinate structures with the conjunction ‘and’ are produced by appending the postnominal affix *-n(o)* to each coordinated element. Two or more nouns, or noun phrases, can be coordinated in this manner, provided that *-n(o)* is repeated on each coordinate (see also examples (29), (68)-(71), and (77)).

- (139) di-n mi-n  
1SG-and 2SG-and  
‘you and I’
- (140) ūAli-z gulu-r-no mežu-z ziya-r-no  
Ali-GEN2 horse-LAT-and 2PL-GEN2 cow-LAT-and  
‘to Ali’s horse and your cow’
- (141) ačit'-iže-n ḥon-iže-n žek'u  
pine-EQUAT-and mountain-EQUAT-and man.ABS.I  
‘a man as tall as a pine and a mountain’
- (142) eniw-ce-n esiw-ce-n kid  
mother-EQUAT-and sibling-EQUAT-and girl.ABS.II  
‘the girl same as her mother and sister’
- (143) onoč-a-s q'oq'o-ni-n mamalay-e-s ūočo-ni-n  
hen-OS-GEN1 cluck-MASD-and rooster-OS-GEN1 crow-MASD-and

'hen's clucking and rooster's crowing'

As (138)-(143) show, coordination with *-n(o)* is the same regardless of the grammatical form of the noun phrase, as it attaches to all case forms as well as to forms with the equative markers *-ce* and *-q'ay*. The coordinating particle always follows the case marker and other markers.

Disjunction is expressed by the particle *ya*, which precedes each subconstituent of the disjunction:

- (144) a. ya di ya ža  
       or 1SG.ABS or DEM.ABS  
       'either I or s/he' (absolutive)
- b. ya eni-y-ā ya babi-y-ā  
       or mother-OS-ERG or father-OS-ERG  
       'either Mother or Father' (ergative)
- c. ya ī-d ya sap'on-yo-d  
       or water-INS or soap-OS-INS  
       'either with water or with soap'

As these examples demonstrate, the cases of the conjoined nouns must match; indeed, non-matching cases are not allowed in coordinate structures, regardless of whether the nouns are linked with 'and' or with 'or'. Consider the following ungrammatical examples.

- (145) a. \*ya eniw ya babi-y-ā  
       or mother.ABS.II or father-OS-ERG  
       ('either Mother or Father')
- b. \*eni-y-ä-n babiw-no  
       mother-OS-ERG-and father.ABS.I-and  
       ('Mother and Father')
- c. \*ali-r-no maduhal-qo-n  
       Ali-LAT-and neighbor-POSS.ESS-and  
       ('to Ali and the neighbor')
- d. \*bahadur-no ray-mo-ł-no  
       brave man.ABS.I-and battle-OS-CONT.ESS-and  
       ('a hero and in the midst of battle')

Example (145c) is particularly instructive: both lative and poss-essive case can be used to denote recipients (the difference between the two is determined by the permanence of the transfer — permanent transfer is associated with a lative recipient; temporary transfer with a poss-essive recipient), yet despite performing the same role in the clause, the two nouns cannot be combined in a coordinate structure. Additionally, example (145d) shows that, although postpositional phrases and some adverbial phrases can be coordinated (see also data in the chapter on adverbial phrase) noun phrases do not easily coordinate with either of these categories.

However, the identity requirement for nominal cases inside a coordinate structure only holds true for the core argument cases (absolutive, ergative, genitive, and lative). For cases outside this set, nouns in non-matching forms may conjoin. For example:

- (146) *y<sup>w</sup>utk-o-q-no*      *bay-mo-x-āz-a-n*  
           house-OS-POSS.ESS-and      orchard-OS-AD-DISTAL-IN.ESS-and  
           'around the house and behind the orchard'
- (147) *śahar-y-āy-no*      *‘aλ-ā-yor-no*  
           city-OS-IN.ABL-and      village-IN-VERS-and  
           'away from the city and into the village'

This suggests a fundamental difference between core argument cases and spatial forms; the latter conjoin like adpositions rather than nouns (note that the English equivalents, which contain PPs, are also grammatical).

Within a coordinate structure, the leftmost noun binds the nouns on its right but not vice versa. A reflexive or personal pronoun with the focus enclitic *-tow* or the contrastive enclitic *-gon* cannot occur on the leftmost noun within a coordination.<sup>15</sup> These facts suggest that coordination in Tsez is asymmetrical, with the first conjunct binding any subsequent one(s).

- (148) a. *y<sup>w</sup>ay-no*      *nelä-s*      *k’uci-bi-n*  
           dog.ABS.III-and      DEM.nI-GEN1      puppy-PL.ABS.nIPL-and  
           'a/the dog<sub>i</sub> and its<sub>i/k</sub> puppies'
- b. *y<sup>w</sup>ay-no*      *nelä-s-tow/nelä nelä-s*  
           dog.ABS.III-and      DEM.nI-GEN1-FOC/REFL nI-GEN1  
           *k’uci-bi-n*  
           puppy-PL.ABS.nIPL-and  
           'a/the dog<sub>i</sub> and its<sub>i</sub> puppies'
- c. *nelä-s*      *k’uci-bi-n*      *y<sup>w</sup>ay-no*  
           DEM.nI-GEN1      puppy-PL.ABS.nIPL-and      dog.ABS.III-and  
           'its<sub>k/\*i</sub> puppies and a/the dog<sub>i</sub>'
- d. *\*nelä nelä-s*      *k’uci-bi-n*      *y<sup>w</sup>ay-no*  
           REFL nI-GEN1      puppy-PL.ABS.nIPL-and      dog.ABS.III-and
- (149) a. *xan-no*      *nesi-s-gon*      *ł<sup>w</sup>ono uži-n*  
           king.ABS.I-and      DEM.I-GEN1-CONTR      three boy.ABS.I-and  
           'the king and his three sons' (the title of a fairy tale)
- b. *\*nesi-s-gon*      *ł<sup>w</sup>ono uži-n*      *xan-no*  
           DEM.I-GEN1-CONTR      three boy.ABS.I-and      king.ABS.I-and
- (150) a. *ya sult'an*      *ya nesi-s*      *esiw*  
           or Sultan.ABS.I      or DEM.I-GEN1      sibling-ABS.(I)  
           'Sultan<sub>i</sub> or his<sub>i/k</sub> brother'

---

<sup>15</sup> For details on dedicated reflexives and reflexive interpretations induced by the focus enclitic *-tow*, see CH. YY[BINDING].

- b. ya sult'an ya nesi-s-tow/nesä nesi-s esiw  
or Sultan.ABS.I or DEM.I-GEN1-FOC/REFL.I-GEN sibling-ABS.(I)  
'Sultan<sub>i</sub> or his<sub>i</sub> brother'
- c. ya nesi-s esiw ya sult'an  
or DEM.I-GEN1 sibling-ABS.(I) or Sultan.ABS.I  
'his<sub>k/\*i</sub> brother or Sultan<sub>i</sub>'
- d. \*ya nesä nesi-s esiw ya sult'an  
or REFL.I-GEN sibling-ABS.(I) or Sultan.ABS.I

## 11 Order of elements inside a noun phrase

Aside from demonstratives, genitives, and the various attributive forms described above, a head noun can also be modified by a relative clause. A detailed discussion of relative clauses is presented in a separate chapter; here we concern ourselves only with the order of the various modifiers inside a noun phrase. The typical order of modifiers in Tsez is fairly consistent with the order of adjectives proposed for adjectival hierarchies cross-linguistically (Dixon 1982; Sproat and Shih 1991; Cinque 1994), thus:

- (151) Value > Size > Shape > Age > Color > Provenance > Purpose

The order shown in (151) is more of a tendency than a rigid hierarchy. Compare the following example, where the denotation of provenance can appear in at least two positions without a detectable difference in intonation:

- (152) a. xiriyaw r-eye gelmaču cibaru  
expensive IV-small round worn-out  
c'uda-ni itali-ya-s y'anaza-s čanta  
red-DEF Italy-OS-GEN1 women-GEN1 bag.ABS.IV  
b. itali-ya-s xiriyaw r-eye gelmaču cibaru  
Italy-OS-GEN1 expensive IV-small round worn-out  
c'uda-ni y'anaza-s čanta  
red-DEF women-GEN1 bag.ABS.IV  
'an expensive small old round Italian-made red women's purse'

Of course, such heavily attributive expressions are rare; in naturally occurring discourse, one normally encounters a noun phrase with fewer modifiers.<sup>16</sup>

If a noun phrase includes a demonstrative and other modifiers, the demonstrative always appears at the left edge, even if the noun phrase includes a relative clause:

- (153) a. yedu xiriyaw mašina  
DEM expensive car.ABS.III  
'this expensive car'  
b. \*xiriyaw yedu mašina  
expensive DEM car.ABS.III

---

<sup>16</sup> See sections 5.1 and 5.2 above for the relative order of some genitive forms.

- (154) a. yisi Tolstoy-ä căx-ru(-ni) lena y-exora t'ek  
DEM Tolstoy-ERG write-PST.PTCP-DEF five II-long book.ABS.II  
‘these five long books written by Tolstoy’
- b. \*Tolstoy-ä căx-ru(-ni) yisi lena y-exora t'ek  
Tolstoy-ERG write-PST.PTCP-DEF this five II-long book.ABS.II

Relative clauses typically appear before other modifiers but after demonstratives (see also special cases discussed in section 3.7.1). Consider the following examples:

- (155) a. [iduyory-ik'i-xo-si] bercinaw kid  
home II-go-PRS-ATTR beautiful girl.ABS.II  
‘a beautiful girl that was going home’
- b. ??bercinaw [iduyory-ik'i-xo-si] kid  
beautiful home II-go-PRS-ATTR girl.ABS.II  
‘a beautiful girl that was going home’
- (156) a. [mi b-ädi-ru] b-a<sup>č</sup>q'u īurmat  
2SG III-do-PST.PTCP.III-many respect.ABS.III  
b. ??/\*b-a<sup>č</sup>q'u [mi b-ädi-ru] īurmat  
III-many 2SG III-do-PST.PTCPrespect.ABS.III  
‘many signs of respect that you paid me’

These tendencies in precedence are probably due to the size of the respective modifiers; as noted above, in general, longer modifiers tend to precede shorter ones, as shown by the following example where two adjectival phrases precede the numeral *sis* ‘one’:

- (157) [xizor šila-bi yol-äsi, λ'iri his-no  
backward horn-PL.ABS.nIPL be.PRS-RES above spring.wool.ABS.IV-and  
r-aq<sup>č</sup>-äsi] sis miλ'i  
IV-appear-RES.PTCP one ram.ABS.III  
‘one ram, with horns rolled in backwards and covered with newly grown wool’  
(‘Aliqilič: 18)

Since relative clauses are generally longer than other modifiers, their tendency to appear on the left reflects the general long-before-short tendency found in Tsez and other head-final languages (cf. Yamashita and Chang 2001 and see the chapter on word order). An example of the same principle at work in a noun phrase with a clausal complement was shown above; cf. (130) and see footnote 13.

If a noun phrase includes a masdar relative clause and other modifiers, the relative clause must precede the other modifiers:

- (158) a. [ma<sup>č</sup>qi-r b-ik'-ani-x] holiw huni  
far-LAT IPL-go-MASD-AD.ESS broad road.ABS.IV  
‘a broad road to go far’
- b. \*holiw ma<sup>č</sup>qi-r b-ik'-ani-x huni  
broad far-LAT IPL-go-MASD-AD.ESS road.ABS.IV

If a noun phrase includes an adnominal genitive of possession, that genitive typically appears at the left edge, as in (159), but following the demonstrative, as shown in (160):

- (159) debi nece huinaw reλ  
2SG.GEN1 so.much delicious meat.ABS.IV  
'your so-very-delicious meat' (fAliqilič:161)
- (160) ža debi reλ'iqoy  
DEM 2SG.GEN1 glove.ABS.IV  
'that glove of yours' (Xanes kono užin, sis kidno:30)

## 12 Discontinuous noun phrases

Discontinuous noun phrases are possible, but subject to several constraints that we outline below. For ease of exposition, we present two types of discontinuity separately: discontinuous genitives expressing possessor, and discontinuous attributive modifiers (demonstratives, adjectives, numerals, relative clauses).

### 12.1 Discontinuous adnominal genitive

Possessor genitives (in contrast to other genitive relations, discussed in section 5 above) can be separated from the head noun. Such discontinuity is dispreferred, but is not judged ungrammatical. It seems to be associated with a specific pragmatic context, namely contrastiveness of the genitive referent, which is why it is most accepted in contexts where such a contrast is made explicit, as in (161b):<sup>17</sup>

- (161) a. Neła γʷcay-ä [pat'i-s k'et'u] han-si.  
DEM.NI dog-ERG Fatima-GEN1 cat.ABS.III bite-PST.WIT  
'This dog bit Fatima's cat.'
- b. [Pat'i-s] neła γʷcay-ä [k'et'u-n] han-no  
Fatima-GEN1 DEM.NI dog-ERG cat.ABS.III-and bite-CVB  
[fali-z k'e't'u-q] mołu y-ihi-s.  
Ali-GEN2 cat-POSS.ESS nail/claw.ABS.II II-put-PST.WIT  
'Fatima's cat, this dog bit, and Ali's cat, it scratched.'
- (162) a. [fali-s kid-ba-bi] bercinaw yoł.  
Ali-GEN1 daughter-OS-ABS.nIPL beautiful be.PRS  
b. [fali-s] bercinaw yoł [kid-ba-bi].  
Ali-GEN1 beautiful be.PRS daughter-OS-ABS.nIPL  
'Ali's daughters are beautiful.'

It is important to distinguish this type of discontinuity from constructions with external possessors expressed by the genitive, as in the example below (see also the chapter on basic clause types). In the external possessive construction, the genitive and the noun phrase associated with it do not form a constituent. This construction is limited to a small set of intransitive

---

<sup>17</sup> Here and below, the relevant continuous and discontinuous constituents are shown in square brackets.

unaccusative predicates ('be', 'stay', 'become'). Discontinuous noun phrases, on the other hand, appear in clauses with all kinds of predicates.

- (163) [Pat'i-s] idu [k'et'u] yoł.  
 Fatima-GEN1 at.home cat.ABS.III be.PRS  
 'Fatima has a cat at home.'
- (164) [fAli-s] [bercinaw kid-ba-bi] zow-s.  
 Ali-GEN1 beautiful daughter-OS-ABS.nPl be.PST-PST.WIT  
 'Ali had beautiful daughters.'

The discontinuity illustrated in (161b) and (162b) is subject to further restrictions. First, the displacement is unidirectional; the genitive has to precede the head noun it is separated from. Compare the grammatical example in (161b) to the ungrammatical discontinuity in the following example:

- (165) \*[k'et'u-n] neła γ<sup>w</sup>ay-ā [pat'imat-is] han-no ...  
 cat.ABS.III-and DEM.NI dog-ERG Fatima-GEN1 bite-CVB

Second, the genitive can separate from the head noun only if that noun appears in one of the core cases: absolute or ergative. Compare the following two clauses:

- (166) a. ?[Neła kid-be-z] t'ek [maduhal-ä] y-is-si.  
 DEM.NI girl-OS-GEN2 book.ABS.II neighbor-ERG II-take-PST.WIT  
 'This girl's neighbor took the book.'  
 b. \*[Neła kid-be-z] t'ek [maduhal-q-āy] y-is-o.  
 DEM.NI girl-OS-GEN2 book.ABS.II neighbor-POSS-ABL II-take-IMPER  
 ('Take the book from this girl's neighbor.')

One could hypothesize that the latter restriction is related to the difference between genuine cases, which are licensed by the verb, and cases introduced by an adposition present in the structure. Discontinuity, which is a case of subextraction, is only possible with verb-licensed noun phrases, where no adposition intervenes to block the extraction. However, the power of this explanation is complicated by the behavior of noun phrases in the lative. As we discuss in Ch. YY [Cases], lative is one of the spatial cases, and it combines freely with spatial forms indicating a given reference point (in-lative, super-lative, etc.). It can also combine directly with a noun, in which case it resembles the dative of more familiar languages, expressing a recipient or experiencer. When the lative-marked noun phrase denotes a recipient or experiencer, the discontinuity discussed in this section becomes marginally possible. Thus:

- (167) a. fAl-ä [esiw-z qizanyo-r] γ<sup>c</sup>utku r-oy-s.  
 Ali-ERG sibling-GEN2 family-LAT house.ABS.IV IV-do-PST.WIT  
 b. ??[Esiw-z] fäl-ä [qizanyo-r] γ<sup>c</sup>utku r-oy-s.  
 sibling-GEN2 Ali-ERG family-LAT house.ABS.IV IV-do-PST.WIT  
 'Ali built a house for his sibling's family.'

We are inclined to take this data point with caution, given that the judgment is marginal. However, the discontinuity in (167) may indicate that the Tsez lative form is gradually turning into an argument case in situations where it marks experiencer, goal, and recipient (and appears without any spatial marking). In these cases, the lative may possibly be licensed directly by a relevant predicate (such as predicates of transfer and some psychological state predicates); see Comrie and Polisky (1998) for similar considerations. Meanwhile, the lative that participates in the spatial system still remains very much a spatial case, licensed by an adposition. If this hypothesis is on the right track, then a historically single case form is developing into two distinct yet homophonous case markers in the modern language. The permeability of lative-dative noun phrases to sub-scrambling, illustrated in (167b), then provides a counterexample to the idea that all experiencer noun phrases are licensed by an adposition (Landau 2010). If a universal experiencer-licensing adposition were present, we would incorrectly expect (167b) to be ungrammatical.

Discontinuous noun phrases are also possible when the genitive modifies the noun that is part of a complex predicate. For example, the intransitive predicate *rok'u roλ-* ‘worry about someone/something’ consists of the noun *rok'u* ‘heart’ and the verb AGR-*oλ-* ‘be ill’. The experiencer is encoded by the genitive modifying *rok'u* and the stimulus appears in the ad-essive form. The genitive experiencer can be separated from *rok'u*, as in (168c).<sup>18</sup>

- (168) a. Uži-x [eniw-s rok'u] r-oλ-xo.  
          boy-AD.ESS mother-GEN1 heart.ABS.IV IV-be.ill-PRS  
  b. [Eniw-s rok'u] r-oλ-xo uži-x.  
          mother-GEN1 heart.ABS.IV IV-be.ill-PRS boy-AD.ESS  
  c. [Eniw-s] uži-x [rok'u] r-oλ-xo.  
          mother-GEN1 boy-AD.ESS heart.ABS.IV IV-be.ill-PRS  
      ‘Mother worries about the boy (son).’

In (169), the discontinuous genitive is separated from the absolute object, which forms a complex transitive predicate with the light verb AGR-*od-* ‘do’:

- (169) a. Xalq'i-m-ā [b-‘eže-t'a-ni-za-s] īurmat]  
          people-OS-ERG IPL-old-DISTR-DEF- PL.OS-GEN1 respect.ABS.III  
  b-oy-x.  
  III-do-PRS  
      ‘People respect seniors.’ (lit.: do the old’s respect)  
  b. [B-‘eže-t'a-ni-za-s] xalq'i-m-ā [ħurmat]  
          IPL-old-DISTR-DEF- PL.OS-GEN1 people-OS-ERG respect.ABS.III  
  b-oy-x.  
  III-do-PRS  
      ‘People respect seniors.’

<sup>18</sup> See Ch. YY [ARG STR] for many more similar examples.

## 12.2 Other prenominal modifiers in discontinuous phrases

Prenominal modifiers other than the genitive of possession can also be separated from the head noun; candidates include demonstratives, adjectives, participial relative clauses, and numerals — i.e., the class of attributive modifiers. For example:

- (170) [R-igu] r-oq-si [yudi].  
IV-good IV-become-PST.WIT day.ABS.IV  
‘The weather is/has become good.’
- (171) [Ažo-q b-izi-xosi] b-ukay-s [bikori].  
tree-POSS.ESS III-rise-PRS.PTCP III-see-PST.WIT snake.ABS.III  
‘(He) saw a/the snake going up a tree.’ (based on ŠAliqilič:109)
- (172) Zow-n-λax [sis] ažo-λ q’ṣida b-ič’-äsi [ziru].  
be.PST-PST.nWIT-QUOT one tree-SUB.ESS under III-stay-RES fox.ABS.III  
‘Once upon a time, there was a fox sitting under a tree.’ (yʷwadin, zirun:1)
- (173) [Bečedaw žek’u-s] yud-λ’-āy yud-λ’o-r ḥalaq’  
rich man-GEN1 day-POSS-ABL day-POSS-LAT emaciated  
Ø-oq-xo [uži] Ø-ik’i-x zow-n.  
I-become-IPF.CVB boy.ABS.I I-go-IPF.CVB be.PST-PST.nWIT  
‘A rich man’s son day after day continued to wither away.’ (Allahes ašuni:12)

Just as we saw with discontinuous possessive phrases, we observe restrictions on discontinuity in attributive phrases. First, the displacement is unidirectional; the modifier has to precede the head noun it has separated from. Compare the grammatical example in (172) and the ungrammatical discontinuity in the following example:

- (174) \*Zow-n-λax [ziru] ažo-λ q’ṣida b-ič’-äsi [sis].  
BE.PST-PST.nWIT-QUOT fox.ABS.III tree-SUB.ESS under III-stay-RES one

Second, the genitive can separate from the head noun only if that noun appears in the absolute or ergative, or possibly the lative, case. Compare the following examples; as (175b) indicates, the sentence is grammatical when the noun phrase is contiguous:

- (175) a. \*[Bercinaw] b-ik’-ān [šahar-y-a-yor].  
beautiful IPL-go-FUT.DEF city-OS-IN-VERS  
b. [Bercinaw šahar-y-a-yor] b-ik’-ān.  
IV-good city-OS-IN-VERS IPL-go-FUT.DEF  
‘(We) will go to a beautiful city.’

Additionally, there seems to be a preference for light modifiers in discontinuous phrases, although as the examples above attest, longer constituents can be displaced as well.

It is possible that discontinuous modifiers have become reinforced under influence from Russian, where discontinuous adjectival modifiers are quite common (see Zemskaja 1979; 2004; Fanselow and Féry in press). For example, the questions with discontinuous noun phrases below might be direct calques from the Russian question shown in (178b), or they might simply be coming into wider use under the influence of a comparable Russian structure. They still stand

out; generally, Tsez does not permit discontinuity in wh-questions (see the chapter discussing interrogative clauses).

- (176) a. Sasaq [didiw hawa-baq] r-oq-xosi (yoł)?  
           tomorrow what weather.ABS.IV iv-become-PRS.PTCP be.PRS  
       b. Sasaq [didiw]r-oq-xosi (yoł) [hawa=baq]?  
           tomorrow what IV-become-ABS.PRS.PTCP be.PRS weather.ABS.IV  
           ‘What will the weather be like tomorrow?’
- (177) a. [Didiw γudi] yaqčuł (yoł)?  
           what day.ABS.IV today be.PRS  
       b. [Didiw] yaqčuł yoł [γudi]?  
           what today be.PRS day.ABS.IV  
           ‘What day is it today?’
- (178) a. [Kakoj den'] segondja? *Russian*  
           what.ATTR.NOM day.NOM today  
       b. [Kakoj] segondja [den']?  
           what.ATTR.NOM today day.NOM  
           ‘What day is it today?’

In conclusion, Tsez nouns phrases can include attributive or genitive-marked modifiers as well as modifying relative clauses. Noun phrases are strictly head-final, but the order of elements in the prenominal domain is not rigidly fixed. Discontinuous noun phrases are possible, but their distribution is constrained by the case of the head noun and the relative order of dislocated material: heads cannot precede their dependents. Within a noun phrase, we find grammatical marking for definiteness (on attributive modifiers), distributive marking, and case concord; this results in a situation where some (not all) modifiers appear either in a direct form (when the head noun is in the absolute case) or an oblique form (when the head is in any other form).

## Nominalizations

### 1 General remarks

In this chapter, we will consider deverbal nominal expressions, which include deverbal nouns in *-ni*, deverbal nouns in *-si/-zo* (derived from participles), infinitives, masdars, and clausal nominalizations in *-ti*. These expressions appear in the same positions as noun phrases (with individual differences in the distribution that we will discuss below) and all have the strict head-final order. Regardless of the details of their derivation, all deverbal nouns belong to gender IV, which is the gender for many abstract expressions. All the nominalizations discussed in this chapter can be coordinated in the same manner as simple nouns: with the enclitic *-n(o)* on each constituents for conjunction, and the proclitic *yā* on each constituent for disjunction. Such coordination is impossible for verbs proper—compare the coordination of masdars in (1) with the attempted coordination of finite verbs in (2b):

- |     |  |                     |                        |                     |                    |
|-----|--|---------------------|------------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| (1) | ža   | berten-yo-ł-er      | goł'-ani-x-no          |                     |                    |
|     | DEM.ABS(.I)  | wedding-OS-CONT-LAT | invite-MASD-AD.ESS-and |                     |                    |
|     | Ø-ay-ir-ani-x-no   |                     |                        |                     |                    |
|     | I-come-CAUS-MASD-AD.ESS-and  |                     |                        |                     |                    |
|     | 'to invite him to the wedding and to bring (him there)'  |                     |                        |                     |                    |
| (2) | a.   | ꝝAl-ä               | ža                     | berten-yo-ł-er      | goł'i-n            |
|     |  | Ali-ERG             | DEM.ABS(.I)            | wedding-OS-CONT-LAT | invite-PFV.CVB     |
|     | Ø-ay-ir-si.  |                     |                        |                     |                    |
|     | I-come-CAUS-PST.WIT  |                     |                        |                     |                    |
|     | 'Ali invited him to the wedding and brought (him there).' (lit.: having invited to the wedding, brought) |                     |                        |                     |                    |
|     | b.   | *ꝝAl-ä              | ža                     | berten-yo-ł-er      | goł'i-s-no         |
|     |  | Ali-ERG             | DEM.ABS(.I)            | wedding-OS-CONT-LAT | invite-PST.WIT-and |
|     | Ø-ay-ir-si-n.  |                     |                        |                     |                    |
|     | I-come-CAUS-PST.WIT-and  |                     |                        |                     |                    |

The expression of verbal arguments differs across nominalizations. For deverbal nouns in *-ni* and nominalized attributive forms in *-si/-zo*, the arguments inside the noun phrase have to appear in the genitive; all the other nominalizations preserve the argument case marking of the verbs from which they derive.

### 2 Deverbal nouns in *-ni*

Deverbal nouns in *-ni* can be formed only from intransitive verbs, and their sole argument, if expressed, must appear in the genitive. This argument corresponds to the absolute subject of the verbal base. Compare the intransitive sentence in (3) and the corresponding deverbal noun in (4):

- |     |          |              |           |
|-----|----------|--------------|-----------|
| (3) | Dey      | k'icu        | laq'λa-x. |
|     | 1SG.GEN1 | tooth.ABS.II | shake-PRS |

- (4) 'My tooth is loose. (lit.: shakes)
- |                                       |            |           |  |
|---------------------------------------|------------|-----------|--|
| (dä-z)                                | k'icu-s    | laq'-ni   |  |
| 1SG-GEN2                              | tooth-GEN1 | shake-DVB |  |
| 'the shaking/looseness of (my) tooth' |            |           |  |

The limitation of deverbal nouns to a subset of intransitives is not unique to Tsez. For instance, some Salish languages show a division between the nominalization of intransitive verbs (occurring with the sole argument expressed as possessor) and the nominalization of (di-)transitive verbs, which exhibit a sentential linking pattern (cf. Kuipers 1974:41-43 for Shuswap, and Kroeber 1999: Ch. 3 for the family in general).

Deverbal nouns in *-ni* can be modified by adjectives but not by adverbs. In (5), the verb *łeynad-* 'condition oneself (physically), get fit' occurs with the adverb AGR-*ig* 'well', but the corresponding deverbal noun takes the adjective AGR-*igu* 'good', (6). Note also that the adverb in (5) agrees with the absolute argument in gender, while the adjective in (6) agrees with the deverbal noun.

- (5) uži              Ø-ig    łeynay-x.  
 boy.ABS.I      I-well condition-PRS  
 'The boy works hard at conditioning himself physically.'
- (6) uži-s              r-igu/\* Ø-ig/\*r-ig              łey-ni  
 boy-GEN1      IV-good/I-well/IV-well              condition-DVB  
 'the boy's good conditioning'

If a noun is derived from an agreeing verb, the agreement is retained from the corresponding finite clause. For instance,

- (7) a. gulu              b-eynay-x.  
 horse.ABS.III      III-work-PRS  
 'The/A horse works/is working.'
- b. gulu-bi              r-eynay-x.  
 horse-PL.ABS.nIPL      nIPL-work-PRS  
 '(The) horses are working.'
- (8) a. gulu-s              b-ey-ni  
 horse-GEN1      III-work-DVB  
 'the/a horse's work/working'
- b. gulu-za-s              r-ey-ni  
 horse-PL.OS-GEN1      nIPL-work-DVB  
 '(the) horses' work/working'

Even if a deverbal noun agrees with the erstwhile absolute in a gender other than IV, as in (8a), its own gender is fixed as IV.

Derivation with *-ni* is quite productive, but some intransitive verbs are considered awkward with this suffix. The main restriction has to do with whether the underlying verb is *process* denoting or *result* denoting (cf. Grimshaw 1990). If a process interpretation is readily available

for the intransitive verb in question, the *-ni* nominalization is judged acceptable; if a process interpretation is dispreferred, such nominalizations are rejected. For example, deverbal nouns from verbs such as ‘die’, ‘come’, ‘appear’, ‘become’, or ‘find’ are considered incongruous. However, if the process interpretation can be contextually forced, the respective nominalizations become more acceptable. Consider the following example:

- (9)   ?nesi-s           r-exora           nex-ni  
      DEM.I-GEN1   IV-long           come-DVB  
      ‘his long arrival’

Because of the restriction to process interpretation, deverbal nouns formed from iterative verbs with the suffix *-nad-* are particularly common (compare AGR-*eyni* and *teyni* above), although the suffix itself is never preserved in the nominalization. This, in turn may create an impression that *ni-* nominalizations are limited to unergative verbs (see CH. YY[Basic clause types]), but as we just noted, the main restriction is that the nominalization must have an event/process interpretation, which is orthogonal to unaccusativity. Unaccusative predicates that denote durative events, such as *quq-* ‘dry’, *at’il-* ‘become wet’, *tico-* ‘mix’, AGR-*izi* ‘rise’, permit nominalization with *-ni*. For instance:

- (10)   šeλ ’u-s           quq-ni  
      clothes-GEN1   dry-DVB  
      ‘the clothes’ getting dry’
- (11)   cement-e-s           tico-ni  
      cement-OS-GEN1   mix-DVB  
      ‘cement being prepared’ (lit.: mixing)
- (12)   magalu-s           b-<sup>s</sup>aλo-ni  
      bread-GEN1      III-become.stale-DVB  
      ‘bread getting stale’

A large number of deverbal nouns with *-ni* denote sounds, and the nominalization process can be used productively to create new sound-denoting words. The most common nouns in *-ni* and their corresponding verbs are listed below. In (13), we show verbs with meanings other than sound emission, while (14) presents sound-emission examples. In all these instances, the derivation is based on the verbal root, with suffixes (*-nad-*, *-λad-*, or *λ-*) omitted. Root-final *w* undergoes a change to *p* before *-ni*; cf. *hapni* and *napni* below.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>(13)   AGR-et’- ‘tear away’<br/>        ħahaλad- ‘scratch oneself’<br/>        laxλ-/laħλ- ‘move, shake’<br/>        zeq’λ- ‘twitch’<br/>        AGR-iš- ‘eat (intr.)’<br/>        λaλa- ‘itch’<br/>        q<sup>s</sup>aroλ- ‘boil’</p> <p>(14)   λ’awλ- ‘slurp’<br/>        qäfänod- ‘cry, throw a tantrum’<br/>        c’oc’oλad- ‘suck’</p> | <p>AGR-et-ni ‘tearing away, escape’<br/>        ħaha-ni ‘scratching’<br/>        laħ-ni ‘trembling, fear’<br/>        zeq’-ni ‘twitching; tantrum’<br/>        AGR-iš-ni ‘having a meal’<br/>        λaλa-ni ‘itch(ing)’<br/>        q<sup>s</sup>aro-ni ‘boiling’<br/>        λ’ap-ni ‘slurping’<br/>        qäfä-ni ‘crying; temper tantrum’<br/>        c’oc’o-ni ‘sucking; sucking noise’</p> |
|---|---|

čačaλad-	'scream, yell'	čača-ni	'screaming'
xirλad-	'sniffle'	xir-ni	'sniffles; sniffling'
didinod-	'be annoying; make noise'	didi-ni	'bothering, noise'
lepnod-	'sob'	lep-ni	'sobbing'
qoqoλ-	'laugh'	qoqo-ni	'laughter'
t'eknod-	'tick'	t'ek-ni	'ticking'
lalada-	'babble'	lala-ni	'babbling'
šepλ-/šewλ-	'whisper'	šep-ni	'whispering'
bubuλ-	'mumble'	bub-ni	'mumbling'
hehλ-	'wheeze'	heh-ni	'wheezing'
c'ek'λ-	'chirr'	c'ek'-ni	'chirring'
harλ-	'snore'	har-ni	'snoring'
zuzuλ-	'buzz'	zuz-ni	'buzzing'
ruruλ-	'buzz'	ruru-ni	'buzzing'
imoλ-	'moo'	imo-ni	'mooing'
q'oq'oλ-	'cluck'	q'oq'o-ni	'clucking'
hawλ-	'bark'	hap-ni	'barking'
nawλ-	'meow'	nap-ni	'meowing'
hihiλ-	'neigh'	hihi-ni	'neighing'
‘o‘oλ-	'bray; crow (as a rooster)'	‘o‘o-ni	'braying; crowing'
b‘eßeλ-	'bleat'	b‘eße-ni	'bleating'
qʷarλ-	'oink'	qʷar-ni	'oinking'
guruλ-	'howl'	gur(a)-ni	'howling'
qʷʷaqʷʷaλ-	'caw (as a crow); croak (as a frog)'	qʷʷaqʷʷa-ni	'cawing; croaking'

Some deverbal nouns have acquired a particular meaning: for instance, *roλni* 'illness' (from *roλ-* 'hurt'), *r‘ečni* 'vomit'. Finally, very occasionally, we find a deverbal nouns in *-ni* that appears to derive from a transitive verb: consider *caxni* 'writing' (derived from the transitive *cax-* 'write') and *čokni* 'rinse' (derived from the transitive *čokλ-* 'rinse'). There is evidence in these cases that the original verbs underwent detransitivization prior to denominalization: *caxni* takes only an agentive genitive, and no object can be expressed; conversely, *čokni* can only occur with the genitive of the object:

- (15) a. ɻAli-s caxni  
           Ali-GEN1 writing  
           'Ali's writing'
- b. \*kayat-yo-s/kayat caxni  
           letter-OS-GEN1/letter.ABS.II writing  
           ('the writing of a/the letter')
- (16) a. haqu-s čokni  
           mouth-GEN1 rinsing  
           'the rinsing of mouth'
- b. \*uži-s čokni  
           boy-GEN1 rinsing

(‘the boy’s rinsing’)<sup>1</sup>

Deverbal nouns in *-ni* cannot be derived from negative or optative verb forms, nor can they be derived from complex verbs.

Deverbal nouns in *-ni* have the same distribution as regular nouns, being able to appear in any position in the clause. Compare the use of deverbal nouns as an ergative subject and as an adjunct in the examples below:

- (17) hap-n-ä eli b-iži-r-x-ānu.  
 bark-DVB-ERG 1PL.ABS(.IPL) IPL-rise-CAUS-PRS-NEG  
 ‘Barking does not wake us up.’
- (18) ɬep-ni-s payda šebi (yoł-ä)?  
 sob-DVB-GEN1 profit.ABS.III what.ABS be.PRS-INTERR  
 ‘There is no need to sob.’ (lit.: What is the use of sobbing?)

### 3 Nominalizations in *-si/-zo*

#### 3.1 Event nominalizations

Imnajšvili (1963:237) indicates that participles ending in the attributive suffix *-si* (direct form)/*-zo* (oblique form) can be used as noun phrases, both in the affirmative and in the negative. He offers the following examples:<sup>2</sup>

- (19) cax-xo-zo aki-k'-si di.  
 write-PRS-ATTR.OS.ERG tired-TR-PST.WIT 1SG.ABS  
 ‘Writing tired me out.’
- (20) cax-xo-zo-q/cax-xo-zo-d aki-ł-si di.  
 write-PRS-ATTR.OS-POSS.ESS/write-PRS-ATTR.OS-INS tired-ITR-PST.WIT 1SG.ABS  
 ‘I got tired from writing.’

Such noun phrases are event nominalizations. These nominalizations are typically derived using the abstract nominalizing suffix *-li*, although the suffix itself is frequently omitted. The forms below are preferred by our consultants over the examples in (19) and (20):

- (21) cax-xo-zo-ł-ä aki-k'-si di.  
 write-PRS-ATTR.OS-NMLZ-ERG tired-TR-PST.WIT 1SG.ABS  
 ‘Writing tired me out.’

---

<sup>1</sup> This phrase can be interpreted, incongruously, as “the rinsing of the boy (in smth)”, which is consistent with (16a).

<sup>2</sup> The ergative in (19) appears to end in *-o*; however, this is simply the zero ending of the oblique stem. For most nouns, the ergative is identical to the in-essive, ending in *-ä/-ā*, but with some nouns, it takes the null ending (see CH.YY[case forms]). Nominalized forms in *-zo* normally have the null ending, although variation occurs even within a single text. For example, in the fairy tale ‘Beliqanbi’, we find both *esixozo* and *esixozā* ‘the one who tells’. See also the variation in marking in (33a,b) and (34) below.

- (22) cax-xo-zo-li-q/cax-xo-zo-li-d aki-ł-si  
           write-PRS-ATTR.OS-NMLZ-POSS.ESS/write-PRS-ATTR.OS-NMLZ INS tired-ITR-PST.WIT  
           di.  
           1SG.ABS  
           'I got tired from writing.'

Among its many uses, the suffix *-li* derives nominalized tensed clauses, which are discussed in section 6 below. However, the distribution of deverbal abstract nouns in *-si/-zo* (with or without *-li*) is different from that of nominalized clauses. As we saw in (19) and (21), derived nouns can appear as ergative subjects. Nominalized clauses cannot appear in this function, and the addition of an object renders (19)/(21) ungrammatical.

- (23) \*[kayat cax-xo-zo-ł]-ā aki-k'-si di.  
letter.ABS.II write-PRS-ATTR.OS-NMLZ-ERG tired-TR-PST.WIT 1SG.ABS  
('Writing a letter tired me out.')

A genitive argument of a transitive verb can be represented in the nominalization. Compare (23) and the following examples:

- (24) [kayat-yo-z letter-OS-GEN2 di.  
cax-xo-zo-ł]-ā write-PRS-ATTR.OS-NMLZ-ERG tired-TR-PST.WIT  
aki-k'-si  
1SG.ABS  
'The writing of a/the letter tired me out.'

(25) [uži-s boy-GEN1  
cax-x-ānu-si(-li)] write-PRS-NEG-ATTR(-NMLZ)  
eniw-z mother-GEN2  
rok'-ł'o heart-SUPER.ESS  
nexi-ł-xo  
come-ITR-PRS  
'The son's not writing saddens Mother.' (lit.: comes upon Mother's heart)

Only one arguments can be represented in such deverbal nouns, which means that the noun may be ambiguous out of context, as in the following example:

- (26) madina      nesi-z      Ø-aλ'ir-zo-λ'o      hayran  
       Madina.ABS.II DEM.I-GEN2 I-deceive-ATTR.OS-SUPER.ESS      surprised  
       y-oq-si.  
       II-become-PST.WIT  
       ‘Madina was surprised by his deception.’ (he is the deceiver)  
       ‘Madina was surprised by his being deceived.’

Deverbal nouns in *-si/-zo* cannot be derived from complex verbs with a nominal component, even if that nominal component is in the genitive:

- (27) \*eniw            kumak/kumak-yo-z            b-odi-x-zo-λ'o  
       mother.ABS.II help.ABS.III/help-OS-GEN2 III-do-PRS-ATTR.OS-SUPER.ESS

y<sup>c</sup>ay<sup>c</sup>u y-izi-x  
 happy II-rise-PRS  
 ('Mother is happy because of being helped/helping.')

However, complex verbs consisting of a non-nominal component and a light verb can produce event nominalizations. Compare the verb y<sup>c</sup>ay<sup>c</sup>u AGR-iz- 'be happy' (lit.: happy rise), shown in (27), with its event nominalization in (28):

- (28) eniw-z      y<sup>c</sup>ay<sup>c</sup>u y-izi-xo-zo      kid      y<sup>c</sup>ay<sup>c</sup>u  
 mother-GEN2    happy II-rise-PRS-ATTR.OS.ERG    girl.ABS.II    happy  
 y-izi-r-xo.  
 II-rise-CAUS-PRS  
 'Mother's being happy makes the daughter happy.'

Like nominalizations in *-ni*, event nominalizations can combine with adjectives, but not adverbs. For example:

- (29) žuka/\*žuk      cax-xo-zo      aki-k'-si      di.  
 bad/badly      write-PRS-ATTR.OS.ERG      tired-TR-PST.WIT      1SG.ABS  
 'Bad writing tired me out.'  
 NOT: 'Writing badly tired me out.'

Event nominalizations in *-si/-zo* are very rare. We have not observed them in texts, and although they are accepted in elicitations, speakers prefer clausal nominalizations in *-li*, discussed in section 6 below.

### 3.2 Participant nominalizations

The suffix *-si/-zo*, often followed by the definite suffix *-ni*, can be used to derive nouns denoting objects or persons as well as events. When deriving event nominalizations, *-si/-zo* combines with verbs only; when deriving entity nominalizations, it combines with a much wider range of categories: other nouns (30), noun phrases (31), adverbs (32), adjectives, numerals, and verbs (33).<sup>3</sup> Typically *-si/-zo* appears on the attributive modifier of a head noun ('person', 'thing', etc.); the head noun itself can also be omitted, in which case the substantivized modifier combines with case markers directly. For instance,

- (30) meši-za-xo-zo-r  
 calf-PL.OS-PRS-ATTR.OS-LAT  
 'to the calf shepherd' (lit.: to the (one) at calves)
- (31) ok'-xo-si-n-e-λ'  
 nail-PRS-ATTR-DEF-OS-SUPER.ESS  
 'over the place where the nail is'
- (32) waħħo-si-ni-de  
 down-ATTR-DEF-APUD.ESS  
 'next to the one down below'

---

<sup>3</sup> This example shows two different forms of the ergative—see footnote 2 above.

- (33) a. Ø-oλλo-xo-zo eλi-n...  
           I-be.in.the.middle-PRS-ATTR.OS.ERG say-PST.nWIT  
   b. Ø-oλλo-xo-zo-n-ä eλi-n...  
           I-be.in.the.middle-PRS-ATTR.OS-DEF-ERG say-PST.nWIT  
                   ‘the middle one said...’

These examples suggest that noun phrases in *-si/-zo* are simply relative clauses with a null head. Consistent with the general properties of participial relative clauses (see the chapter on relative clauses), such expressions preserve the argument structure of the verb they are derived from. For example,

- (34)    heresi                mec                        esi-xo-z-ā/esi-xo-zo  
           deceitful            language.ABS.III      tell-PRS-ATTR.OS-ERG/tell-PRS-ATTR.OS.ERG  
           e᷑i-n...  
           say-PST.nWIT  
           'The liar said...' (lit.: the one telling lies)' (Beliganbi:5,14)

Since these apparent nominalizations are relative clauses, it is also understandable that they can include adverbs. Compare example (29) above and the following:

- (35) žuk cax-xo-zo žuk t'et'er-xo.  
 badly write-PRS-ATTR.OS.ERG badly study-PRS  
 'The one who writes badly studies badly.'

## 4 Infinitive and infinitival clauses

Affirmative infinitival predicates end in *-a*, which is affixed to the last consonant of the stem. The negative form of the infinitive is *-ā(n)č'i*, but sometimes the conversal negation *-(n)č'ey* is used in its place.

Infinitival clauses employ the same case marking as finite clauses. Thus, a finite verb that takes an ergative agent and absolute patient takes the same argument structure when used as an infinitive, and so on. Agreement in infinitival clauses also parallels that of finite clauses in occurring with the absolute argument alone. Some examples:

- (36) rek-ä h̥išimuku r-a<sup>f</sup>y-a  
     key-ERG lock.ABS.IV IV-open-INF  
     ‘for the/a key to open the/a door’

(37) xexza-r ecno-ni igruška šuλ'-a  
     children-LAT new-DEF toy.ABS.IV forget-INF  
     ‘for the children to forget (about) the new toy’

(38) debe-q f̥iλ'u y-iži-r-oł-a  
     2sg-POSS.ESS lid.ABS.II II-rise-CAUS-POT-INF  
     ‘for you to lift the/a lid’

(39) nesi-q xabar es-oł-äči  
     DEM.I-POSS.ESS news.ABS.III say-POT-NEG.INF  
     ‘for him not to tell the news’

Infinitival clauses can include adverbs, as shown in (40). Adjectives can be used inside infinitiveal clauses to modify a noun (if there is an appropriate one), but not the infinitive itself. In (41), *bigu* can be interpreted only as a modifier of *keč'*:

- (40) b-ig keč' qaλ-a  
      III-well song.ABS.III sing-INF  
      'to sing well'
- (41) b-igu keč' qaλ-a  
      III-good song.ABS.III sing-INF  
      'to sing a good song'

Infinitival clauses are widely used in several functions: as complements of impersonal, raising and control verbs (see CH.YY[Clausal complements]), as relative clauses (see CH.YY [relative clauses]), and as exclamatives (see CH. YY[exclamatives]). However, they do not appear as ergative subjects or as complements of adpositions, as they cannot combine with any overt case markers.

The infinitive of the verb ‘be’ has different forms depending on tense/aspect: *yola* for present/progressive and *zowa* for non-present/completive in the affirmative; *ānu* for present and *zowānč'i/zownč'ey* for past in the negative. Whereas the verb ‘be’ is commonly omitted as a copula or auxiliary in root clauses, it has to be preserved in infinitival clauses. For example:

- (42) neļo-λ' cax-äsi yoł-a  
      DEM.NI-SUPER.ESS write-RES be.PRS-INF  
      'to be written on it'
- (43) doxtur-ķun zow-a  
      doctor-as be.PST-INF  
      'to have been (worked as) a doctor'

It is not uncommon to find the verb AGR-*oq-* ‘become’ functioning as a copula or light verb in masdar and infinitival clauses as well. In most cases, the interpretation of AGR-*oq-* as a copula is very close to the interpretation of ‘be’. Compare the example in (43) where ‘be’ is used, and the example below, which shows the use of AGR-*oq-* :

- (44) šopir-li-ķun b-oq-a  
      driver-NMLZ-as IPL-become-INF  
      'to be drivers' (of several people, with a group that includes males)

## 5 Masdars and masdar clauses

The Arabic term *masdar* ‘verbal noun’ is widely used in the Caucasiological literature to denote non-finite verb forms that combine verbal and nominal properties. For Tsez, the verbal properties of masdars include finite-clause-type argument marking and agreement, co-occurrence with adverbs rather than adjectives, and the availability of optative marking and negation. The primary nominal characteristic of masdars is their ability to take case-marking. Furthermore,

masdars can combine with particles that do not occur with finite verbs, such as *-λa*, *-gon*, *-tow*, etc.

Masdar predicates in the affirmative can be derived from infinitives by adding the suffix *-ni*, which we already saw in section 2. The affirmative masdar suffix *-ani* is presumably derived from the combination of the infinitival suffix *-a* and the definite suffix *-ni*, although synchronically the suffix is no longer compositional. In the negative, the suffix expands to *-ā(n)č'ini* or *-(n)č'ey* (the latter is probably transferred to masdars from converbal clauses).

Some examples of masdar clauses:

- (45) eli sid-qo sis b-ił-anı  
1PL.ABS.IPL one-POSS.ESS one IPL-be similar-MASD  
'our being similar to each other'
- (46) dey rok'u r-iq's-ani  
1SG.GEN heart.ABS.IV IV-approach-MASD  
'my heart being calm'
- (47) yuyay-mo eniw moλ-a-x-āy č'ari-k'-ānč'ini  
noise-OS.ERG mother.ABS.II dream-OS-AD-ABL wake-TR-MASD.NEG  
'for noise not to wake Mother up from her sleep'

Like infinitival clauses, masdar clauses can be modified by adverbs, but not adjectives:

- (48) [adab žuk/\*žuka b-exu-r-ānč'ini]-r Ø-äk'i-n mi  
respect.ABS.II badly/bad III-die-CAUS-MASD.NEG-LAT I-go-PROH 2SG.ABS(.I)  
elo-r!  
there-LAT  
'So that you would not break the rules badly, don't go there.'

The similarity between infinitival clauses and masdar clauses goes beyond their suffixal and adverbial parallels; the two types of clauses have similar (but not identical) distribution as complements of control verbs (Ch. YY[Clausal complements]) and also as relative clauses (Ch. YY[relative clauses]). Unlike infinitives, however, masdars clearly specify goal-oriented events. This interpretation prevents them from appearing as complements of impersonal and raising predicates (see Ch. YY[clausal complements]).

Masdar clauses never appear in the absolute case; for (45) through (47) to be integrated into clause structure, the masdar predicate has to bear one of the oblique cases: typically genitive, lative, ad-essive, or cont-lative.

- (49) [neł' boc'-ā Ø-exu-r-ani]-z murad-yo-λ'  
DEM.nI.OS wolf-ERG I-die-CAUS-MASD-GEN2 goal-SUPER.ESS  
Ø-egir-āsi zew-no xan-ā že uži.  
I-send-RES AUX.PST-PST.nWIT king-ERG DEM boy.ABS.I

'The king sent that boy with the goal of having him killed by the wolf.' (lit. the wolf him killing's goal) (Imnajšvili 1963:238)<sup>4</sup>

- (50) xan-ä yedu ... im-yo-qo-r y-ici-n [puħ-ä-za  
 king-ERG DEM.ABS(.II) pole-OS-POSS-LAT II-tie-PST.nWIT side-IN-DIST  
 Ø-ik'i-Ø-äk'i-ru žek'-ä nocu caλ-ani-λ-äy.  
 I-go-I-go-PST.PTCP person-ERG saliva.ABS.II throw-MASD-SUB-ABL
- 'The king tied her to a pole so that (any) person walking by could spit at her.' (Beqes ɻUneyzat:55)
- (51) di raziyaw yoł [nesi uži-x kid  
 1SG.ABS(.I) agreeing be.PRS DEM.I.OS boy-AD.ESS girl.ABS.II  
 y-egir-ani]-λ'.  
 II-send-MASD-SUPER.ESS
- 'I agree to betroth (lit.: send) the girl to this boy.' (Imnajšvili 1963:238)
- (52) [Ø-exw-ani]-q-äy Ø-ok'eλ-si.  
 I-die-MASD-POSS-ABL I-run-PST.WIT
- 'I escaped death (lit.: run away from dying).' (Imnajšvili 1963:238)
- (53) [nes-ä b-ac'-ani]-qo-r/b-ac'-ani]-λ'o-r Ø-ezu mi!  
 DEM.I-ERG III-eat-MASD-POSS-LAT/III-eat-MASD-SUPER-LAT I-look.IMPER 2SG  
 'Watch what he is going to eat!' (based on Imnajšvili 1963:238)
- (54) že uži [beλi b-iqir-ani]-λ'o-r  
 DEM boy.ABS.I game.ABS.III III-catch-MASD-SUPER-LAT  
 ruhun Ø-oq-no.  
 learn I-become-PST.nWIT
- 'That boy has learned to hunt wild game.' (based on Imnajšvili 1963:238)
- (55) ok'-xo-si-ni moči paλi-x zew-s  
 nail-PRS-ATTR-DEF place.ABS.III fill-IPFV.CVB AUX.PST-PST.WIT  
 [čangerey-e-r r-iy-äč'ini]-λ-äy.  
 Chan-Girey-OS-LAT IV-know-MASD.NEG-SUB-ABL  
 'He was filling the place where the nail was so that it would not be known to Chan-Girey.' (Imnajšvili 1963:237)
- (56) [yed-ä q'irič' k'ed-ani-λe-r] Ø-oq-no.  
 DEM.I-ERG scissors.ABS.IV look.for-MASD-CONT-LAT I-begin-PST.nWIT  
 'He began to look for scissors.' (Bilq'isdi:26)

The lative and ad-essive forms, which seem to be interchangeable, are most common with masdar nominalizations. These forms appear in control complements, adjunct purpose clauses, and masdar relative clauses, as illustrated below:

- (57) eniw razi y-oq-xo zow-n-ānu [ža  
 mother.ABS.II agreeing II-become-PRS AUX.PST-PST.nWIT-NEG DEM.ABS(.II)  
 sid-xo-kin y-egir-ani]-x.  
 one-AD.ESS-FOC II-send-MASD-AD.ESS  
 'Mother refused to give her to anyone in marriage.' (Allahes ašuni:11)

<sup>4</sup> Imnajšvili (1963:238) presents this example with genitive 1 on the masdar clause, which seems to be a typo.

- (58) dahaw-gon ſiyad mi [mow nex<sup>w</sup>-ani]-r.  
 a.little-CONTR cry.IMPER 2SG tear.ABS.II come-MASD-LAT  
 ‘You cry a little so that a tear would drop (come out).’ (Aliqilič:44)
- (59) mi [dä-de-r b-iħad-ani]-x b-oq  
 2SG.ABS.III 1SG-APUD-LAT III-fight-MASD-AD.ESS III-become.IMPER  
 maħor ! outside  
 ‘Come outside to fight with me (addressing a dragon).’ (Aliqilič:186)
- (60) [mežu-q es-ani-x] kesu dä-q ħexu-s  
 2PL.-POSS.ESS tell-MASD-AD.ESS tale.ABS.III 1SG-POSS.ESS remain-PST.WIT  
 ‘I have a story to tell you.’

However, masdar clauses cannot be used as ergative subjects. Compare the grammatical example in (60) with a regular noun phrase and the ungrammatical one in (61) with the masdar clause in the ergative:

- (61) yiħa kes-ä uži-za-q siskin moħli-x-ānu  
 DEM tale-ERG boy-PL.OS-POSS.ESS anything.ABS.IV teach-PRS-NEG  
 ‘This story is not going to teach the boys anything.’
- (62) \*[nes-ä kesu es-an]-ä uži-za-q  
 DEM.I-ERG tale.ABS.III tell-MASD-AD.ESS boy-PL.OS-POSS.ESS  
 siskin moħli-x-ānu  
 anything.ABS.IV teach-PRS-NEG  
 (‘Telling this story is not going to teach the boys anything.’)

## 6 Nominalizations in *-li*

The suffix *-li* derives abstract nouns from nouns, adjectives, adverbs/postpositions, and numerals (see CH.YY [Noun derivation]). It is also used to derive clausal nominalizations when it attaches to a past or present participle. For example, the clause in (63) is nominalized and embedded under the verb *čuq<sup>f</sup>-* in (64). Note that the predicate ‘be’ starts out in the present tense form, but is turned into a past (perfective) participle, which is then nominalized. The nominalized clause preserves the case marking of the original finite clause.

- (63) ža bašiq<sup>f</sup>oy neħħa kid-be-z baši-ħ-si yoħ.  
 DEM ring.ABS.IV DEM.ni.OS girl-OS-GEN2 finger-CONT-ESS-ATTR be.PRS  
 ‘This ring is from that girl’s finger.’
- (64) uži-r suħħi-tow čuq<sup>f</sup>-no [ža bašiq<sup>f</sup>oy  
 boy-LAT suddenly-FOC understand-PST.nWIT DEM ring.ABS.IV  
 neħħa kid-be-z baši-ħ-si yäl-ru-ħi].  
 DEM.ni.OS girl-OS-GEN2 finger-CONT-ESS-ATTR be.PRS-PST.PTCP-NMLZ  
 ‘The boy suddenly realized that this ring was from that girl’s finger.’ (Bašiq<sup>f</sup>oy:44)

Example (65) shows a predicate in the present tense, and (65) provides its nominalized form:

- (65) dey qoqoħlu marha-ħ<sup>’</sup> r-egir-xo.  
 1SG.GEN1 laughter.ABS.IV fable-SUPER.ESS IV-send-PRS

'I am laughing at a tall tale.'

- (66) [dey qoqoλu marha-λ' r-egir-xosi-λi]  
 1SG.GEN1 laughter.ABS.IV fable-SUPER.ESS IV-send-PRS.PTCP-NMLZ  
 debe-r r-iy-x.  
 2SG-LAT IV-know-PRS  
 'You know that I am laughing at a tall tale.'

In (67), the predicate is in the unwitnessed past, and the embedded clause contains the nominalized past participle in the cont-ablative form:

- (67) bikor-ä nesi-z gug-y-ä kuła r-oy-n.  
 snake-ERG DEM.I-GEN2 back-OS-IN.ESS sleeve.ABS.IV IV-do-PST.nWIT  
 'The snake tricked him.' (lit.: made a sleeve in his back)
- (68) bəliqan-ä žedu-q [didur bikor-ä nesi-z  
 hunter-ERG DEM.IPL-POSS.ESS how snake-ERG DEM.I-GEN2  
 gug-y-ä kuła r-ay-ru-ł-äy esi-n.  
 back-OS-IN.ESS sleeve.ABS.IV IV-do-PST.PTCP-CONT-ABL tell-PST.nWIT  
 'The hunter told them how the snake had tricked him.' (Sadaq'a:16)

Nominalizations with the past participle are much more common than nominalizations with the present participle; it appears that the use of the past participle is the default, while the present participle is used in nominalizations if the ongoing character of an event needs to be emphasized. Tsez does not have sequence of tenses, so the tense of the nominalization is interpreted relative to the tense of the embedding predicate.

Nominalized clauses appear in a wide variety of functions: as complements of verbs (mostly verbs of cognition and perception, as shown in (64) and (66)), as adjuncts, and as complements to nouns such as 'news', 'rumor', 'fact', 'puzzle', etc. (see Ch. YY [Noun phrase]). The first of these uses is the most common.

- (69) yiz-ä [nes-ä äλi-ru-λi-xo-r] rekar-bi  
 DEM.nIPL-ERG DEM.I-ERG ask-PST.PTCP-NMLZ-AD-LAT key-PL.ABS.nIPL  
 yisi-qi-r teλ-no.  
 DEM.I-POSS-LAT give-PST.nWIT  
 'Because he was asking, they gave him the keys.' (based on Kidbes hunar:54)
- (70) eniw uži Ø-āy-ru-λi-λ' y<sup>č</sup>ay<sup>č</sup>u  
 mother.ABS.II boy.ABS.I I-come-PST.PTCP-NMLZ-SUPER.ESS happy  
 y-izi-n.  
 II-rise-PST.nWIT  
 'Mother was happy that the son arrived.' (lit.: on the son's arriving)
- (71) [w<sup>č</sup>aλe-r Ø-oq-zey ŋiyay-x Ø-oq-xosi  
 downward-LAT I-become-DUR.II.CVB cry-IPFV.CVB I-become-PRS.PTCP  
 yāl-ru-λi]-s ŋalamalı  
 AUX.PRS-PST.PTCP-NMLZ-GEN1 puzzle  
 'the puzzle about what it is that one cries when going down' (Sis xan:5)
- (72) [sis-sis insan ŋaq'lu ānu-si Ø-iči-xosi-λi]-s k'uli

some person.ABS.I sense be.PRS.NEG-ATTR I-stay-PRS.PTCP-NMLZ-GEN1 news  
 ‘the news that some people have no common sense’

Despite their wide range of functions, nominalized clauses in *-li* cannot appear in the ergative or absolute subject position. For instance, the following sentences are ungrammatical:

- (73) \*[yedu kamanda putbol-ye-r b-<sup>s</sup>äži-ru-*li*]  
 DEM team.ABS.IPL football-OS-LAT IPL-win-PST.PTCP-NMLZ  
 xabar ānu.  
 news be.PRS.NEG  
 (‘That this team won in football is not news.’)
- (74) \*[uži Ø-āy-ru-*ł*]-ä eniw y<sup>s</sup>ay<sup>s</sup>u  
 boy.ABS.I I-come-PST.PTCP-NMLZ-ERG mother.ABS.II happy  
 y-izi-r-si.  
 II-rise-CAUS-PST.WIT  
 (‘That the son arrived made Mother happy.’)

This restriction has nothing to do with the abstract suffix itself, as abstract nouns are generally permitted in subject position. For example:

- (75) Nesi-z hadur-ł-ä nesä nesi-r kumak b-oy-x.  
 DEM.I-GEN2 ready-NMLZ-ERG REFL.I-LAT help.ABS.III III-do-PRS  
 ‘His preparation helps him.’
- (76) Č’alſin-*li* hiy-s.  
 bored-NMLZ be.over-PST.WIT  
 ‘The boredom is gone.’

The suffix *-li* in nominalized clauses is often omitted, which may give an impression that these clauses are simply participial. However, Tsez treats the nominalized structure as a noun phrase, which means that when it is attached to a head noun there is a linking genitive, as illustrated in (71) and (72).

Nominalized clauses with *-li* differ from infinitival and masdar clauses in their lack of transparency. Their constituents cannot be bound from the matrix clause, and they do not interact scopally with material in the higher clause (see CH. YY[Agreement] for details). Negation in the matrix clause cannot license negative polarity items in the nominalized clause; for example, in (77), the negation on the matrix predicate does not license *didurkin* in the nominalized clause:

- (77) \*Nesi-q neł-ä [didur-kin eλ-a r-āy-xosi  
 DEM.I-POSS.ESS DEM.nI-ERG how-FOC say-INF IV-must-PRS.PTCP  
 yäl-ru-*li*] mo<sup>s</sup>li-nč’i  
 be.PRS-PST.PTCP-NMLZ teach-PST.WIT.NEG  
 (‘She did not teach him how to say anything.’)

This opacity in *-li* nominalizations sets them apart from infinitives and masdars, which are fully transparent (consider the material in sections 4 and 5 above).

To summarize the data discussed in this chapter, we present the main nominalization types and their properties in the following table.

Table 1. Tsez nominalizations

	<b>Restrictions on derivational base</b>	<b>Case marking on arguments</b>	<b>Nominal properties</b>	<b>Transparency</b>
Deverbal noun in <i>-ni</i>	Can be derived only from a subset of intransitive verbs	Genitive	Same as underived nouns	No
Event nominalization in <i>-si/-zo</i>	Cannot be derived from complex verbs with a nominal component	Genitive	Same as underived nouns	No
Participant nominalization in <i>-si/-zo</i>	None	Same as in the finite clause	Same as underived nouns	No
Infinitive	None	Same as in the finite clause	Appears as complement of control/raising verbs or as adjunct purpose clause; cannot be ergative subject	Yes
Masdar	None	Same as in the finite clause	Occurs with case marking; appears as complement of control verbs; cannot be ergative subject	Yes
Nominalization in <i>-li</i>	None	Same as in the finite clause	Appears as clausal complement	No

**References**

- Grimshaw, Jane. 1990. *Argument structure*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.
- Kroeber, Paul D. 1999. *The Salish language family: Reconstructing syntax*. Omaha: University of Nebraska Press.

## Attributives: Adjectival phrases and the expression of comparison

### 1 General remarks

An adjectival phrase consists of the head attributive expression, preceded optionally by degree expressions and complements (provided that the adjective/attributive expression is a complement-taking one). Predicative adjectives are discussed mainly in Ch. YY, YY, and YY [PredP; Basic clause types; Agreement], but see also below for the discussion of comparatives and superlatives.

The boundary between adjectives and participles is rather fluid, so it is possible that some adjectives are actually participles (see Ch. YY [Adjective formation]) or are diachronically related to participles. Consider some examples where the distinction between adjective and participle is not clear:

- |     |    |            |                              |
|-----|----|------------|------------------------------|
| (1) | a. | č'uräsi    | (č'ur-a)                     |
|     |    | bright     | shine-INF                    |
|     | b. | AGR-iyäsi  | (AGR-iy-a)                   |
|     |    | ripe       | ripen-INF                    |
|     | c. | AGR-ic'äsi | (AGR-ic'-a)                  |
|     |    | full       | become full/fill up.INTR-INF |

Examples (2a-f) list non-derived adjectives with meaning typically associated with adjectival semantics. This list is by no means exhaustive and is given mainly for illustrative purposes. Note also that some of the meanings associated with adjectives (for example: material, source) can be expressed by the genitive form of a relevant noun—see Ch. YY [Noun phrase].

- |     |    |                                      |
|-----|----|--------------------------------------|
| (2) | a. | Color terms                          |
|     |    | <i>aluk'a</i> 'white'                |
|     |    | <i>q'aba</i> 'black'                 |
|     |    | <i>c'uda</i> 'red'                   |
|     |    | <i>ič'iw/ič'iy</i> 'yellow'          |
|     |    | <i>niga</i> 'blue; navy blue; green' |
|     |    | <i>asbile</i> 'light blue'           |
|     |    | <i>ečya(si)</i> 'green'              |
|     |    | <i>zira</i> 'gray'                   |
|     |    | <i>y'ac'i</i> 'motley-colored'       |
|     |    | <i>sasiw</i> 'dark'                  |

b. Age and size terms

AGR-*‘eye* ‘young; small’

AGR-*eže* ‘big; grown; old’

AGR-*ečru* ‘old’

AGR-*exora* ‘tall, long’

*k’ot’ono* ‘short (in length or height)’

AGR-*ečiw*/AGR-*ečiy* ‘fat’

*t’erenaw* ‘thin, lean’

*dadaru* ‘thin, not thick’

*ḥolyu/ḥoliw* ‘thick, wide’

c. Temperature terms

AGR-*oč’iw* ‘cold’

*tatanu* ‘warm’

d. Terms referring to strength and health

*zap’ana* ‘strong’

*toxaw* ‘weak’

*sayaw* ‘healthy’

*rožnoxu* ‘sick, ill’

*untaraw* ‘ill’

e. Shape terms

AGR-*uxxor* ‘direct, straight’

*ašiw* ‘flat’

*q’ic’iramu* ‘square’

*gelmač’u* ‘round’

*w’ak’ana* ‘bent, crooked, uneven’

f. Assessment terms

AGR-*igu* ‘good’

*žuka* ‘bad’

*bercinaw* ‘beautiful, pretty’

*suružlaw* ‘ugly, unattractive’

AGR-*o’q’iw*/AGR-*o’q’yu* ‘difficult; heavy’

*kikiw/kikyu* ‘lightweight’

*piharaw* ‘easy’

A number of adjectives are borrowed from Avar, with frozen gender agreement markers; such adjectives can be recognized by the ending *-aw* (cf. *bercinaw* or *t’erenaw* above). These adjectives do not show gender agreement in Tsez.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> In Avar, most adjectives show gender agreement suffixally, with the four singular gender markers *-w*, *-y*, *-b*, and *-l*. Some adjectives, however, combine suffixal gender markers with prefixal ones (*w-*, *y-*, *b-*, and *r-*, correspondingly).

Tsez also uses a productive strategy of attributive derivation, where any form other than a finite verb (or the absolute form of the noun—see below) can be made into an attributive modifier via the addition of the suffix *-si* (see Ch. YY [Morphology] for details and CH. YY[Noun phrase] for more examples). Some examples of derived attributives, which we will refer to as adjectives, for consistency, are shown below. Adjectives can derive from non-absolute forms of common nouns, from place names, from numerals, or from adverbs (in the examples below, we show adjectives modifying nouns). We have not observed any derivation of adjectives from absolute nominal forms (except, of course, in cases where the absolute form and the oblique stem are the same).

### (3) derived attributives

- a. sasa-*qo-si* zaman  
     morning-SUPER.ESS-ATTR time.ABS.III  
     ‘morning, morning time’

b. xan-de-*si* rafat’atel  
     khan-APUD.ESS-ATTR servant.ABS.I  
     ‘servant accompanying the khan’

c. lora yud-er-*si* halt’i  
     three.OBL day-LAT-ATTR work.ABS.III  
     ‘three-day-long work (work intended for three days)’

d. qido-*qo-si* safat<sup>2</sup>  
     wall-POSS.ESS-ATTR clock.ABS.III  
     ‘wall clock’

e. safat-yä-*si* safat  
     hour-IN.ESS-ATTR hour.ABS.III  
     ‘every hour’ (lit.: hourly hour)

f. araq’i-*qo-si* sik  
     moonshine-POSS.ESS-ATTR skin.container.ABS.IV  
     ‘leather container for keeping moonshine’

g. q’una-*ƛ’o-si* tupi  
     two.obl-super.ess-attr rifle.abs.iv  
     ‘double-barreled rifle’

h. ɬomoy-s-*ce-si* ah-ya-bi  
     donkey-GEN1-EQUAT-ATTR ear-OS-PL.ABS.nIPL  
     ‘donkey ears’

i. ader-*si*  
     before-ATTR  
     ‘old, prior, former, ancient’

j. t’o-*si*  
     here-ATTR  
     ‘local’

k. nesi-*r-si*  
     DEM.I-LAT-ATTR  
     ‘petaining to him’

<sup>2</sup> The word *safat* means ‘hour, clock, watch’; we gloss it according to the context.

As discussed in Ch. YY [Noun phrase], adjectives agree with the head noun in gender, have optional plural marking with the distributive suffix *-t'a*, and can be marked for definiteness of the head noun with the suffix *-ni*. Some adjectives also show case concord with the head noun (unless they are marked for definiteness); concordant adjectives distinguish between two forms, the direct form (modifying the head noun in the absolute) and the oblique form (modifying all other noun forms).

## 2 Internal structure of an adjectival phrase

### 2.1 Complement-taking adjectives

Adjectives and derived attributives can take complements expressed by any type of noun phrase, in a variety of cases or postpositional forms. Adjectival phrases are strictly head-final, so the complement selected by the adjective/attributive always precedes the head. Some examples:

- (4) ix-a-λ' raziyaw  
spring-OS-SUPER.ESS happy, cheerful  
happy about spring'
- (5) t'et'ra-ni-x/t'etr-a hadur-si  
study-MASD-AD.ESS/study-INF ready-ATTR  
'ready to study'
- (6) uži Ø-ik'i-z-ā-λ q<sup>w</sup>arid  
boy.ABS.I I-go-NMLZ-OS-SUPER.ESS sad  
'sad because of/about the boy leaving'
- (7) sasaq-azo-ł xizay-si  
morning-OS-CONT.ESS following-ATTR  
'following the morning'
- (8) nesi-q b-ił-äsi  
DEM.I.OBL-POSS.ESS IPL-similar-RES.PTCP  
'(those) resembling him (pl.)'

The complement of the adjective AGR-*iłe* 'similar' appears either in the equative form or in the absolute form. In either form, AGR-*iłe* agrees with the head noun. For example:

- (9) babiw-ce Ø-iłe/y-iłe uži/kid  
father-EQUAT I-similar/II-similar boy.ABS.I/girl.ABS.II  
'the/a son/daughter (almost) like Father'
- (10) babiw Ø-iłe/y-iłe uži/kid  
father.ABS I-similar/II-similar boy.ABS.I/girl.ABS.II  
'the/a son/daughter like Father'

There is an interpretive difference between the two forms; the form with the equative implies a weaker similarity. Accordingly, this form is used in expressions of approximate quantity, for example:

- (11) Nes-ä kayat kono-ce y-iłe sařat-y-ä  
DEM.I-ERG letter.ABS.II three-EQUAT II-similar hour-OS-IN.ESS

cax-si.

write-PST.WIT

‘He wrote the letter in about three hours.’

Imnajšvili (1963: 216) also mentions deverbal adjectives ending in *-li*, which resemble participles in that they retain the arguments of the verb they derive from. For example, the verb AGR-ayr- ‘bring’ (causative of AGR-ay- ‘come’) takes the ergative agent and the absolutive patient. The derived adjective AGR-ayrali has the same arguments; thus:

- (12) neł-ō            b-ayra-li        garpuz  
 DEM nI.ERG     III-bring-ADJ    watermelon.ABS.III  
 ‘the watermelon that she brought’ (Imnajšvili 1963: 216)

Such complement-taking adjectives seem closer to participles; they are not widely used in current language.

## 2.2 Degree expressions modifying the adjective

Adjectives can be preceded by a degree expression, such as *bešun* ‘extremely’, *hič’č'a* ‘very, most’, *caq* ‘very, strongly, extremely’, *ßezi'an* ‘extremely’, *furaw* ‘very; enough’,<sup>3</sup> *ßeziyaw* ‘enough’, *xec* ‘enough’, *ßeła* ‘sufficiently’; *t'āki* ‘slightly, a bit’, *ence* ‘somewhat’.<sup>4</sup> For example:

- (13) ence            tutunu šeλ'u  
 somewhat      dirty    clothes.ABS.IV  
 ‘slightly dirty clothes’

Since adverbs and adjectives in Tsez are in most cases indistinguishable in form (see Ch. YY [Adverbs] and YY [Adverbial phrase]), most degree expressions can also be used adjectivally (with the exception of *(h)ič’č'a* and *bešun*). For example:

- (14) a.   ßeła            bišʷa  
 sufficient      food.ABS.III  
 ‘sufficient food’  
 b.   t'āki            halt'i  
 slight    work.ABS.III  
 ‘light work’

If an adjectival phrase includes several words that can express degrees, only the leftmost one is interpreted as a degree denotation.

---

<sup>3</sup> There is also an adjective *furaw* ‘numerous’.

<sup>4</sup> The degree denotations *hič’č'a* and *bešun* are also used to form superlatives: see section 4 below.

### 2.3 Agreement and concord in the adjectival phrase

The head of an adjectival or attributive phrase agrees in gender with the noun modified by it; see CH. YY[Agreement] for details. Adjectives that end in the attributive suffix *-si* (see section 1 above) distinguish two forms: direct in *-si* and oblique in *-z(o)*. The direct form appears with the head noun in the absolute, and the oblique form modifies nouns in all other cases and forms. For example:

- (15) a. č'urä-si                otaxi-bi  
bright-ATTR      room-PL.ABS.nIPL  
'bright rooms'
- b. č'urä-zo                otaxi-z-ä  
bright-ATTR.OBL      room-PL.OS-IN.ESS  
'in bright rooms'
- (16) a. huday-λ'-äy-si(-ni)        mužmar  
next-SUPER-ABL-ATTR-DEF      Friday.prayer.ABS.III  
'(the) next Friday prayer'
- b. huday-λ'-äy-zo-ni        mužmar-λ'o  
next-SUPER-ABL-ATTR.OBL-DEF      Friday.prayer-SUPER.ESS  
'at the next Friday prayer'

Adjectives can also be marked for definiteness, with the suffix *-ni*, as in (16) above. For details of definiteness marking, which pertains to the structure of the noun phrase, see Ch. YY [Noun phrase]. See also that chapter for the relative order of multiple nominal modifiers.

## 3 Comparatives

In our discussion of comparatives, we will be using the following terminology to refer to the constituents of a comparative construction:

- |                                   |           |                      |                    |
|-----------------------------------|-----------|----------------------|--------------------|
| (17) The African elephant is tall | -er       | than                 | the Asian elephant |
| TARGET OF                         | GRADABLE  | COMPARATIVE STANDARD | STANDARD OF        |
| COMPARISON                        | PREDICATE | MORPHEME             | COMPARISON         |
- by about a meter.  
AMOUNT  
PHRASE

Comparison can be used in expressions of similarity and difference, which we discuss in turn below.

### 3.1 Expression of similarity

The expression of similarity includes the phrase denoting the standard of comparison with the equative particle *-ce*. It is then followed by the gradable adjective denoting the property under consideration. The particle *-ce* combines only with nominal expressions, however complex (cf. the complex noun phrase in (22)). The following examples illustrate similarity phrases:

- (18) ciyo-ce ča<sup>č</sup>yaw  
 salt-EQUAT bitter, salty  
 STANDARD PROPERTY  
 ‘bitter as salt’
- (19) i-ce<sup>5</sup> aluk’ā  
 snow-EQUAT white  
 ‘white as snow’
- (20) t’om-ce Ø-čeye  
 handspan-EQUAT I-small  
 ‘being the size of a (man’s) handspan’
- (21) ader-zo-x-or-ce halimaw  
 before-ATTR.OBL-AD-LAT-EQUAT polite  
 ‘polite as in old days’
- (22) [yalat’] ānu-si cäx-ru-(hi)]-ce bac’adaw  
 mistake PRS.NEG-ATTR write-PST.PTCP-NMLZ-EQUAT clean  
 ‘clean like a piece written without any mistakes’

In the following examples, adjectival phrases expressing similarity are shown as part of the main clausal predicate. Note that the nominalizing suffix *-li* (as in (24)) can be omitted in casual speech:

- (23) Heresi mec-re-s huni k’et’u-s k’onč’u-ce  
 deceitful language-OS-GEN1 road.ABS.IV cat-GEN1 leg-EQUAT  
 k’ot’ono r-iči-xosi.  
 short IV-stay-PRS.PTCP  
 ‘The road traveled by deceitful language is as short as a cat’s leg.’  
 (proverb used in the meaning “Rumors travel fast”)
- (24) Eni-y-ä hak’o r-äy-ru-(hi)-ce r-igu  
 mother-OS-ERG xinkal.ABS.IV IV-do-PST.PTCP-NMLZ-EQUAT IV-good  
 zow-s esi-y-ä hek’u ešay-xosi-li-n.  
 be.PST-PST.WIT sibling-OS-ERG potatoes.ABS.III fry-PRS.PTCP-NMLZ-TOP  
 ‘Sister was as good at frying potatoes as mother was at making dumplings.’ (lit.: Sister frying potatoes was as good as mother making dumplings.)

Equatives in *-ce* can also serve to express approximate similarity. In this use, they often combine with the agreeing adjective AGR-*iłe* ‘similar, like’ (the corresponding adverb AGR-*iłe* is shown in CH. YY [Adverbial phrase]). For example:

- (25) Uži babiw-ce Ø-iłe Ø-oq-äsi (yoł).  
 boy.ABS.I father-EQUAT I-similar I-become-RES be.PRS  
 ‘The boy is almost as tall as (his) father.’

<sup>5</sup> Truncation of *isi* ‘snow’.

Participial phrases with *-ce* are used in comparative correlatives, for example (see also CH. YY[Relative clauses] for further discussion):

- (26) [Už-ä inkar b-ädi-ru-ce ža y-‘eže-gon...]  
 boy-ERG refusal.ABS.III III-do-PST.PTCP-EQUATDEM.ABS(.II) II-big-CONTR.TOP  
 λ’iri y-uti-n.  
 above II-turn-PST.nWIT  
 ‘The more the boy refused, the more she insisted (lit.: turned above).’ (ĆAliqilič:80)

### 3.2 Comparative expressions

Tsez does not have an overt comparative morpheme meaning ‘more’ or ‘less’. Comparatives of superiority are expressed by putting the standard of comparison in the super-ablative form, which precedes the gradable adjective. Consider the following example:

- (27) Zarema-tow-λ’-äy bercinaw  
 Zarema-FOCUS-SUPER-ABL beautiful  
 ‘more beautiful than even Zarema’

As long as the standard of comparison is expressed by a nominal form (a noun proper or a nominalized expression), the comparative construction is grammatical. In the examples below, we show adjectival phrases of comparison as they are used in clauses:

- (28) ɬali irbahin-λ’-äy Ø-exora (yoł).  
 Ali.ABS Ibrahim-SUPER-ABL I-tall be.PRS  
 ‘Ali is taller than Ibrahim.’
- (29) ɬali-r irbahin-λ’-äy r-igu q’amat-ya-bi  
 Ali-LAT Ibrahim-SUPER-ABL nIPL-good grade-OS.PL-PL.ABS.nIPL  
 r-iqi-x.  
 nIPL-be.gotten-PRS  
 ‘Ali gets better grades than Ibrahim.’
- (30) Dow-λ’-äy bercinaw-n dow-zo-λ’-äy bercinaw  
 2SG-SUPER-ABL beautiful-and 2SG-ATTR.OBL-SUPER-ABL beautiful  
 haraλ’ yoł-äsi-n dä-r dunyal-zo gug-yo-λ’  
 voice.ABS.III be.PRS-RES-and 1SG-LAT world-GEN2 dorsum-OS-SUPER.ESS  
 ayi b-ukay-nč’u.  
 bird.ABS.III III-see-PST.NEG  
 ‘I have not seen in this world (lit. over the back of the world) a bird more beautiful than you and a voice more beautiful than yours.’ (Vćwadin zirun:3)
- (31) Yaq’uł hul-zo-λ’-äy tatanu (yoł).  
 today yesterday-ATTR.OBL-SUPER-ABL warm be-PRS  
 ‘Today is warmer than yesterday.’
- (32) Pat’i dey didur pikru  
 Fatima.ABS 1SG.GEN so thought.ABS.III  
 yäl-ru-zo-λ’-äy bercinaw (yoł).  
 be-PST.PTCP-ATTR.OBL-SUPER-ABL beautiful be-PRS  
 ‘Fatima is more beautiful than I thought.’ (lit.: ... than my thought being so)

- (33) Aprika-s pil indiya-zo-λ'äy  
 Africa-GEN1 elephant.ABS.III India-ATTR.OBL-SUPER-ABL  
 ixiw b-iči-xo-si (yoł).  
 big III-stay-PRS-ATTR be.PRS  
 ‘The African elephant is larger than the Indian one.’
- (34) Pat’imat-ä r-äs-ru heneš-yo-za-λ’-äy  
 Fatima-ERG nIPL-take-PST.PTCP apple-OS-OS.PL-SUPER-ABL  
 Zarem-ä geni dah b-is-no.  
 Zarema-ERG pear.ABS.III few/little III-take-PST.nWIT  
 ‘Fatima bought more apples than Zarema bought pears.’ (lit.: Compared to the quantity of apples that Fatima bought, Zarema bought few pears)
- (35) Yiła istowli-s rexor-ħi ac-mo-z  
 DEM.nI.OBL table-GEN1 long-NMLZ.ABS.IV door-OBL-GEN2  
 holiw-ħi-λ’-äy r-aq‘u (yoł).  
 wide-NMLZ-SUPER-ABL IV-many be.PRS  
 ‘This table is longer than the door is wide.’ (lit.: the length of this table is greater than the width of this door)

All these examples suggest that Tsez comparatives are phrasal in nature; the standard of comparison has to be a noun phrase, which is typical of phrasal but not clausal comparatives. This is further confirmed by the behavior of comparatives that refer to actions; the verbs encoding such actions can appear in the infinitive (or masdar) form, but never in any other form. An exception arises when the verb is explicitly substantivized, as *esayxo-zo-λ’-äy* is in the example below (the verb AGR-*et-* ‘like’ agrees with the infinitival clause *meš-kuro raħħa*, marked by brackets, in gender IV):

- (36) a. Madina-r šeħ'u esayxo-zo-λ’-äy  
 Madina-LAT clothes.ABS.IV wash-PRS-ATTR.OBL-SUPER-ABL  
 [meš-kuro r-aħħ-a] r-eti-x.  
 broom-washtub.ABS.nIPL nIPL-apply-INF.ABS.IV IV-like-PRS  
 ‘Madina likes cleaning more than washing clothes.’
- b. \*Madina-r šeħ'u esayxo-λ’-äy meš-kuro  
 Madina-LAT clothes.ABS.IV wash-PRS-SUPER-ABL broom-washtub.ABS.nIPL  
 r-aħħ-a r-eti-x.  
 nIPL-apply-INF.IV IV-like-PRS
- c. \*Madina-r šeħ'u esayxo-zo-λ’-äy  
 Madina-LAT clothes.ABS.IV wash-PRS-ATTR.OBL-SUPER-ABL  
 meš-kuro r-aħħi-x r-eti-x.  
 broom-washtub.ABS. nIPL nIPL -apply-IPFV.CVB IV-like-PRS

If the amount phrase is present in a comparative, it appears in the in-essive form, thus:

- (37) Pat'i Zarema-λ’äy qʷuna l'eb-ā  
 Fatima.ABS Zarema-SUPER-ABL two.OBL year-IN.ESS  
 y-ħeże (yoł).  
 II-old be.PRS

- 'Fatima is two years older than Zarema.'
- (38) Yaq<sup>”</sup>uł      ḥera      garadus-y-ä      ḥuł-zo-λ’äy  
 today      five.OBL      degree-OS-IN.ESS      yesterday-ATTR.OBL-SUPER-ABL  
 tatanu (yoł).  
 warm be.PRS  
 'It's five degrees warmer today than yesterday.'

Tsez does not seem to have comparatives of inferiority. In expressing such a comparison, speakers generally use the negative form of equative expressions, for example:

- (39) Ža      uži      ɻali-ce      ɻadalaw      ānu.  
 DEM      boy.ABS.I      Ali-EQUAT      foolish      be.PRS.NEG  
 'This boy is not as stupid as Ali.' (intended meaning: "This boy is less stupid than Ali")

#### 4 Superlatives

The concept of the superlative is expressed in several ways, none of which is exclusive to the expression of superlativity.

Under one strategy, the superlative reading can be expressed by combining the relevant adjective with one of the following degree expressions: *bešun* 'extremely', *(h)ič’č'a* 'very, most', *caq'* 'very, strongly, extremely'.<sup>6</sup> As with comparatives, the standard of comparison appears in the super-ablative form:

- (40) (nāzon      komanda-λ’-äy)      Germaniya-za-s      (komanda)  
 all.obl      team-SUPER-ABL      Germany-OS.PL-GEN1 team.ABS.III  
 (h)ič’č'a      b-igu      yoł.  
 most      III-good      be.PRS  
 '(Of all the teams,) the German team is the best.'
- (41) Nāzon      c’alduqan-za-λ’äy      ɻali      hič’č'a  
 all.OBL      student-OS.PL-SUPER-ABL      Ali.ABS.I      most  
 ‘aq’luyaw      (yoł).  
 clever      be.PRS  
 'Of all the students, Ali is the smartest.'

When the adjective with the superlative interpretation is used non-predicatively, it has to appear in the definite form:

- (42) (h)ič’č'a      Ø-igu\*(ni)      už-ä      berhentli      r-is-si.  
 most      I-good-DEF      boy-ERG      victory.ABS.IV IV-take-PST.WIT  
 'The best boy won.'

The superlative form, as a regular form, can also be used with a null head, in which case the definite suffix is also obligatory:

---

<sup>6</sup> Bokarev (1959: 195) lists only the intensifier *caq'*; our consultants prefer *hič’č'a* and *bešun*.

- (43) (h)ič'č'a      Ø-igu-n-ä/\* Ø-ig-ä      berhentli      r-is-si.  
       most            I-good-DEF-ERG/I-good-ERG    victory.ABS.IV IV-take-PST.WIT  
       'The best one won.'
- (44) hič'č'a-n      q'aba      hič'č'a-n      kokoru      hič'č'a-n      ſedefaraw  
       most-and     black     most-and     soft     most     quick  
       šebin        šebi        (yoł)?  
       thing.ABS.IV what.ABS.IV be.PRS  
       'What is the blackest, the softest, and the quickest thing (in the world)?'  
       (QAq'ilawni kid:5)

Another strategy consists of using a reduplicated adjective to mark the superlative; the superlative reading of these adjectives is reinforced when they co-occur with the standard of comparison in the super-ablative. Compare:

- (45) pro      nāzon-ƛ'-äy      r-ig-r-igu      rok'ura-bi  
       all.OBL-SUPER-ESS    nIPL-good.RED    earring-PL.ABS.nIPL  
       r-ok'ek'-si  
       nIPL-steal-PST.WIT  
       'They stole the best earrings of all.'

Such reduplication is often accompanied by the focus enclitic *-tow*, which can appear on the first reduplicate, the second, or both:

- (46) a. kʷaxa-kʷaxa-tow      berten  
       soon.RED-FOC      wedding.ABS.III  
       b. kʷaxa-tow-kʷaxa      berten  
       soon-FOC-soon      wedding.ABS.III  
       c. kʷaxa-tow      kʷaxa-tow      berten  
       soon-FOC      soon- FOC      wedding.ABS.III  
       'the soonest wedding; a wedding to be held as soon as possible'

Reduplication with focusing is also used with the numeral *sis* to express the meaning 'the only', e.g.,

- (47) sis-tow      sis      (yäł-ru-ni)      esiw  
       one-FOC      one      be.PRS-PST.PTCP-DEF    sibling.ABS.I/II  
       'the only sister/brother'

Reduplication is not exclusive to the expression of the superlative; reduplicated adjectives can have a more general meaning of intensification, cf. (48):

- (48) Di      r-ig-r-igu      rok'ura-bi      r-is-si.  
       1SG.ERG    nIPL-good.RED    earring-PL.ABS.nIPL    nIPL-take-PST.WIT  
       'I bought really nice earrings.'

As (49) shows, reduplication is possible with non-gradable adjectives as well, in which case it serves to express emphasis or surprise.

- (49) a. Nesi-q-or meq'aw micxir b-ay-n.  
DEM.I-POSS-LAT false money.ABS.III III-come-PST.nWIT  
‘He got counterfeit money.’
- b. Nesi-q-or meq'-meq'aw micxir b-ay-n.  
DEM.I-POSS-LAT false.RED money.ABS.III III-come-PST.nWIT  
‘He got COUNTERFEIT money.’

In a strategy reminiscent of reduplication, two instances of the same adjective, with the first iteration in the sub-ablative form, also denote a superior quality:

- (50) a. r-igu-λ-āy r-igu bišʷa  
iv-good-SUB-ABL IV-good food.ABS.IV  
‘the best food’ (Qacis gulu:50)
- b. močli-xo-z-a-λ-āy močli-xo-si žek'u  
teach-PRS-ATTR.OBL-OS-SUB-ABL teach-PRS-ATTR person.ABS.I  
‘the most learned man’

## Adverbial phrases and postpositional phrases

### 1 General remarks

Adverbial phrases can be expressed by an adverb proper,<sup>1</sup> by a postpositional phrase or noun phrase in one of the oblique case forms, or by a converb, possibly with accompanying complements. Example (1) shows adverbial phrases with an adverb as head, example (2) presents NP- and PP-based adverbial phrases, and example (3) illustrates the converbal strategy:

- (1) a. Xexbi žigon guruži-s.  
child.ABS again cry-PST.WIT  
'The child cried again.'
  - b. Talihq'ayaw mi dä-r y-ukay-nč'i.  
unfortunately 2SG.ABS.II 1SG-LAT II-see-NEG  
'Unfortunately I won't see you (speaking to a woman).'
  - c. El-ä hudun liyr-än yedu halt'i.  
1PL-ERG probably finish-FUT.DEF DEM.nI work.ABS.III  
'We will probably finish this work.'
  - d. Keč'ož'az y-iči.  
left II-stay.IMPER  
'Sit on the left (speaking to a woman).'
- (2) a. Debe-z pikru-xo-r nāzon debe-r-ä  
2SG-GEN2 thought-AD-LAT all.ERG 2SG-LAT-INTERR  
kumak b-od-a b-ay-x?  
help.ABS.III III-do-INF III-must-PRS  
'In your opinion, does everyone have to help you?'
  - b. Nes-ä (sida) sařat-y-ä-r b-oy-s  
DEM.I-ERG one.OBL hour-OS-IN-LAT III-do-PST.WIT  
ža halt'i.  
DEM work.ABS.III  
'He completed this work in an hour.'
  - c. Nes-ä (sida) sařat-y-ä Ø-eynoy-s.  
DEM.I-ERG one.OBL hour-OS-IN.ESS III-work-PST.WIT  
'He worked for an hour.'
  - d. Učitel-bi otpusk-a-ł at'ono-q b-ik'i-x.  
teacher-ABS.PL.IPL leave-OS-CONT.ESS summer-POSS.ESS IPL-go-PRS  
'Teachers go on leave in the summer.'

---

<sup>1</sup> A number of words that we identify as adverbs proper can be diachronically related to oblique nominal forms as well; for example, *talihq'ayaw* in (1b) is can be traced back to the historically decomposable form *talihq'-q'ay-aw* 'luck-CARITIVE-ATTR', and *keč'ož'az* in (1d) goes back to *keč'-o-ž'-az* 'left-OS-SUPER.ESS-DISTAL'.

- (3) a. Meši-bi [nā-gon r-oq-lin]  
calf-PL.ABS.nIPL where-CONTR.TOP nIPL-become-CONC.CVB  
r-iči-n.  
nIPL-stay-PST.nWIT  
‘The calves stayed wherever they liked.’
- b. ɬal-ä [haraɬ b-oy-n] k'eč q'aɬi-x.  
Ali-ERG loud III-do-PFV.CVB song.ABS.III shout-PRS  
‘Ali sings loudly.’
- c. [Irbahin xeci-n] nāzon yedu t'ek t'et'er-si.  
Ibrahim.ABS.I leave-PPV.CVB all.ERG DEM book.ABS.II read-PST.WIT  
‘Everybody except Ibrahim read the book.’

Since clauses headed by a converb constitute a large portion of Tsez adjunct clauses, they can all be considered adverbial phrases as well. Nevertheless, we defer our discussion of converbal clauses to Ch. YY [Adverbial clauses] and will concentrate in this chapter on adverbial phrases consisting of adverbs proper and of nominals in various oblique forms.

## 2 Agreement and expression of plurality in adverbs

### 2.1 Agreement

Some adverbs have an agreement slot and agree with the absolute argument; in (4), the adverb AGR-*uygon* agrees with the absolute in gender II, and in (5), the adverb AGR-*aɬo* agrees with the absolute in gender III. If an adverbial phrase includes an agreeing degree modifier, that modifier also shows agreement, as demonstrated by (5) where AGR-*a'q'u* also has gender III agreement:

- (4) Nes-ä kayat y-uygon y-egir-si.  
DEM.I-ERG letter.ABS.II II-already II-send-PST.WIT  
‘He already sent the letter.’
- (5) Že gulu b-a'q'u b-aɬo b-ik'i-x.  
DEM horse III-much/many III-fast III-go-PRS  
‘This horse runs very fast.’

The main agreeing adverbs are as follows:

- (6) a. AGR-aq'ü ‘much, many’  
b. AGR-aq'ut'a ‘loud’  
c. AGR-aɬo ‘fast’  
d. AGR-ig ‘well’  
e. AGR-ig-žuk ‘so so’ (lit.: well badly)  
f. AGE-iłe ‘similarly; as X’  
g. AGR-uy ‘truly’<sup>2</sup>  
h. AGR-uygon ‘already’

---

<sup>2</sup> The adverbs containing *uy* can all be traced to the same lexical item in (6g), but their synchronic meanings are quite different, so we list them separately.

- i. AGR-uyxor ‘quietly’
- j. AGR-uytow ‘for free, free of charge’

Some adverbs, related to verbs that have an agreement slot, nevertheless have a frozen agreement marker and do not change depending on the gender of the absolute argument. For example, *retintow* ‘deliberately, on purpose’ (diachronically related to AGR-*et-* ‘like, want’) or *riyinc’ey* ‘by accident’ (diachronically related to AGR-*iy-* ‘know’) have the frozen gender marker *r-*. In (7), the verb agrees with the absolute in gender III but the adverb appears in the frozen form; in (7), the object is in gender I but the adverb appears with the frozen prefix *r-*. The adverbial use of *riyinc’ey* is different from the use of the perfective converb of AGR-*iy-* ‘know’, in the negative form (AGR-*iyinc’ey* ‘unknown, unnoticed’), which agrees with the absolute argument (see CH. YY[Adverbial clauses]).

- (7) Neł-ä            retintow            murad            goλ'-inc'u.  
DEM.nI-ERG      on.purpose      Murat.ABS.I    call-PST.nWIT.NEG  
‘She purposely did not invite Murat.’
- (8) Kid-b-ä            riyinc’ey            y<sup>w̃</sup>ay            b-e gir-si.  
girl-OS-ERG      accidentally      dog.ABS.III    III-send-PST.WIT  
‘The girl accidentally let the dog out.’

If an adverbial phrase is expressed by a converbal phrase, then agreement is determined by the argument structure of the converb. For example, in (3a), repeated below, the converb form is intransitive, has an overt agreement slot, and agrees with the unexpressed subject coreferential with ‘the calves’:

- (9) Mesl-bi<sub>i</sub>            [pro<sub>i</sub>    nā-gon            r-oq-lin]  
calf-PL.ABS.nIPL            where-CONTR.TOP    nIPL-become-CONC.CVB  
r-iči-n.  
nIPL-stay-PST.nWIT  
‘The calves stayed wherever they liked.’ (=3a))

In (3b), the converb form is transitive, also has an agreement slot, and agrees with the absolute object ‘song’, as shown in (10a). The object can also be expressed inside the converbal phrase as in (10b); it still determines agreement on the converb.

- (10) a. ɬal-ä            [pro<sub>i</sub>    haraλ            b-oy-n]            k'eč<sub>i</sub>            q'aλi-x.  
Ali-ERG            loud            III-do-PFV.CVB song.ABS.III    sing-PRS  
b. ɬal-ä            [k'eč<sub>i</sub>            haraλ            b-oy-n]            pro<sub>i</sub>            q'aλi-x.  
Ali-ERG            song.ABS.III    loud            III-do-PFV.CVB            sing-PRS  
‘Ali sings loudly.’ (=3b))

Adverbs can combine with the distributive suffix *-t'a* (see Ch. YY [Noun phrase] and YY [Adjective phrase]); this strategy is particularly common with the adverb *ence* ‘a little; somewhat’. The distributive suffix provides the additional meaning of intensification, as in (11b), and/or the notion of an event in progress, as in (12b), which emphasizes the process of listening.

- (11) a. Ence                   Ø-iš.  
       a.little               I-eat.INTR.IMPER  
       ‘Eat a little!/Eat small amounts.’ (addressing a male)
- b. Ence-t'a               Ø-iš.  
       a.little-DISTR I-eat.INTR.IMPER  
       ‘Eat slowly!’ (addressing a male)
- (12) a. R-ig               f̥enekizi           r-oq               xabar-ya-qo-r.  
       nIPL-well           listen               nIPL-become.IMPER story-OS-POSS-LAT  
       ‘Listen carefully to the story.’ (addressing a group of people)
- b. R-ig-t'a               f̥enekizi           r-oq               xabar-ya-qo-r.  
       nIPL-well-DISTR listen               nIPL-become.IMPER story-OS-POSS-LAT  
       ‘Pay close attention to the story.’ (addressing a group of people)

### 3 Internal structure of an adverbial phrase

Adverbs proper can be modified by a number of degree expressions, such as *bešun* ‘extremely’, *hič'č'a* ‘very, most’, *caq'* ‘very, strongly, extremely’, *‘ezičan* ‘extremely’; *‘eziyaw* ‘enough’, *xec* ‘enough’, *‘ela* ‘sufficiently’; *t'āki* ‘slightly, a bit’, *ence* ‘a little; somewhat’. The degree expression always precedes the adverb. For example:

- (13) hič'č'a               kwaxatow  
       very/most           soon  
       ‘very soon; the soonest’
- (14) c'aq'               harihun  
       very               slowly  
       ‘very slow’
- (15) c'aq'tow               nagaħ  
       completely           suddenly  
       ‘completely unexpectedly’
- (16) AGR-ačq'u               AGR-aħo  
       much/many           fast  
       ‘very fast’ (see (5) above)
- (17) ence(-tow)               xexliħ  
       somewhat-FOC       fast  
       ‘a bit too fast’

Of the degree expressions presented here, *t'āki* and *ence(-tow)* can also appear as independent adverbials. For example:

- (18) Ža               ence(-tow)               liyčonił-xo.  
       DEM.ABS.(I/II) somewhat-FOC       limp-PRS  
       ‘S/he limps a bit.’

There are no degree adverbials with the meaning ‘almost’ or ‘approximately’. To convey such a meaning, Tsez uses comparatives of similarity, which we discuss in the next section.

#### 4 Degrees of comparison in adverbial phrases

Comparison in gradable adverbs is expressed the same way as comparison in adjectives (see Ch. YY [Adjectival phrase]). The comparison of similarity is expressed by an adverbial phrase with the equative *-ce*, optionally followed by AGR-*iłe* ‘similar(ly)’. For example:

- (19) Nes-ä        harihun-ce        (b-iłe)        hält'i        b-oy-n.  
           DEM.I-ERG     slowly-EQUAT III-similarly    work     III-do-PST.nWIT  
           ‘He did the work almost slowly.’

Recall that Tsez does not have an overt comparative morpheme meaning ‘more’ or ‘less’. Comparatives of superiority are expressed by putting the standard of comparison in the super-ablative form, which precedes the gradable adverb. For example:

- (20) ɬali        irbahin-λ'-āy        Ø-<sup>s</sup>aλo xibaλ'        k'oλi-x.  
       Ali.ABS     Ibrahim-SUPER-ABL    I-fast     running        run-PRS  
       ‘Ali runs faster than Ibrahim.’
- (21) Pat'imat-ä        Zaira-λ'-āy        [haraλ b-oy-n]        k'eč'        q<sup>s</sup>aλi-x.  
       Fatima-ERG     Zaira-SUPER-ABL    loud     III-do-GER        song.ABS.III     sing-PRS  
       ‘Fatima sings louder than Zaira.’
- (22) Nes-ä        yiλa        sual-yo-r        nela-λ'-āy        xizayor  
       DEM.I-ERG     DEM     question-OS-LAT    DEM.NI-SUPER-ABL    later  
       žawab        neλ-si.  
       answer.ABS.III    give-PST.WIT  
       ‘He answered that question after her (later than her).’

In the following example, the adverbial phrase is assessed against the standard of comparison expressed by a noun modified by a relative clause (lit.: ‘the whistle that Ibrahim hit’):

- (23) ɬal-ä        k'eč        haraλ        b-oy-n        q<sup>s</sup>aλi-x  
       Ali-ERG     song.ABS.III    loud     III-do-GER        sing-PRS  
       irbahin-ā        y-āk'-ru        šaru-λ'-āy.  
       Ibrahim-ERG     II-hit-PST.PTCP    whistle-SUPER-ABL  
       ‘Ali sings louder than Ibrahim whistles.’ (lit. Ali sings louder than Ibrahim’s whistling)

The superlative meaning in adverbs can be encoded by the degree expressions *beşun* ‘extremely’ or *hič'č'a* ‘very, most’, which precede the gradable adverb (24), by (partial) reduplication (25),<sup>3</sup> or by the addition of the focus particle to the head of the adverbial phrase (26). Reduplication is not available to adverbial converbal phrases.

- (24) a. ɬal-ä        k'eč        hič'č'a haraλ        b-oy-n        q<sup>s</sup>aλi-x  
       Ali-ERG     song.ABS.III    most     loud        III-do-GER        sing-PRS

<sup>3</sup> For reduplication of adverbs and adjectives, see Ch. YY.

- nāzon-λ'-äy.  
all-SUPER-ABL  
'Ali sings the loudest.'
- (25) b. Dey samalyot bešun waħħo b-iči-x.  
1SG.GEN1 plane.ABS.III extremely low III-stay-PRS  
'Your (toy) plane is flying the lowest.'
- a. Dey samalyot waħ-waħħo b-iči-x.  
1SG.GEN1 plane.ABS.III low.RED III-stay-PRS  
'Your (toy) plane is flying the lowest/very low.'
- b. Mi ad-adäz Ø-ik'i-s.  
2SG.ABS in front.RED I-go-PST.WIT  
'You went ahead of everyone.'
- (26) a. Ader-tow idu zow-s yedu kid.  
before-FOC home be.PST-PST.WIT DEM girl.ABS.II  
'That girl was home the earliest.'
- b. Nes-ä žuk-tow c'ax-si.  
DEM.ERG badly-FOC write-PST.WIT  
'He wrote (smth) the worst of all.'

None of the three strategies described here is exclusive to the expression of the superlative. For instance, reduplicated adverbs can simply have the meaning of intensification, as shown in (27) for a gradable adverb and in (28) for a non-gradable one (see Ch. YY [Adjectival phrase] for the same generalizations with respect to adjectives).

- (27) Nes-ä yedu ħalt'i t'assa=massa b-oy-s.  
DEM.I-ERG DEM work.ABS.III superficially.RED III-do-PST.WIT  
'He did this work very poorly.'
- (28) Xexbi žig-žigon guruλi-x.  
child.ABS again.RED cry-PRS  
'The child is crying yet again.'

## 5 Adverbial phrases by subtype

The following subsections present main types of adverbial phrases based on their meaning. We include indeterminate and negative adverbs within each section, although some general patterns emerge. In particular, adverbs expressing indefiniteness can be derived from the base adverb with the addition of the particles *-λa* and *-go(n)*, which derive existential and free choice expressions respectively.<sup>4</sup> Other types of adverbs can be derived via suffixation: adverbs expressing the additional meaning of intensification can be derived with the distributive suffix *-t'a*; universally quantified adverbs are formed with the suffix *tow/-tew*; and negative-polarity adverbs are derived with the suffix *-kin* (we gloss both *-tow* and *-kin* as focus particles).

---

<sup>4</sup> For the difference between the two particles, see CH. YY[Particles].

## 5.1 Adverbial phrases of manner

Adverbial phrases of manner include AGR-*ig* ‘well’ (cf. the adjective AGR-*igu* ‘good’), *žuk* ‘badly’ (cf. the adjective *žuka* ‘bad’), AGR-*ig-žuk* ‘somehow (usu. with negative connotations)’,<sup>5</sup> AGR-*salo* ‘quickly’, AGR-*ile* ‘similarly; as’, *harihun* ‘slowly’, *t'uban* ‘completely’ (an Avar borrowing), *c'ik'iw* ‘completely, in full’, *ħalica* ‘with difficulty’, *nadaħ* ‘suddenly; unexpectedly’,<sup>6</sup> etc. Some examples:

- (29) Mašina        harihun        hon-λ'o-yor        b-izi-s.  
       car.ABS.III    slowly        mountain-SUPER-VERS    III-rise-PST.WIT  
       ‘The car went slowly up the hill.’
- (30) Nes-ä        č'obogo        y'utku        r-oy-s.  
       DEM.I-ERG      in.vain        house.ABS.IV    IV-do-PST.WIT  
       ‘He built a house for nothing.’

The use of the super-essive form of nouns offers a productive pattern for deriving manner adverbials, especially from nouns denoting motion or sound emission. For example:

- (31) a. dur(i)-mo-λ’  
       chase/running-OS-SUPER.ESS  
       ‘hastily; in running’
- b. ĥoč-a-λ’  
       dance-OS-SUPER.ESS  
       ‘(in) dancing’
- c. guru-λ’  
       cry/weeping-SUPER.ESS  
       ‘(in/by) crying’
- d. qaλ-no-λ’  
       scream-NMLZ-SUPER.ESS  
       ‘(in/by) screaming’

Some such adverbials seem completely lexicalized, and their connection to the corresponding nouns is no longer synchronically perceived; for example, (31a, b) are perceived as indivisible adverbs and are listed as such in Xalilov’s dictionary (Xalilov 1999). The pattern illustrated in (31d) deserves special mention; here, the adverbial is derived from a nominalized form of the verb *qal-/q'äl-* ‘scream’. Such nominalized forms of intransitive verbs are very common (see CH. YY[Nominalizations]) and they, in turn, provide material for the corresponding adverbials. Such adverbials often combine with verbs of motion or (dis)appearance to express the manner in which the event develops. For example:

- (32) Id-āz-ay        durmoλ’        b-oλi-s        k'et'u.  
       house-DIST-IN.ABL    in.running    III-appear-PST.WIT    cat.ABS.III  
       ‘The cat rushed out of the house.’

<sup>5</sup> These adverbs are formed from the corresponding adjectives via truncation.

<sup>6</sup> *Nadaħ* is also used as the opening adverb in conditional clauses, see CH. YY[Converbal clauses].

We also find a similar use of converbal clauses as manner-encoding satellites with verbs of motion; see CH. YY[Adverbial clauses] for details.

Moving on to other uses of manner adverbs, in (33a), we find the manner adverbial encoded by a spatial form of the equative phrase ‘as at home’, with the second component agreeing with the absolutive; in (33b), the same adverbials are used without spatial marking:

- (33) a. Yedu kid [idu y-ił-ā]/  
DEM girl.ABS.II home.ADV II-similar-IN.ESS/  
[y<sup>c</sup>utk-ā y-ił-ā] y-iči-x.  
home-IN.ESS II-similar-IN.ESS II-stay-PRS  
b. Yedu kid [idu y-iłe]/  
DEM girl.ABS.II home.ADV II-similar /  
[y<sup>c</sup>utk-ā y-iłe] y-iči-x.  
home-IN.ESS II-similar II-stay-PRS  
‘This girl behaves as if she were at home.’

Indefinite manner adverbials include *didurža*, AGR-*ig-žuk*, and *didurgon*. The former two adverbials both express the meaning ‘somehow’, with an adverse or negative connotation:

- (34) Ža dä-ł-xor didurža yoł.  
DEM.ABS 1SG-CONT-VERS somehow be.PRS  
‘His attitude toward me is not great.’ (lit.: he to me somehow is)

The manner adverbials *didurnokin* and *siskin* (derived from the word *sis* ‘one’, with the focus marker *-kin*) are negative polarity items and cannot appear without negation:

- (35) Nes-ä darsi siskin/didurnokin b-oy-inč'u.  
DEM.I-ERG lesson.ABS.III anyhow/anyhow III-do-PST.nWIT.NEG  
‘He did not prepare the lesson at all/in any way.’

The semantics of ‘too’, ‘also’ is expressed by adding the marker *-n* ‘and’ to the relevant constituent (see Ch. YY [Noun phrase] and CH.YY [Particles] on the use of *-n* in coordination). The particle *-n* does not combine with finite verbs; otherwise it can co-occur with any constituent. Consider some examples:

- (36) Ež'i di-n zow-s maskuwa-ł.  
last.year 1SG.ABS-and be.PST-PST.WIT Moscow-CONT.ESS  
‘I also visited Moscow last year.’
- (37) Ež'i maskuwa-ł-no zow-s di.  
last.year Moscow-CONT.ESS-and be.PST-PST.WIT 1SG.ABS  
‘Last year I was in Moscow as well.’

There are two markers *-n(o)* in Tsez; in addition to the linking *-n(o)*, we find a topic-marking particle (see Ch. YY [Particles]), so a question arises as to whether these functions can be

distinguished. Taken out of context, the two examples above can also mean ‘As for me, I was in Moscow last year’ and ‘In Moscow, I was (there) last year’; thus, they are ambiguous. However when *-n* is used in the meaning of ‘also, too’, the constituent that it attaches to can appear anywhere in the preverbal domain, but never postverbally. So, while (37) is ambiguous between the topic interpretation of ‘in Moscow’ and the interpretation ‘in Moscow as well’, the example below can have only one interpretation:

- (38) Eλ'i di zow-s maskuwa-ł-no.  
 past 1SG.ABS be.PST-PST.WIT Moscow-CONT.ESS-TOP  
 ‘In Moscow, I was there last year.’  
 NOT: ‘Last year I was in Moscow as well.’

Manner adverbials can also appear as depictives, usually associated with the highest argument; for example:

- (39) Nes-ä sual-yo-r xizaz/adāz žawab neλ-si.  
 DEM.I-ERG question-OS-LAT lastly/before answer.ABS.III give-PST.WIT  
 ‘He<sub>i</sub> answered that question<sub>k</sub> last<sub>i/\*k</sub>/first<sub>i/\*k</sub>.’  
 (= he was the first/last to answer that question;  
 NOT: that question was the first he answered)
- (40) Eniw-r kid adāz y-ukay-s.  
 mother- LAT girl.ABS.II before II-see-PST.WIT  
 ‘Mother<sub>i</sub> saw the girl<sub>k</sub> first<sub>i/\*k</sub>.’  
 (=Mother was the first to see the girl;  
 NOT: the girl was the first person that Mother saw)

Manner adverbials do not have a dedicated position in the clause. They can appear immediately preceding the verb, as in (35), (39), (40), between the subject and objects, as in (30), or sentence-initially, as below:

- (41) Hemedur-tow ža xabar nesi-z b-čeže-t'a-ni  
 so-FOC DEM news.ABS.III DEM.I-GEN2 IPL-big-DISTR-DEF  
 es-na-za-λ'o-r-no b-ay-n.  
 sibling-PL-OS.PL-SUPER-LAT-and III-come-PST.nWIT  
 ‘In such a way, the news also reached his older brothers.’  
 (Λelä bečed adiru miskin žek'u:24)

If the adverbial phrase is expressed by a converb, with or without complements, its preferred position is to the left of other objects and sometimes even before the subject; this is a reflection of the more general preference for placing longer constituents before shorter ones in the

preverbal domain.<sup>7</sup> Compare the following example, which includes a converbal phrase expressing manner and a light adverb of manner (which is closer to the verb):

- (42) Nes-ä [sida baši-q pro<sub>i</sub> r-ixi-n]  
DEM.I-ERG one.OBL finger-POSS.ESS IV-hang-PFV.CVB  
aždah-e-s q’im<sub>i</sub> [xexliλ’] r-ayr-no.  
dragon-OS-GEN1 head.ABS.IV quickly IV-bring-PST.nWIT  
‘With one finger, he quickly brought the dragon’s head.’ (based on ‘Aliqilič: 102)

In addition to adverbial phrases expressed by adverbs or noun phrases in spatial forms, a number of converbal clauses can express manner adverbs; these are discussed in CH.YY[Adverbial clauses].

## 5.2 Adverbial phrases denoting location

Many adverbial phrases expressing location are formed on the basis of demonstratives (see Ch. YY and YY) or place names. The essive form denotes location *in/on/at* a place, the ablative form denotes location *away from* some place, and the lative and versative forms denote location *in the direction of* a given place. The group of adverbs expressing the general meaning ‘everywhere’ is particularly numerous; a number of these adverbs include reduplicated forms, as well as compounds expressing locations viewed as opposites (up and down, left and right). In the examples below, we show the morphological make-up of these adverbs, but it is important to keep in mind that they are probably viewed as unitary expressions:

- (43) a. ciq=beqaq (< ci-qo-beq-a-q)  
everywhere forest-POSS.ESS-southern.slope-OS-POSS.ESS  
b. c’ik’iwyuzax (< c’ik’iw-yu-za-x)  
everywhere complete-ATTR-OS-AD.ESS  
c. bit=nitor (< bitor-bitor)  
everywhere around-around  
d. λ’iri=w’al (λ’iri-w’al)  
everywhere up-below  
e. ilo=int’o (ilo-int’o)  
everywhere here-there  
f. keč’oλ’är=kut’yoλ’är (keč’o-λ’-är-kut’yo-λ’-är)<sup>8</sup>  
everywhere left-SUPER-VERS-right-SUPER-VERS

Indefinite locative adverbs are formed from the indeterminate *nā* ‘where’ in the in-essive, in-lative/in-versative and in-ablative forms. The indefinite form ‘somewhere; wherever’ (in a location) can also be expressed converbally by *nāgon AGR-oqλin* (see (3a) above).

---

<sup>7</sup> The ordering generalizations outlined in this section pertain specifically to manner adverbs and not to adverbial phrases in general. We discuss word order generalizations for other kinds of adverbs in the relevant sections.

<sup>8</sup> The suffix *-är* is a contraction of the versative suffix *-āyor*.

- (44) a. nāλa  
       'somewhere' (in a location)  
     b. nārλa/nāγorλa  
       'somewhere' (toward a location)  
     c. nāyλa/nazayλa  
       'from somewhere'  
     d. nāntow  
       'everywhere'

As with manner adverbials, the addition of *-kin* to the indeterminate adverb results in a negative polarity item:

- (45) Mi           nāsinan           zow-s           amma di-gon  
   2SG.ABS       everywhere       be.PST-PST.WIT       but     1SG.ABS-CONTR.TOP  
   nāsikin       zow-nč'u.  
   anywhere.NPI   be.PST-PST.NEG  
   'You have been everywhere but I have not been anywhere.'

In a great number of instances, location adverbials are expressed by noun phrases in spatial cases as well as by frozen nominal forms. For example, the adverbial 'at home' is *idu*, and directional adverbs 'away from home' and 'home' are formed with the addition of the ablative and lative/versative affixes accordingly. Common spatial forms used to express location adverbials are cont-essive (cf. *maskuwa-l* 'in Moscow' in (36)-(38) above) and in-essive, for location, cont-ablative/in-ablative for direction away, and cont-lative/versative, in-lative/versative for direction toward.

A common way of denoting locations is by using spatial forms of the past participle. It is possible for the participle to appear with the head noun *meči/ moči* 'place; field', in which case the head noun takes all the spatial marking. More commonly, though, the participle (with or without dependents) appears without a head noun, as a headless relative clause (see CH. YY[Relative clauses]). Compare the following minimal pair. In (46a), the participle modifies the head noun *meči*, which appears in the super-lative form. In (46b), there is no head noun, and the substantivized participle takes the spatial marking and functions as a locative expression.

- (46) a. Ža           [yizi   xan           yäl-ru]           mečo-λ'o-r  
       DEM.ABS(.I)   DEM.I   king.ABS.I       be.PRS-PST.PTCP       place-SUPER-LAT  
       Ø-ik'i-n.  
       I-go-PST.nWIT  
       'He went up to the place where the king lived/was.'  
     b. Ža           yizi   xan           yäl-(ru-)-zo-λ'o-r  
       DEM.ABS(.I)   DEM.I   king.ABS.I       be.PRS-PST.PTCP-ATTR.OBL-SUPER-LAT  
       Ø-ik'i-n.  
       I-go-PST.nWIT  
       'He went up to the place where the king lived/was.'

In its oblique form with the attributive suffix *-zo*, the past participle combines with a variety of spatial endings, such as the in-essive (in the sense of “most general location”) as well as the ablative, lative, or versative forms of the IN, CONT, or POSS series. In naturally occurring texts, the participial suffix *-ru* is omitted, but as shown below, it can be present:

- (47) [Č'anya      k'aλi-(ru-)z-ä]      cek'i-n      k'āλi.  
       goat.ABS.III    jump-PST.PTCP-ATTR.OBL-IN.ESS    kid.ABS.III-and    jump.FUT  
       ‘Where there’s smoke, there’s fire.’ (lit.: the kid will jump where the goat jumps)
- (48) [Oz-e-r      r-ukäy-nč'i-z-ä]      r-uq'eł.  
       eye-OS-LAT    nIPL-see-PST.PTCP.NEG-ATTR.OBL-IN.ESS    nIPL-hide.IMPER  
       ‘Hide where his eyes won’t see you.’ (addressing animals) (K’et’un zirun:23)
- (49) [Debe-r      r-äti-(ru-)z-ä]      Ø-ik'i.  
       2SG-LAT    IV-want-PST.PTCP-ATTR.OBL-IN.ESS    I-go.IMPER  
       ‘Go where you wish.’ (speaking to a man)
- (50) [Mi      xäci-(ru-)z-äy]      Ø-ay-ä?<sup>9</sup>  
       2SG.ABS(.I)    leave-PST.PTCP-ATTR.OBL-IN.ABL    I-come-PST.WIT.INTERR  
       ‘Did you come from where (they) left you?’
- (51) Žedu      netin-tow      beli-λ'  
       DEM.ABS.IPLL always-FOC    hunting-SUPER.ESS  
       [buq      b-ätu-(ru-)z-ä-yor]-t'a      b-ik'i-x  
       sun.ABS.III    III-be.lost-PST.PTCP-ATTR.OBL-IN-VERS-DISTR    IPL-go-IPFV.CVB  
       zow-n.<sup>10</sup>  
       be.PST-PST.nWIT  
       ‘They always went to hunt in the direction where the sun sets.’ (L̄ono esiw:9)

Forker (2013: 252-254) reports the same use of Hinuq participial constructions in the expression of location.

Adverbial phrases denoting location have two typical positions inside a clause: at the left edge, where they are interpreted as scene-setting expressions, providing the general coordinates of an event, and in the middle field of the clause, usually after the subject and other arguments. If the subject is indefinite, as in presentational clauses, it follows any adverbials; if definite, it precedes them. Compare (52), which introduces a measure of silver as a new referent, and (53), where ‘silver ring’ is definite:

- (52) Elo      teł      ukru-s      saħ      eqr-äsi      yoł.  
       there    inside    silver-GEN1    measure.ABS.III    put-RES    be.PRS

---

<sup>9</sup> This example may be structurally ambiguous; the second person absolute *mi* may be interpreted with the converb, as we show in brackets, but it may also be part of the matrix clause.

<sup>10</sup> This example illustrates the set expression *buq bätuzä* ‘in the west; at the sundown’, which appears in the versative form but can also appear in the essive, ablative or lative. The opposite expression, *buq bołexzä* ‘in the east (lit.: where the sun rises)’ is also widely used and can appear in different spatial forms.

- 'Inside there, there is a measure of silver.' (<sup>c</sup>Aliqilič: 10)
- (53) Dey ukru-s b<sup>c</sup>ašiqoy elo teł eqr-äsi yoł.  
 1SG.GEN1 silver-GEN1 ring.ABS.III there inside put-RES be.PRS  
 'My silver ring is inside there.'

### 5.3 Adverbial phrases of time

As adverbials of place, many temporal adverbials are expressed by nouns in spatial forms. For example, ža<sup>c</sup>quł 'today', ya<sup>c</sup>quł 'today', hul 'yesterday' are frozen forms with the cont-essive suffix -ł; the word hulzał' '(on) the day before yesterday' can be diachronically traced to the nominalization of hul (hulz-) appearing in the super-essive form. The word yude 'tomorrow' is probably a frozen in-essive of yudi 'day'. The adverbial yudes literally means 'daily' but it is often interpreted as 'always'.

The stems buqboł- 'at dawn, in the morning' and buqbetal- 'at dinner-time' are frozen forms of the noun buq 'sun' that combine with the agreeing verbs AGR-oł- 'rise' and AGR-et- 'be lost'.<sup>11</sup> These stems further combine with spatial markers to form time adverbials, for example:

- (54) a. buqboł-ay  
 sunrise-abl  
 'since morning'  
 b. buqbetal-x  
 sundown-ad.ess  
 'in the evening, at dinner time'

Example (54a) and the examples below show that temporal adverbs can carry lative and ablative affixes. We have already observed this pattern in adverbs of location.

- (55) a. ža<sup>c</sup>quł-āy/ya<sup>c</sup>quł-āy  
 today-ABL/today-ABL  
 'since now; from now on'  
 b. sasaq-o-r  
 morning-OS-LAT  
 'by tomorrow, by the morning'

A number of adverbial phrases are expressed by complex nominals in a spatial form. For example:

- (56) [yud-e-s yud-e-r] yud-bi r-eyü-ł-xo.  
 day-OS-GEN1 day-OS-LAT day-ABS.PL.nIPL nIPL-short-INTR-PRS  
 'Days are getting shorter day by day.'

<sup>11</sup> In section 5.2, we showed how these forms produce converbal phrases of location; in such phrases, the noun buq is separate from the verb and the verb stem can undergo change. In the temporal phrases, however, buq cannot be separated from the verb and the verb stem does not change.

- (57) [Huday ȝeb-ā] b-ay-ān.  
 next year-IN.ESS IPL-come-FUT  
 ‘We will come next year.’

There is no set adverbial phrase meaning ‘once upon a time’; a typical opening line of a fairy tale, where such a phrase is to be expected, consists of a combination of the affirmative and negative forms of the verb ‘be’ followed by the name of the referent being introduced:<sup>12</sup>

- (58) Zow-n-ȝax zow-n-ānu-ȝax onoču-n  
 be.PST-PST.nWIT-QUOT be. PST-PST.nWIT-NEG-QUOT hen.ABS.III-and  
 mamalay-n.  
 rooster.ABS.III-and  
 ‘Once upon a time there lived a chicken and a rooster.’ (Onočun mamalayn:1)

Adverbial expressions of time occur at the left edge of the sentence if they serve as scene-setting expressions, situating the entire state of affairs in time; compare examples (36)-(38), (56), (57).

#### 5.4 Adverbial phrases of frequency and order

The main non-derived adverbs in this subclass are:

- (59) a. žigon ‘again’  
 b. žigoȝāy ‘once again’  
 c. žäd ‘yet’ (typically used with negation)  
 d. AGR-uygon ‘already’  
 e. ži ‘already’  
 f. netintow/netin/netinon ‘always’  
 g. yudes ‘always’ (lit. daily, see section 5.3)

The adverb ‘again’ can be used to indicate both repetition (the eventuality repeats itself) and restitution (the original state of affairs is restored). For example, (60) could either mean that Zarema left the window slightly open again, as she has done before (the repetitive reading) or that the window is slightly open, as it was before, due to Zarema’s action (the restitutive reading):

- (60) Žigon aki r-aȝiȝ’ xec-is Zarem-ä.  
 again window.ABS.IV IV-ajar leave-PST.WIT Zaema-ERG  
 ‘Zarema left the window ajar again.’  
 REPETITIVE: opened the window again  
 RESTITUTIVE: the window is again open

The two readings can be disambiguated by placing the adverb immediately before the constituent it takes scope over. Compare the ambiguous (60) and the unambiguous examples below; in (61a) ‘again’ precedes the adverb *r-aȝiȝ'*, and in (61b), it precedes the main verb.

<sup>12</sup> In fairy tales, these V-not-V forms often appear with the quotative affix -ȝax, which combines with non-witnessed verb forms (as opposed to -ȝin, which does not impose restrictions on the tense forms it combines with). See Ch. YY [Particles] and see also Imnajšvili (1963: 274).

- (61) a. Aki žigon r-a<sup>č</sup>yjǟ xec-is Zarem-ä.  
       window.ABS.IV again IV-ajar leave-PST.WIT Zaema-ERG  
       ‘Zarema left the window ajar again.’ (restitutive)  
   b. Aki r-a<sup>č</sup>yjǟ žigon xec-is Zarem-ä.  
       window.ABS.IV IV-ajar again leave-PST.WIT Zaema-ERG  
       ‘Zarema left the window ajar again.’ (repetitive)

A number of adverbs with the general meaning ‘once’ or ‘rarely’ are derived from the adverbial stem *sos-* ‘once’; in particular,

- (62) a. sosit'a (from sosi-t'a)  
       ‘once’ once-COLL  
   b. sosi/sossi/sososi (possibly partial reduplication of sosi)  
       ‘seldom’  
   c. sosoxay (from sos-o-x-äy)  
       ‘occasionally’ once-OS-AD-ABL

The example below, from a fairy tale, illustrates the use of *sosit'a*:

- (63) Neł-ä elu-r li neλ-xosi [yoł] λ<sup>č</sup>eb-a-x-äy  
       DEM.NI-ERG 1PL-LAT water.ABS.III give-PRS.PTCP be.PRS year-OS-AD-ABL  
       sosit'a el-ä neła-r y-ac'-ani-x kid teλ-näy.  
       once 1PL-ERG DEM.NI-LAT II-eat-MASD-AD.ESS girl.ABS.II give-COND  
       ‘It [dragon] gives us water if once a year we give him a girl for him to eat.’ (♀Aliqilič:49)

Event frequency can also be expressed by the adessive form of numerals, as in the example below:

- (64) Maduhal l<sup>č</sup>ora-x y-ay-x.  
       neighbor.ABS.(II) three.OBL-AD.ESS II-come-PRS  
       ‘The neighbor has stopped by three times.’

The same form is used to express multiplication:

- (65) Q'čuna-x q'čano uyno (yoł).  
       two.OBL-AD.ESS two four be.PRS  
       ‘Two by two is four.’

Ordinal numerals with the additive particle *-gon* form adverbials denoting ordered sequences. Compare *l<sup>č</sup>ora-x* ‘three times’ in example (64) above and *l<sup>č</sup>ono-äλiru-gon* ‘thirdly’ in (66):

- (66) neła sual-yo-r žawab l<sup>č</sup>ono-äλiru-gon b-od-a  
       DEM.NI question-OS-LAT answer.ABS.III three-ORD-ADD III-do-INF  
       b-äy.  
       III-must

'This question should be addressed (anwered) in the third place.'

In texts, we also find a combination of the two strategies: the numeral in the adessive form combining with *äλiru-gon*, as in the example below (the form *k'ox* is used in alternation with *q'ünax*):

- (67) *pro<sub>1</sub>*            *k'o-x-äλiru-gon*            *pro<sub>2</sub>*    *b-ok'-no.*  
*pro.ERG*        *two-AD.ESS-ORD-ADD pro.ABS.(III)*    *III-hit-PST.nWIT*  
 '(The hen) hit (the frog) for a second time.' (Onočun mamalayn:16)

The simple adverb *ži* can be used alone to denote 'already'; for example:

- (68) *B-äti-ru*            *mašina*            *ži*            *q'ač'azi*            *b-āq-inč'i.*  
*III-turn-PST.PTCP*    *car.ABS.III*    *already*    *repair*            *III-become.FUT-NEG*  
 'The overturned car is already beyond repair.'

It can also appear in combination with AGR-*uygon*, as in the next example. In that case, AGR-*uygon* must appear closer to the verb; therefore, (69c) is judged unacceptable:

- (69) a. *Mi*            *ži*            *Ø-uygon*            *Ø-iš-ä?*  
           *2SG.ABS.(I)*    *already*    *I-already*            *I-eat.ITR-PST.WIT.INTERR*  
 b. *Ži*            *mi*            *Ø-uygon*            *Ø-iš-ä?*  
           *already*    *2SG.ABS.(I)*    *I-already*            *I-eat.ITR-PST.WIT.INTERR*  
           'Have you already eaten?'  
 c. *#Ži*            *Ø-uygon*            *ži*            *Ø-iš-ä?*  
           *2SG.ABS.(I)*    *I-already*    *already*            *I-eat.ITR-PST.WIT.INTERR*

The adverb *žäd* 'yet' is a negative polarity item, appearing only with negation:

- (70) a. *Ža*            *žäd*            *y-āk'i-nč'u/\*y-āk'i.*  
           *DEM.ABS*    *yet*            *II-go.FUT-FUT.NEG/II-go-FUT*  
           'She has not yet left.'  
 b. *Dä-r*            *žäd*            *r-iy-x-\*(ānu).*  
           *1SG-LAT*    *yet*            *IV-know-PRS-NEG*

## 5.5 Adverbial phrases denoting reason, cause, or purpose

The majority of adverbial phrases denoting reason and cause are expressed by converbs (see Ch. YY [Adverbial clauses]). Purpose can also be expressed by infinitival or masdar clauses that appear as complements of control verbs (CH. YY [Clausal complements]) or as relative clauses (CH.YY [Relative clauses]). Noun phrases in two spatial forms can express the adverbial meanings of purpose and cause. The first is the sub-ablative form, which is used in a meaning comparable to the English 'for the sake of', but can also be interpreted as 'because of':

- (71) *Nes-ä*            *ža*            *micxir-yo-λ-āy*            *r-odi-s.*  
*DEM.I-ERG*        *DEM.ABS.(IV)*    *money-OS-SUB-ABL*    *IV-do-PST.WIT*  
 'He did that for the money.' (for the sake of money)

- (72) Mežu-λ-āy babiw halt'-u-l-er Ø-ik'i-nč'u.  
 2PL-SUB-ABL father.ABS.I work-OS-CONT-LAT I-go-PST.NEG  
 'Because of you, Father did not go to work.' (for your sake; because of you)

These examples show nouns proper in the sub-ablative form; masdar clauses, which constitute complex noun phrases, can also appear in the sub-ablative. For instance:

- (73) Nes-ä ža [xabar b-iy-ani]-λ-āy r-odi-s.  
 DEM.I-ERG DEM.ABS.(IV) news.ABS.III III-know -ABL IV-do-PST.WIT  
 'He did that to find out the news.'
- (74) [hak'o-m-λe-r-ce šebin r-iqir-ani]-λ-āy  
 xinkal-OS-SUB-LAT-EQUAT thing.ABS.IV IV-catch-MASD-SUB-ABL  
 Ø-eynod-ani-x moči-n k'edi-n Ø-oq-äsi  
 I-work-MASD-AD.ESS place.ABS.III-and look.for-PFV.CVB I-begin-RES.PTCP  
 yoł.  
 be.PRS  
 'He began to look for a place to work because of the need to earn his daily bread.'  
 (Q<sup>c</sup>ay:9)

Causes and reasons that cannot be identified as a purpose set by a sentient agent do not appear in this form. Compare (72) and the following example, in which use of the sub-ablative form (*fabdalliλāy*) would entail that the main participant has control over his folly or had it set as his goal:

- (75) \*Nes-ä ža fabdalli-λ-āy r-odi-s.  
 DEM.I-ERG DEM.ABS.(IV) foolishness-SUB-ABL IV-do-PST.WIT  
 ('He did that out of foolishness.') (for the sake of foolishness)

In such instances, when the speaker needs to express a cause over which the participant has no control, Tsez uses noun phrases in the super-essive distal form. For example,

- (76) Nes-ä ža fabdalli-λ'-āz(a)  
 DEM.I-ERG DEM.ABS.(IV) foolishness-SUPER.ESS-DIST  
 r-odi-n r-äsu.  
 IV-do-PFV.CVB IV-may  
 'He probably did that out of foolishness.'
- (77) Žuka hawa=baq'-yo-λ'-āz(a) awariya-bi r-oq-xo.  
 bad weather-OS-SUPER.ESS-DIST accident-PL.ABS.nIPL nIPL-become-PRS  
 'Accidents happen because of bad weather.'

Noun phrases in a spatial form expressing reason can be quite long and complex. Consider the following example, where two other adverbial phrases also appear in the same super-essive distal form to encode spatial relations proper ('on the left' and 'on the side'):

- (78) Ža dä-r r-iy-s [huni-x  
 DEM.ABS.(IV) 1SG-LAT IV-know-PST.WIT road-AD.ESS

kut'yo-λ'-āza	pu-λ'āza	nuco-λ'o-si	t'ut'
left.side-SUPER.ESS-DIST	side-SUPER.ESS-DIST	honey-SUPER-ATTR	fly.ABS.III
b-ik'i-x	zaw-ru-[li-]λ'-āza].		
III-go-IPFV.CVB	be.PST-PST.PTCP-NMLZ-SUPER.ESS-DIST		
'I knew that because a bee was flying at the right side of the road.' (Xanno, nesisigon ɻono užin:97)			

Finally, masdar clauses can also appear in the super-essive to indicate reason, but this is very rare:

- (79) yudi-asoλ              r-iq-ani-λ'-āz              awariya-bi  
       weather.ABS.IV          IV-get-MASD-SUPER.ESS-DIST accident-PL.ABS.nIPL  
       r-oq-si.  
       nIPL-become-PRS  
       'The accidents happened because the weather got bad.'

Various forms of the indeterminate *śidā* (the in-essive form of *sis* 'one') and of the indefinite pronoun *śebin* can also be used as adverbial phrases expressing reason/purpose and cause. Note that the form of the indefinite pronoun appears in the sub-ablative case for reason/purpose and in the super-essive distal case for expressing cause, paralleling the forms of the corresponding noun phrases above.

- (80) a. śida-go(n)  
       why-CONTR.TOP  
       'for some reason'  
   b. śida-λa  
       why-TOP  
       'for a certain reason'  
   c. śida-kin  
       why-FOC  
       'for no reason' (negative polarity item)
- (81) a. ɻina-λ-āy-n  
       what-SUB-ABL-INDEF  
       'for some reason'  
   b. ɻina-λ-āy-kin  
       what-SUB-ABL-FOC  
       'for no reason' (negative polarity item)
- (82) a. ɻina-λ'-āz-no<sup>13</sup>  
       what-SUPER.ESS-DIST-INDEF  
       'on account of some cause'  
   b. ɻina-λ'-āz-λa  
       what- SUPER.ESS-DIST-TOP  
       'for certain causes'

---

<sup>13</sup> This form is rarely used.

- b. ḥina-λ'-āz-kin  
 what- SUPER.ESS-DIST-FOC  
 ‘for no cause/reason’ (negative polarity item)

For example:

- (83) Žedu esa=risa<sup>14</sup> r-iy-x-ānu-xo-zo ḥina-λ-āy-n  
 DEM.PL.ABS whatever.thing.ABS.IV IV-know-PRS-NEG-ATTR.OBL what-SUB-ABL-INDEF  
 daſba b-oy-s.  
 dispute.ABS.III III-do-PST.WIT  
 ‘They had a falling out for no good reason.’

The adverbial phrase ‘for no reason’ can also be expressed by the set phrase AGR-*oλλi* AGR-*āčizar*, whose decomposition and literal meaning are shown in (84a); however, our representation of the underlying interpretation should not be taken to imply that the phrase is still perceived as compositional.

- (84) a. AGR-*oλλi* AGR-āči-z-ā-r  
 middle stay.PST.PTCP-OS-IN-LAT  
 “towards standing in the middle”  
 b. Eniw [y-*oλλi*=y-āčizār] uži-λ'-or bixzi y-oq-xo.  
 mother.ABS.II II-for no reason boy-SUPER-LAT angry II-become-PRS  
 ‘Mother is angry with the boy for no reason.’

The words denoting cause (*bahana*) and goal or purpose (*murad*) are nouns and are rarely used. Some examples:

- (85) Šebi xel-mo-s bahana zow-ā?  
 what.ABS death-OS-GEN1 cause.ABS.III be.PST-PST.WIT-INTERR  
 ‘What was the cause of death?’  
 (86) Nesi-s murad ānu.  
 DEM.I-GEN1 goal.ABS.III be.PRS.NEG  
 ‘He does not have a purpose/goal.’

The set expression *šidaλin eλiliri* ‘the reason being; so’ (lit.: why-QUOT say-COND.IRR.CVB) is used at the beginning of a clause, regardless of its predicate type or finiteness. For instance, in (87), this expression is used in a finite clause. Unlike other adverbs, *šidaλin eλiliri* does not appear clause-medially:

- (87) a. Šidaλin eλiliri šayt'an-z-ä dä-r faq'uba  
 the.reason.being devil-OS.PL-ERG 1PL-LAT torment.ABS.III  
 neλ-xo.  
 give-PRS  
 ‘The reason being that demons torment me.’ (Riyxanoku:25)  
 b. \*Šayt'an-z-ä dä-r šidaλin eλiliri faq'uba

---

<sup>14</sup> *Esa-risa* literally means ‘to say-to take’.

	devil-OS.PL-ERG	1PL-LAT	the.reason.being	torment.ABS.III
neλ-xo.				
give-PRS				

## 5.6 Viewpoint adverbials and expression of probability and possibility

Viewpoint adverbials are often expressed by noun phrases in various oblique forms and by attributive phrases with adjectival or participial heads. For noun phrases, the most common form expressing viewpoint is the form of the ad-lative, for example:

- (88) [Dä-z pikru-x-or] nesi-r kitay-s meč  
 1SG-GEN2 thought-AD-LAT DEM.I-LAT China-GEN1 language.ABS.III  
 b-ig b-iy-x.  
 III-well III-know-PRS  
 'In my opinion (lit.: by my thought), he knows the Chinese language well.'

Noun phrases expressing viewpoint can be quite complex; a common form is the nominalized ad-lative past participle (cf. Imnajšvili 1963: 226-227). Naturally occurring examples do not include the nominalized *-li*, but this suffix can be artificially restored, indicating that adverbial clauses like the ones shown below are ad-lative noun phrases:

- (89) Xizyo [babı-y-ä äλi-ru-[li]-xo-r] ža uži  
 then father-OS-ERG say-PST.PTCP-NMLZ-AD-LAT DEM boy.ABS.I  
 bazargan-za-r teλ-no.  
 merchant-OS.PL-LAT give-PST.nWIT  
 'And then, according to Father's instructions, he gave the boy to the merchants.' (Moλu:14)
- (90) [Už-ä mä<sup>s</sup>li-ru-[li]-xo-r] hemedur-tow dä-r  
 boy-ERG teach-PST.PTCP-NMLZ-AD-LAT so-FOC 1SG-LAT  
 moλa-ł r-ukay-s.  
 dream-CONT.ESS IV-see-PST.WIT  
 'I saw it in my dream just as the boy said (lit.: taught).' (Moλu:48)

Examples of attributive phrases used to express viewpoint adverbials:<sup>15</sup>

- (91) [Taliħq'ayaw] meži dä-r b-ukay-nč'i.  
 unfortunately 2PL.ABS 1SG-LAT IPL-see-FUT.NEG  
 'Unfortunately I won't see you.'
- (92) Taliħlin di idu-gon zow-s.  
 fortunately 1SG.ABS at home-CONTR.TOP be.PST-PST.WIT  
 'Fortunately, I was already at home.'
- (93) a. Neširu [čara ānu-si] hor-o  
 in.the.evening necessity.ABS.IV be.NEG-ATTR come-IMPER  
 el-zo-x-or.

<sup>15</sup> In (91) and (92), the viewpoint adverbials are formed on the basis of the noun *taliħ* 'happiness'.

- b. Neširu [čara ānu-zo-ł]  
 in.the.evening necessity.ABS.IV be.NEG-ATTR.OBL-CONT.ESS  
 hor-o el-zo-x-or.  
 come-IMPER 1PL-ATTR.OBL-AD-LAT  
 ‘For sure come to our house tonight!’

The expression of possibility and probabiliy is not limited to adverbial phrases; these notions can also be conveyed by particles (see CH.YY[Particles]), adverbial clauses (see CH. YY[Adverbial clauses]), and dedicated verb forms, particularly the optative and the potential (see CH.YY [verb tense]). Within the adverbials, common expressions include *hudun* ‘probably’ (from *hudu* ‘yes’); *umgo/ungo* ‘indeed, truly’, and *beyula/behila* ‘maybe’. Consider the following examples:

- (94) El-ä hudun arbañ-λ'o-r liy-ir-an  
 1PL-ERG probably Wednesday-SUPER-LAT end-CAUS-FUT.DEF  
 yedu halt'i.  
 DEM work.ABS.III  
 ‘We will probably finish this work by Wednesday.’

The adverbial *umgo/ungo*, which often appears with the focus particle *-tow*, must precede the focused constituent. For example, in the sentence below,, the focus is on the embedded predicate:

- (95) Dä-r [huł neł-ä micxir umgo(-tow)  
 1SG-LAT yesterday DEM.nI-ERG money.ABS.III indeed-FOC  
 b-iqä-ru-li] r-iy-x.  
 III-catch-PST.PTCP-NMLZ IV-know-PRS  
 ‘I know that she did in fact receive the money yesterday.’

The constituent under the scope of *umgo/ungo* and AGR-*uy* is the item that is asserted in an affirmative sentence, questioned in an interrogative sentence, and negated in a negative one. If the questioned constituent is the verb phrase, the adverbial also receives the interrogative marker—compare (96a), where the constituent in question is Muhammed, and (96b), where it is the verb phrase:

- (96) a. Mi umgo-tow mahama-qo-r-ä xabaryay-x?  
 2SG.ABS indeed-FOC Muhammed-POSS-LAT-INTERR speak-PRS  
 ‘Are you going to talk to MUHAMMED?’  
 b. Mi mahama-qo-r umgo-tow-ä xabaryay-x?  
 2SG.ABS Muhammed-POSS-LAT indeed-FOC-INTERR speak-PRS  
 ‘Are you definitely going to talk to Muhammed?’

The adverbial *umgo/ungo* is probably derived diachronically from the particle AGR-*uy* and the contrastive suffix *-go*; AGR-*uy* serves as the validator clitic and occurs only in root clauses. We discuss this particle in more detail in CH.YY[Particles]).

## 6 Postpositional phrases

### 6.1 Adverbs vs. postpositions

It is not always easy to separate adverbs and postpositions in Tsez, and this distinction is particularly difficult with adverbial expressions of place (and by extension, temporal sequence), because many such expressions naturally encode the relationship between two entities — figure and ground. The main difficulty has to do with the fact that locatives and some other adverbials can occur on their own or can follow a noun in one of the spatial forms. In the latter case, the adverb is optional. Consider the following examples:

- (97) a. Aŷi                 $\lambda'$ iri                č'iwλi-x.  
             bird.ABS.III      up              chirp-PRS  
             'A bird is chirping above.'  
       b. yun-o- $\lambda'$                 ( $\lambda'$ iri) aŷi                č'iwλi-x.  
             tree-OS-SUPER.ESS      up              bird.ABS.III      chirp-PRS  
             'A bird is chirping up on the tree.'

If (97a) is used to describe the bird in relation to a tree, the bird is understood to be above the tree, not in the tree; in (97b), the bird is up on the tree, and  $\lambda'$ iri can be easily omitted. The difference in meaning suggests that the use of  $\lambda'$ iri in (97a) is adverbial, while the use in (97b) is postpositional. Likewise, the form *bitor* is ambiguous between the readings ‘there (in the direction of)’ and ‘because of, on account of’. In the former meaning, it is likely to be adverbial, as it does not have to have a complement. In the latter meaning, it occurs with a nominal complement and appears to be a well-behaved postposition, but is nevertheless itself ommissible:

- (98) a. Di                bitor                Ø-izi-s.  
             1SG.ABS.(I)      away              I-rise-PST.WIT  
             'I (man speaking) went away.'  
       b. Dow- $\lambda$ -āy                (bitor)                Ø-ik'i-nč'u.  
             2SG-SUB-ABL      because              I-go-PST.NEG  
             'I did not go because of you.'

However not all words that appear ambiguous between an adverb and a postposition show differences in meaning, and the meaning criterion is quite limited in its scope.

A number of ambiguous items combine with particular forms of nouns, which suggests that they are postpositions (adverbs do not take complements and do not impose selectional restrictions on the lexical items they combine with). For example, the words *purħo/purlāz* ‘near, by, beside’ combine only with animate nouns in the apud-essive:<sup>16</sup>

- (99) a. Surat-yo-ł                di                sult'an-de/\*sult'an-xo/\*sult'an-qo  
             picture-OS-CONT.ESS      1SG.ABS S-APUD.ESS/S-APUD.ESS/S-POSS.ESS  
             purlāz yoł.

---

<sup>16</sup> The expression *honde purlāz* ‘beside the mountain’ seems to be an exception, but one could argue that the mountain is somehow personified.

- beside be.PRS  
           ‘In the picture I am beside/next to Sultan.’

b.     \*Surat-yo-ł               di               k’onk’a-de               purłāz  
       picture-OS-CONT.ESS  1SG.ABS        bicycle-APUD.ESS      beside  
      yoł.  
      be.PRS  
       (‘In the picture I am beside/next to the bicycle.’)

Assuming this criterion is more reliable, we may identify *purħo/purlāz* as postpositions. However, they can still occur without a nominal complement, suggesting that Tsez allows the omission of complements of postpositions. We know that it allows the omission of arguments, but the omission of adpositional complements is cross-linguistically more unusual. The following examples show that such omission is indeed possible in Tsez:

- (100) a. Ža<sup>č</sup>quł-no hamay-bi (sult'an-de) purħo yoł  
           today-TOP friend-PL.ABS.IPL/nIPL S-APUD.ESS beside be.PRS  
  amma huł-gon žek'u-s žek'u-bi sult'an-de  
  but yesterday-CONTR.TOP man-GEN1 man-ANS.PL.1PL S-APUD.ESS  
  purħaz zow-s.  
  beside be.PST-PST.WIT  
  b. Ža<sup>č</sup>quł-no hamay-bi sult'an-de purħo yoł  
           today-TOP friend-PL.ABS.IPL/nIPL S-APUD.ESS beside be.PRS  
  amma huł-gon žek'u-s žek'u-bi (sult'an-de)  
  but yesterday-CONTR.TOP man-GEN1 man-ANS.PL.IPL S-APUD.ESS  
  purħaz b-iči-xosi zow-s.  
  beside IPL-stay-PRS.PTCP be.PST-PST.WIT  
      ‘Today, friends are standing beside Sultan, but yesterday, strangers were standing  
      beside (Sultan).’

(101) a. Pat'i (fali-ł) xizazā, eniw  
           Fatima.ABS.II Ali-SUB.ESS behind mother.ABS.II  
  fali-ł adazā y-iči-x.  
  Ali-SUB.ESS in.front II-stay-PRS  
  b. Pat'i fali-ł xizazā, eniw  
           Fatima.ABS.II Ali-SUB.ESS behind mother.ABS.II  
  (fali-ł) adazā y-iči-x.  
  Ali-SUB.ESS in.front II-stay-PRS  
      ‘Fatima was standing behind Ali, and mother, in front of him.’

Therefore, in the following example, it is possible to imagine a missing complement of *purḥo*:

- (102) Xex-bi                    *pro*      pur̥ho zow-s.  
       child-PL.ABS.nIPL              beside be.PST-PST.WIT  
       'The children were on the sidelines.'

Omission works both ways in putative postpositional phrases; not only can the nominal be omitted, as we just showed, but the adverb/postposition can also be omitted in certain cases,

without a perceptible change in meaning. We present multiple examples of adverb/postposition omission in section 6.2 below. Ideally, this criterion could be used to show that elements that undergo omission are not heads, and hence not postpositions. However, we see two considerations against using this criterion. First, silent heads are generally possible, and the omission of P would be no exception. Second, as the data in section 6.2 suggest, the omissibility of a particular adverb/postposition may also be sensitive to interpretation.

Yet another criterion that can be used to distinguish adverbs from postpositions has to do with displacement. It should presumably be possible to separate adverbs from their associated nominals, whereas postpositions and nominals should be constrained to appear together. Compare example (97b) above to the following example, where the noun in the spatial form is separated from the adverb:<sup>17</sup>

- (103) yun-o-χ' ayi χ'iri č'iwχi-x.  
 tree-OS-SUPER.ESS bird.ABS.III up chirp-PRS  
 'A bird is chirping up there on the tree.'

Similarly, in the following sentence, the spatial noun and the word *sadaq* 'together' can be separated:

- (104) a. Kid eni-ya-de sadaq y-ay-si.  
 girl.ABS.II mother-OS-APUD.ESS with/together II-come-PST.WIT  
 b. Eni-ya-de kid sadaq y-ay-si.  
 mother-OS-APUD.ESS girl.ABS.II with/together II-come-PST.WIT  
 'The girl came together with Mother.'

In contrast, compare the sentences below, in which *'olo* 'because of' and *dandi-(r)* 'across' cannot be separated from the nominals they select:

- (105) a. Dow-χ-āy 'olo xexbi 'oχ'u-s.  
 2SG-SUB.ESS because child.ABS.III fall-PST.WIT  
 'The child fell because of you.'  
 b. \*Dow-χ-āy xexbi 'olo 'oχ'u-s.  
 house-OS-SUB.ESS child.ABS.III because fall-PST.WIT
- (106) a. Dow-χ-āy 'olo xexbi 'oχ'u-s.  
 2SG-SUB.ESS because child.ABS.III fall-PST.WIT  
 'The child fell because of you.'  
 b. \*Dow-χ-āy xexbi 'olo 'oχ'u-s.  
 house-OS-SUB.ESS child.ABS.III because fall-PST.WIT
- (107) a. y'utk'-o-χ dandir mašina eqr-o.  
 house-OS-SUB.ESS across/against car.ABS.III put-IMPER  
 'Park the car across from the house.'

---

<sup>17</sup> Testing the separation of a nominal and associated postposition/adverb is limited by the fact that adverbs denoting specific location or order generally do not appear postverbally (see Ch. YY [WORD ORDER]). Thus, all the dislocations have to happen in the preverbal domain.

b.	*y <sup>c</sup> utk'-o-λ	mašina	dandir	eqr-o.
	house-OS-SUB.ESS	car.ABS.III	across/against	put-IMPER

Using this criterion, we can qualify the following words as more postposition-like, as they cannot separate from their associated nominals:

- (108) a. adāz/adāy  
in front, ahead, before (location in space or time)
- b. bitor  
away
- c. dandi/dandir  
across, against
- d. 'olo  
because of
- e. purħo/purħaz (with animate)  
beside, next to
- f. q'ida  
under
- g. šet'u/šet'ur  
around
- h. soder  
after, following
- i. xizāz/xizāy  
after, behind (location in space or time)

In contrast, the following lexical items can separate from their associated nominals, which arguably makes them more adverb-like:<sup>18</sup>

- (109) a. igo/igor/igāy  
around, nearby
- b. λ'iri/λ'iray  
above
- c. madaħ/madahor  
outside/in the direction of outside
- d. sadaq  
together, with
- e. taq/taqor/taqāy

---

<sup>18</sup> In both sets of lexical items, (108) and (109), the number of options increases when these lexical items combine with spatial suffixes—consider *telā/teħxor/telay/teläzay* in (80f), which can be analyzed as in-essive, ad-lative or in-ablative (without or with the distal affix) forms. What remains unclear is whether or not this (at least diachronically) clear sequence of affixes still has a compositional meaning in the current language. Furthermore, some of the items that we identify as more adverb-like have direct correspondents among the postposition-like; for instance, *xizor* (109h), and *xizāy/xizāz* in (108i).

- over there, on the other side/to the other side/from the other side
- f. tel/telā/telxor/telāy/teläzay  
inside/in the direction of inside/from inside/from inside
- g. wahho/ wah(h)or/w<sup>a</sup>lāy  
under, below
- h. xizor  
behind
- i. xizyo/xizyoλ'ay  
later, next/next time

However, the adverbial status of these words may still be compatible with their double function, as adverbs and as postpositions (or alternatively, as intransitive and transitive postpositions).

Yet another difference between postpositions proper and adverbs has to do with the way they participate in coordination. In order to apply the coordination diagnostic, we must recognize two separate subtypes of coordination: coordination of two or more postpositional phrases each of which is headed by the same postposition, and coordination of two or more postpositional phrases headed by different postpositions.

When coordinated postpositional phrases are headed by the same postposition, the lexical items listed in (109) combine with the coordinating *-n* directly, and the associated nominals are not marked for coordination. The adverb/postposition, although identical, cannot be omitted:

- (110) a. eni-ya-de                sadaq-no                kid-ba-de  
mother-OS-APUD.ESS together-and girl-OS-APUD.ESS  
sadaq-no  
together-and  
'with mother and daughter'
- b. \*eni-ya-de-n                (sadaq)                kid-ba-de-n  
mother-OS-APUD.ESS-and together                girl-OS-APUD.ESS  
sadaq  
sadaq-no
- (111) a. q'oc'oλ-ā                teł-no                λoh-ā                teł-no  
barrel-IN.ESS inside-and pot-IN.ESS                inside-and  
'inside the barrel and the pot'
- b. \*q'oc'oλ-ā-n                (teł)                λoh-ā-n                teł  
barrel-IN.ESS-and inside                pot-IN.ESS-and inside

In contrast, the lexical items that we identified as postpositions proper (108) on the basis of their inability to dislocate away from the associated noun never combine with *-n(o)* 'and'. Instead, this linking element attaches to the complement noun. The adverb/postposition in the first conjunct can be omitted:

- (112) a. istowli-λ-no                (xizāz) iškap-yo-λ-no                xizāz  
table-SUB.ESS-and behind wardrobe-OS-SUB.ESS-and                behind  
'behind the table and wardrobe'

- (113) a. \*istowli-λ xizāz-no iškap-yo-λ xizāz-no  
 table-SUB.ESS behind-and wardrobe-OS-SUB.ESS-and behind  
 t'et'ra-ni-λ-āy-no (‘olo) micxir-λ-āy-no ‘olo  
 study-MASD-SUB-ABL-and money-SUB-ABL-and because of  
 ‘because of studies and money’  
 b. \*t'et'ra-ni-λ-āy ‘olo-n micxir-λ-āy ‘olo-n  
 study-MASD-SUB-ABL because-and money-SUB-ABL because of-and

This difference in coordination is typologically unusual; we would expect the coordinating enclitic *-n(o)* to appear on the adverbial/postpositional head. We hypothesize that the pattern in **Error! Reference source not found.**) and **Error! Reference source not found.**) may have to do with the redundancy of such items as *xizāz* or *‘olo*. It is already possible to arrive at the relevant locational or causal interpretation just on the basis of the respective sub-essive and sub-ablative forms.

If two or more phrases headed by a postposition/adverb are conjoined, the linking enclitic *-n(o)* can appear twice, but marking on the postposition/adverb is necessary. Thus:

- (114) istowli-λ(-no) xizāz-no q’uri-λ’o(-n) λ’iri-n  
 table-SUB.ESS-and behind-and chair-SUPER.ESS-and above-and  
 ‘behind the table and above the chair’

To summarize, the diagnostics available to us (omission of the complement, separability, coordination) do not produce unequivocal results. One could take the differences presented here to reveal the boundary separating adverbs from postpositions, or one might conclude that a number of lexical items are ambiguous, either between adverbs and postpositions, or between intransitive and transitive postpositions.

## 6.2 Postpositional or suffixes?

Two items that seem to be postpositional in nature apparently take absolutive complements. However, the status of these items as postpositions is not entirely clear. The form *lun* ‘as; in the capacity as’ is a borrowing from Avar, where it can combine with oblique forms. It may be in transition between a postposition and an affix; for Hinuq, Forker (2013: 432) characterizes *lun* as an enclitic; Creissels (2010) identifies the cognate form in Akhvakh as a case-marking suffix expressing a temporary state of the referent. For Tsez, we tentatively analyze *lun* as a suffix that attaches to the direct form of nouns (that’s how we represent it in the examples above). If this analysis is on the right track, *lun* does not pose a counterexample to the generalization that postpositions take complements in cases other than the absolutive.

The main use of *lun* in Tsez is to encode the meaning ‘in the capacity of; considered as’. It often combines with nouns or noun phrases denoting professions or occupations, as in (115) below. However, it can also combine with abstract nouns denoting professions, as in (116).<sup>19</sup>

- (115) Ža reyun-os bet’er-łun wišzi er-si.  
DEM.ABS district-GEN1 head-as appoint set.up-PST.WIT  
‘They appointed him the head of the district.’
- (116) Uži-bi šopir-łi-łun b-oq-xo  
boy-PL.ABS.IPL driver-NMLZ-as IPL-become-PRS  
‘The boys work as drivers.’
- (117) Ža best’al-łun Ø-a<sup>c</sup>qił-si.  
DEM.ABS orphan-as I-grow-PST.WIT  
‘He grew up an orphan.’
- (118) Nāzon maskuwa bercinaw šahar-łun rik’zi  
all.ERG Moscow.ABS.III beautiful city-as count  
b-iy-x.  
III-know-PRS  
‘All consider Moscow a beautiful city.’

Forker (2013: 432–433) reports that *lun* in Hinuq can also combine with participial forms, and at least in one instance, with a noun phrase in a spatial form (her example (772b)). We have not been able to observe similar uses in Tsez.

Another Avar borrowing is a longer postposition of which *lun* is a subcomponent: *sababłun* ‘for the sake of, because of, on the account of’.<sup>20</sup> This form is used rarely and also takes an absolute complement, which seems to alternate with a genitive:

- (119) a. Xexbi sababłun Ø-ay.  
children.ABS for the sake of I-come.IMPER  
b. Xex-za-s sababłun Ø-ay.  
children-OS-GEN1 for the sake of I-come.IMPER  
‘Come for the sake of the children.’

## 7 Exception phrases

An example of the exceptive construction in English is as follows, where *except one* is the exception phrase introduced by the exceptive marker (*except*), and *all children* is the standard of comparison:

- (120) All children, except one, grow up.

---

<sup>19</sup> In examples (115)–(117), the predicates are intransitive, with the subject in the absolute and the phrase headed by *lun* interpreted as an adjunct. In (118), the compound verb *rik’zi* AGR-*iy-* is transitive, with the phrase headed by *lun* an adjunct as well.

<sup>20</sup> This postposition can be decomposed into the noun *sabab* ‘reason’ and the postposition *lun*.

STANDARD  
OF COMPARISON

EXCEPTION PHRASE

Tsez exceptive markers include *xecin* ‘except, beside’, *λexuzal’or* ‘except, beside’, *gurow/gurew* ‘except’, and *taraw* ‘except’ (the latter two are used only with negative predicates). We separate exception phrases from clear adverbial phrases and from clear postpositional phrases for several reasons. First, although the exceptive markers *xecin* and *λexuzal’or* resemble postpositions in that they combine with noun phrases, *λexuzal’or* is unlike a postposition in that it does not select the case of its complement. Meanwhile, *gurow/gurew* and *taraw* can combine with other categories, not just noun phrases. Next, unlike genuine adverbs, the words meaning ‘except’, ‘but’ cannot appear without or be separated from the complement whose content they delimit. There are differences among the existing exception phrases in Tsez that suggest that these items are not a homogenous group, but we present them all together on the basis of their general meaning.

The lexical item *xecin* ‘except’ is a converbal form of the verb *xec-* ‘leave behind’, whose use is illustrated in (121), where it takes the absolute object. This particular converbal form may be undergoing a re-analysis as a special exceptive marker, but it has not changed its case-assigning properties; it always combines with a noun phrase in the absolute and cannot be separated from it (122b):

- (121) Mariyat-ä t’ek’ iškol-ä xec-si.  
           Mariyat-ERG book.ABS.II school-IN.ESS leave-PST.WIT  
           ‘Mariyat left the book at school.’
- (122) a. Eniw xecin nāsin kino-me-ł-xor  
           mother.ABS.II except ALL.ABS.IPL cinema-OS-CONT-VERS  
           b-ik’i-s.  
           IPL-go-PST.WIT  
           ‘Aside from mother, everyone went to the movies.’
- b. \*Eniw nāsin kino-me-ł-xor xecin  
           mother.ABS.II all.ABS.IPL cinema-OS-CONT-VERS except  
           b-ik’i-s.  
           IPL-go-PST.WIT

The exceptive marker *xecin* always combines with the absolute; in (122a), the case of the exception phrase and the case of the standard of comparison match, but such matching is not required. In the next example, the standard of comparison appears in a form different from the absolute:

- (123) Eli mariyat xecin nāzon c’alduqan-za-qo-r  
           1PL.ABS mariyat.ABS.II except all.OBL student-OS.PL-POSS-LAT  
           xabaryay-s.  
           talk-PST.WIT  
           ‘We talked to all the students except Mariyat.’

*Xecin* only combines with noun phrases, so if the exception phrase is not an NP, it has to be substantivized or nominalized. For example, in (124), the verb must appear in the infinitival or masdar form, and cannot remain finite:

- (124) ḥalt'izi y-oq-a/      ḥalt'izi y-oq-ani/      \*ḥalt'izi      y-oq-xo  
       work II-become-INF/work II-become-MASD/work      II-become-PRS  
       xecin y-oq-xo      ža      nān-tew      y-utił-xo.  
       except II-become-PRS DEM.ABS.(II) somewhere-FOC      II-manage-PRS  
       'She does everything except working.'

The exceptive *λexu-za-λ'-or* is a nominalization of the verb *λex-* ‘remain, stay behind’ in the super-lative (*λ'-or*). The markers *λexuzal'or*, *gurow/gurew* and *taraw* combine with noun phrases in any form; the case of the noun phrase has to match the case of the phrase that serves as the standard of comparison. We will consider *λexuzal'or* first. Compare example (123) with *xecin* and the following example with *λexuzal'or*, where the standard of comparison and the noun phrase in the exception phrase both appear in the poss-lative:

- (125) Eli      mariyat-qo-r      λexuzal'or      c'aldoquan-za-qo-r  
       1PL.ABS      mariyat-POSS-LAT      except      student-OS.PL-POSS-LAT  
       xabaryay-nč'i.  
       talk-PST.WIT.NEG  
       'We did not talk to the students except Mariyat.'  
(126) Eli      yudes ḥalt'-o-ł-xor      b-ik'i-x      hat'an-λ'o  
       1PL.ABS      daily      work-OS-CONT-VERS      IPL-go-PRS      Sunday-SUPER.ESS  
       λexuzal'or.  
       except  
       'We go to work every day except Sunday.'

These examples show that the exceptive marker *λexuzal'or* is compatible with both affirmative and negative predicates; the same goes for *xecin*. By contrast, the exceptive markers *taraw* and *gurow/gurew* are negative polarity items; they can only be licensed in the presence of a negation main predicate and they cannot occur in questions.

Consider the following examples. In (127), *taraw/gurow* combines with the ergative, and the clause also has the ergative subject *lukin*, a negative polarity item:

- (127) λ'iri      b-äs-ru-ni      ḥalt'i      aḥmad-ä      taraw/gurow      lu-kin  
       above      III-take-PST.PTCP-DEF      work.ABS.III      Ahmed-ERG      except/except who.ERG-FOC  
       b-oy-inč'u/\*b-oy-s.  
       III-do-PST.NEG/ III-do-PST.WIT  
       'Nobody except Ahmed did the work they took upon themselves.'

In the proverb in (128), *taraw* also occurs with the ergative; the subject of the main clause is simply understood:

- (128) Šud-ä      taraw      žek'u-s      ɻamal      b-it'zi      b-äd-inč'i.

grave-ERG      except man-GEN1      character.ABS.III      III-straight      III-do.FUT-NEG  
 ‘You can’t teach an old dog new tricks.’ (lit.: Nothing but the grave will straighten out the man’s nature/character)

Similarly, in (129), *taraw* combines with the lative experiencer, and the standard-of-comparison experiencer is presupposed:

- (129) Allah-e-r      taraw      r-āy-inč’i.  
 God-OS-LAT      except IV-know.FUT-NEG  
 ‘Who knows.’ (lit.: nobody but God will know (smth.))

*Taraw* and *gurow/gurew* can combine with noun phrases (as above) as well as adverbial phrases:

- (130) Sossi      gurow      b-äk’-inč’i      meži      elo-r.  
 once      except IPL-go.FUT-NEG      2PL.ABS.IPL      there-LAT  
 ‘You will only go there once.’ (lit.: you will not go there except one time)  
 (131) ḥirba      ḥuł      taraw      maduhal-qo-r      xabaryay-nč’u.  
 guest.ABS.I/II      yesterday      except neighbor-POSS-LAT      talk-PST.WIT.NEG  
 ‘Except yesterday, the guest did not talk to the neighbor.’

The two constituents in the exceptive phrase — the standard of comparison and the exception phrase — must belong to the same category. Consider the following example, where the standard of comparison is a noun phrase (*didiwnokin mumpaſat* ‘any benefit’) and the exception phrase is a verbal nominalization:

- (132) Neł-q-äy      didiwnokin      mumpaſat      ānu,      ʕadadä  
 DEM.NI-POSS-ABL      any.ATTR      benefit.ABS.III      be.PRS.NEG      in.vain  
 käki-ru-li      gurow.  
 feed-PTS.PTCP-NMLZ      except  
 ‘What good is it to have it (calf) except that we feed it for no good reason.’ (lit.: there is no benefit from it except feeding in vain) (Riynoxu:35)

Recall that *taraw* and *gurow/gurew* require negation on the main predicate. Although such sentences are judged to be awkward, it is possible to put a verb in the affirmative before *taraw* or *gurew/gurow*. Compare (127) with the following examples in which the affirmative and the negative versions of *boy-* are contrasted explicitly.<sup>21</sup>

- (133) ḥ’iri      b-äs-ru-ni      ḥalt’i      aḥmad-ä      b-oy-si  
 above      III-take-PST.PTCP-DEF      work.ABS.III      Ahmed-ERG      III-do-PST.WIT  
 taraw/gurow      ḥukin      b-oy-inč’u.  
 except/except anyone.ERG      III-do-PST.WIT.NEG  
 ‘Ahmed did the work he took upon himself, nobody (else) did.’

---

<sup>21</sup> As we show in CH.YY[Adv clauses], Tsez has extremely limited ellipsis of finite verb forms; however, the omission of the affirmative version of the finite verb in examples such as (133) appears to be a plausible source of the exceptive constructions with *gurow* and *taraw*.

Polarity reversal is typical of so-called free exceptives (clausal exceptives), in which the exceptive phrase expresses an exception to a generalization stated in a separate clause (Hoeksema 1995; Soltan 2014). The properties of *taraw* and *gurow/gurew* exception phrases suggest that they are free exceptives. In contrast, the exception phrases headed by *xecin* and *λexuzaλ'or* seem to fit the profile of phrasal exceptives; they are not associated with polarity reversals, they are more restricted in the categories they can combine with (only noun phrases), and they cannot combine with another predicate. Compare the grammatical sentence in (133) and the following ungrammatical sentences:

- (134) \*Eniw        y-ik'i-nči        xecin    nāsin        kino-me-ł-xor  
           mother.ABS.II    II-go-PST.NEG    except ALL.ABS.IPL    cinema-OS-CONT-VERS  
           b-ik'i-s.  
           IPL-go-PST.WIT  
           ('Aside from Mother, everyone went to the movies.')  
 (135) \*Eli        yudes    halt'-u-ł-xor        b-ik'i-x        ɬat'an-λ'o  
           1PL.ABS        daily    work-OS-CONT-VERS    IPL-go-PRS        Sunday-SUPER.ESS  
           λexuzaλ'or    b-ik'i-nč'u.  
           except        IPL-go-PRS.NEG  
           ('We go to work every day except Sunday.')

## Predicate phrase

### 1 General remarks

The predicate phrase can consist of a verb alone, with the verb being simplex or complex; it can also be expressed by a series of verbs forming a complex verbal predicate, or by a copula with a predicative component. The head of a predicate phrase appears in a tensed form in finite clauses, in a converbal form in converbal clauses, in a participial or masdar/infinitive form in relative clauses, and in a nominalized form in complement clauses (see CH.YY[Clausal complements]). Regardless of finiteness, the predicate agrees with the absolutive argument in gender and number (for those verbs that have an agreement marking slot—see CH.YY[VERB MORPH]). There are no dedicated markers of a predicate phrase. In non-finite clauses, the linear position of the predicate is strictly determined: it must appear clause-finally. In root clauses, the finite predicate phrase can appear in any position (see CH.YY[Word order]).

In this chapter, we will first discuss different types of predicates and then address the marking of grammatical categories on predicates in finite and dependent clauses.

### 2 Verbal predicates

#### 2.1 Simplex verbs

Intransitive, transitive, ditransitive and polytransitive verbs can form a predicate phrase in root and embedded clauses. All verbs agree with the absolutive argument, and with the exception of the biabsolutive construction, there can be only one absolutive argument per clause. For examples of intransitive, transitive, ditransitive and polytransitive clauses, see CH.YY[Basic clause types].

#### 2.2 Simplex verbs

Tsez has a number of verbs that consist of two simplex verbs juxtaposed in a single predicate (such compounding is indicated by the = sign). If both elements of a compound verb have an agreement slot, they both show agreement. However, only the last verb in a compound can be inflected with (non-)finite affixes or combine with the causative suffix. Thus, from the standpoint of predicate phrase formation, such compounds are not different from simplex verbs.

Consider the following example, where the compound verb is AGR-*iži*=AGR-*oy*:

- (1) Eniw                q’im-ä        y-iži=y-oy-xo.  
                           mother.ABS.II    head-ERG    II-carry-II-pull-PRS  
                           ‘Mother has a headache.’ (lit.: the head carries-pulls mother)

In the examples below, the predicate phrase is AGR-*ay*=*tix*- (lit.: come=set), and only the first constituent of the compound shows agreement. Only the second constituent carries the causative suffix:

- (2) a. Xalq'i bat'-bat'iyaw mečo-λ' b-ay=tix-si.  
     people.abs.Ipl different.red place-super.ess Ipl-spread  
     ‘People settled over many different places.’
- b. hukmat-y-ä xalq'i-mo-ł xabar b-etintow  
     government-OS-ERG people-OS-CONT.ESS story.ABS.III III-on.purpose  
     b-ay=tix-er-xo/\*b-ay-r=tix-er-si.  
     III-spread-CAUS-PRS/III-come-CAUS-set-CAUS-PRS  
     ‘The government spreads rumors among the people on purpose.’

The following compound verbs are used regularly. While the list below is representative, it is not exhaustive, since new compound verbs can be created; in addition, we do not show causatives that can be derived from these verbs.

- (3) a. AGR-aλ'=qaλ'ir- ‘chatter, jabber’ [ABS]  
     speak=cheat
- b. AGR-a'λa=k'ic'- ‘load up (usu. of a horse, mule) [ERG, ABS]  
     saddle=load
- c. AGR-egi=AGR-et'ur- ‘separate; steal’ [ERG, ABS]  
     be.loose=pull
- d. AGR-ezu=AGR-oλ'- ‘look over, scan’ [ABS, SUPER-ESS]  
     look=stop ‘watch, take care of’ [ABS, LAT]
- e. AGR-et'u=k'oλ'- ‘run around; jump’ [ABS]  
     tear.away=run
- f. AGR-ehna=AGR-ik'- ‘behave; be well-behaved’ [ABS]  
     walk=go
- g. AGR-izi=AGR-aλ'- ‘rest’ [ABS]  
     rise=fall
- h. AGR-iš=AGR-ut- ‘eat’ [ABS]  
     eat=turn
- i. AGR-iš=haλ- ‘carouse’ [ABS]  
     eat=drink
- j. AGR-oλi=AGR-eg- ‘split, splinter’ [ABS]  
     hurt=split
- k. gaga=cagari- ‘be smooth, even’ [ABS]  
     be.slippery=be.even
- l. caλi=AGR-oλ'- ‘throw around, scatter’ [ERG, ABS]  
     throw=stop
- m. AGR-'oλ'u=AGR-izi- ‘stumble’ [ABS]  
     stop=rise
- n. AGR-iħu=AGR-ič- ‘go back’ [ABS]  
     go.in=stay
- o. k'ek'=AGR-ik'- ‘swing’ [ABS]  
     move=go
- p. k'oλi=c'ox- ‘run iteratively’ [ABS]  
     run=get.stuck

### 2.3 Complex verbs

Complex verbs are composed of a predicative part and a light verb. The intransitive light verb is AGR-*oq-* ‘become’, the transitive light verb is AGR-*od-* ‘do’, and the ditransitive light verb is ‘give’ (*teλ-* and *neλ-*, depending on the direction of transfer).

The predicative complement can be represented by an adjective, participle, adverb/postposition, borrowed verb (mostly Avar and Russian verbs), or noun. In term of morphosyntax, the main contrast is between predicative nouns in the absolute form and all other categories. The inclusion of an absolute noun in a complex predicate affects the valency of the light verb, because that predicative noun obligatorily counts as its absolute argument. Meanwhile, non-nominal predicative complements or nouns in non-absolute form do not change verbal valency.

To illustrate, let us consider the light verb AGR-*od-* ‘do’, which is transitive. If this verb combines with a noun in the absolute, the nominal predicative complement appears as its absolute object. The resulting complex verb is transitive, with the object position already occupied; the verb agrees with the absolute object. It then takes an ergative subject. For example, the verb AGR-*od-* combines with the noun *fümru* ‘life’ to form the complex verb *fümru bod-* ‘live’, whose subject appears in the ergative:

- (4) a. El-ä b-ig fümru b-oy-x.  
     1PL-ERG III-well life.ABS.III III-do-PRS  
     ‘We live well.’ (lit.: we do life well)
- b. El-ä b-igu fümru b-oy-x.  
     1PL-ERG III-good life.ABS.III III-do-PRS  
     ‘We lead a good life.’

If the corresponding event structure calls for yet another participant, that participant must be expressed in a non-absolute case. In the next example, the same light verb combines with the noun *kumak/kumek* ‘help’, takes it as the absolute object, and agrees with it. The event structure of “help” presupposes the agent (helper) and the recipient of the helping. This recipient could presumably be expressed as the object of the verb, but since the absolute object position is already taken, the tertiary participant cannot appear in the absolute (5a). It is instead expressed by a noun phrase in the lative (5b). A common strategy is to express the additional argument as the possessor of the absolute subject or object in the complex verb, as shown in (5c); since this possessor phrase modifies the absolute noun phrase, it is always in the genitive 1 form.<sup>1</sup>

- (5) a. \*Ramazan-ä λirba kumak  
     Ramazan-ERG guest.ABS.I/II help.ABS.III  
     b-oy-s/Ø-oy-s/y-oy-s.  
     III-do-PST.WIT/ I-do-PST.WIT/II-do-PST.WIT
- b. Ramazan-ä λirba-r kumak b-oy-s.

---

<sup>1</sup> The acceptability of genitive possessors with complex verbs varies across lexical items; for example, with *kumak bod-* the preference is for the lative (as in (5b)).

- Ramazan-ERG guest-LAT help.ABS.III III-do-PST.WIT  
 ‘Ramazan helped the guest.’
- c. Ramazan-ä Ɂirba-s kumak b-oy-s.  
 Ramazan-ERG guest-GEN1 help.ABS.III III-do-PST.WIT  
 ‘Ramazan helped the guest.’ (less preferred than (b))

Let us now consider the light verb AGR-*oq-* ‘become’. Since this verb is intransitive, the appearance of an absolute predicative nominal fills its sole valency. If another argument is presupposed by the corresponding event structure, it has to be expressed in one of the oblique cases or as the adnominal genitive of the predicative nominal. Consider the complex verb *asar boq-* ‘be influential; be consequential’, where *asar* is a noun in gender III. If this verb is used in a clause that also includes the mention of the source of influence, that source should appear as a genitive, and the target of influence is in a local case:

- (6) B-<sup>s</sup>ežə xalq’i-mo-r b-oq-xo kino-s asar.  
 III-big people-OS-LAT III-become-PRS movie-GEN1 influence.ABS.III  
 ‘Cinema has a great deal of influence on people.’

When a complex verb is composed of a noun in non-absolute form or any other category combined with a light verb, no valency change happens. Extremely common among such predicative elements are Avar verbs, which are typically borrowed in the infinitival form, ending in *-zi/-ze*; the agreement necessitated by Avar is not reflected in such borrowings.

Compare the examples above and the combination of AGR-*od-* with the Avar loan *bak’ar(i)zi* ‘accumulate, collect’. The resulting complex verb remains transitive and can take an absolute object. The agreement on the complex verb now depends on the gender of the specific object it takes:

- (7) a. Nes-ä posu<sup>2</sup> bak’arzi r-oy-s.  
 DEM.I-ERG wealth.ABS.IV collect IV-do-PST.WIT  
 ‘He accumulated wealth.’
- b. Micxir-yo-ł šuš-ani-r-ä nece-gon  
 money-OS-CONT.ESS bury-MASD-LAT-INTERR so.much-CONTR.TOP  
 ža bak’arzi b-oy-x?  
 DEM.ABS.(III) collect III-do-PRS  
 ‘You can’t take it with you when you die.’  
 (lit.: Are you accumulating it so that you would be buried in all that money?)

In the next example, the complex verb is composed of an Avar borrowing and the light verb AGR-*oq*, which agrees with the absolute subject in gender I. In addition, the complex verb in the relative clause, *halag* AGR-*od-* ‘excite, lead to commotion’ is composed of the light verb AGR-*od-* and the predicative component *halag*, which does not determine agreement on the verb; the verb agrees with the head noun (the subject of the matrix clause) in gender I:

---

<sup>2</sup> The word *posu* literally means ‘cattle’ but it is typically used to refer to material wealth.

- (8) *fišq'-ä halag Ø-ädi-ru foloqan žek'u*  
 passion-ERG excited I-do-PST.PTCP young person.ABS.I  
*darsi-mo-λ'o-r-ä refizi Ø-oq-xo?*  
 lesson-OS-SUPER-LAT-INTERR manage I-become-PRS  
 'Is it possible for a young man consumed by love to have time for his studies?'  
 (Arabuzan:21)

Russian loans are clearly on the rise, and their use with AGR-*od-* and AGR-*oq-* is very productive. This is a recent development that has resulted from the growing use of Russian among Tsez speakers. Imnajšvili (1963: 254-255) notes and discusses Avar loans but hardly mentions any Russian loans as predicative components in complex verbs. The transitivity of a borrowed item in the source language does not matter; for instance, in (9) and (10), the Russian verb is intransitive, marked with the reflexive *-sja* (*somnevati'sja* 'doubt') but it can be used in a complex transitive verb as well:

- (9) *Ža samnewatsa Ø-oq-xo.*  
 DEM.ABS(.I) hesitate I-become-PRS  
 'He is not sure.'  
 (10) *Nel-ä mi samnewatsa y-oy-n.*  
 DEM.nI-ERG 2SG.ABS(.II) hesitate II-do-PST.nWIT  
 'She made you hesitant.'

The advent of Russian borrowings has led to the development of complex verb doublets, the interpretive differences among which are not always clear. Compare *kumak bod-* 'help', which appeared above, and *pamagat* AGR-*od-* 'help', from the Russian infinitive *pomogat'* 'help'.<sup>3</sup>

- (11) *Kid-b-ä eniw pamagat y-oy-x.*  
 girl-OS-ERG mother.ABS.II help II-do-PRS  
 'The girl helps Mother.'

Aside from infinitives, predicative complements that do not elicit agreement include Avar and Arabic borrowings which are used adverbially or attributively; for example, *ruhun* AGR-*od-* 'teach' and *ruhun* AGR-*oq-* 'learn' (*ruhun* is a converbal form of the verb 'learn' in Avar), *ħalal* AGR-*od-* 'allow' and *ħalal* AGR-*oq-* 'be possible, be allowed' (from Arabic *halāl* 'permissible').

In the next example, the light verb AGR-*oq-* combines with the adverb/postposition *λ'irāy* to form the complex verb 'forgive'. This verb takes an absolute subject (the agent of forgiving) and an oblique object (the recipient of forgiveness); the inclusion of the adverb does not affect the valency of the intransitive AGR-*oq-*.

- (12) *Eniw debe-λ' λ'irāy y-oq-xo.*

---

<sup>3</sup> Note that the Russian verb takes a dative object, so one could expect the Tsez complex verb to take the absolute and lative, but instead it appears as a standard ergative-absolutive predicate.

mother.ABS.II 2SG-SUPER.ESS from.above II-become-PRS  
‘Mother forgives you.’

Only the synchronic status of a predicative component in Tsez matters for the purposes of the nominal vs. non-nominal distinction, not its original status in some other language or at an earlier stage of Tsez. For example, in the complex verb *maħrum AGR-oda* ‘deprive’, *maħrum* is treated as a non-nominal predicative complement, although the original Arabic word may have entered the language as an adjective or as a noun (*maħru:m* ‘deprived’). In *mišayat bod-* ‘disturb, interfere with’, the Russian loan is actually a verb form but it is treated as a gender III noun for the purposes of complex verb formation.

Complex verbs with the agreed-with predicative absolute differ from the rest of complex verbs in the degree to which the predicative complement is tied to its light verb. Predicative absolute complements can have their own modifiers, most often genitive (5c), but others as well (see (4b)), while non-nominal complements cannot. Absolutive predicative complements can be separated from their light verbs, whereas for all the other predicative complements, such separation is judged very awkward. Compare the following examples based on the material presented above:

- (13) a. T'o b-oy-x      ſumru      el-ä.  
           here III-do-PRS   life.ABS.III 1PL-ERG  
           'We live here.' (compare (4))

b. ſumru      el-ä      b-oy-x      t'o.  
           life.ABS.III 1PL-ERG   III-do-PRS   here  
           'Here, we live.' (implies contrast with a different activity in another location)

(14) a. \*Y-oq-xo      λ'irāy      debe-λ'      eniw.  
           II-become-PRS   from.above   2SG-LAT   mother.ABS.II

b. λ'irāy      eniw      y-oq-xo      debe-λ'.  
           from.above   mother.ABS.II   II-become-PRS   2SG-LAT  
           ('Mother forgives you.') (compare (12))

Finally, as the next example demonstrates, complex verbs can be non-compositional; consider the psych-collocation in the next example:

- (15) Rok'u-ł g<sup>w</sup>andi y-oq-si.  
     heart-CONT.ESS pit.ABS.II II-become-PST.WIT  
     ‘Sadness occurred.’ (lit: a pit in the heart happened/began)

It is sometimes hard to draw the line between semantically transparent and non-compositional complex verbs. Other examples of complex verbs with at-least-partially obscured semantics are given below (cases other than the absolute subcategorized for by a given complex verb are given in brackets):

- (17) Transitive

  - a. rok'-λ'o                  AGR-is-                  [ERG, ABS]  
heart-SUPER.ESS            take  
'remember'
  - b. xot'-āy                  λi                  haλ-                  [ERG, GEN2]  
leg/foot-IN.ABL            water.ABS.III            drink  
'obey s.o.'

(18) Ditransitive

  - a. fazab                  teλ-                  [ERG, LAT]  
torture.ABS.III            give-  
'torture'
  - b. iyah                  neλ-                  [ERG, LAT]  
patience.ABS.III            give-  
'try hard'

### 3 Restructuring predicate phrases

Complex predicate phrases can be formed by restructuring verbs, including the following: AGR-*ay-* ‘must’; the modal AGR-*äsu-* ‘may’; the verb AGR-*oq-* in the modal meaning ‘can, be able to’; the complex modal *behizi* AGR-*oq-* ‘can; be allowed to’; the verb AGR-*ič-* in the meaning ‘continue’, the verb *xec-* ‘leave; allow’, the verb AGR-*et-* in the meaning ‘want’, and the specialized use of the verb AGR-*esu-* ‘appear’ in conditionals. These verbs combine with a predicate (simplex or complex verbal predicate; copular predicate) to form a complex predicate phrase. For example, as a freestanding verb, AGR-*äy-* ‘must’ takes an absolutive clausal argument, while as a restructuring predicate, it shares the arguments of the verb it combines with; thus, in (19, 20), it takes an ergative and absolutive DP argument and agrees with the absolutive:



For restructuring clauses, see CH. YY[Clausal complements].

## 4 Copular predicates

Copular constructions are formed with the verbs ‘be’, AGR-*oq-* ‘become’, and AGR-*ič-* ‘stay’. The verb ‘be’ is irregular; its present tense form is *yoł* in the affirmative and *ānu* in the negative; in the past forms, the stem *zow-* is used, which receives standard endings of tense and negation. ‘Be’ does not have a future form, and the relevant notion is expressed either by the present tense, or by the future tense of the other two copular verbs.

The syntax of copular clauses is discussed in CH. YY [Basic clause types]; here we will concentrate on the internal composition of predicate phrases with a copula.

The predicative complement of a copula can be expressed by a noun phrase (noun, pronoun, proper name, infinitival or masdar clause) or a modifier phrase (numeral, adjective, participle, or demonstrative).

### 4.1 Predicate phrase with a predicate nominal

Predicate nominals are expressed by a noun phrase in the absolute. In the examples below, we show predicate phrases in brackets:

- (21) A: [Šebi zow-ä] za?  
      what.ABS be.PST-PST.WIT.INTERR DEM.ABS  
      ‘What was that?’
- B: (Ža) [di zow-s].  
      DEM.ABS 1SG.ABS be.PST-PST.WIT  
      ‘That was me.’
- B': (Ža) [žedu zow-s].  
      DEM.ABS DEM.PL.ABS be.PST-PST.WIT  
      ‘That was them.’
- (22) Debe-r šebi y-eti-xo-si [ža yoł].  
      2SG-LAT who.ABS(.II) II-like-PRS-ATTR DEM.ABS(.II) be.PRS  
      ‘Who you really like is her.’
- (23) [sida ūeba-s xexbi (yoł)] di-n Abakar-no  
      one.OBL year-GEN1 children.ABS be.PRS 1SG.ABS-and Abakar.ABS-and  
      maħamarasul-no  
      Mohammedrasul.ABS-and  
      ‘I, Abakar, and Mohammedrasul are the contemporaries (lit.: children of one year).’

An infinitival phrase can also be a predicate nominal; if a copula shows agreement, it always agrees with that phrase in gender IV. Note that in the following example, the referent of the implicit subject of the infinitive is a female, and the infinitive shows gender II agreement, but the copula AGR-*ič-* shows agreement in gender IV.

- (24) Debi ħalt'i [faħ-ā-yor y-ik'-a r-ič-as].  
      2SG.GEN1 work.ABS.III village-IN-VERS II-go-INF IV-stay-FUT  
      ‘Your job will be to go to the village.’

A masdar clause in the function of a predicate nominal appears in the lative or ad-essive form. Compare (24) and (25):

- (25) Debi      halt'i      [faλ-ā-yor      y-ik'-ani-x      r-ič-as].  
       2SG.GEN1 work.ABS.III village-IN-VERS II-go-MASD-AD.ESS IV-stay-FUT  
       'Your job will be to go to the village.'

Predicate nominals can also be expressed by nouns, pronouns, or demonstratives in a non-absolutive form. For example, statements about possessive attribution feature a predicate nominal in the genitive:

- (26) Yedu      t'ek      debi/mučalim-e-s      yoł?  
       DEM      book.ABS.II      2SG.GEN1/teacher-OS-GEN1 be.PRS  
       'Is this book yours/the teacher's?'

Copular predicates can also include adverbs/postpositions in the predicative function. In those instances, the postpositional phrase includes an implicit nominal complement, and such a complement can also be made explicit. Consider (27) and (28) and see also CH.YY [Adverbial phrase] for a discussion of the adverb–postposition ambiguity.

- (27) li      (q'oc'oλ-ā)      teł      yoł.  
       water.ABS.IV barrel-IN.ESS inside be.PRS  
       'Water is inside (the barrel).'  
(28) Cey      (im-yo-λ')      λ'iri      zow-s.  
       eagle.ABS.III tree-OS-SUPER.ESS above be.PST-PST.WIT  
       'The eagle was above/on the tree.'

#### 4.2 Predicate phrase with a predicate attributive

An adjective, participle/participial relative clause, numeral, or attributive demonstrative can combine with a copula to form a predicate phrase with a predicate attributive. All these forms can also function as adnominal modifiers, and there is no difference between the forms that are used predicatively and the ones that are used adnominally. Definite adjectives can occur both attributively and predicatively. Collective numerals, marked with *-n(o)*, are also possible in the predicative position. Examples (29b) and (30b) illustrate the use of predicative adjectives in the regular and definite form, respectively.

- (29) a. sadaqaw      baha  
       equal      price.ABS  
       'same price'  
  b. Eli      [sadaqaw      yoł].  
       1PL.ABS equal      be.PRS  
       'We are the same age (lit.: same).'  
(30) a. sadaqaw-ni      ziya  
       equal-DEF      cow.ABS  
       'a cow of the same age'  
  b. Yizi      ziya-bi      [sadaqaw-ni      zow-s].

DEM cow-PL.ABS.nIPL equal-DEF be.PST-PST.WIT  
 ‘These cows were the same (in some respect).’

The following example shows the use of a numeral in the predicative function. Note that when the numeral modifies the head noun, as in (31a), the noun is not marked for plural (see CH.YY[Noun phrase]), but when the numeral occurs predicatively (in (31b)) the corresponding subject is in the plural.

- (31) a. leno kid  
       five girl  
       ‘five girls’
- b. Neła-s                   kid-ba-bi                   [łeno zow-s].  
     dem.nI-gen1   gir-os-pl.abs.nIpl    five be.pst-pst.wit  
     ‘She had five daughters.’ (lit.: her girls were five)

If an attributive form can show agreement, it agrees with the subject of the copular clause (see also CH. YY[Basic clause types]).

## 5 Grammatical categories expressed in the predicate phrase

The following table shows the grammatical categories of a Tsez verb. All predicate phrases, be they dependent or finite, can be marked for agreement, causative, potential modality, negation, and Aktionsart (iterative marking); thus, slots -1 through 5 are filled in predicate phrases in both finite and non-finite form. The following categories can be expressed only on finite predicates: tense, mood (optative/non-optative), evidentiality, and polarity (slots 6-10). For the relevant categories and their marking, see CH. YY.

Table 1. Verbal form: Grammatical categories and their slots

-1	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Agree- ment	Stem	Causa- tive	Aktions- art	Modal- ity	Low negation	Non-finite- ness	Mood	Tense	High negation	Evident- iality	Polar- ity
I-IV sg IPL/ nIPL		-Vr- <sup>1</sup> -k'-	Iterative/ Absence of iterat- ive	Potential/ unspecified		Infinitive Masdar Pst.ptcp	Optative/ unspecified	Past Pres Fut		Witnessed/ Non-witness- ed	Decl Interr Imper

---

<sup>1</sup> Can be iterated.

**Part 2: Clauses**

## Basic clause types

### 1. Argument structure and verb types: General remarks

Like other languages of the Nakh-Dagestanian family, Tsez displays a robust correspondence between intransitive and transitive verbs: most (but not all) intransitives have corresponding transitives, and vice versa. In terms of the direction of derivation, there is a preference for basic one-place verbs or predicates with derived transitive forms. Thus, we can characterize Tsez as an “intransitive language” (see Comrie 2000a, b for a discussion, and see Ch. YY [VERB derivation]). Because Tsez has an extensive set of spatial markers, it tends to avoid unspecified local arguments; as a consequence, local subjects, as in *Berlin was swarming with tourists* or local objects as in *They entered the cave*, are not observed.

We have not been able to observe instances of non-standard valence patterns in which a verb fails to take an absolute argument (cf. Haspelmath 1993: 269, 280ff. for such patterns in Lezgian). A possible exception to this statement arises with the modal verb AGR-*äsu*/AGR-*esu*, which is discussed in CH. YY [Clausal complements].

All intransitive verbs take an absolute subject, although this fact may be obscured by argument drop (a common phenomenon in Tsez, allowing any contextually recoverable argument to be omitted) and by the infrequency of absolute agreement, which is only visible on a subset of verbs and predicative complements. Since both subjects and objects in Tsez can be discontinuous (see Ch. YY [Noun phrase]), discontinuity cannot be applied as a subject diagnostic either. In the discussion below, we will present evidence for subjecthood that draws on the individual subtypes of intransitive verbs (section 2). Transitive verbs take ergative and absolute arguments (see section 3), and regardless of their argument structure, all verbs agree with the absolute argument. For details of Tsez agreement, see CH. YY [Agreement]. Finally, there are several specialized constructions, including the potential construction (section 3.2) and the affective construction (section 5).

Unlike other Dagestanian languages, Tsez does not have labile verbs, i.e. verbs which can be used both as transitives and intransitives (see Erschler 2014 for a bibliography and short discussion, and see Forker 2013: 492–494 for such verbs in the closely related language Hinuq). Thus, members of the inchoative-causative alternation, such as the English *melt* or *dry*, are always distinguishable in Tsez by their morphology. Tsez also diverges from other languages in its group in that it does not have antipassives (see Forker 2013: 519–522 on Hinuq antipassive; van den Berg 2000 on Bezhta antipassive).

In this chapter, we concentrate only on verbs that take noun-phrase arguments; verbs that take clausal arguments are discussed in Ch. YY [Clausal complements]. Many of the same verbs appear in both chapters, and in fact, some examples in this chapter show clausal arguments. There is only a small subset of modal verbs that co-occur exclusively with clausal complements. Otherwise, all verbs capable of combining with a clausal argument can also take noun phrases in the same argument position.

In the discussion of argument structure below, we will make the following distinctions:

- (i) between intransitive, transitive, and ditransitive verbs—these will be discussed in separate sections
- (ii) between simple and complex (compound) verbs

Within complex verbs, there is a further distinction based on the category of the predicative complement that occurs with the light verb (the intransitive AGR-*oq-* ‘become’, the transitive AGR-*od-* ‘do’, and the ditransitive ‘give’). When a predicative complement is expressed by a noun in the absolute, that noun fills the absolute position and the verb agrees with it. Consequently, complex verbs with AGR-*oq-* have their single argument position filled; complex verbs with AGR-*od-* have their absolute object position filled and only the ergative slot unfilled. Other types of predicative complements do not fill an argument slot and do not determine agreement. See CH. YY [Predicate phrase] for further discussion.

In addressing argument structure, it is hard to completely disregard the grammatical functions associated with various arguments, so some of that discussion will be brought up in this chapter.

## 2. Intransitive verbs

### 2.1. Unergatives vs. unaccusatives

Intransitive verbs always have an absolute argument, which can be omitted when contextually recoverable.

Based on a combination of morphological and semantic characteristics, we can divide Tsez intransitive verbs into unergatives and unaccusatives. Unergative verbs can receive the frequentative/iterative suffix *-nad-*; such verbs are typically agentive, which is a common pattern for unergatives cross-linguistically. However, as (3) shows, unergatives do not necessarily have an animate subject.

- |     |    |                                       |                           |                         |
|-----|----|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| (1) | a. | B <sup>e</sup> λ'                     | r-a <sup>č</sup> q'u      | r-et'u-x.               |
|     |    | sheep.PL.ABS.nIPL                     | nIPL-much                 | nIPL-tear.away-PRS      |
|     |    | 'The sheep separate/tear away a lot.' |                           |                         |
|     | b. | B <sup>e</sup> λ'                     | r-a <sup>č</sup> q'u      | r-et'u-nay-x.           |
|     |    | sheep.PL.ABS.nIPL                     | nIPL-much                 | nIPL-tear.away-ITER-PRS |
|     |    | 'The sheep often separate/tear away.' |                           |                         |
| (2) | a. | Uži-bi                                | k'oλi-s.                  |                         |
|     |    | boy-PL.ABS.IPL                        | run-PST.WIT               |                         |
|     |    | 'The boys ran.'                       |                           |                         |
|     | b. | Uži-bi                                | k'oλa-nay-s.              |                         |
|     |    | boy-PL.ABS.IPL                        | run-ITER-PST.WIT          |                         |
|     |    | 'The boys kept running.'              |                           |                         |
| (3) | a. | ħi                                    | ča <sup>č</sup> ħi-x.     |                         |
|     |    | water.ABS.IV                          | jet-PRS                   |                         |
|     |    | 'Water is jetting.'                   |                           |                         |
|     | b. | ħi                                    | ča <sup>č</sup> ħa-nay-x. |                         |

water.ABS.IV jet-ITER-PRS  
 ‘Water keeps jetting.’

A number of onomatopoetic verbs describing sounds (laughing, braying, clucking, croaking, chirping, etc.) also form iteratives and therefore qualify as unergatives, for example:

- (4) a. B<sup>e</sup>λ' b<sup>e</sup>λ'eλ'i-x.  
 sheep.ABS.IV bleat-PRS  
 b. B<sup>e</sup>λ' b<sup>e</sup>λ'eλ'a-nay-x.  
 sheep.ABS.IV bleat-ITER-PRS  
 ‘(The) sheep are bleating.’

The suffix *-nad-* is impossible with unaccusatives, and which additionally often have non-agentive semantics. Compare the unergatives above and the unaccusatives in the following examples:

- (5) a. Ža čanya b-a<sup>č</sup>q'u b-eti-x.  
 DEM goat.ABS.III III-much III-disappear-PRS  
 ‘This goat is often lost.’  
 b. \*Ža čanya b-a<sup>č</sup>q'u b-eti-nay-x.  
 DEM goat.ABS.III III-much III-disappear-ITER-PRS
- (6) a. Buq č'ur-si.  
 sun.ABS.III shine-PST.WIT  
 ‘The sun was shining.’  
 b. \*Buq č'ura-nay-s.  
 sun.ABS.III shine-ITER-PST.WIT

Quite a few unaccusative verbs have the intransitive suffixes *-l-* or *-x-*, which are typical for verbs derived from adjectives or adverbs (see CH. YY [verb derivation]). Regardless of the agent-like or patient-like status of their sole argument, intransitive verbs all have subjects in the absolute; there is no evidence of split intransitivity in terms of argument realization.

A significant number of complex intransitive predicates are formed with the unaccusative light verb AGR-*oq-* ‘become’. Again, all these verbs take an absolute argument. Below are some examples of complex verbs with a non-nominal predicative complement; in such instances, the light verb agrees with the absolute subject:

- (7) Gamač c'aq'tow guguru y-oq-xo.  
 stone.ABS.II completely round II-become-PRS  
 ‘The stone has become completely round.’
- (8) Cadara-bi kunč'izi r-oq-xo.  
 star-PL.ABS.nIPL shine nIPL-become-PRS  
 ‘The stars are shining.’

In complex verbs with a predicative nominal, the referent of the logical subject appears in an oblique case, often in the genitive (9)-(12), in which case it is structurally a modifier of the absolute argument, or in the lative (13)-(14):

- (9) Žedu-s daqba b-oq-si.  
DEM.PL.I-GEN1 dispute.ABS.III III-become-PST.WIT  
'They had a falling out.' (lit.: their dispute happened)
- (10) Xex-za-s yalmayal r-oq-xo.  
children-OS-GEN1 row.ABS.IV IV-become-PRS  
'The children are arguing.' (lit.: the children's argument is happening)
- (11) Elu-z halt'i-s gagat'u y-oq-no.  
1PL-GEN2 work-GEN1 bottom.ABS.II II-become-PST.nWIT  
'All our work was for nothing.' (lit.: our works' bottom occurred)
- (12) Elu-s žaq r-oq-xo cez-ya-z mec-re-x-or  
1PL-GEN1 habit.ABS.IV IV-become-PRS Tsez-OS-GEN2 language-OS-AD-LAT  
cax-a.  
write-INF  
'We are getting used to writing in Tsez.' (lit.: our habit ... becomes)
- (13) Nesi-r zahmat r-oq-si.  
DEM.I-LAT hardship.ABS.IV IV-become-PST.WIT  
'He had some difficulties.' (lit.: difficulties happened to him)
- (14) Iškola-r zaral b-oq-si.  
school-LAT losses.ABS.III III-become-PST.WIT  
'The school had financial losses.' (lit.: losses happened to school)

## 2.2. Impersonal contexts

Impersonal constructions always have their understood argument in the absolute. Abstract nouns in Tsez belong to gender IV, as do some other arguments reviewed in this section, so if a verb shows agreement in an impersonal construction, it is in gender IV.

It is common to find impersonal constructions with meteorological verbs, which are often taken cross-linguistically to be aivalent. However, meteorological descriptions in Tsez allow for the introduction of the absolute argument *yudi* 'day' (gender IV) or *hawa-baq* 'weather (lit.: air-sun)' (gender IV), and if a meteorological predicate can manifest agreement, it registers agreement in gender IV regardless of the presence of an overt absolute argument. Consider the following examples, where (15a) shows overt agreement and (15b) does not:

- (15) a. *pro/yudi* r-oč'iw yoł.  
day.ABS.IV IV-cold be.PRS  
'It is cold.'
- b. *pro/yudi* tatanu yoł.  
day.ABS.IV warm be.PRS  
'It is warm.'

Another typical impersonal context for aivalent verbs is as predicates to clausal arguments. Such predicates, many of them adjectival, combine with a clausal argument expressed by an infinitival

phrase (16), a masdar (17), or a nominalization (18). All clausal arguments belong to gender IV, so again, if the verb registers agreement, it is in gender IV as well.<sup>1</sup>

- (16) a. [Xabar teqr-a] r-o<sup>c</sup>q'yu yoł.  
news.ABS.III listen-INF IV-difficult/tiring be.PRS  
'It is tiring to listen to the news.'  
'To listen to the news is tiring.'
- b. [Sapar b-od-a] holiw r-oq-xo.  
travel.ABS.III III-do-INF free/easy IV-become-PRS  
'It has become easy to travel.'  
'Traveling has become easy.'
- (17) [Q'<sup>c</sup>im-ä q'<sup>c</sup>im-e-s mec b-iy-r-ani-x]  
one.REFL-OS-GEN1 language.ABS.III III-know-CAUS-MASD-AD.ESS  
hažetaw šebin (yoł).  
important thing.ABS.IV be.PRS  
'It is important to know one's own language.'
- (18) [Nes-ä elu-q-or xabar es-a b-āy-xosi  
DEM.I-ERG 1PL-POSS-LAT news.ABS.III tell-INF IV-must-PRS.PTCP  
yäl-ru-li] ſažaibaw zow-s.  
be.PRS-PST.PTCP-NMLZ surprising be.PST-PST.WIT  
'That he was supposed to tell us the news was surprising.'  
'It was surprising that he was supposed to tell us the news.'

However, it is unclear from a superficial investigation of the phrases in (16), (17), (18) whether the clausal complement is a genuine syntactic subject or whether there is a null pronominal in the subject position (this would be similar to English translations with the impersonal *it*). The word order in root clauses is quite free, so it does not allow us to draw definitive conclusions either, but the basic word order patterns suggest that clausal arguments are not true subjects. While there are no restrictions on inanimates in the ergative position (see section 3 below), clausal complements cannot appear in the transitive subject position. Consider the following contrast:

- (19) a. Nesi-z xabar-y-ä mi hayran y-oy-ä?  
DEM.I-GEN2 news-OS-ERG 2SG.ABS.(II) surprised II-do-PST.WIT.INTERR  
'Did his news surprise you?' (addressing a woman)
- b. \*[Eli b-āy-ru-li]-z-ä mi hayran  
1PL.ABS.(IPL) IPL-come-PST.PTCP-NMLZ-OS-ERG 2SG.ABS.(II) surprised  
y-oy-ä?  
II-do-PST.WIT.INTERR  
'Did it surprise you that we came?' (addressing a woman)

---

<sup>1</sup> Agreement inside the infinitival clause has no effect on the gender of the clausal complement—cf. (16b), where the infinitive agrees with the noun *sapar* in gender III. The entire infinitival complement is still gender IV. Agreement interaction across clauses is discussed in Ch. YY [LDA].

In no other contexts do we find a difference between clausal and non-clausal complements in Tsez, so a restriction against ergative (but not absolutive) clausal subjects would be unexpected.

### 2.3. Copular constructions

The Tsez copular verb is also used as an auxiliary in the formation of periphrastic tense forms. The paradigm of the copula is given in Ch. YY. The main forms are *yoł* [non-past] (marked as PRS in the glosses) and *zow-* [past]. Some copular clauses also use the verbs AGR-*oq-* ‘become; be’, AGR-*ič-* ‘stay’, and AGR-*oļix-* ‘rise, appear’. In this section, we will consider three main types of copular clauses: predicational, specifical, and identificational (Dixon 2010; Higgins 1979, Mikkelsen 2005; Partee 1986, a.o.). A number of other structures that also employ the verbs ‘be’, ‘become’ will be discussed in sections 2.4 and 2.5 below.

The subject of a copular clause, regardless of the finer clausal details, is always in the absolutive, and if the copula includes an agreeing complement, agreement occurs with the subject. For instance:

- (20) Yedu muq b-ošäsi yoł.  
DEM line.ABS.III III-curved be.PRS  
‘This line is curved.’

The omission of the copula in main clauses is pervasive, both in spontaneous speech and in narratives. Once a copular clause is embedded, the copula reappears.

In main clauses, predicational, specifical, and identificational copular constructions are identical. Consider the following predicational copular clauses,<sup>2</sup> in which the complement can be expressed by any category other than a finite verb: an adjective, a noun, a participial phrase, or a noun with a modifying numeral.

- (21) Nāsin [raziyaw yoł/b-iči-x/b-oq-xo].  
all.ABS.(IPL) content be.PRS/IPL-stay-PRS/IPL-become-PRS  
‘Everyone is happy.’ (predicational)
- (22) Mariyat žād [c’alduqan ānu].  
Mariyat.ABS.II still student be.PRS.NEG  
‘Mariyat is not a student yet.’
- (23) Eli [f’ono halmay zow-s].  
IPL.ABS three friend.ABS.I be-PST.WIT  
‘We were three friends.’

---

<sup>2</sup> Here and below we identify the predicate in square brackets.

In a specifical copular clause, the subject of the copular clause names a property and the complement of the copula identifies that property. Among other possibilities, the subject of a specifical copular clause can be expressed by a headless relative clause, as in (27).<sup>3</sup>

- (24) Di-n [Ø-ay-äsi zow-s].<sup>4</sup>  
 1SG.ABS-TOP I-come-RES.PTCP AUX.PST-PST.WIT  
 'I am the one who arrived.'
- (25) Nesi-ƛ' ci-gon [ɬUmarqilič-ƛin  
 DEM.I-SUPER.ESS name.ABS.III-CONTR.TOP Umarqilich-QUOT  
 zow-n/\*b-iči-n/\*b-oq-no].  
 be.PST-PST.nWIT/III-stay-PST.nWIT/IPL-become-PST.nWIT  
 'His name was Umarqilich.' (ɬAliqilič:3)
- (26) Dow-ƛ'o ci [šow/šebi (yoł)/\*b-oq-x-ä/  
 2SG-SUPER.ESS name.ABS.III what/what be.PRS/III-become-PRS-INTERR/  
 \*b-oλix-ä]?  
 III-appear-PRS-INTERR  
 'What is your name?' (lit.: the name on you...)
- (27) Dä-r Ø-eti-xosi [dey halmay  
 1SG-LAT I-like-PRS.PTCP 1SG.GEN friend.ABS.I  
 yol/\*Ø-oq-xo/\*Ø-iči-x].  
 be.PRS/\*I-become-PRS/\*I-stay-PRS  
 'It's my friend that I really like.'

The subject of identificational copular clauses is usually a demonstrative. For example:

- (28) Ža [debe-r dey wasiyat yol/\*b-oq-xo].  
 DEM 2SG-LAT 1SG.GEN1 will.ABS.III be.PRS/III-become-PRS  
 'This is my bequest (intended) for you.' (ɬAliqilič:81)
- (29) Yedu [šebi ɬalamali r-ič-a r-āy-x]?  
 DEM what wonder.ABS.IV IV-stay-INF IV-must-PRS  
 'What kind of wonder could this be?' (ɬAliqilič:125)

As these examples show, the use of all types of copular verbs is quite free in predicational clauses but is more restricted in the other two copular types, where in particular AGR-*oq-* is not accepted.

---

<sup>3</sup> Specifical copular clauses show two types of connectivity, in agreement and in reflexive binding. We discuss these phenomena in the respective chapters (CH. YY[AGR]. CH. YY[BIND]).

<sup>4</sup> The interpretation of this clause may follow either the copular clause structure shown here or a structure involving a complex verb form and the auxiliary 'be' (see CH. YY for verbal paradigm).

The word order in main clause copular constructions is extremely free. In particular, the complement of the clause can be separated from the copular verb, which means that there is room for ambiguity. For instance, the following orders are both possible:

- (30) a. B-äži-ru kamanda nemcaw-za-s yoł.  
           IPL-lead-PST.PTCP team.ABS.IPL German-OS.PL-GEN1 be.PRS  
           ‘The winning team is German.’ (specification)  
           ‘The German (team) is the winning team.’ (identificational)
- b. Nemcaw-za-s b-äži-ru kamanda yoł.  
           German-OS.PL-GEN1 IPL-lead-PST.PTCP team.ABS.IPL be.PRS  
           ‘The winning team is German.’ (specification)  
           ‘The German (team) is the winning team.’ (identificational)

Nevertheless, some generalizations emerge, in addition to the copula variation already noted. The overall preference is to have the copular subject precede the copular complement, which means that the preferred interpretation for (30a) is specification, and for (30b), identificational. The subject can follow the copula, whereas the complement cannot. Consider the following examples (where, of course, the disambiguation crucially depends on the presence of an overt copula). In (31a), the predicate is preposed and the subject is *nemcawzas* (*kamanda*). In (31b), the subject is *bäžiru kamanda*, and the only interpretation available is that of a specification copular clause. In (32a), we observe an identificational copular clause with a demonstrative as subject; as (32b) shows, the placement of the complement after *ānu* is ungrammatical.

- (31) a. [B-äži-ru kamanda yoł] nemcaw-za-s (kamanda).  
           IPL-lead-PST.PTCP team.ABS.IPL be.PRS German-OS.PL-GEN1 team.ABS.IPL  
           ‘The German (team) is the winning team.’ (identificational)
- b. [Nemcaw-za-s yoł] b-äži-ru kamanda.  
           German-OS.PL-GEN1 be.PRS IPL-lead-PST.PTCP team.ABS.IPL  
           ‘The winning team is German.’ (specification)
- (32) a. [Endiwdä-zo-q’aw ānu] žedu.  
           DEM 1SG-ATTR.OBL-EQUAT be.PRS.NEG DEM.PL.ABS  
           ‘They are not like the one I have.’ (Xanes kono užin, sis kidno:29)
- b. \*ānu endiw dä-zo-q’aw žedu.  
           be.PRS.NEG DEM 1SG-ATTR.OBL-EQUAT DEM.PL.ABS

In questions formed on the basis of the copular clause, the interrogative marker attaches to the complement of the predicate, regardless of its placement in the clause. For instance:

- (33) Debi-yä nece huinaw rež zow-n?  
           2SG.GEN1-INTERR so.much delicious meat.ABS.IV be.PST-PST.nWIT  
           ‘That so very delicious meat was yours?’ (Aliqilič:161)
- (34) a. Debi babiw-ä učitel (yoł)?  
           2SG.GEN1 father.ABS.I-INTERR teacher be.PRS  
           ‘Is the teacher your father?’  
           NOT: ‘Is your father a teacher?’

- b. Debi babiw učitel-ä (yoł)?  
     2SG.GEN1 father.ABS.I teacher-INTERR be.PRS  
     ‘Is your father a teacher?’  
     NOT: ‘Is the teacher your father?’

In embedded copular clauses, the order subject >> complement >> copula is fixed. Thus, the sentences below are unambiguous:

- (35) a. Debe-r r-uy-ä r-iy-x-änu [b-äži-ru  
     2SG-LAT IV-VAL-INTERR IV-know-PRS-NEG IPL-lead-PST.PTCP  
     kamanda nemcaw-za-s yäl-ru-li]?  
     team.ABS.IPL German-OS.PL-GEN1 be.PRS-PST.PTCP-NMLZ  
     ‘You really don’t know that the winners were the German team?’  
     b. Debe-r r-uy-ä r-iy-x-änu [nemcaw-za-s  
     2SG-LAT IV-VAL-INTERR IV-know-PRS-NEG German-OS.PL-GEN1  
     b-äži-ru kamanda yäl-ru-li]?  
     IPL-lead-PST.PTCP team.ABS.IPL be.PRS-PST.PTCP-NMLZ  
     ‘You really don’t know that the German team was the winner?’

## 2.4. Existential verbs and existential clauses

Tsez does not have a separate verb meaning ‘exist’; existential constructions have the verb ‘be’ as their predicate. Existential clauses and possessive clauses (section 2.5 below) are structured similarly. They necessarily include the verb of existence (which can be omitted in main clauses) and the absolute pivot: the expression denoting the entity whose existence is under discussion.

Word order plays a crucial role in distinguishing existential constructions from locative constructions. The order of constituents in the main clause is generally quite free, and noun phrases can appear both before and after the verb (see CH. YY [Word order]). Despite this relatively free word order, the existential pivot must precede the verb of existence, preferably immediately adjacently. The locative and/or temporal expression serving as the scene-setter for the existential either appears to the left of the pivot, on the left periphery of the existential clause, or after the verb. For example, in (38), the scene-setting locative expression is *nelä yunoł' ñ'iri* ‘up on that tree’, and the pivot is *ceyes xexoyabi tel yołäsi muži* ‘a nest with eaglets in it’.

- (36) Howži t'o r-od-a šebin änu.  
     now here IV-do-INF thing.ABS.IV be.PRS.NEG  
     ‘There is nothing to do here now.’ (Aliqilič:123)
- (37) Nełä-q sidä pu-r-äz-a aluk'a-t'a,  
     DEM.nI-POSS.ESS one.OBL side-OS-SUPER-DIST-IN.ESS white-DISTR  
     sidä pu-r-äz-a c'uda-t'a heneš-ya-bi  
     one.OBL side-OS-SUPER-DIST-IN.ESS red-DISTR apple-OS-PL.ABS.nIPL  
     zow-n.  
     be.PST-PST.nWIT  
     ‘On one side it [the tree] had white apples, and on the other side red apples.’ (Xanes  
     ñ'ono užin, sis kidno:72)
- (38) Nełä yun-o-ñ'iri cey-e-s xexoy-a-bi

DEM.OBL	tree-OS-SUPER.ESS	above	eagle-OS-GEN1	youngling-OS-PL.ABS.nIPL
teł	yoł-äsi	muži	zow-n.	
inside	be.PRS-RES	nest.ABS.III	be.PST-PST.nWIT	

'Up on that tree, there was a nest with eaglets in it.' (fAliqilič:132)

## EXISTENTIAL CONSTRUCTION

If the locative phrase and the pivot both precede the verb but appear in the order pivot >> locative, the sentence loses its existential interpretation and becomes a statement about the location of the nest, as in (39a). Similarly, if the absolute noun phrase appears after the verb, it cannot be interpreted as an existential pivot (with one exception, which we will discuss below). The relevant example is (39b). See also Testelec (1997: 267) for similar discussion and examples from related languages.

- (39) a. Cey-e-s xexoy-a-bi teł yoł-äsi  
           eagle-OS-GEN1 youngling-OS-PL.ABS.nIPL inside be.PRS-RES  
           muži nelä yun-o-λ' λ'iri zow-n.  
           nest.ABS.III DEM.OBL tree-OS-SUPER.ESS above be.PST-PST.nWIT  
           'A/the nest with eaglets in it was up on that tree.' LOCATIVE CONSTRUCTION
- b. Nelä yun-o-λ' λ'iri zow-n  
       DEM.OBL tree-OS-SUPER.ESS above be.PST-PST.nWIT  
       cey-e-s xexoy-a-bi teł yoł-äsi muži.  
       eagle-OS-GEN1 youngling-OS-PL.ABS.nIPL inside be.PRS-RES nest.ABS.III  
       'The nest with eaglets in it was up on that tree.'<sup>5</sup> LOCATIVE CONSTRUCTION

In (40a), we find an existential construction with the scene-setting expression in the postverbal position. If the pivot in (40a) appears postverbally, the sentence becomes a (non-existential) statement about the location of a widow (regardless of the position of the locative) (40b-d):

- (40) a. Sis q'orolay zow-n nelä y'utk-ä teł.  
       one widow.ABS.II be.PST-PST.nWIT DEM.n1.OBL house-IN.ESS inside  
       'There was a widow inside that house.' EXISTENTIAL CONSTRUCTION
- b. Zow-n sis q'orolay nelä y'utk-ä teł.  
       be.PST-PST.nWIT one widow.ABS.II DEM.n1.OBL house-IN.ESS inside  
       'One widow was inside that house.' LOCATIVE CONSTRUCTION
- c. Zow-n nelä y'utk-ä teł sis q'orolay.  
       be.PST-PST.nWIT DEM.n1.OBL house-IN.ESS inside one widow.ABS.II  
       'One widow was inside that house.' LOCATIVE CONSTRUCTION
- d. Nelä y'utk-ä teł zow-n sis q'orolay.  
       DEM.n1.OBL house-IN.ESS inside be.PST-PST.nWIT one widow.ABS.II  
       'One widow was inside that house.' LOCATIVE CONSTRUCTION

---

<sup>5</sup> Postverbal subjects are typically interpreted as definite or specific, as discussed in CH. YY [INF STR].

Tsez does not have determiners, so the expression of (in)definiteness is achieved via a combination of word order, topic marking, and contextual factors. In the existential construction, the pivot cannot appear with the topic markers *-n(o)* and *-gon* (see CH. YY [Particles]). If *-n(o)* is used with the pivot, it can only be interpreted as the linking particle. For example:

- (41) Nelä        y<sup>c</sup>utk-ä        teł        sis        q'orolay-n  
DEM.n1.OBL    house-IN.ESS    inside    one        widow.ABS.II-and  
nelä-s                        kid-no                        zow-n.  
DEM.n1.OBL-GEN1    girl.ABS.II-and                be.PST-PST.nWIT  
‘Inside that house there was a widow and her daughter.’ (¶Aliqilič:32)

If the constituent that precedes the existential predicate combines with *-gon*, the sentence cannot be interpreted as existential:

- (42) Nelä        y<sup>c</sup>utk-ä        teł        sis        q'orolay-gon        zow-n.  
DEM.n1.OBL    house-IN.ESS    inside    one        widow.ABS.II-CONTR    be.PST-PST.nWIT  
‘As for a widow, she was inside that house.’  
NOT: ‘Inside that house there was a WIDOW.’

Normally the order of constituents in the existential construction is *scene-setting expression—existential pivot—existential verb*, as shown in several examples above. A regular deviation from that order is observed in story openings, where the first element is the predicate, followed by the pivot. For example:<sup>6</sup>

- (43) Zow-n-λax                        zow-n-č'ey-λax                        b<sup>c</sup>eλo-n,  
BE.PST-PST.nWIT-QUOT                be.PST-PST.nWIT-NEG-QUOT    pig.ABS.III-and  
boc'i-n,                                ziru-n,                                q<sup>c</sup>ay-no.  
wolf.ABS.III-and                        fox.ABS.III-and                        hare.ABS.III-and  
‘Once upon a time, there lived a pig, a wolf, a fox, and a hare.’ (K’et’us hunar:1)

Note that this story-opener does not include a scene-setting expression, so the order existential predicate >> pivot may serve to differentiate this construction from a categorical structure such as the one shown in (39). With the exception of story-openers, existential pivots cannot follow the existential predicate. Meanwhile, as examples (39) and (42) show, intransitive subjects outside existentials have more placement options.

Another point of difference between intransitive subjects (including subjects of unergatives) and existential pivots is that intransitive subjects can bind reflexives in their own clause, while pivots cannot. Consider the following sentence, which can only be a statement about the devil’s location, but not an existential statement (the corresponding English existential is equally unacceptable).

- (44) Nelä    neło-z                        ciq-ko                                šayt'an

---

<sup>6</sup> See also Ch. YY [ADvP] for a discussion of this construction.

REFL. nI-GEN2	forest-POSS.ESS	devil.ABS.III
zow-n/b-iči-n.		
be.PST-PST.nWIT/III-stay-PST.nWIT		
‘A/The devil <sub>i</sub> was in his <sub>i</sub> forest.’		
NOT: ‘There was a devil <sub>i</sub> in his <sub>i</sub> forest.’		

In sum, we find structural evidence in support of the distinction between absolute subjects in non-existential intransitive clauses and existential pivots. As we show in the next section, there is a strong similarity between existential pivots and nouns denoting possessa in possessive clauses; both types of clauses include existential predicates.

## 2.5. Intransitive verbs in possessive clauses

Tsez does not have a transitive verb with the meaning ‘have’, and possession is expressed by a particular subtype of the existential clause, which features the verb ‘be’ (*yol* in the present and *zow-* in the past), the inchoative ‘become’ (AGR-*oq-*), or more rarely such verbs as ‘appear’ or ‘arrive’. All these verbs take the absolute argument denoting the possessor as their subject, and the denotation of the possessor appears in genitive 1 (GEN1) for permanent possession and poss-essive (POSS.ESS) for temporary possession. There is no distinction between alienable and inalienable possession in Tsez.

Similarities between non-possessive existential constructions and possessive constructions are therefore due to the shared predicate meaning ‘be’. The two constructions also have similar word order properties, with the absolute noun phrase appearing immediately before the verb in both. In the existential construction, the scene-setting expression appears in one of the spatial forms or is expressed by an adverbial phrase; the external possessor in the possessive construction has more restricted encoding criteria. The genitive of the external possessor typically appears either on the left edge of the clause, as in examples (45)-(48), or on the right, as in example (50). While other placements are less acceptable, they are not impossible, as (51) shows; in that example, a heavy constituent (*mi elo λ'irir iziranix*) modifying the absolute precedes the genitive of external possession.

Some examples:

- (45) Nesi-s            rok'-λ'o-si            šebin            r-oq-no.  
DEM.1-GEN1 heart-SUPR.ESS-ATTR thing.ABS.IV IV-become-PST.nWIT  
‘He had a wish.’ (lit.: a thing existing on heart)
- (46) Sidä            eniw-s            r-od-a-r-is-a            šebin  
one.OBL mother-GEN1 IV-do-INF-IV-take-INF thing.ABS.IV  
koλ'i-x-ānu-si        kid            zow-n.  
learn-PRS-NEG-ATTR girl.ABS.II        be.PST-PST.nWIT  
‘One mother had a daughter who had no idea how to do a thing.’ (Eniwn kidno:1)
- (47) ſoloq-za-s            zigara            b-oλi-x.  
young person-OS.PL-GEN1 complaint.ABS.III III-appear-PRS  
‘The young people have a complaint.’ (Ražbadinno, Tawadin:13)
- (48) Neł            šahar-y-ä            teł            sid            xan-e-s            kid  
DEM.ni.OBL city-OS-IN.ESS inside one.OBL        king-OS-GEN1 girl.ABS.II

zow-n.

be.PST-PST.nWIT

‘In that city, a king had a daughter.’ (Xanes ꝑono užin, sis kidno:7)

If the genitive-absolutive order is reversed, the sentence loses its possessive interpretation and has the meaning of a specificationnal copular clause (see also ex. (34) above).

- (49) Mašina murad-e-s zow-s.  
 car.ABS.III Murad-OS-GEN1 be.PST-PST.WIT  
 ‘The car was Murad’s.’  
 NOT: ‘Murad had a car.’

As the following examples indicate, the same genitive-absolutive alignment is observed under negation as well:

- (50) T’o r-od-a šebin ānu xex-za-s.  
 here IV-do-INF thing.ABS.IV be.PRS.NEG child-OS-GEN1  
 ‘Children have nothing to do here.’
- (51) Mi elo λ’iri-r Ø-izi-r-ani-x elu-s  
 2SG.ABS.(I) there above-LAT I-rise-CAUS-MASD-AD.ESS 1PL-GEN1  
 res-no maħal-no ānu.  
 possibility.ABS.III-and might.ABS.III-and be.NEG  
 ‘We have no ability or might to lift you up there.’ (QAliqilič:113)
- (52) Dey eλ’i at’ono-λ’ otpuska ānu.  
 1SG.GEN1 past summer-SUPER.ESS vacation.ABS.III be.PRS.NEG  
 ‘I did not have a vacation last summer.’

As mentioned earlier (Ch. YY[Case system]), Tsez grammar encodes a contrast between permanent and temporary possession. In possessive intransitive clauses, the use of the genitive indicates permanent possession and the use of the poss-essive indicates temporary possession. Compare the following examples:

- (53) Murad-e-s mašina zow-ä?  
 Murad-OS-GEN1 car.ABS.III be.PST-INTERR  
 ‘Did Murad have (own) a car?’
- (54) Murad-qo mašina zow-ä?  
 Murad-POSS.ESS car.ABS.III be.PST-INTERR  
 ‘Did Murad have a car (for temporary use)?’

The difference between the possessor genitive in the possessive constructions and the genitive accompanying the predicative nominal in complex verbs (as in examples (9), (10), (11), (12) above) is more nuanced. Absolutive noun phrases in Tsez can be discontinuous (see CH. YY [Noun phrase]), so the separation of the genitive and the noun it modifies is to be expected. Following this logic, we could potentially analyze possessive constructions the same way: the genitive modifies the pivot, and possessive clauses are simply existentials that lack a scene-

setting expression. Then a sentence like (48), with irrelevant details omitted, would literally mean, "His daughter existed." Thus:

- (55) [Nesi-s            kid]            zow-s.  
       DEM.1-GEN1    girl.ABS.II      be.PST-PST.WIT  
       PIVOT                                  EXISTENTIAL PREDICATE  
       ‘He had a daughter.’

Two considerations suggest that this analysis is incorrect. First, discontinuous noun phrases are subject to the restriction that the modifier cannot follow the head noun (see Ch. YY [Noun phrase]). In possessive sentences, however, the possessor can easily appear after the verb—see example (50) above. Second, the possessor genitive in possessive constructions can bind the absolute complement, whereas the possessor genitive inside a noun phrase cannot:<sup>7</sup>

- (56) Yiła k'et'u-s nelä neło-s bet'erhan yoł-ä?  
DEM.NI cat-GEN1 REFL.NI-GEN1 master.ABS.I be.PRS-INTERR  
‘Does this cat have an owner?’

(57) \*[Madina-s nelä neło-s q’as] t’ubazi b-oq-si.  
Madina-GEN1 REFL.NI-GEN1 wish.ABS.III fulfill III-become-PST.WIT  
(Madina’s own wish became true.’)

Based on these considerations, we suggest that the genitive in possessive sentences is a separate constituent from the existential genitive modifier, and it maps onto the highest argument in the possessive clause. The example (48) above will thus have the following structure:

- |      |                      |             |                |
|------|----------------------|-------------|----------------|
| (58) | [nesi-s]             | [kid]       | zow-s.         |
|      | DEM.1-GEN1           | girl.ABS.II | be.PST-PST.WIT |
|      | HIGHEST              | PIVOT       | EXISTENTIAL    |
|      | ARGUMENT             |             | PREDICATE      |
|      | 'He had a daughter.' |             |                |

The genitive is therefore similar to the scene-setting expressions we observe in genuine existential sentences (see section 2.4 above). As a genitive of the external possessor functioning at the clause level, the possessive genitive contrasts with the adnominal genitive (see König and Haspelmath 1998; Lander 2008; Payne and Barshi 1999; Vergnaud and Zubizarreta 1992, a.o. for the distinction between external possessors and adnominal possessors). The use of genitive to express the external possessor is quite common in the Nakh-Dagestanian family; for example, it is observed in Archi (Kibrik 1977), as well Tsez's immediate family group: Avar (Alekseev and

<sup>7</sup> As with existentials proper, the possesum cannot antecede its own reflexive in the possessor phrase:

- (i) \*Nesä nesi-z k'et'u-s bet'erhan yoł.  
 REFL.I-GEN2 cat-GEN1 master.ABS.I be.PRS  
 ('The cat's owner exists.')

Ataev 1997: 46), Hunzib (van den Berg 1995: 42ff.), Khwarshi (Khalilova 2009: 70), and Hinuq (Forker 2013: 534, 555).

## 2.6. The accidental construction

In the accidental construction, the predicate (usually denoting a state) is intransitive, but the clause can include a poss-essive adjunct referring to the inadvertent agent. Intransitive verbs that participate in this construction are unaccusative.

- (59) a. Aki                          r-exu-s.  
           window.ABS.IV              IV-break.ITR-PST.WIT  
           ‘The window broke.’
- b. Eniw-q                          aki                          r-exu-s.  
           mother-POSS.ESS            window.ABS.IV            IV-break.ITR-PST.WIT  
           ‘Mother accidentally broke the window.’ (“The window broke on mother.”)
- (60) a. Uži                          bet’u-k’ołanay-x.  
           boy.ABS.I                  jump-PRS  
           ‘The boy is jumping.’
- b. \*Eniw-q                          uži                          bet’u-k’ołanay-x.  
           mother-POSS.ESS            boy.ABS.I                  jump-PRS  
           (“The boy is jumping on mother’s watch.”)

The state of affairs denoted by the accidental construction is perceived as something that was unintended by the agent (see Kittilä 2007a for an overview and discussion of cross-linguistic distribution). For instance, in (59b), the continuation ‘but she wanted it that way’ is infelicitous, as indicated in the example below:

- (61) Eniw-q                          aki                          r-exu-s  
           mother-POSS.ESS            window.ABS.IV            IV-break.ITR-PST.WIT  
           (#amma                        howži                        neło-s                        murad                        b-oy-s).  
           but                            that                            DEM.n1-GEN                goal.ABS.III            III-do-PST.WIT  
           ‘Mother accidentally broke the window (#but that was her goal).’

The transitive equivalent of (59b), involving a volitional agent, has the predicate AGR-*exur*-‘break (tr.)’ (*exu-r-* ‘break.ITR-CAUS’). In that construction, the continuation indicating the agent’s intent is felicitous:

- (62) Eni-y-ä                          aki                          r-exu-r-si  
           mother-ERG                  window.ABS.IV            IV-break-CAUS-PST.WIT  
           (amma                        howži                        neło-s                        murad                        b-oy-s).  
           but                            that                            DEM.n1-GEN                goal.ABS.III            III-do-PST.WIT  
           ‘Mother broke the window (but that was her goal).’

The word order in the accidental construction is not rigid; however, we note a strong preference for placing the noun phrase expressing the inadvertent agent at the left or right periphery of the clause; orders such as (63a) are judged awkward:

The accidental construction is not the only one where the agentive participant appears in the poss-essive form. It may be possible to find a general meaning component for poss-essive noun phrases denoting participants with incomplete agency, but even if so, it is still important to differentiate several constructions involving the poss-essive agent, including the accidental construction and the potential construction discussed in section 3.2 below.

## 2.7. Intransitive symmetrical predicates

Symmetrical predicates such as ‘collide’, ‘marry’, and ‘meet’ entail that the main participant in an event is a plurality of individuals. Tsez has two ways of expressing such a plurality: either the subject is expressed in the plural (or by a coordinate noun phrase; see Ch. YY [Noun phrase]) or the subject is expressed in the singular accompanied by a subcategorized adjunct in an oblique form. Consider both options for the verbs meaning ‘mix’:



The verb ‘collide’ takes the absolute subject and an adjunct in the cont-essive (for animates) and poss-essive (for inanimates, even the ones that are mobile):<sup>8</sup>

<sup>8</sup> If one of the participants is animate and the other inanimate, the construction with an adjunct is strongly preferred over the construction with a coordinate DP. Thus:

- (67) a. Irbahin-no halmay-no č'ayi-s.  
          Ibrahim.ABS.I-and friend-ABS.I-and collide-PST.WIT  
          'Ibrahim and his friend collided.' (~quarrelled)
- b. Irbahin halmay-e-ł č'ayi-s.  
          Ibrahim.ABS.I friend-OS-CONT.ESS collide-PST.WIT  
          'Ibrahim collided with a friend.' (~quarrelled)
- (68) a. K'onk'a-n mašina-n č'ayi-s.  
          bicycle.ABS.III-and car-ABS.III-and collide-PST.WIT  
          'A bicycle and a car collided.'
- K'onk'a mašina-q č'ayi-s.  
          bicycle.ABS.III car-POSS.ESS collide-PST.WIT  
          'A bicycle collided with a car.'

The compound verb 'meet' can take an absolute subject and an adjunct in the apud-essive:

- (69) a. Halmay-bi k<sup>w</sup>eze b-oq-si.  
          friend-PL.ABS.IPL meet IPL-become-PST.WIT  
          'The friends met.'
- b. Žedu halmay-za-de k<sup>w</sup>eze b-oq-si.  
          DEM.PL.ABS.(IPL) friend-OS.PL-APUD.ESS meet IPL-become-PST.WIT  
          'They met with friends.'

The verb AGR-*iħanad-* 'fight' can take a plural absolute subject or a subject with an adjunct in the apud-lative:

- (70) a. Žedu b-iħanay-s.  
          DEM.PL.ABS.(IPL) IPL-fight-PST.WIT  
          'They fought (against) each other.'
- 

- (i) a. Irbahin k'onk'a-q č'ayi-s.  
          Ibrahim.ABS.I bicycle-POSS.ESS collide-PST.WIT  
          'Ibrahim collided with a bicycle.'
- b. #Irbahin-no k'onk'a-n č'ayi-s.  
          Ibrahim.ABS.I-and bicycle-ABS.III-and collide-PST.WIT  
          ('Ibrahim and a bicycle collided.')
- (ii) a. K'onk'a k'et'u-ł č'ayi-s.  
          bicycle-ABS.III cat-CONT.ESS collide-PST.WIT  
          'A/the bicycle collided with a/the cat.'
- b. #K'onk'a-n k'et'u-n č'ayi-s.  
          bicycle-ABS.III-and cat-ABS.III-and collide-PST.WIT  
          ('A/the bicycle and a/the cat collided.')

b.	Žedu	tušman-za-de-r	b-ihanay-s.
	DEM.PL.ABS.(IPL)	enemy-OS.PL-APUD-LAT	IPL-fight-PST.WIT
'They fought (against) the enemy.'			

The verb AGR-*ik'*- ‘go’ used in the meaning ‘marry’ (only about a woman) combines with the ad-essive adjunct and does not allow a coordinate structure subject:<sup>9</sup>

(71)	Dey	kid	maħama-z	¶Ali-x	y-ik'i-x.
	1SG.GEN	daughter.ABS.II	Mohammed-GEN2	Ali-AD.ESS	II-go-PRS
'My daughter is going to marry Ali Magomedov.'					

## 2.8. An idiomatic expression with an intransitive subject

Subject idioms are generally less common than idiomatic expressions with objects, and we would like to mention several of them here. We have been able to observe at least one idiomatic expression with the absolutive subject:

(72)	Ziru	λuλi-x.
	fox.ABS.III	give.birth-PRS
'It is a sun shower (clear-sky hail).' (lit.: fox is giving birth) <sup>10</sup>		

See also section 3.1.3 for idiomatic expressions with ergative noun phrases.

## 3. Transitive verbs

Verbs with two or more arguments form two main constructions: the ergative construction and the potential construction. Since there is no difference between transitive and ditransitive constructions with respect to the encoding of the agent and patient, we will discuss the encoding of those argument in this section, and in section 4, we will concentrate on the encoding of the third argument of dit transitives.

---

<sup>9</sup> The meaning of ‘marry’ for males is expressed by a transitive predicate *baru y-ow-* ‘wife II-bring’; the name of the bride can appear in place of *baru* ‘wife’ thus:

- (i)
  - a. ¶Al-ä zarema y-ow-si.  
Ali-ERG Zarema.ABS.II II-bring-PST.WIT  
'Ali married Zarema.'
  - b. ¶Al-ä baru y-ow-si.  
Ali-ERG wife.ABS.II II-bring-PST.WIT  
'Ali got married.'

<sup>10</sup> There must be some mythological connection between sun-showers and foxes, because a number of languages refer to sun-showers as “a fox’s wedding” or “a fox giving birth,” including even some southwestern English dialects. See <http://linguistlist.org/issues/9/9-1795.html> for a collection of data and further references.

### 3.1. Ergative construction

#### 3.1.1. Simple verbal predicates

The basic construction for two-place non-affective predicates is the ergative construction, in which the subject argument appears in the ergative, the object argument is in the absolutive, and the agreement, if visible, is with the absolutive argument.

- (73) Zir-ä k'et'u nelä neło-de sadaq idu-yor  
 fox-ERG cat.ABS.III REFL.nI-APUD.ESS together home-VERS  
 b-iži-n.  
 III-lead-PST.nWIT  
 'The fox<sub>i</sub> took the cat with him<sub>i</sub> to his<sub>i</sub> home.' (based on K'et'un zirun:9)

A large number of transitive verbs that are causativized from intransitives take ergative and absolutive arguments. For example, the intransitive verb *quq-* 'be dry; dry up (intr.)' turns into a transitive with the addition of the causative suffix:

- (74) a. Moči beq-ā-r quqi-x.  
 field.ABS.III sun-IN-LAT dry-PRS  
 'The ground dries up in the sun.'  
 b. Beq-ä moči quq-ir-xo.  
 sun-ERG soil.ABS.III dry-CAUS-PRS  
 'The sun dries up the ground.'

This last example and the examples below show that the ergative-absolutive construction can be used with inanimate agents:

- (75) Łał-ä as r-iqir-si.  
 wind-ERG sky.ABS.IV IV-catch-PST.WIT  
 'The wind fogged up (lit.: caught) the sky.'
- (76) C'i-d-ä ɿa᷑yur y-iku-r-si.  
 fire-ERG mill.ABS.II II-burnINTR-CAUS-PST.WIT  
 'Fire burnt the mill.'
- (77) hukumat-y-ä xalq'i b-aλ'ir-xo.  
 government-OS-ERG people.ABS.IPL IPL-deceive-PRS  
 'The government deceives/is deceiving people.'
- (78) Heneš-yo-z ɿun-ä gagali b-oy-no.  
 apple-OS-GEN2 tree-ERG flower.ABS.III III-pull-PST.nWIT  
 'The apple tree blossomed.' (lit.: pulled flower)
- (79) Xirix-y-ä qaca r-eč'-xo.  
 saw-OS-ERG firewood.ABS.IV IV-cut-PRS  
 'A/the saw saws firewood.'
- (80) Yiła rek-ä h̥išimuku r-a᷑yi-x.  
 DEM key-ERG lock.ABS.IV IV-open-PRS  
 'This key opens the lock.'
- (81) Šud-ä taraw žek'u-s ɿamal b-it'zi b-äd-inč'i.

grave-ERG      except man-GEN1      character.ABS.III      III-straight      III-do.FUT-NEG  
 ‘You can’t teach an old dog new tricks.’ (lit.: Nothing except the grave will straighten out  
 the man’s nature/character)

We did not find restrictions on the use of inanimates in the ergative. However, there are some word order differences worth noting. While animate unergatives can appear anywhere in the clause (with the preferred positions being at the left edge, SOV, and after the verb, XOV), some inanimate unergatives are judged most natural when they follow rather than precede the object. Compare (75)-(81) above, in which the inanimate ergative preceded the object, with the following naturally occurring examples:

- (82) Ziru      ɬar-ä      b-is-no.  
 fox.ABS.III      belly-ERG      III-take-PST.nWIT  
  ‘The fox had a bad stomach ache.’ (lit.: the stomach took the fox)
- (83) ɬirba      k’ic-ä      Ø-is-xo.  
 guest.ABS.(I)      tooth-ERG      I-take-PRS  
  ‘The guest has a bad toothache.’ (lit.: the tooth takes the guest)
- (84) Eniw      q’im-ä      y-iži=y-oy-xo.  
 mother.ABS.II      head-ERG      II-carry=II-pull-PRS  
  ‘Mother has a headache.’ (lit.: the head carries-pulls Mother)

In these instances, typically representing situations of discomfort, the ergative noun phrase expresses the cause for discomfort and the absolute is the patient. Note that the verb is clearly transitive, and agrees with the absolute argument. The ergative can precede the object, although this order is judged less natural:

- (85) #K’ic-ä      ɬirba      Ø-is-xo.  
 tooth-ERG      guest.ABS.(I)      I-take-PRS  
  ‘The guest has a bad toothache.’ (lit.: the tooth takes the guest)

Judgements become sharper if the ergative noun phrase follows the verb. In contrast to other clauses with ergative noun phrases, postverbal ergatives for these expressions are considered unacceptable. Compare the acceptable (86) (based on (75)) and the unacceptable (87), based on (82):

- (86) As      r-iqir-si      ɬał-ä.  
 sky.ABS.IV      IV-catch-PST.WIT      wind-ERG  
  ‘The wind fogged up the sky.’
- (87) #Ziru      b-is-no      ɬar-ä.  
 fox.ABS.III      III-take-PST.nWIT      belly-ERG  
  (‘The fox had a bad stomach ache.’)

It is possible that these word order differences have something to do with animacy, but consider the following example where the ergative is again inanimate, and the absolute object denotes a human:

- (88) a. Zaman-ä yedu žek'u Ø-is-no.  
           time-ERG     DEM man.ABS.I I-take-PST.nWIT  
       b. Yedu žek'u Ø-is-no zaman-ä.  
           DEM man.ABS.I I-take-PST.nWIT time- ERG  
           ‘Time took away this man.’

In another special use of the ergative-absolutive construction with an inanimate ergative, the same noun appears in both cases, with the absolute preceding the ergative; such sentences are interpreted as representing internally-caused events. Their predicates are clearly transitive, as indicated by the ergative argument and, sometimes, the presence of causative marking on the verb. This construction is not very productive.

- (89) C'i c'i-d-ä r-iku-r-xo.  
       fire.ABS.IV fire-OS-ERG IV-burn-CAUS-PRS  
       ‘Fire burns.’
- (90) Hek'u hek'-ä b-aħi-r-xo.  
       potato.ABS.III potato-ERG III-boil-CAUS-PRS  
       ‘The potatoes are boiling.’

Since the ergative and in-essive forms of most Tsez nouns are identical, one could imagine that the transitive with the internal-causation reading takes a null ergative pronoun, and the form glossed as ergative is actually in-essive. Thus, (89) could be hypothetically represented as (91), with the null pronominal ergative:

- (91) *pro* c'i c'i-d-ä r-iku-r-xo.  
       fire.ABS.IV fire-OS-IN.ESS IV-burn-CAUS-PRS  
       ‘Fire burns.’

At least two considerations argue against such a representation. First, there are some nouns, a subset of nominals with the oblique stem in *-o*, that have a zero ending in the ergative (see CH. YY [Case morphology]). Such ergatives, which differ in form from the in-essive, occur in the construction discussed here, indicating strongly that the second noun is indeed ergative, not in-essive:

- (92) Nur nur-ä/nur-mo-Ø qašik'-er-xo.  
       light.ABS.III light-ERG/light-OS-ERG shine-CAUSE-PRS  
       ‘The light is shining.’
- (93) Čuret' čuret'-y-ä/čuret'-yo-Ø bok'-xo.  
       whip.ABS.III whip-OS-ERG/whip-OS-ERG hit-PRS  
       ‘The whip hits.’

Second, it is normally possible to replace a null pronoun with an overt noun phrase without a change in meaning. No such replacement is available in (89). Compare (89) with the example below, where the hypothetical null pronoun is replaced with an overt ergative noun phrase; the sentence no longer has the interpretation of an internally caused event:

- (94) Šayt'an-z-ä c'i c'i-d-ä r-iku-r-xo.  
 devil-OS-ERG fire.ABS.IV fire-OS-IN.ESS IV-burn-CAUS-PRS  
 'Devil is burning fire inside the fire.'

A common use of the internally-caused ergative construction is found with the word 'rain'. While the intransitive verb AGR-ay 'come' can be used to express the event of rain falling (95), we also found the (di)transitive verb AGR-*egir-* 'send' used without a subject in this context (96a). The alternative, with the ergative noun phrase 'rain' present, is considered possible but redundant and therefore awkward (96b).

- (95) Qema r-ay-x.  
 rain.ABS.IV IV-come-PRS  
 'It is raining.'
- (96) a. Qema r-egir-xo.  
 rain.ABS.IV IV-send-PRS  
 'It is raining.'  
 b. #Qema qem-ä r-egir-xo.  
 rain.ABS.IV rain-ERG IV-send-PRS  
 'It is raining.'

Generic transitive constructions with an arbitrary animate subject often express that subject with a null pronominal. This use is quite common in proverbs and set expressions; consider the following example:

- (97) *pro*<sub>arb</sub> q'ëim-zo oz-ä-si ñexu y-ukay-x-änu  
 self-GEN2 eye-IN.ESS-ATTR log.ABS.II II-see-PRES-NEG  
 žek'u-z oz-ä-si mus b-ukay-x.  
 man-GEN2 eye-IN.ESS-ATTR hair.ABS.III III-see-PRES  
 'Why worry about a speck in your friend's eye when you have a log in your own?' (lit.: one does not notice a log in his own eye but sees a tiny hair in another's eye)

Several properties of the ergative's syntactic distribution distinguish it from the absolute object and identify its higher position in the syntactic structure compared to the object. In the ergative construction, the ergative noun phrase can antecede a reflexive in the absolute position, but not the other way around (see CH. YY [Reflexives and anaphora]). Additionally, the ergative, but not the absolute, forms a dependency with the subject or object of the higher clause in embedded infinitival and masdar clauses (thus participating in subject/object control), see CH. YY [Complement clauses]. Finally, the ergative and absolute noun phrases differ with respect to the formation of masdar relative clauses (CH. YY [Relative clauses]). Independent evidence shows that masdar relative clauses can relativize on any argument except the highest one (the subject); for instance, absolute subjects cannot relativize in masdar relative clauses. All these properties identify the ergative noun phrase as subject and the absolute noun phrase as object.

### 3.1.2. Complex transitive predicates

A great number of transitive predicates are complex, consisting of the light verb AGR-*od*- ‘do; make’ and a preverbal component. Such verbs are the transitive counterparts of intransitive light verb constructions with *-oq-*. Two patterns of agreement are observed in transitive light verb constructions (see CH. YY [PredP] for a detailed discussion). If a complex verb includes a non-nominal predicative complement, the light verb agrees with the absolutive argument outside the complex predicate. For example, *žažaru* AGR-*od* ‘thin out’ agrees with *bix* in (98), and *garzi* AGR-*od* ‘ask for, request’ agrees with *‘aq’lu* and then with *posu* in (99).

- (98) Nes-ä            bix            žažaru r-oy-s.  
       DEM.I-ERG     grass.ABS.IV   thin   IV-do-PST.WIT  
       ‘He thinned the grass.’
- (99) ɻaq’lu            garzi            b-od-o,            posu            garzi  
       advice.ABS.III request        III-do-IMPER    wealth.ABS.III request  
       b-ädi-n.  
       III-do-PROH  
       ‘Ask for wisdom, not for riches.’ (lit.: request advice, do not request riches)

Many other complex verbs are represented by a combination of a noun in the absolutive and AGR-*od*-, ‘do, make’, where that noun serves as the absolutive object of the clause and the light verb agrees with it. A good number of nouns co-occurring with light verbs are part of the Tsez nominal lexicon (including earlier borrowings). The noun takes the place of the absolutive object, and the participant that corresponds to the notional patient of the event is then expressed either as an adnominal genitive (as in (100)) or as a noun phrase in a spatial form:

- (100) B-‘eya-t’ä-ni-z-ä            b-‘eže-t’ä-ni-za-s            ɻurmat  
       IPL-young-DISTR-DEF-OS.PL-ERG    IPL-old-DISTR-DEF-OS.PL-GEN1   respect.ABS.III  
       b-oy-x.  
       III-do-PRS  
       ‘The young respect the old.’ (*ɻurmat bod-* ‘respect’)
- (101) Kid-b-ä            eniw-q/ениw-r            kumak            b-oy-x.  
       girl-OS-ERG    mother-POSS.ESS/mother-LAT help.ABS.III   III-do-PRS  
       ‘The girl helps mother.’ (*kumak bod-* ‘help’)
- (102) Aždah-ä            nesi-z            k’onč’-a-λ’            raq            r-oy-s.  
       dragon-ERG      DEM.I-GEN2    leg-OS-SUPER.ESS      wound.ABS.IV IV-do-PST.WIT  
       ‘The dragon wounded him in the leg.’ (*raq rod-* ‘wound’)
- (103) Nes-ä            mežu-r            gap            y-oy-x.  
       DEM.I-ERG      2PL-LAT        joke.ABS.II      II-do-PRS  
       ‘He is joking with you.’ (*gap yod-* ‘joke’)

Example (104) shows the use of the ergative construction for expressing the notion of occupation: the light verb combines with the abstract nominal derived from the profession/occupation title:

- (104) ɻaž-ä            šopir-li            r-oy-x.

Hadji-ERG      driver-NMLZ.ABS.IV      IV-do-PRS  
 ‘Hadji works as a driver.’ (“does driverhood”)

The use of light verbs for complex-verb derivation is very productive. Some of the nouns occurring with AGR-*od*- are new borrowings, mostly from Russian—and they are not always nouns in the source language. For example, in (105), the two recent Russian borrowings are indeed nouns, but in (106), the borrowing *mišayat* comes from a verb (either third-person singular or, less likely, infinitive), yet the light verb agrees with *mišayat* in gender III as if it were a noun.<sup>11</sup>

- (105) Hakim-ä      yude      sabranya      b-od-a  
 boss-ERG      tomorrow      meeting.ABS.III      III-do-INF  
 palan      b-oy-s.  
 plan.ABS.III      III-do-PST.WIT  
 ‘The boss planned to have a meeting tomorrow.’
- (106) Mež-ä      dä-r      mišayat      b-oy-x.  
 2PL-ERG      1SG-LAT      interference.ABS.III      III-do-PRS  
 ‘You are in my way.’ (lit.: you are doing bothering to me)

All the complex transitive verbs shown above take the absolute and ergative, but the other arguments presupposed by their argument structure have to be expressed in oblique cases, as shown.

### 3.1.3. Idiomatic expressions with the ergative subject

Finally, we would like to mention several idioms that take an ergative subject. Subject idioms with transitive verbs are generally quite rare; in English, just a couple such subject idioms, such as (*Has the cat got your tongue?*), compete with a plethora of object idioms. Tsez exhibits the same misbalance, with multiple object idioms and, as far as we have seen, just a couple of idiomatic expressions with the ergative subject. The first one has to do with astronomical eclipses; it can appear with two different interchangeable verbs ('eat' and 'catch'):

- (107) a.      T'ont'oħ-ä/t'unt'uħ-ä buq'      b-ac'-xo.  
 darkness-ERG      sun.ABS.III      III-eat.TR-PRS  
 ‘There is a solar eclipse.’ (lit.: darkness eats the sun)
- b.      T'ont'oħ-ä/t'unt'uħ-ä buc      b-iqir-no.  
 darkness-ERG      moon.ABS.III      III-catch-PST.nWIT  
 ‘There was a lunar eclipse.’ (lit.: darkness caught the moon)

Another idiomatic expression is as follows:

- (108) Žek'u-z      k'et'-ä      aw      b-iqär-inč'i.

---

<sup>11</sup> One could argue that the infinitive is a nominal form; however, Avar infinitives in -ze/-zi do not have nominal properties when they occur in constructions with a light verb. The infinitival status of these forms in Avar is therefore irrelevant.

person-GEN2 cat-ERG mouse.ABS.III III-catch.FUT-NEG  
 ‘Your neighbor’s cat won’t catch your mice.’ = ‘Do not expect help from strangers.’  
 (lit.: someone else’s cat won’t catch a mouse)

There is another subject idiom that involves the ergative of *e* ‘blood’; this expression is most often used when describing the behavior of animals that are acting dangerous or belligerent, for example:

- (109) E-y-ä debi yw<sup>ay</sup> b-ik’-ur-xosi (yoł).  
 blood-OS-ERG 2SG.GEN1 dog.ABS.III III-burn.ITR-CAUS-PRS.PTCP be.PRS  
 ‘Your dog is being aggressive.’ (lit.: blood is burning your dog)

When used to describe a person’s behavior, this idiom conveys irony or sarcasm, talking about someone who lost their temper. Thus:

- (110) Sułłi-n e-y-ä ža Ø-ik’-ur-si.  
 suddenly-and blood-OS-ERG DEM.ABS(I)-and I-burn.ITR-CAUS-PST.WIT  
 ‘And suddenly he blew a gasket.’ (lit.: ... blood burned him)

### 3.2. Potential construction

If a transitive verb appears in the optative or in the potential form in *-el-*<sup>12</sup> its agent will appear in the poss-essive and its patient in the absolute. Compare the transitive clause in (111a) and the optative form in (111b). (112) contrasts a transitive clause (a) with its potential-form counterpart (b):

- (111) a. El-ä yedu t’ek t’et’er-si.  
 1PL-ERG DEM book.ABS.II read-PST.WIT  
 ‘We read that book.’  
 b. Elu-q yedu t’ek t’et’r-\*(oł).  
 1PL-POSS.ESS DEM book.ABS.II read-OPT  
 ‘We are able to read that book.’
- (112) a. El-ä yedu t’ek t’et’er-si.  
 1PL-ERG DEM book.ABS.II read-PST.WIT  
 ‘We read that book.’  
 b. Elu-q yedu t’ek t’et’ra-\*(ł-)xo.  
 1PL-POSS.ESS DEM book.ABS.II read-POT-PRS  
 ‘We are/will be able to read that book.’

In complex verbs, the light verb appears in the optative or potential form:

---

<sup>12</sup> Recall that the optative is a regular tense-aspect-mood form in Tsez, and thus largely in complementary distribution with other tense-aspect-mood forms. The potential suffix derives a new verb stem which can then be conjugated in the usual way. See CH. YY[VERB MORPH] for details.

- (113) a. Besuroqu-z-ä riło yank'izi r-oq-si.  
          fisherman-OS.PL-ERG boat.ABS.IV drown IV-do-PST.WIT  
       ‘The fishermen sank the boat.’
- b. Besuroqu-za-q riło yank'izi r-oy\*(λ)-xo.  
          fisherman-OS.PL-POSS.ESS boat.ABS.IV drown IV-do-OPT-PST.WIT  
       ‘The fishermen could sink the boat.’
- (114) a. Doxtur-ä rołnoku-ni-r kumak b-oy-s.  
          doctor-ERG sick.person-DEF-LAT help.ABS.III III-do-PST.WIT  
       ‘The doctor helped the patient.’
- b. Doxtur-qo nesä nesi-r kumak b-oy-\*<sup>w</sup>(λ)-xo.  
          doctor-POSS REFL.I-LAT help.ABS.III III-do-OPT-PRS  
       ‘The doctor is able to help himself.’

In addition to the productive use of transitive verbs in the potential construction, the same construction also occurs with several intransitive verbs: AGR-iz- ‘rise’, AGR-et<sup>w</sup>- ‘tear, be torn’, liy- ‘be over, end’, AGR-iq- ‘be gotten, be obtained, be found’, and AGR-ey<sup>w</sup>- ‘be defeated’ (Imnajšvili 1963: 262-263). These verbs do not have to appear in the optative or potential form (although they can do so when contextually appropriate), but in all instances, their inadvertent subject appears in the poss-essive and the patient in the absolute. Thus:

- (115) Nesi-q b-izi-s meši.  
          DEM.I-POSS.ESS III-rise-PST.WIT calf.ABS.III  
       ‘He was able to lift the calf.’ (lit.: the calf rose on him)
- (116) R-at'u-yä dow-qo yedu roč?  
          IV-tear.FUT-INTERR 2SG-POSS.ESS DEM rope.ABS.IV  
       ‘Will you be able to tear this rope?’ (lit.: will this rope be torn on you)
- (117) Liy-x-ānu dä-q ža raład.  
          end-PRS-NEG 1SG-POSS.ESS DEM sea.ABS.IV  
       ‘I cannot drink up (finish) this sea.’
- (118) Debi baru y-exu-s dä-q.  
          2SG.GEN1 wife.ABS.II II-die-PST.WIT 1SG-POSS.ESS  
       ‘I accidentally killed your wife.’ (lit.: your wife died on me)
- (119) Nesi-q b-iqi-n boko.<sup>13</sup>  
          DEM.I-POSS.ESS III-be.gotten-PST.WIT fur coat.ABS.III  
       ‘He obtained a fur coat.’

<sup>13</sup> Imnajšvili (1963: 263) discusses the contrast between sentences such as (119), with the inadvertent agent in the poss-essive, and (i), where the lative form denotes a recipient. The inadvertent agent is construed as more active, more involved in the process of obtaining something, than the recipient.

(i) Nesi-r b-iqi-n boko.  
          DEM.I-LAT III-be.gotten-PST.WIT fur coat.ABS.III  
       ‘He received a fur coat.’

- (120) Nesi-q                eli                b-eyu-s.  
       DEM.I-POSS.ESS      1PL.ABS.IPL    1PL-be.defeated-PST.WIT  
       ‘We got defeated by him.’

The use of the poss-essive form for encoding the inadvertent or potential agent in these constructions is not accidental. As we have seen in other instances, the poss-essive form is also used to encode the recipient in a temporary transfer (section 2.5) and the inadvertent agent in an accidental clause (section 2.6). The poss-essive form is also found on causees in causatives (see section 6 below). In all these instances, the noun phrase in the poss-essive encodes a participant whose engagement in the event is not long-term or completely volitional. Yet another use of this form is observed in impersonal constructions with infinitival clausal complements, discussed in Ch. YY [Clausal complements]. With respect to reflexive binding, the poss-essive noun phrase in the potential construction behaves as a subject—it binds the absolute argument, and cannot be bound by it (see CH. YY [Reflexives and anaphora]).

#### 4. Ditransitives

##### 4.1. Verbs of transfer

The inventory of verbs of transfer is not very large; it includes the verbs of giving, as well as ‘teach’, ‘send’, and ‘show’. Verbs indicating motion toward a goal or recipient, such as ‘throw’ and ‘kick’, do not act as ditransitives. Within the verbs of transfer, the patient (object of transfer) is always in the absolute. The only alternation is observed in the form of the recipient or goal, which varies depending on whether the transfer is permanent or temporary and, for inanimate goals, on their location in space.

The verbs of giving, *teλ-* ‘give (away from the speaker/agent)’ and *neλ-* ‘give (toward the speaker/agent)’ take the agent in the ergative, the object of transfer in the absolute, and the recipient in the lative or poss-essive/poss-lative. The choice between the lative and forms of the possessive series is determined by whether the transfer is permanent (lative) or temporary (poss-essive or poss-lative); consider a similar contrast in the intransitives of possession in section 2.5 above. The contrast between permanent and temporary possession typically plays out when the object of transfer is a tangible, material thing; when metaphoric transfer applies to answers, permissions, thoughts, and other abstract objects, the recipient always appears in the lative.

Some examples describing the transfer of tangible objects:

- (121) Nes-ä                ža                kayat                kid-be-qo-r                teλ-si.  
       DEM.I-ERG      DEM      letter.ABS.II      girl-OS-POSS-LAT      give-PST.WIT  
       ‘He gave that letter to the girl.’
- (122) fAdal-qo-r            qaca-s            c’araf                teλ,                c’odor-qo-r  
       fool-POSS-LAT    wood-GEN1      dishes.ABS.III      give.IMPER      smart.person-POSS-LAT  
       pak-mo-s                c’araf                teλ.  
       copper-OS-GEN1      dishes.ABS.III      give.IMPER  
       ‘Don’t waste your breath on fools.’ (lit.: Give wooden dishes to the fool, give copper dishes to the smart one)

- (123) Neł-ä        elu-r        li        neλ-xosi        [yoł]        λ̄eb-a-x-äy  
DEM.ni-ERG    1PL-LAT    water.ABS.III    give-PRS.PTCP be.PRS year-OS-AD-ABL  
sosit'a el-ä        neła-r        y-ac'-ani-x        kid        teλ-näy.  
once 1PL-ERG    DEM.nI-LAT    II-eat-MASD-AD.ESS    girl.ABS.II    give-COND  
‘It [the dragon] gives us water if once a year we give him a girl for him to eat.’  
(Alıqilič:49)
- (124) Es-na-z-ä        eniw-r        xiriyaw        sajyat        teλ-si.  
sibling-PL-OS-ERG    mother-LAT    expensive        gift.ABS.III    give-PST.WIT  
‘The siblings gave Mother an expensive gift.’
- (125) El-ä        dow-ko-r        bišom        y'uruš        q'arza neλ-ān.  
1PL-ERG    2SG-POSS-LAT    hundred        rouble.ABS.II    debt    give-FUT.DEF  
‘We will loan you a hundred roubles.’

Examples of abstract transfers:

- (126) Mi        dä-r        izmu        neλ-nay...  
2SG.ERG    1SG-LAT    permission.ABS.III    give-COND.CVB  
‘If you give me your permission...’
- (127) Tawad-ä        yisi-r        žawab        teλ-no.  
Tawadi-ERG    DEM-LAT    answer.ABS.III    give-PST.nWIT  
‘Tawadi gave them the answer.’ (Ražbadinno Tawadinno:83)
- (128) Ražbadin-ä-n        barä-n        Tawadi-r        b-‘eže barkala  
Rajbaddin-ERG-and    wife-ERG-and    Tawadi-LAT    III-big thanks.ABS.III  
teλ-no.  
give-PST.nWIT  
‘Rajbaddin and his wife thanked Tawadi profusely.’ (Ražbadinno Tawadinno:200)

All three main arguments of the verbs ‘give’ can be omitted in context; if absent, they are still understood as involved in the event. If the immediate context does not disambiguate the participants, the null pronominals can be interpreted indefinitely. Consider some examples:

- (129) Učitel-ä        ža        kayat        kid-be-qo-r        teλ-si.  
teacher-ERG    DEM    letter.ABS.II    girl-OS-POSS-LAT    give-PST.WIT  
‘The teacher gave that letter to the girl.’
- (130) pro        ža        kayat        kid-be-qo-r        teλ-si.  
ERG    DEM    letter.ABS.II    girl-OS-POSS-LAT    give-PST.WIT  
‘S/He/Someone gave that letter to the girl.’
- (131) Učitel-ä        pro        kid-be-qo-r        teλ-si.  
teacher-ERG    ABS    girl-OS-POSS-LAT    give-PST.WIT  
‘The teacher gave it/something to the girl.’
- (132) Učitel-ä        ža        kayat        pro        teλ-si.  
teacher-ERG    DEM    letter.ABS.II    LAT/POSS.ESS    give-PST.WIT  
‘The teacher gave that letter to him/her/someone.’
- (133) A:        Mi        irbahin-e-r        micxir        teλ-ä?  
2SG.ERG    Ibrahim-OS-LAT    money.ABS.II    give-PST.INTERR  
‘Did you give Ibrahim (the) money?’

- B: Hudu, *pro pro pro teλ-si.*  
 yes give-PST.WIT  
 ‘Yes, I did.’

There are two verbs meaning ‘teach’, *mo<sup>q</sup>l-* and the causative of *t’et’r-* ‘learn, read’. With both verbs, the agent is expressed in the ergative, the patient (object of instruction) in the absolute, and the recipient in the poss-essive. For example:

- (134) Učitel-ä q”uya-ħukmat-yo-ł-zo žek’u-za-q  
 teacher-ERG foreign-government-OS-CONT-ATTR.OBL person-OS.PL-POSS.ESS  
 cezi-ya-s mec mo<sup>q</sup>li-x/t’et’r-er-xo.  
 Tsez-OS-GEN language.ABS.III teach-PRS/learn-CAUS-PRS  
 ‘The teacher is teaching the Tsez language to foreigners.’
- (135) R-igu šebin mo<sup>q</sup>li-n zow-n-ānu mi  
 IV-good thing.ABS.IV tell-PFV.CVB AUX.PST-PST.nWIT-NEG 2SG.ERG  
 dä-q.  
 1SG-POSS.ESS  
 ‘You have told me the wrong thing.’ (lit.: you have not taught me a good thing)  
 (Aliqilič:88)

The verb meaning ‘send’ is the lexicalized causative of the inchoative verb AGR-*eg-* ‘open up, set loose, break free’; it takes the ergative agent, absolute patient, and a recipient/goal in one of a number of spatial forms. Animate recipients are typically encoded in the lative or poss-essive; inanimate goals showing destination can appear in a number of essive, lative, or versative forms with different reference points, depending on the context.

- (136) El-ä eniw-qo-r kayat y-eger-si.  
 1PL-ERG mother-POSS-LAT letter.ABS.II II-send-PST.WIT  
 ‘We sent the/a letter to Mother.’
- (137) Babi-y-ä Sult’an šahar-y-ā-r/šahar-y-ā-yor Ø-egir-xo.  
 father-OS-ERG Sultan.ABS.I city-OS-IN-LAT/city-OS-IN-VERS I-send-PRS  
 ‘Father is sending Sultan to the city.’

With a female patient and the goal in the ad-essive, ‘send’ carries the specialized meaning ‘marry off’:

- (138) Di dow-zo Goqi-x kid y-egir-ān.  
 1SG.ERG 2SG-ATTR.OBL Goqi-AD.ESS girl.ABS.II II-send-FUT.DEF  
 ‘I will give my daughter in marriage to your Goqi.’ (Goqin zirun:12)

The verb AGR-*ukar-* ‘show’ is the causative of AGR-*ukad-* ‘see (be visible)’, with the agent in the ergative, the recipient (causee) in the poss-essive, and the object in the absolute:

- (139) Eni-y-ä kid-be-q misal b-uka-r-si.  
 mother-OS-ERG girl-OS-POSS.ESS example.ABS.III III-see-CAUS-PST.WIT  
 ‘Mother gave (showed) the girl an example.’

- (140) Učitel-ä        xex-za-q        kino        r-uka-r-si.  
 teacher-ERG    child-OS-POSS.ESS    movie.ABS.IV    IV-see-CAUS-PST.WIT  
 ‘The teacher showed the children a movie.’

The order of objects in the ditransitive structure is quite free, with no restrictions based on animacy or definiteness. As in other structures, there are two main tendencies in the preverbal domain: first, longer constituents appear before shorter ones; second, informationally given material precedes new material. To illustrate the latter tendency, consider that the order in (140) is more likely to correspond to the English double object construction (which is what is used in the translation), whereas the order in the following example is best represented by the English dative construction:

- (141) Učitel-ä        kino        xex-za-q        r-uka-r-si.  
 teacher-ERG    movie.ABS.IV    child-OS-POSS.ESS    IV-see-CAUS-PST.WIT  
 ‘The teacher showed a/the movie to the children.’

In the following example, the existence of the people receiving gifts is presupposed; what matters is who receives which gift. The optional coordinating ‘and’ appears on the presupposed material:

- (142) Łic'o=ric'ak'-no!        Teł        gagali-bi(-n)        baru-qo-r,  
 mix.up-PROH        give.IMPER        flower-PL.ABS.nIPL-and        wife-POSS-LAT  
 teł        maroženi(-n)        xex-za-qo-r.  
 give.IMPER        ice-cream.ABS.IV-and        child-OS-POSS-LAT  
 ‘Don’t mix them up! Give the flowers to the hostess (lit.: to the wife) and ice-  
 cream to the children.’

## 4.2. Verbs of speaking

Several verbs of speaking act as ditransitives as well: *es-*, *eλ-*, *esir-*, and *mol-*.<sup>14</sup> With these verbs, the agent appears in the ergative and the noun phrase denoting what is spoken or asked appears in the absolute. This absolute position can be equally filled by a noun phrase or pronoun, a clausal nominalization, or a full clause with the quotative suffix *-λin*. The encoding of the addressee varies by verb, as we show below. Sound-emission verbs denoting manner (such as *šupi-šepλ-* ‘whisper’, *bubuλ-/wuwuλ-* ‘mumble’, *ħarλ-* ‘snore’, *qʷʷaqʷʷaλ-* ‘croak’, *ħehλ-* ‘wheeze’, *zuzuλ-* ‘buzz’, etc.) are always intransitive.

The ditransitive verb *es-* means ‘tell’, with the addressee in the poss-lative:

---

<sup>14</sup> The verb *xabaryad-* ‘speak, talk’ is intransitive; the example below illustrates its use:

- (i)        Xexbi        xabaryad-a        b-uygon        b-oq-si.  
 child.ABS.III    speak-INF        III-already        III-become-PST.WIT  
 ‘The child already started talking.’

- (143) Eniw-qo-r                yedu                xabar                es-o.  
           mother-POSS-LAT      DEM.nI              news.ABS.III    tell-IMPER  
           'Tell Mother this news.'

If contextually recoverable, all the arguments of *es-* can be omitted, for example:

- (144) *pro pro pro*    es-ā-č'in.  
                                     tell-FUT-NEG  
                                   '(I) won't tell.'

The ditransitive verb *eλ-* means 'speak; say', and the addressee is again in the poss-lative. As with *es-*, all the arguments of *eλ-* can be omitted if they are recoverable from context. Compare the following examples without and with the addressee:

- (145) *pro eλi-x ža elu-s mah yoł-äsi*  
           ERG say-PRS DEM.ABS.(I) 1PL-GEN1 spirit.ABS.III be.PRS-RES  
           žek'u zow-n[-λin].  
           man.ABS.I be.PST-PST.nWIT-QUOT  
           'They say that he was the man who belonged to our spirit.' (fAliqilič:173)
- (146) Aždaħ-ä                (yisi-qo-r)                roži                eλi-n-ānu.  
           dragon-ERG    DEM.I-POSS-LAT              word.ABS.IV say-PST.nWIT-NEG  
           'The dragon did not say a word (to him).' (fAliqilič:58)

The difference between the meanings of *es-* and *eλ-* can also be demonstrated by the difference in meaning between their past participles. Compare:

- (147) a. [äsi-ru]                roži  
           tell-PST.PTCP word.ABS.IV  
           'the word that was repeated (re-told) to s.o.'  
   b. [xabar                äsi-ru]                žek'u  
           story.ABS.III tell-PST.PTCP man.ABS.I  
           'the man that told a/the story; story teller'
- (148) a. [äλi-ru]                roži-n                r-äq-inč'i,                fomoy-ce  
           say-PST.PTCP word.ABS.IV-and          IV-become.FUT-NEG    donkey-EQUAT  
           boc'i-n                b-äq-inč'i.  
           wolf.ABS.III-and    III-become.FUT-NEG  
           'Not all things come true.' (lit.: spoken word does not get fulfilled, and one that is donkey-like does not turn into a wolf)
- b. [roži                äλi-ru]                žek'u  
           word.ABS.IV tell-PST.PTCP man.ABS.I  
           'the man that said a/the word'

The causative of *es-* is the ditransitive verb *esir-* 'ask' (lit.: make tell). Its agent appears in the ergative, its addressee in the poss-essive (thus conforming to the pattern of causee encoding: see section 6.2 below), and the noun phrase referring to the questioned element appears in the absolute. All three core arguments can be omitted, but are contextually presupposed. Consider

an example with all the participants overtly expressed (149) and another example where both objects are omitted (150):

- (149) “Mi šebi žek’u t’o-r Ø-ay-äsi-žin?”  
 2SG.ABS what.ATTR man.ABS.I here-LAT I-come-RES-QUOT  
 esir-no aždah-ä yisi-q.  
 ask-PST.nWIT dragon-ERG DEM.I-POSS.ESS  
 “Who are you, the one who came here?” the dragon asked him.’ (§Aliqilič:189)
- (150) Nes-ä pro pro esi-x-ānu.  
 DEM.I-ERG ask-PRS-NEG  
 ‘He has not asked.’

The verb ‘answer’ is a complex form, consisting of *žawab* ‘answer’ in the absolute and one of the two verbs of giving (depending on the direction). Hence it is naturally ditransitive; the agent appears in the ergative, and the recipient of the answer in the lative:

- (151) C’alduqan-ä učitel-e-r žawab b-ig tež-si.  
 student-ERG teacher-OS-LAT answer.ABS.III III-well give-PST.WIT  
 ‘The student answered the teacher well.’

The equivalent of ‘answer a question’ is the same complex verb, with the word *sual* ‘question’ appearing as a genitive modifier of *žawab*, or as a noun phrase in the lative:

- (152) a. Nes-ä yedu [sual-e-s] žawab] yisi-r  
 DEM.I-ERG DEM question-OS-GEN1 answer.ABS.III DEM.I-LAT  
 tež-inč’u.  
 give-PST.WIT.NEG  
 b. Nes-ä yedu [sual-e-r] [žawab] yisi-r  
 DEM.I-ERG DEM question-OS-LAT answer.ABS.III DEM.I-LAT  
 tež-inč’u.  
 give-PST.WIT.NEG  
 ‘He did not answer that question.’

A number of complex predicates are used to denote particular speech situations: the giving of thanks; greeting; leave-taking. These verbs are typically formed by the combination of a noun with the meaning ‘thank you’, ‘hello’, ‘good-bye’, ‘congratulations,’ and the transitive light verb AGR-*od-* ‘do’. The recipient of the speech act appears in the lative or poss-lative, with the choice of a particular form lexically specified for each predicate. For example:

- (153) a. Bar-ä maduhal-qo-r hiž’i=baq’i r-oy-s.  
 wife-ERG neighbor-POSS-LAT greetings.ABS.nIPL nIPL-do-PST.WIT  
 b. Bar-ä maduhal-qo-r salam/worč’ami b-oy-s.  
 wife-ERG neighbor-POSS-LAT greetings.ABS.III III-do-PST.WIT

- (154) a. ‘The wife said hello to the neighbor.’<sup>15</sup>  
 Už-ä eniw=babiw-r q”omexlik’ b-oy-x.  
 boy-ERG parents-LAT good-bye.ABS.III III-do-PRS  
 ‘The boy says good bye to his parents.’
- b. Už-ä eniw=babiw-r barkala b-oy-s.  
 boy-ERG parents-LAT thanks.ABS.III III-do-PST.WIT  
 ‘The boy thanked his parents.’

The verb ‘congratulate’ is formed via the combination of a non-nominal component and the same light verb:

- (155) Debe-r ecno-ni ɬeb barkizi y-oy-x (di).  
 2SG-LAT new-DEF year.ABS.II congratulate II-do-PRS 1SG.ERG  
 ‘I wish you a happy new year!’ (lit.: I congratulate the new year to you)

Compare the case frame of *barkizi AGR-od-* with the English *congratulate someone on/for something*, which takes the recipient of good wishes as the direct object and the denotation of the special reason as a prepositional phrase. The Tsez verb seems to show a reversal of such a frame, with the reason as the absolute object and the recipient of good wishes in the lative. This alternative linking (as compared to the one found in more familiar languages) brings us to a whole group of verbs which we will be referring to as “ditransitive transitives”. They are discussed in the next section.

#### 4.3. Verbs of contact: “Ditransitive transitives”

Tsez has a sizeable group of verbs all of which express physical contact or connection of some kind and which have three arguments: the agent in the ergative, the instrument or medium of contact in the absolute, and the object with which contact is established in one of the spatial forms. For example, consider the verb AGR-*iħ-*, which is semantically the broadest among the verbs of this group, with meanings including ‘spread, stroke, smear, scratch, paint’ (Xalilov 1999: 62). We will be using the more general English equivalent ‘put’, which can also take a direct object and adpositional complement (another possible English equivalent is ‘apply something to something’). In (156), AGR-*iħ-* means ‘stroke’; the absolute object expresses the instrument, and the recipient of stroking, the cat, is expressed in the poss-essive:

- (156) Kid-b-ä k’et’u-q reɬa r-iħi-s.  
 girl-OS-ERG cat-POSS.ESS hand.ABS.IV IV-put-PST.WIT  
 ‘The girl stroked a cat.’ (lit.: put hand onto the cat)

In the next example, the same verb can be translated as ‘spread’:

- (157) Kid-b-ä magalu-ɬ’ rił r-iħi-s.  
 girl-OS-ERG bread-SUPER.ESS butter.ABS.IV IV-put-PST.WIT

<sup>15</sup> *hiħ’i=baq’i* is the Tsez word denoting greetings, and the words used in (153b) are Avar borrowings.

‘The girl spread butter over the bread.’ (lit.: put butter on the bread)

In (158), the closest English equivalent is ‘wipe’:

- (158) Eni-y-ä                  aki-q                  at’iw                  č’orto                  r-ihi-x.  
       mother-OS-ERG              window-POSS.ESS              wet              rag.ABS.IV              IV-put-PRS  
       ‘Mother is wiping the window with a wet cloth.’

In the next example, the same verb corresponds to the English ‘iron’:

- (159) Kid-b-ä                  ged-mo-λ’                  ito                  r-ihi-x.  
       girl-OS-ERG              dress-OS-SUPER.ESS              iron.ABS.IV              IV-put-PRS  
       ‘The girl is ironing a dress.’

And finally, in (160), the closest correspondence to AGR-*iħ-* is ‘paint’:

- (160) El-ä                  λex-e-λ                  lak                  b-ihi-s.  
       1PL-ERG              ceiling-OS-SUB.ESS              paint.ABS.III              III-put-PST.WIT  
       ‘We painted the ceiling.’

Other uses, which we will not illustrate here, include *moħu y-iħ-* ‘scratch (lit.: nail/claw put)’, *q’alam b-iħ-* ‘cross out (lit.: pencil put)’, and *meš b-iħ-* ‘sweep (lit.: broom put)’.

In all these uses, the only set of cases available to AGR-*iħ-* is what is shown above; no alternations of the type found in the English *spray* or *load* verbs are possible; compare the grammatical example in (157) and its ungrammatical counterpart with an attempted object-marking alternation:

- (161) \*Kid-b-ä                  magalu                  riħ-e-d                  b-ihi-s.  
       girl-OS-ERG              bread.ABS.III              butter-OS-INS              III-put-PST.WIT  
       (‘The girl spread the bread with butter.’)

Other verbs which belong to the same group as AGR-*iħ-* include: *caħ-* ‘throw’; AGR-*egir-* ‘hit (lit.: send)’; AGR-*ok-* ‘hit’; AGR-*al-* ‘hit’; AGR-*izir-* ‘hit’ (causative of ‘rise’); AGR-*iti-* ‘touch’ (glossed as ‘join’ below);<sup>16</sup> AGR-*oy* ‘scratch’; AGR-*aħ-* ‘sweep’; AGR-*ic-* ‘fill’, and its more specific realizations *uba b-ic-* ‘kiss (kiss fill)’, *alni b-ic-* ‘hug (hug fill)’, *meč’o b-ic-* ‘embrace (neck fill)’, and *muq’u b-ic-* ‘gulp (gulp fill)’; *uba b-od-* ‘kiss (kiss do)’, *alni b-od-* ‘hug (hug do)’; *faqu kuċ-* ‘wet with urine (urine drop)’; *meš(-kuro) r-aħ-* ‘sweep, clean (broom(-washbasin) put/deploy)’. With all these verbs, the instrument is in the absolute, and

<sup>16</sup> This verb has a different use as an intransitive, in an idiom with the word ‘tooth’:

- (i)        Yedu    xabar                  dä-z                  k’ica-λ                  b-iti-x.  
       DEM      story.ABS.IPL    1SG.GEN2              tooth-SUB.ESS              III-touch-PRS  
       ‘This story annoys me.’/ ‘I am sick and tired of this story.’

the object involved in the contact is in one of the oblique forms, often in the poss-essive because this is the form encoding the recipient of a (temporary) transfer. Some examples:

- (162) Nes-ä            bero-q            mec            b-iti-s.  
DEM.I-ERG      icicle-POSS.ESS      tongue.ABS.III    III-join-PST.WIT  
‘He touched the icicle with his tongue.’ (lit.: joined his tongue on to the icicle)
- (163) Neł-ä            hält'-u-q            hält'i            b-iti-x-ānu.  
DEM.nI-ERG      work-OS-POSS.ESS      work.ABS.III    III-join-PRS-NEG  
‘She doesn’t lift a finger.’ (lit.: does not join work to work)
- (164) Eni-y-ä            xex-za-q            uba            b-ic'-si.  
mother-OS-ERG      child-OS-POSS.ESS      kiss.ABS.III    III-fill-PST.WIT  
‘Mother kissed the child.’
- (165) Nes-ä            ła-s            muq'u            b-ic'-si.  
DEM.I-ERG      water-GEN1      gulp.ABS.III    III-fill-PST.WIT  
‘He took a gulp of water.’
- (166) Čanaqan-ä            zey-s/zey-qo            tupi            całi-n.<sup>17</sup>  
hunter-ERG      bear-GEN1/bear-POSS.ESS      rifle.ABS.IV    throw-PST.nWIT  
‘The hunter shot (at) the bear.’ (lit.: threw rifle)
- (167) Nes-ä            dä-z            ɬara-ł            besi            całi-s.  
DEM.I-ERG      1SG-GEN2      belly-CONT.ESS      fist.ABS.IV    throw-PST.WIT  
‘He hit me in the stomach with his fist.’ (lit.: threw fist...)
- (168) Neła            ɬana-za-s            nocu            cał-o!  
DEM.nI.OBL      woman-OS-GEN1      saliva.ABS.II    throw-IMPER  
‘Spit at this woman!’ (lit.: throw this woman’s saliva) (Beqes fUneyzat:87)
- (169) Xex-z-ä            y<sup>č</sup>eło-x-or            fa<sup>č</sup>qu            kuči-n.  
child-OS-ERG      pants-AD-LAT      urine.ABS.IV    drop-PST.nWIT  
‘The child wet his pants.’
- (170) Už-ä            q<sup>č</sup>ir-yo-ł            ok'o            b-ok'-si.  
boy-ERG      plank-OS-CONT.ESS      nail.ABS.III    III-fil-PST.WIT  
‘The boy hit a nail into the plank.’
- (171) Čanaqan-ä            gulu-z            gugyo-ł'            čuret'/besi  
hunter-ERG      horse-GEN2      back-SUPER.ESS      whip.ABS.III/fist.ABS.III  
b-ok'-si.  
III-hit-PST.WIT  
‘The hunter hit the horse on the back with a whip/fist.’
- (172) Uži-z            r eł'a-ł'            č'ir            y-ał-xo            babi-y-ä.  
boy-GEN2      hand-SUPER.ESS      belt.ABS.II    II-hit-PRS      father-OS-ERG  
‘Father hits the boy on the hand with a belt.’

As with the ditransitive verbs of transfer, all three arguments are presupposed by the argument structure of the respective verbs, but they do not have to be expressed if they are contextually recoverable. For example, in (156) above, it is possible to omit the absolute *reła* ‘hand’ (the

---

<sup>17</sup> Both the direct and the conative interpretations are available for this sentence and sentences of a similar sort.

verb still agrees with it. Likewise, *cali-* in (166) or (167) can occur without the overt absolute. In examples such as (171), it is possible to omit the absolute or the super-essive, and furthermore, the head of the oblique noun phrase *gugyo-λ'* can be omitted just as well, in which case the sentence can be understood as meaning ‘the hunter hit the horse with a whip/fist’, with no particular part of horse in mind. Similarly, the mention of the boy’s hand can be omitted in (172), and then the sentence can be understood more generally, as ‘father hit the boy with a belt’. All these omissions may create the impression that these verbs have an unusual case frame.

Presumably, if the object of contact appears in an oblique case, it could have consequences for the grammar of resultatives. Resultatives are associated with the internal argument of a verb, as in the English examples below, where *the river* is the subject of an unaccusative, and *the table* is the object of *wipe* (see Rappaport Hovav and Levin 2001 for discussion and extensive references).

- (173) The river froze solid.
- (174) She wiped the table clean.

If the object is not expressed as a direct internal argument, this could imply that a resultative construction is not available. Tsez does not have resultatives in the English sense, and the meaning corresponding to the English resultatives is conveyed by different means. For instance, in the following examples, the resultant state is expressed by the main predicate, and the event leading to it that state is expressed by a complex noun phrase in a spatial form. This complex noun phrase is based on a masdar clause (indicated by brackets):

(175)	a.	[Neł-ä	č'orto	<i>pro<sub>i</sub></i>	r-ih-ani]-λ-āy	istoli <sub>i</sub>
		DEM.nI-ERG	rag.ABS.IV		IV-put-MASD-SUB-ABL	table.ABS.IV
		bac'adaw	r-oq-xo.			
		clean	IV-become-PRS			
	b.	[Neł-ä	č'orto	istoliw-qi	r-ih-ani]-λ-āy	<i>pro<sub>i</sub></i>
		DEM.nI-ERG	rag.ABS.IV	table-POSS.ESS	IV-put-MASD-SB-ABL	
		bac'adaw	r-oq-xo.			
		clean	IV-become-PRS			

‘The table became clean on the account of her (i.e. Mother’s) wiping it.’

It remains to be seen whether the use of ditransitive verbs of contact and the absence of resultatives are in fact related, and whether the “ditransitive transitives” described here correlate with some other properties of Tsez. Ditransitive verbs of contact, with the instrument in the absolute and the object of contact in some oblique form, have been observed in other languages of the Nakh-Dagestanian family: in Ingush (Nichols 2011: 467-470), in Lezgian (Haspelmath 1993: 269-270), as well as in the close Tsez relatives Khwarshi (Khalilova 2009: 332) and Hinuq (Forker 2013: 485-486). A similar phenomenon has also been noted in other languages of the Caucasus (cf. Catford 1976: 44, who comments on such verbs in Northwest Caucasian languages). It is therefore possible that ditransitive transitives represent an areal feature; if so, this shared feature of the verbal lexicon could be explored in connection with other properties of Nakh-Dagestanian or Caucasian languages more generally.

## 5. Affective construction and cognition/perception verbs

### 5.1. Affective construction

Tsez, like many other Dagestanian languages, has a separate affective construction (also called the “experiencer construction”), which typically involves a verb denoting perception or cognition. Several verbs that occur frequently in this construction include: AGR-*ukʷad-* ‘see’, AGR-*iy-* ‘know, understand’, *koλ-* ‘know, be trained, prepared for something’, AGR-*et-* ‘like, love, want, need’, *teq-* ‘hear’, AGR-*ac-* ‘dislike’, AGR-*es-* ‘find’, *čuq-* ‘recognize, understand’, *šuλ-* ‘forget’. They all share the same marking on their arguments: the experiencer, which is in most cases animate, appears in the lative form, and the stimulus is in the absolute. The verb agrees with the absolute argument and appears intransitive, an issue we will revisit at the end of this section.

Some examples of the affective construction follow, with more literal equivalents offered in parentheses:

- (176) Nesi-r            baru            y-ukay-nč'i.  
       DEM.I-LAT      wife.ABS.II     II-see-PST.WIT.NEG  
       ‘He did not see (his) wife.’ (lit.: the wife was not visible to him)
- (177) Dä-r            nesi-s            ɻamal            b-ac-i-x.  
       1SG-LAT        DEM.I-GEN1      character.ABS.III     III-dislike-PRS  
       ‘I can't stand his personality.’ (lit.: his personality is distasteful to me)
- (178) Elo-gon            yisi-r            surat-ce            bercinaw            kid  
       there-CONTR.TOP    DEM.I-LAT      picture-EQUAT    beautiful            girl.ABS.II  
       y-esu-n.  
       II-find-PST.nWIT  
       ‘And there, he found a picture-perfect beautiful girl.’ (cf. Aliqilič:168)  
       (lit.: a ... girl turned out...)
- (179) ɻirba-r            bišʷa            r-eti-x.  
       guest-LAT        food.ABS.IV     IV-want-PRS  
       ‘The guest wants food.’ (lit.: the food is wanted to the guest)
- (180) Elu-r            mašina            c'aq'            b-et-äsi            yoł.  
       1PL-LAT        car.ABS.III     very            III-want-RES.PTCP     AUX.PRS  
       ‘We badly need a car.’ (lit.: car is wanted to us)
- (181) Q'orola-z            idu            kid            yäl-ru-li            esna-za-r  
       widow-GEN2        at.home        girl.ABS.II     be-PST.PTCP-NMLZ     sibling-OS.PL-LAT  
       čuq'-no.  
       understand-PST.NWIT  
       ‘The brothers understood that the girl was at the widow's house.’ (based on cf. Oλno esiwn,  
       sis esiyen:37)  
       (lit.: that the girl was at the widow's house was understandable to the brothers)
- (182) Xex-za-r            ecno-ni            igruška            šuλ'i-s.<sup>18</sup>

<sup>18</sup> The verb ‘forget’ has another case frame, with the experiencer in the absolute and the stimulus in the sub-ablative form:

children-OS-LAT	new-DEF	toy.ABS.IV	forget-PST.nWIT
'The children forgot (about) the new toy.' (lit.: the toy was forgotten to the children)			

Some other affective predicates in this group are derived on the basis of the verbs listed above. For example, ‘smell’ is *maħ b-iy-*, literally ‘to know a smell’, and ‘taste’ is *t'aħam b-iy-/gimu y-iy-*, literally meaning ‘to know a taste’; in each case, the word ‘smell’ or ‘taste’ is in the absolute argument position and the stimulus is expressed as the adnominal genitive (the complex noun phrase expressing stimulus is shown in brackets below):

- (183) Dä-r [gagali-s maħ] b-iy-x.  
 1SG-LAT flower-GEN1 smell.ABS.III III-know-PRS  
 ‘I smell flowers.’ (lit.: flower’s smell is known to me)
- (184) [Ci-yo-s t'aħam] b-iy-ä deb-er?  
 salt-GEN1 taste.ABS.III III-know-INTERR 2SG-LAT  
 ‘Did you taste the saltiness?’ (lit.: salt’s taste is known to you)

Questions that arise in the analysis of the affective construction have to do with the status of the associated verbs (are these verbs transitive or intransitive?) and with the status of the absolute and lative noun phrases (are they both arguments? which one is the subject?).

We will defer answering these questions to section 6.4, where we discuss the causativization of verbs that appear in the affective construction; to anticipate that discussion, we will show that these verbs are not a homogeneous class, but that they differ in their causativization, reflexivization characteristics, and participation in masdar relative clauses.

## 5.2. Perception and cognition verbs outside the affective construction

Not all predicates denoting internal or psychological states appear in the affective construction. For instance, such a common verb as AGR-*uħ*- ‘fear; be afraid’ is a regular intransitive predicate, with the experiencer in the absolute and the stimulus in the poss-essive:

- (185) [Yedu kid] [meži-z y<sup>w</sup>ay-q] y-uħ'-xo.  
 DEM girl.ABS.II 2PL-GEN2 dog-OS-POSS.ESS II-fear-PRS  
 EXPERIENCER STIMULUS  
 ‘This girl is afraid of your dog.’ (lit.: fears on your dog)
- (186) [B-<sup>s</sup>aq'u-si xalq'i] [samolyot-ħ'o zow-ani-q]  
 IPL-many-ATTR people.ABS.IPL plane-SUPER.ESS climb-MSD-POSS.ESS
- 

- (i) Xexbi šuħ'i-s ecno-ni igruška-ħ-äy.  
 children.ABS.(nIPL) forget-PST.WIT new-DEF toy-SUB-ABL  
 ‘The children forgot (about) the new toy.’

This development may be due to influence from Russian, where the verb *zabyvat' o* NP ‘forget about’ takes the nominative subject and a prepositional object.

## EXPERIENCER

## STIMULUS

b-*uλ'*-xo.

IPL-fear-PRS

'Many people are afraid to fly.' (lit.: fear on climbing on the plane)

Imnajšvili (1963: 263) lists the verb AGR-*uλ'*- among the intransitive verbs that participate in the potential construction (see section 3.2 above). However, unlike the poss-essive noun phrase that occurs with such intransitive verbs as AGR-*iq-*, AGR-*izi-*, etc., the stimulus in the poss-essive has no subject properties. As (186) shows, it is the absolutive, not the poss-essive, that determines control. In contrast to the other intransitive verbs that occur in the potential construction, the absolutive of AGR-*uλ'*- can bind the poss-essive but not vice versa:

- (187) a. γʷ<sup>w</sup>ay nełā neło-z yedu-q b-*uλ'*-xo.  
           dog.ABS.III REFL.nI-GEN2 shadow-POSS.ESS III-fear-PRS  
           'The dog is afraid of its own shadow.'  
   b. \*Nesä nesi-s γʷ<sup>w</sup>ay bet'erhan-qo b-*uλ'*-xo.  
       REFL.I-GEN1 dog.ABS.III master-POSS.ESS III-fear-PRS  
       ("His<sub>i</sub> dog is afraid of the owner<sub>i</sub>."<sub>i</sub>)

It is possible that at some stage, the verb AGR-*uλ'*- patterned with several other intransitives that participate in the potential construction, as reflected in Imnajšvili's description. However, at the current stage of language use, this verb's argument mapping is as shown in (185).

The next psychological predicate we will consider is the intransitive complex verb *fažaib* AGR-*oq-* 'be surprised', which takes an absolutive subject experiencer and a stimulus in the super-essive:

- (188) Dow-zo famal-yo-λ' eli fažaib b-oq-si.  
       2SG-GEN2 deed-OS-SUPER.ESS 1PL.ABS surprised IPL-become-PST.WIT  
       'We were surprised by your behavior.'

A number of intransitive complex verbs denoting psychological states are psych-collocations with the nominal component *rok'u* 'heart'. The experiencer typically appears as the adnominal possessor of the absolute, and the stimulus is in one of spatial forms. For example:

- (189) Eniw-s rok'u uži-x r-oλ-xo.  
       mother-GEN1 heart.ABS.IV boy-AD.ESS IV-hurt-PRS  
       'Mother worries about the boy/son.' (lit.: mother's heart hurts at the boy)  
   (190) Uži-s kid-b-ä rok'u r-ay-s.  
       boy-GEN1 girl-OS-IN.ESS heart.ABS.IV IV-come-PST.WIT  
       'The boy fell in love with the girl.' (lit.: boy's heart came into the girl)  
   (191) Nesi-q dey rok'u r-ay-x.  
       DEM.I-POSS.ESS 1SG.GEN1 heart.ABS.IV IV-come-PRS  
       'I have confidence in him.' (lit.: my heart comes upon him)  
   (192) Zarema-s rok'u λexu-x maduyal-i-λ'.  
       Zarema-GEN1 heart.ABS.IV stay.behind-PRS neighbor-OS-SUPER.ESS

'Zarema is jealous of her neighbor.' (lit.: Z's heart stays on the neighbor)

When such set phrases are used in utterances, the noun phrase *rok'u* may even be omitted, which may create an impression of clauses without an absolute argument. However, the absolute *rok'u* is always understood.

## 6. Causatives

Tsez has several causative affixes (see CH. YY[VERB DER]), among which the suffix *-Vr-* is most productive, deriving causatives from all kinds of simple verbs. The suffix *-k'*- derives transitive verbs from intransitives in *-l-*, which are in turn derived from non-verbal stems. Among complex verbs, the alternation between the intransitive light verb AGR-*oq-* and the transitive light verb AGR-*od-* also creates inchoative-causative pairs. There is no morphological causative of the verb 'be'. The interpretation of causatives is largely dependent on context, with the same form being able to express direct and indirect causation (see especially 6.4 below).

### 6.1. Causative of intransitive

Causatives formed from intransitive non-affective verbs are transitive; the causer appears in the ergative, and the causee in the absolute. For instance:

- (193) a. Eniw            kid-be-*λ'o-r*            žuka-t'a-ni       qimat-yo-za-*λ-äy*  
             mother.ABS.II   girl-OS-SUPER-LAT   bad-DISTR-DEF grade-OS-PL.OS-SUB-ABL  
             duduγ-xo.  
             berate-PRS  
             'Mother is railing at the girl for the bad grades.'  
         b. Eni-y-ä            kid            žuka-t'a-ni       qimat-yo-za-*λ-äy*  
             mother-OS-ERG        girl.ABS.II        bad-DISTR-DEF grade-OS-PL.OS-SUB-ABL  
             duduγ-ir-xo.  
             berate-CAUS-PRS  
             'Mother is berating the girl for the bad grades.'
- (194) a. Nuci            γ'ay-ł            ɬek'i-s.  
             honey.ABS.IV   milk-CONT.ESS       mix-PST.WIT  
             'The honey mixed with the milk.' (lit.: in milk)  
         b. Eni-y-ä            nuci            γ'ay-ł            ɬek'i-r-si.  
             mother-OS-ERG        honey.ABS.IV        milk-CONT.ESS       mix-CAUS-PST.WIT  
             'Mother mixed honey with milk.' (lit.: in milk)
- (195) a. Šeλ'u            at'i-ł-si.  
             clothing.ABS.IV       wet-INTR-PST.WIT  
             'The clothes got wet.'  
         b. Qem-ä            šeλ'u            at'i-k'-si.  
             rain-erg        clothing.abs.iv       wet-CAUS-PST.WIT  
             'Rain made the clothes wet.'
- (196) a. Uži            k'ik'e-ł-si.  
             boy.ABS.I        teased-INTR-PST.WIT

- b. ‘The boy got teased.’ (with the implication that he got upset because of teasing)
- Kid-b-ä uži k’ik’e-k’-si.  
girl-OS-ERG boy.ABS.I teased-CAUS-PRS  
‘The girl is teasing/ridiculing the boy.’

Thus, causatives of intransitives are regular transitive verbs, with the agent (causer) in the ergative and causee in the absolute case. With the exception of frozen forms, causativization adds a participant, and that participant is always mapped into the agent or agent-like argument of a given event.

## 6.2. Causative of transitive

Causatives of transitives are formed by adding the suffix *-Vr-* to the verb stem. The resulting verb is ditransitive, with the causer in the ergative and the original absolute object retaining its marking. The form of the causee depends on animacy. If the noun phrase denoting causee is perceived as animate, it appears in the poss-essive; if inanimate, it appears in the sub-essive. The majority of transitive causees are animate, which may create an impression that the poss-essive is the only encoding option, but it is not. Consider the following examples:

- (197) a. Allah-ä malaik-za-q/\*malaik-za-λ c’ob  
God-ERG angel-OS.PL-POSS.ESS/angel-OS.PL-SUB.ESS mercy.ABS.III  
b-od-ir-no.  
III-do-CAUS-PST.nWIT  
‘God made the angels bring mercy.’
- b. Allah-ä qema-λ/\*qema-q raλ’  
God-ERG rain-SUB.ESS/rain-POSS.ESS land.ABS.IV  
at’i-k’-er-no.  
wet-TR-CAUS- PST.nWIT  
‘God made rain irrigate the earth.’

Examples of transitive causatives have already appeared above, cf. (139), (140). The argument encoding in these causatives is similar to that observed in the regular ditransitive, but there, the recipient is in the lative/poss-lative, whereas the animate causee in the ditransitive causative appears in the poss-essive:

- (198) a. Nes-ä ža kayat kid-be-qo-r teλ-si.  
DEM.I-ERG DEM letter.ABS.II girl-OS-POSS-LAT give-PST.WIT  
‘He gave that letter to the girl (temporarily).’
- b. Nes-ä ža kayat kid-be-q t’et’r-er-si.<sup>19</sup>  
DEM.I-ERG DEM letter.ABS.II girl-OS-POSS.ESS read-CAUS-PST.WIT  
‘He made the girl read that letter.’

The marking of causativity on transitives is quite common and such clauses often appear where one would expect object control clauses introduced by the verbs ‘ask’, ‘order’ or ‘remind’. The

---

<sup>19</sup> The verb t’et’r-er- can also be used in the meaning ‘teach’, as shown in section 5.1 above.

difference between volitional (indirect) and non-volitional (direct) causation is determined on the basis of context. The next sentence is ambiguous between direct and indirect causation:

- (199) Eni-y-ä        kid-be-q        ac        y-uq-ir-si.  
           mother-ERG     girl-OS-POSS.ESS     door.ABS.II     II-close-CAUS-PST.WIT  
           'Mother made the girl close the door.'  
           'Mother reminded the girl to close the door.'

As with other verbs, arguments of causatives can be omitted if they are contextually recoverable:

- (200) Doxtur-ä        xex-za-q        haλu-r-no.  
           doctor-ERG     child-OS-POSS.ESS     drink-CAUS-PST.nWIT  
           'The doctor made the child drink.'

### 6.3. Polyvalent causatives

Causative of ditransitives have four arguments, with the causee in the ergative, the causer in the poss-essive and the remaining arguments preserving the case forms of the base clause. This leads to a tritransitive or polyvalent construction (see Kittilä 2007b for a discussion of such constructions from a typological perspectives). For example:

- (201) Učitel-ä        sult'an-qo        kid-be-r        t'ek  
           teacher-ERG     Sultan-POSS.ESS     girl-OS-LAT     book.ABS.II  
           teλ'-er-si.  
           give-CAUS-PST.WIT  
           'The teacher made Sultan give the book (back) to the girl.'
- (202) Eni-y-ä        kid-be-q        žigon        ged-mo-λ'  
           mother-OS-ERG     girl-OS-POSS.ESS     again     dress-OS-SUPER.ESS  
           ito        r-ihi-r-si.  
           iron.ABS.IV     IV-put-CAUS-PST.WIT  
           'Mother made the girl iron the dress again.'
- (203) Eniw=babi-y-ä        učitel-qo        uži-q        darsi  
           parents-OS-ERG     teacher-POSS.ESS     boy-POSS.ESS     lesson.ABS.III  
           mo<sup>sl</sup>-ir-xo.  
           teach-CAUS-PRS  
           'The parents are making the teacher teach the boy.'  
           'The parents are asking the teacher to teach the boy.'

Since some ditransitive verbs already subcategorize for noun phrases in the poss-essive and causativization adds a poss-essive causee, it is possible to have two (or more) identically marked constituents in this construction, as in example (203) above. In this case, discriminating the roles of the two poss-essive arguments is facilitated by context, but in principle, such sentences can be ambiguous; for instance, in (204), either Sultan or the girl can be interpreted as the causee. Speakers rely on word order to resolve the ambiguity, with the first poss-essive interpreted as the causee:

- (204) a.        Učitel-ä        sult'an-qo        kid-be-q

	teacher-ERG	Sultan-POSS.ESS	girl-OS-POSS.ESS
sual	bič'zi	b-oy-er-si.	
question.ABS.III understand III-do-CAUS-PST.WIT			
'The teacher made Sultan explain the question to the girl.'			
b.	Učitel-ä	kid-be-q	sult'an-qo
	teacher-ERG	girl-OS-POSS.ESS	Sultan-POSS.ESS
sual	bič'zi	b-oy-er-si.	
question.ABS.III	understand	III-do-CAUS-PST.WIT	
'The teacher made the girl explain the question to Sultan.'			

Another disambiguation strategy is to mark the causee with the topic marker *-n(o)*, thus:

(205) Hakim-ä	učitel-qo-n	xex-za-q
boss-ERG	teacher-POSS.ESS-TOP	child-OS-POSS.ESS
kino r-uka-r-er-si.		
movie.ABS.IV IV-see-CAUS-CAUS-PST.WIT		
'The boss made/asked the teacher (to) show the children a movie.'		

Heavy causatives such as the ones presented here may not get used too frequently but our elicitations show that they are certainly possible.

#### 6.4. Causative of cognition/perception verbs

For cognition/perception verbs with a lative experiencer and an absolute stimulus, we observe two main patterns of causativization. One pattern creates transitive verbs, the other, ditransitive. Causativization of perception and cognition verbs outside the affective construction follows standard rules of causative formation for intransitives or transitives (see section 6.4.3 for the discussion of 'fear').

##### 6.4.1. Transitivization of cognition/perception verbs

With a subset of cognition/perception verbs, namely, 'know', 'forget', 'find', and the verbs denoting the four non-visual senses ('hear', 'feel', 'taste', 'smell'), causativization creates volitional verbs whose agent corresponds to the experiencer in the affective construction. This is represented schematically in (206):

(206) affective:	Experiencer-LAT	Stimulus-ABS	V
causative	Agent-ERG	Stimulus-ABS	V-CAUS

To illustrate, compare the verb AGR-*es-* 'find', which combines with the absolute stimulus and lative experiencer, and its causative counterpart AGR-*esur-* 'find; look for', which takes an

ergative agent and absolutive stimulus/patient.<sup>20</sup> The verb changes from intransitive to transitive, and the roles change, with the experiencer now denoting the agent-like argument, but no new participants are introduced.

- (207) a. Aħo<sup>f</sup>-r meši b-esu-s.  
shepherd-LAT calf.ABS.III III-find-PST.WIT  
‘The shepherd found the calf.’ [LAT-experiencer, ABS-stimulus]
- b. Aħ-ä meši b-esu-r-si.  
shepherd-ERG calf.ABS.III III-find-CAUS-PST.WIT  
‘The shepherd discovered/looked for the calf.’ [ERG-agent, ABS-stimulus]
- (208) a. Debe-r äħi-ru šebin teq-yä?  
2SG-LAT say-PST.PTCP thing.ABS.IV hear-INTERR  
‘Did you hear/understand what was said?’ [LAT-experiencer, ABS-stimulus]
- b. Uži-z-ä eniw=babi-y-ä äħi-ru  
boy-OS.PL-ERG parents-OS-ERG say-PST.PTCP  
šebin teq-er-xo.  
thing.ABS.IV hear-CAUS-PRS  
‘The sons (boys) listen to what their parents say.’ [ERG-agent, ABS-stimulus]
- (209) a. Nesi-r mi r-oy-xosi šebin r-ac-i-x.  
DEM.I-LAT 2SG.ERG IV-do-PRS.PTCP thing.ABS.IV IV-dislike-PRS  
‘He does not like what you are doing.’
- b. Nes-ä mi r-ädi-ru šebin  
DEM.I-LAT 2SG.ERG IV-do-PST.PTCP thing.ABS.IV  
r-ac-ir-no.  
IV-dislike-CAUS-PST.nWIT  
‘He took offense at what you did.’

Likewise, with the complex verb ‘smell’, the experiencer in the affective construction corresponds to the agent-like argument in the transitive clause:

- (210) a. Madina-r [gagali-s mah] b-iy-n.  
Madina-LAT flower-GEN1 smell.ABS.III III-know-PST.nWIT  
‘Madina felt the scent of flowers.’ [LAT-experiencer, ABS-stimulus]
- b. Madin-ä [gagali-s mah] b-iy-r-si.  
Madin-ERG flower-GEN1 smell.ABS.III III-know-CAUS-PST.WIT  
‘Madina smelled flowers.’ [ERG-agent, ABS-stimulus]

The verb šuħ- ‘be forgotten’ takes the experiencer in the lative and the stimulus in the absolute (see (182) above), whereas its causative counterpart takes the ergative agent/experiencer and the absolute stimulus. Given its semantics, it is not surprising that the corresponding causative verb is often used in imperatives:

---

<sup>20</sup> Whether the stimulus actually becomes a patient in the ergative construction is a contentious issue. We will continue to refer to that participant as stimulus, with the understanding that it corresponds to a patient-like (theme-like) argument.

- (211) *pro ac hiš-a šuλ'-är-no/\*šuλ'-no!*  
          ERG door.ABS.II close-INF forget-CAUS-PROH/be.forgotten-PROH  
          'Don't forget to close the door!'

In some cases, the interpretive contrast between the intransitive psychological predicate and its transitive counterpart is quite subtle. Compare the intransitive AGR-*iy-* ‘know; happen to know’ and the transitive AGR-*iy-r-* ‘know; get to know’. Example (212) is an appropriate comment on someone who grew up in a place where it was hard to learn Russian; (213) seems to emphasize commitment to knowing and maintaining one’s language.

- (212) Neła-r                  ɿurus                  mec                  b-iy-x-ānu.  
DEM.ni-LAT      Russian      language.ABS.III      III-know-PRS-NEG  
‘She does not know the Russian language.’

(213) [Q’im-ä q’im-e-s      mec                  b-iy-r-ani-x]  
own-OS-GEN1      language.ABS.III      III-know-CAUS-MASD-AD.ESS  
hažetaw      šebin      (yoł).  
important      thing.ABS.IV      be.PRS  
‘It is important to know one’s own language.’ (=3) above)

Similarly, (214) may be a statement about an accidental encounter, while in (215) the implication is that an intentional effort is being made.

- (214) Dä-r ža uži ged-mo-x-or Ø iy-s.  
     1SG-LAT DEM boy.ABS.I garment-OS-AD-LAT I-know-PST.WIT  
     'I recognized (knew) that boy by his shirt.'

(215) Aħ-ä nesi-s b'ελ'λ'u šila-za-x-or  
     shepherd-ERG DEM.I-GEN sheep(.SG).ABS.III horn-OS.PL-AD-LAT  
     b-iy-r-si.  
     III-know-CAUS-PST.WIT  
     'The shepherd recognized (knew) his sheep by its horns.'

#### **6.4.2. Ditransitivization of cognition/perception verbs**

In the second pattern of causativization of cognition/perception verbs, a new participant is introduced as the causer, creating a three-place predicate. Consider the causative of *-et-* ‘like, want’; causativization adds a causer, the experiencer becomes the causee in the poss-essive, and the stimulus remains in the absolute. To represent this schematically:

- |                  |           |                     |                  |            |
|------------------|-----------|---------------------|------------------|------------|
| (216) affective: |           | Experiencer-LAT     | Stimulus-ABS     | V          |
| causative        | Agent-ERG | <br>Causee-POSS-ESS | <br>Stimulus-ABS | <br>V-CAUS |

Consider the causativization of AGR-*et*- ‘like; love; want’:

- (217) a. Debe-r čorpa b-eti-x-ānu.  
           2SG-LAT   soup.ABS.IV IV-like-PRS-NEG

- b. ‘You don’t like (the) soup.’
- |               |              |                    |                  |
|---------------|--------------|--------------------|------------------|
| Eni-y-ä       | debe-q       | yedu čorpa         | b-et-ir-xo.      |
| mother-OS-ERG | 2SG-POSS.ESS | DEM.nI soup.ABS.IV | IV-like-CAUS-PRS |
- ‘The mother is making/will make you like this soup.’

Likewise, the causative of AGR-*ukad-* ‘see (be visible)’ is the ditransitive verb AGR-*ukar-* ‘show’, which we already discussed in section 4.1. Here, the agent appears in the ergative, the recipient-turned-causee appears in the poss-essive, and the absolutive encodes the stimulus/patient.

The same causativization pattern can be found with complex verbs of cognition/perception. Compare the intransitive verb *bič’zi* AGR-*oq-* ‘be clear, be understood’ and its transitive counterpart *bič’zi* AGR-*od-* ‘make clear, explain’:

- (218) (kid-be-q)                sual                bič’zi                b-oq-x-ānu.  
             girl-OS-POSS.ESS     question.ABS.III     understand     III-become-PRS-NEG  
             ‘The question was not understood.’//‘The girl does not understand the question.’
- (219) Učitel-ä                (kid-be-q)                sual                bič’zi  
             teacher-ERG             girl-OS-POSS.ESS     question.ABS.III     understand  
             b-oy-s.  
             III-do-PST.WIT  
             ‘The teacher explained the question (to the girl).’

Note that finer semantic distinctions within the class of cognition/perception verbs do not predict which of the two patterns of causativization will occur. The verb ‘like’ causativizes using the schema in (216), and verb ‘dislike’ uses the opposite pattern, (206); causativization turns the verb of seeing into a ditransitive, and the other four sense verbs into transitives.

The differences among the causativization patterns of cognition/perception verbs opens up larger questions concerning both the underlying structural differences among these verbs and the grammatical functions of the experiencer and stimulus in the affective construction. We have already mentioned that the verbs appearing in the affective construction seem intransitive, and the lative noun phrase can be easily omitted. However, the argument structure of a verb like ‘be known’ or ‘be visible’ presupposes not only the stimulus but also the experiencer of knowledge or sight. This being the case, the lative noun phrase can express either an argument or what some researchers call an obligatory adjunct (cf. Grimshaw and Vikner 1993; Golberg and Ackerman 2001). Assuming that both noun phrases, the lative and the absolutive, are obligatory in the affective construction, the next question is which of these phrases (if either) acts as the subject. There are several possibilities: the lative is the subject and the absolutive the object; the absolutive is the subject and the lative is the (indirect) object; neither noun phrase is the subject.

We find that the difference in causativization corresponds to additional differences in at least three other domains. The first has to do with reflexivization. The details are given in CH. YY [Reflexives and anaphora], but in a nutshell, verbs which causativize into transitives (section 6.4.1—we will refer to them as ‘know’-verbs) have the lative argument binding the absolutive but not vice versa, and verbs that causativize into ditransitives (section 6.4.2—we will refer to

them as ‘like’-verbs) allow binding both ways, from the lative to the absolute and vice versa. Another area of divergence between the two types of cognition/perception verbs has to do with coreference across clauses, in particular between a pronominal or demonstrative antecedent and the emphatic particle *-tow* (CH. YY [Reflexives and anaphora]). The lative experiencer of ‘know’-verbs has priority over the absolute in determining coreference across clauses; with ‘like’-verbs, both noun phrases seem to have equal access to such coreference (see CH. YY [Reflexives and anaphora]). Finally, the two classes of cognition/perception verbs differ with respect to formation of masdar relative clauses (CH. YY [Relative clauses]). With ‘know’-verbs, only the absolute argument can be relativized with a masdar clause; with ‘like’-verbs, both the absolute and the lative can produce masdar relatives.

A summary of the differences between the two types is given in Table 1.

Table 1. Structural differences across cognition/perception verbs

	Causativization	Reflexive binding	Coreference across clauses	Relativization with masdar relative clause
‘know’, ‘hear’, ‘feel’, ‘forget’, ‘find’, ‘dislike’	Creates transitive volitional verbs with experiencer as ergative argument	LAT binds ABS; *ABS binds LAT	LAT has priority over ABS	*LAT ABS
‘see’, ‘like/love/want’	Creates ditransitive verbs with experiencer mapping to causee; adds a causer argument	LAT binds ABS; ABS binds LAT	LAT and ABS are equal in maintaining coreference	LAT ABS

Independent evidence shows that masdar relative clauses can relativize on any argument except the highest one; for instance, ergative noun phrases and absolute subjects cannot relativize this way (CH. YY [Relative clauses]). This observation suggests an explanation for the differences between ‘know’-verbs and ‘like’-verbs. With ‘know’-verbs, the lative noun phrase appears to be a non-canonical subject (as has been observed with subjects of cognition/perception verbs across a number of languages; cf. Croft 1993, Blake 2001, Butt 2006 for a discussion, and see Pylkkänen 1999 for a similar pattern in Finnish). Evidence from other clause types demonstrates independently that Tsez subjects cannot be reflexive (see CH. YY [Reflexives and anaphora]), so the asymmetrical reflexivization observed with ‘know’-verbs follows if the lative is a subject. Finally, since Tsez is an “intransitive language”, where the causative pattern (deriving transitive verbs from intransitive) is more prevalent than the anticausative pattern (deriving intransitive verbs from transitive; commonly found in Romance or Slavic), the causativization of non-volitional verbs as volitional transitives is part of the larger pattern.

To represent the structure of ‘know’-verbs schematically, let us revisit the sentence (207a), repeated below:

(220)	Aho <sup>s</sup> -r	meši	b-esu-s.
	shepherd-LAT	calf.ABS.III	III-find-PST.WIT
	NON-CANONICAL	OBJECT	
	SUBJECT		

With ‘like’-verbs, the lative argument is not a subject; it is a structurally prominent additional argument of an unaccusative predicate, added through a process akin to applicativization. Such predicates have been described as applicative unaccusatives (see Režić 2008 for the term and for the analysis of the Basque *gustatu* ‘like’), and their experiencer arguments as “i-nominals” (the term from Moore and Perlmutter 2000). Applicative unaccusatives have two schematic realizations. In the schema shown in (221a), they have an expletive subject, and the internal argument of the verb appears in its base position. In this realization, the applied (indirect) object is higher than the base object and can bind it. Alternatively, in the schema shown in (221b), the internal argument of the applicative unaccusative raises to the subject position, in which case it is now higher than the lative object and can bind it. This results in the appearance of symmetrical reflexivization in clauses with ‘like’-verbs.

(221)	a.	<i>expl</i>	debe-r	čorpa	b-eti-x-ānu.
			2SG-LAT	soup.ABS.IV	IV-like-PRS-NEG
		SUBJECT	APPLIED	BASE	
			OBJECT	OBJECT	
	b.	čorpa	debe-r	b-eti-x-ānu.	
		soup.ABS.IV	2SG-LAT		IV-like-PRS-NEG
		SUBJECT	APPLIED		
			OBJECT		

#### 6.4.3. ‘Fear’/‘frighten’

Recall that the verb AGR-*uλ'* ‘fear; be afraid’, although semantically a psychological state verb, is structurally a regular intransitive. Its experiencer appears in the absolute and its stimulus in the super-essive:

(222)	[Yedu kid]	[meži-z	γ <sup>wc</sup> ay-q]	y-uλ'-xo.
	DEM girl.ABS.II	2PL-GEN2	dog-OS-POSS.ESS	II-fear-PRS
	EXPERIENCER	STIMULUS		
‘This girl is afraid of your dog.’ (lit.: fears on your dog)				

Accordingly, AGR-*uλ'* is causativized following the intransitive pattern, with the absolute experiencer corresponding to the absolute causee of the transitive verb AGR-*uλ'-er-* ‘frighten’ and the ergative causer denoting the source of fear. Causative verbal forms are ambiguous between direct and indirect causation; these interpretations are distinguished contextually. Therefore, it is possible to find ‘frighten’ expressing both direct and indirect events of making someone scared:

(223)	a.	Meži-z	γ <sup>wc</sup> ay-ä	kid	y-uλ'-er-xo.
-------	----	--------	----------------------	-----	--------------

- 2PL-GEN2      dog-ERG      girl.ABS.II      II-fear-CAUS-PRS  
                   'Your dog frightens the girl.'
- b. Xexbi                         (aždaħo-za-q)  
  children.ABS.nIPL      dragon-OS.PL-POSS.ESS      r-uħ'-er-xo  
                               eniw=babi-y-ä.  
                              parents-OS-ERG  
                               'Parents frighten children (with dragons).'

## 7. Biabsolutive construction

In the biabsolutive construction, the two core arguments, corresponding to the ergative and the absolute of a transitive or ditransitive verb, both occur in the absolute form. This change in case marking is accompanied by changes in agreement, which we show below. Two main biabsolutive patterns are observed; in one, the predicate consists of the imperfective converb with the auxiliary ‘be’, and in the other, the predicate includes the imperfective converb, the resultative participle of the verb AGR-*ič-* ‘stay’, and the auxiliary ‘be’.<sup>21</sup> Compare the ergative construction in (224) with its biabsolutive counterparts:

- (224) Už-ä      aħo      y-eč'-xo      (yoł/zow-s).  
  boy-ERG    tree.ABS.II    II-cut-IPFV.CVB      AUX.PRS/AUX.PST-PST.WIT  
                   'The boy is/was cutting a/the tree.'
- (225) Uži      aħo      y-eč'-xo      (yoł/zow-s).  
  boy.ABS.I    tree.ABS.II    II-cut-IPFV.CVB      AUX.PRS/AUX.PST-PST.WIT  
                   'The boy is/was cutting a/the tree.'
- (226) Uži      aħo      y-eč'-xo/\*Ø-eč'-xo      Ø-ič-äsi/\*y-ič-äsi  
  boy.ABS.I    tree.ABS.II    II-cut-IPFV.CVB / I-cut- IPFV.CVB      I-stay-RES/II-stay-RES  
                   (yoł/zow-s).  
                   AUX.PRS/AUX.PST-PST.WIT  
                   'The boy is/was (in the state of) cutting a/the tree.'

In the discussion below, we will be referring to the *uži*-type noun phrase in (225) and (226) as the “agent absolute,” and to the *aħo*-type noun phrase as the “patient absolute.”

Since auxiliaries are freely omitted in root clauses (as we indicate by putting them in parentheses in (225) and (226)), the difference between the ergative construction and the biabsolutive in (225) is just in the case marking of the agent argument. In (226), the difference in agreement becomes apparent, however; the notional verb ‘cut’ agrees with the patient ‘tree’ but the resultative participle of the verb AGR-*ič-* ‘stay’ agrees with the agent. Alternative agreement is impossible, as indicated in the examples above.

---

<sup>21</sup> The contrast between transitive ergative constructions and biabsolutive (or binominative) constructions is quite common in Nakh-Dagestanian languages (see Kibrik 1975 for one of the earliest discussions, Forker 2012 for an overview, and Gagliardi et al. 2014 for a detailed syntactic analysis).

The biabsolutive construction is optional and alternates with the ergative construction. Possibly as a result of this alternation, it is rather rare, despite the fact that its building blocks (the converb and the resultative participle) are actually quite common in spoken language and in narrative texts. When the biabsolutive is used, its interpretation includes two salient components. First, the construction is interpreted as progressive or durative, and for the subtype with AGR-*ič-äsi*, as indicating a continuous state. Indeed, we find that the biabsolutive construction is natural with such adverbs as ‘still’, ‘already’, ‘all the time’, but is judged as infelicitous in the presence of ‘sometimes’:

- (227) Kid žäd ḥak'o b-oy-x y-ič-äsi yoł.  
girl.ABS.II still xinkal.ABS.III III-do-IPFV.CVB II-stay-RES AUX.PRS  
(‘The girl is still busy making dumplings.’)
- (228) #Uži sosit'a/zama=zamanyox aho y-eč'-xo  
boy.ABS.I sometimes/from.time.to.time tree.ABS.II II-cut IPFV.CVB  
Ø-ič-äsi zow-s.  
I-stay-RES AUX.PST-PST.WIT  
(‘The boy was sometimes cutting a/the tree.’)

The second meaning component of the biabsolutive construction is an emphasis on the state of the agent participant; speakers suggest that the agent is somehow foregrounded and the agent’s involvement in the event is particularly noticeable. Similar observations concerning the emphasis on the agent have been made for biabsolutive constructions in other Nakh-Dagestanian languages (Kazennin 1998; Forker 2012); Forker (2012) refers to such emphasis as “agent focusing”.

The foregrounding of the agent referent goes hand-in-hand with the perception of the agent as affected by the ongoing state of affairs denoted by the construction. Because these auxiliary constructions have a clear aspectual reading, it is also possible to imagine that they should be possible with intransitive verbs, but identifying biabsolutive constructions based on intransitives is more difficult because the subject does not change its case marking. Further evidence that the biabsolutive construction generally emphasizes the state of the agent comes from manner adverbials. In the biabsolutive construction, manner adverbials describing the way an event develops can only refer to the event expressed by the converb; meanwhile outside that construction, manner adverbials can modify any predicate. Consider the following example, where the agreeing adverb ‘fast’ can apply to the manner of the letter-reading but not to the father’s state:

- (229) a. Debi babiw y-<sup>s</sup>aλo/\*Ø-<sup>s</sup>aλo kayat t'et'er-xo  
2SG.GEN1 father.ABS.I II-fast/I-fast letter.ABS.II read-IPFV.CVB  
Ø-ič-äsi zow-s.  
I-stay-RES AUX.PST-PST.WIT  
b. Debi babiw kayat y-<sup>s</sup>aλo/\*Ø-<sup>s</sup>aλo t'et'er-xo  
2SG.GEN1 father.ABS.I letter.ABS.II II-fast/I-fast read-IPFV.CVB  
Ø-ič-äsi zow-s.  
I-stay-RES AUX.PST-PST.WIT  
(‘Your father was engaged in quickly reading a/the letter.’)

In contrast, the agreeing adverb ‘already’ can relate to either of the subevents, but with different interpretations:

- (230) a. Debi babiw Ø-uygon kayat t'et'er-xo  
           2SG.GEN1 father.ABS.I I-already letter.ABS.II read-IPFV.CVB  
       Ø-ič-äsi zow-s.  
       I-stay-RES AUX.PST-PST.WIT  
       ‘Your father was already engaged in reading a/the letter.’ (“already” refers to the state of being engaged)
- b. Debi babiw y-uygon kayat t'et'er-xo  
           2SG.GEN1 father.ABS.I II-already letter.ABS.II read-IPFV.CVB  
       Ø-ič-äsi zow-s.  
       I-stay-RES AUX.PST-PST.WIT  
       ‘Your father was engaged in already reading a/the letter.’ (“already” refers to the event of reading)

In addition to its agreement and case marking properties, the biabsolutive construction has more rigid word order than its ergative counterpart. While all six orders of subject, object, and verb are possible in (224), in the biabsolutive construction, the object cannot follow the verb and cannot appear directly before the subject on the same side of the verb:

- (231) a. Uži aho y-eč'-xo yoł/zow-s. [SOV]  
       boy.ABS.I tree.ABS.II II-cut-IPFV.CVB AUX.PRS/AUX.PST-PST.WIT  
       b. Aho y-eč'-xo yoł/zow-s uži. [OVS]  
       tree.ABS.II II-cut-IPFV.CVB AUX.PRS/AUX.PST-PST.WIT boy.ABS.I  
       ‘The boy is/was cutting a/the tree.’
- c. \*Aho uži y-eč'-xo yoł/zow-s. [\*OSV]  
       tree.ABS.II boy.ABS.I II-cut-IPFV.CVB AUX.PRS/AUX.PST-PST.WIT  
       d. \*Y-eč'-xo yoł/zow-s aho uži. [\*VOS]  
       II-cut-IPFV.CVB AUX.PRS/AUX.PST-PST.WIT tree.ABS.II boy.ABS.I  
       e. \*Y-eč'-xo yoł/zow-s uži aho. [\*VSO]  
       II-cut-IPFV.CVB AUX.PRS/AUX.PST-PST.WIT boy.ABS.I tree.ABS.II  
       f. \*Uži y-eč'-xo yoł/zow-s aho. [\*SVO]  
       boy.ABS.I II-cut-IPFV.CVB AUX.PRS/AUX.PST-PST.WIT tree.ABS.II

Although the object cannot precede the subject absolutive in OSV order and cannot follow the verb altogether, it can be separated from the verb, as we see in example (229b).

Inanimate agents are impossible in the biabsolutive construction; compare the ergative construction in (76), repeated below (with irrelevant glossing details omitted), and its ungrammatical biabsolutive counterpart:

- (232) C'i-d-ä ŋa᷑yur y-ikur-xo.  
       fire-ERG mill.ABS.II II-burn-PRS  
       ‘Fire burns the mill.’
- (233) \*C'i ŋa᷑yur y-ikur-xo yoł.

fire.ABS	mill.ABS.II	II-burn-IPFV.CVB	AUX.PRS
('Fire is burning the mill.)			

Inadvertent agents and experiencers are also impossible in the biabsolutive construction; thus, cognition/perception verbs such as those discussed in section 5 do not appear in this construction:

- (234) Madina-r [gagali-s maħ] b-iy-x.  
       Madina-LAT flower-GEN1 smell.ABS.III III-know-PRS  
       'Madina smells flowers.'
- (235) \*Madina [gagali-s maħ] b-iy-xo y-ič-äsi yoł.  
       Madina.ABS.II flower-GEN1 smell.ABS.III III-know-IPFV.CVB II-stay-RES AUX.PRS  
       ('Madina is smelling flowers.')

There is one exception to the ban on experiencers in the biabsolutive construction, in the case of the verb AGR-*et-* 'love, like, want'. This verb can appear in the biabsolutive construction, but only with a highly restricted meaning. While (236) is ambiguous out of context, the biabsolutive construction in (237) can have only the meaning 'want', but not 'like' or 'love':

- (236) Xex-za-r sayyat b-eti-x yoł.  
       child-OS-LAT gift.ABS.III III-want-IPFV.CVB AUX.PRS  
       'Children like/want a/the gift.'
- (237) Xex-bi sayyat b-eti-x r-ič-äsi yoł.  
       child-ABS(.nIPL) gift.ABS.III III-want-IPFV.CVB nIPL-stay-RES AUX.PRS  
       'Children want (are wanting) a gift.'

One could argue that liking something is a less volitional process than wanting something; that would account for the data in (237). Based on this data point and the fact that only animate agents are allowed in the biabsolutive construction, we can conclude that the agent of this construction must be volitional.

As long as the restrictions on the semantics of the agent are met, both transitive and ditransitive verbs, and even polytransitive causatives, can appear in the biabsolutive construction. For example,

- (238) Učitel-bi xex-za-q kino r-uka-r-xo  
       teacher-ABS.PL.IPL child-OS-POSS.ESS movie.ABS.IV IV-see-CAUS-IPFV.CVB  
       b-ič-äsi zow-s.  
       IPL-stay-RES AUX.ST-PST.WIT  
       'The teachers were showing the children a movie.'

The agent absolutive in both biabsolutive structures can be replaced with a wh-word and appear with the topic particles *-no* and *-gon*. It can also undergo relativization, although relative clauses formed from the biabsolutive construction without *-ičäsi* are indistinguishable from relative clauses formed from the corresponding ergative construction (thus, examples (239b) and (240b) have the same form):

- (239) a. Už-ä aho y-eč'-xo zow-s.  
          boy-ERG tree.ABS.II II-cut-IPFV.CVB AUX.PST-PST.WIT  
          ‘The boy was cutting a/the tree.’
- b. [aho y-eč'-xo zāw-ru] uži  
     tree.ABS.II II-cut-IPFV.CVB AUX.PST-PST.PTCP boy  
     ‘the boy who was cutting a/the tree’
- (240) a. Uži aho y-eč'-xo zow-s.  
     boy.ABS.I tree.ABS.II II-cut-IPFV.CVB AUX.PST-PST.WIT  
     ‘The boy was cutting a/the tree.’
- b. [aho y-eč'-xo zāw-ru] uži  
     tree.ABS.II II-cut-IPFV.CVB AUX.PST-PST.PTCP boy  
     ‘the boy who was cutting a/the tree’
- (241) a. Uži aho y-eč'-xo Ø-ič-äsi  
     boy.ABS.I tree.ABS.II II-cut-IPFV.CVB I-stay-RES  
     zow-s.  
     AUX.PST-PST.WIT  
     ‘The boy was (in the state of) cutting a/the tree.’
- b. [aho y-eč'-xo Ø-ič-äsi zāw-ru] uži  
     tree.ABS.II II-cut-IPFV.CVB I-stay-RES AUX.PST-PST.PTCP boy  
     ‘the boy who was (in the state of) cutting a/the tree’

So far, we have described both types of the biabsolutive construction together. However, they also demonstrate some differences, particularly with respect to wh-question formation, topic marking, and adverb placement.

In the biabsolutive construction without the resultative participle, the patient absolutive can be replaced with a wh-word, can undergo relativization, and can appear with topic particles. For example:

- (242) a. Uži šebi r-eč'-xo zow-ä?  
     boy.ABS.I what.ABS.IV IV-cut-IPFV.CVB AUX .PST-PST.WIT.INTERR  
     ‘What was the boy cutting?’
- b. [uži y-eč'-xo zāw-ru] aho  
     boy.ABS.I II-cut-IPFV.CVB AUX.PST-PST.PTCP tree  
     ‘the tree that the boy was cutting’

In the biabsolutive construction with the resultative participle, the absolutive patient cannot be replaced with a wh-word, cannot undergo relativization and cannot appear with topic particles. To illustrate:<sup>22</sup>

---

<sup>22</sup> Example (243a) is acceptable as an echo question: “The boy was busy cutting WHAT?” Evidence for the “echo” nature of this question comes from word order. Unlike regular questions, the wh-word in echo-questions can appear postverbally (see CH. YY [Interrog] for regular versus echo questions), and a variation on (243a) with a postverbal wh-word is also possible:

- (243) a. \*Uži šebi r-eč'-xo Ø-ič-äsi zow-ä?  
          boy.ABS.I what.ABS.IV IV-cut-IPFV.CVB I-stay-RES AUX.PST-PST.WIT.INTERR  
          ('What was the boy cutting?')  
 b. \*[uži y-eč'-xo Ø-ič-äsi zāw-ru] aho  
       boy.ABS.I II-cut-IPFV.CVB I-stay-RES AUX.PST-PST.PTCP tree  
       ('the tree that the boy was (in the state of) cutting')  
 c. \*Uži a ho-gon y-eč'-xo Ø-ič-äsi  
       boy.ABS.I tree.ABS.II-CONTR.TOP IV-cut-IPFV.CVB I-stay-RES  
       zow-s.  
          AUX.PST-PST.WIT  
       ('As for the tree, the boy was cutting it.')

Finally, the two constructions differ with respect to adverbial scope and placement. Consider the behavior of an agreeing adverbial such as AGR-*uygon* 'already', which was introduced in (230) above. We repeat the examples from (230) below, modified to show the possible omission of the resultative participle.

- (244) a. Debi babiw Ø-uygon kayat t'et'er-xo  
          2SG.GEN1 father.ABS.I I-already letter.ABS.II read-IPFV.CVB  
       (Ø-ič-äsi) zow-s.  
          I-stay-RES AUX.PST-PST.WIT  
       'Your father was already engaged in reading a/the letter.'  
 b. Debi babiw y-uygon kayat t'et'er-xo  
          2SG.GEN1 father.ABS.I II-already letter.ABS.II read-IPFV.CVB  
       (Ø-ič-äsi) zow-s.  
          I-stay-RES AUX.PST-PST.WIT  
       'Your father was engaged in already reading a/the letter.'

As (244) shows, in both biabsolutive subtypes, the agreeing adverbial can precede the absolute patient and can agree with either the agent or patient. However, if the same adverb appears between the absolute patient and the verb, a distinction emerges: both agreements are still possible in the biabsolutive construction without the resultative participle, but only agreement with the patient is possible in the construction with the resultative participle:

- (245) a. Kayat y-uygon/Ø-uygon t'et'er-xo zow-s  
          letter.ABS.II II-already/I-already read-IPFV.CVB AUX.PST-PST.WIT  
       debi babiw.  
          2SG.GEN1 father.ABS.I  
       'Your father was already engaged in reading a/the letter.'
- 

- (i) Uži r-eč'-xo Ø-ič-äsi zow-ä šebi?  
       boy.ABS.I IV-cut-IPFV.CVB I-stay-RES AUX.PST-PST.WIT.INTERR what.ABS.IV  
       'WHAT was the boy cutting?'

- ‘Your father was engaged in already reading a/the letter.’
- b. Kayat y-uygon/\*Ø-uygon t’et’er-xo Ø-ič-äsi  
letter.ABS.II II-already/I-already read-IPFV.CVB I-stay-RES  
zow-s debi babiw.  
AUX.PST-PST.WIT 2SG.GEN1 father.ABS.I  
‘Your father was engaged in already reading a/the letter.’  
NOT: ‘Your father was already engaged in reading a/the letter.’

These differences suggest that the biabsolutive construction without the resultative participle is monoclausal; the combination of the converb and the auxiliary creates a complex verb form with a dedicated aspectual meaning (see Comrie 2000a for further discussion). An adverb that agrees with either of the absolutes is free to find a place anywhere in that monoclausal structure.

The biabsolutive construction with the resultative participle, by contrast, has two separate clausal domains, one containing the absolute patient and the converb, the other containing the absolute agent and the resultative form. For clarity, we represent these domains schematically using the order OVS:

- (246) a. [[ABS-patient V-CVB] stay-RES AUX ABS-Agent]  
LOWER DOMAIN HIGHER DOMAIN  
b. [[kayat t’et’er-xo] Ø-ič-äsi yoł debi babiw]  
letter.ABS.II read-IPFV.CVB I-stay-RES AUX.PRS 2SG.GEN1 father.ABS.I

Here, the absolute patient is in the embedded structure, from where it is inaccessible to relativization and question formation. This embedded clause can take its own adverbial scope, separate from the adverbial scope of the higher clause (see Gagliardi et al. 2014 for a detailed syntactic analysis). Other researchers have suggested that different syntactic structures may correspond to otherwise similar constructions. For example, Harris and Campbell (1995: section 7.4.3) discuss two biabsolutive constructions in Avar, suggesting that one is monoclausal, while the other may not be. Harris and Campbell’s discussion suggests that there are other biabsolutive “types” in the Nakh-Dagestanian family as well. If so, it may be useful to investigate diachronic pathways from one structure to the other: should one expect the development of a monoclausal structure from a biclausal one, or vice versa? What might trigger such a development?

## 8. Summary

This chapter presented the main argument structure types for Tsez verbs and introduced the main types of clauses formed by such verbs. By way of summary, we present the clauses discussed above in a table.

Table 2. Main clause types in Tsez

Clause type	Predicate	Core constituents
“Impersonal”	Unaccusative intransitive verb	ABS argument

Copular	Predicative complement (nominal, noun phrase, non-finite verb forms, adverb, PP, adjective) and auxiliary verb	ABS argument
Existential proper	'be', 'become'	ABS pivot, adverbial scene-setting expression
Possessive existential	'be', 'become', 'appear'	ABS pivot, GEN or POSS-ESS possessor
All other intransitive clauses	Any intransitive verb	ABS argument
Accidental construction	Intransitive	ABS patient, POSS-ESS inadvertent agent
Affective construction	Intransitive verb expressing psychological or cognitive state	ABS stimulus, LAT experiencer
Ergative construction	Transitive or ditransitive verb (including causative of intransitive)	ERG agent, ABS patient
Potential construction	Transitive or ditransitive verb in the potential form	POSS-ESS agent, ABS patient
Ditransitive construction	Ditransitive verb (excluding causatives of transitives)	ERG agent (POSS-ESS agent), ABS patient, Recipient/Goal in a lexically specified spatial form (LAT, POSS-LAT)
Ditransitive construction	Causative of transitive	ERG causer, ABS patient, POSS-ESS causee

## Questions

Tsez questions are constructed using the general interrogative marker -(y)ä, the distribution of which is subject to phonological rules (see CH. YY). If combining with a verb in any affirmative form other than the witnessed past, the suffix can often be omitted, in which case the question interpretation must be inferred from prosody and general context.

### 1 Yes-no questions

#### 1.1 Matrix clause yes-no questions

Yes-no (polar) questions are formed by adding the interrogative suffix to the questioned constituent. In a neutral yes-no question (asking whether the proposition is true or not), the interrogative appears on the finite verb, as shown in the following examples. In forms other than the witnessed past, the interrogative marking is optional (as shown in (1) and (2)), and the difference between declaratives and interrogatives can be expressed by intonation alone.

- (1) Qema r-egir-xo/r-egir-x-ä?  
rain.ABS.IV IV-send-PRS/IV-send-PRS-INTERR  
'Is it raining?'
- (2) B-ukay-x(-ä) elo-s bitay qala?  
III-see-PRS-INTERR there-GEN1 far.away fortress.ABS.III  
'Do you see the fortress over there?' (FAliqilič:114)
- (3) Yoł-ä mežu-ł teł yiła gulu-λ'  
be.PRS-INTERR 2PL-CONT.ESS among DEM.nI.OS horse-SUPER.ESS  
zow-ani-x bažari yoł-äsi žek'u?  
climb-MASD-AD.ESS capability.ABS.III be-RES person.ABS.I  
'Is there a man among you who has the ability to ride this horse?' (Qacis gulu:19)

If the predicate is expressed by a complex verb, the interrogative marker appears on the finite part of the predicate, thus:

- (4) Mi di y-ow-a yoł-ä?  
2SG.ERG 1SG.ABS(.II) II-take-INF be.PRS-INTERR  
'Are you going to take me as your wife?' (Qacis gulu:11)
- (5) Dä-q aq'lu mołhi-xosi Ø-oq-ä mi?  
1SG-POSS.ESS sense.ABS.III teach-PRS.PTCP i-become-INTERR 2SG.ABS(.I)  
'Are you here to teach me?'
- (6) Dey gulu b-et'u-n koł'-ä?  
1SG.GEN1 horse.ABS.III III-tear.away-PFV.CVB run-PST.WIT.INTERR  
'Did your horse gallop?'

In negative polar questions, the interrogative suffix follows negation. Again, except in the witnessed past, the interrogative marker is often omitted:

- (7) Dey humukuli b-ukay-nč'-ä?  
1SG.GEN1 camel.ABS.III III-see-PST.NEG-INTERR

- 'Haven't (you) seen my camel?'
- (8) Neło-s            hažat            ānu/an-ä            debe-r?  
 DEM.NI-GEN1    necessity/ABS.IV    be.PRS.NEG/be.PRS.NEG-INTERR    2SG-LAT  
 'Don't you need that?' (lit.: is there not its necessity to you?)

If a clause includes the validator adverbial AGR-*uy* 'indeed, certainly' (see CH. YY [Adverbial phrase] and CH. YY [Particles]), the interrogative marker attaches to it, and the general interpretation of the question is the same as if it were on the verb. The following questions, with the intransitive verb AGR-*oλ-* (whose absolute subject is presupposed but not expressed) are truth-conditionally equivalent:<sup>1</sup>

- (9) a. Debi            r-uy-ä            r-oλ-xo?  
 2SG.GEN1    IV-indeed-INTERR    IV-hurt-PRS  
 'Are you ill?' (Bašiq'oy:32)
- b. Debi            r-oλ-x-ä?  
 2SG.GEN1    IV-hurt-PRS-INTERR  
 'Are you ill?'

If the interrogative suffix appears on a constituent other than the finite form of the predicate, that constituent is in focus. The interrogative suffix cannot be omitted in such questions. There is no difference in finiteness between questions with the focus on the predicate and questions with the focus on some other constituent. In that respect, Tsez is different from some other languages of the family, where non-predicate polar questions require that the main verb appear in a non-finite form (see Kibrik 1999: 453-455 for Tsaxur).

Compare (2), which questions the ability of the addressee to see the fortress, and (10), where the goal is to ascertain whether the object in sight is a fortress or not:<sup>2</sup>

- (10) B-ukay-x        elo-s            bitay            qala-yä?  
 III-see-PRS    there-GEN1    far.away            fortress.ABS.III-INTERR  
 'Is it the fortress over there that you see?'

Likewise, compare (1), which is an information question about the weather, and (11), where the question pertains to the type of precipitation that is falling from the sky.

- (11) Qema-yä            r-egir-xo?

<sup>1</sup> If AGR-*uy* is present in a clause, the interrogative marker typically combines with it. The following question is judged unacceptable:

(i) ??/\*Debi        r-uy            r-oλ-x-ä?  
 2SG.GEN1    IV-indeed            IV-hurt-PRS-INTERR  
 ('Are you ill?')

<sup>2</sup> Yes-no questions of this kind are often translated into English as clefts, but there is no cleft structure in the original.

rain.ABS.IV-INTERR IV-send-PRS  
 ‘Is it rain that is falling?’

If a constituent inside a complex verb is questioned, only that part is in focus. For example, in (12), the focus is on teaching:

- (12) Dä-q aq'slu močli-xosi-yä Ø-oqno  
 1SG-POSS.ESS sense.ABS.III teach-PRS.PTCP-INTERR I-become-INTERR  
 mi?  
 2SG.ABS(.I)  
 ‘Is it to teach me that you are here?’

In (13), the question asked is not whether the glove is or is not special, but about the degree to which it is different from all other gloves:

- (13) Ža debi reč'iqoy bat'iyaw-tow-ä r-ič-a r-āy-x?  
 DEM 2SG.GEN1 glove.ABS.IV different-FOC-INTERR IV-stay-INF IV-must-PRS  
 ‘This glove of yours must be really special, mustn’t it?’ (lit. is it really special that your  
 glove must be) (Xanes Ḵono u žin, sis kidno:30)

As examples (12) and (13) indicate, the focus of a yes-no question can also be on a subconstituent. To illustrate further, compare the following examples. In (14), the question is about the event of bringing wet firewood. In (15), the focus of the question is on the agent (whether the one that brought the wet firewood was the rooster or not), and in (16), the focus is on the object (whether what the rooster brought in was wet firewood or not). In (17), however, the focus is on a subconstituent of the noun phrase: did the rooster bring wet firewood, or dry firewood?

- (14) Mamalay-ä at'iw-t'a qaca r-ay-r-ä?  
 rooster-ERG wet-DISTR firewood.ABS.IV IV-come-CAUS-PST.WIT.INTERR  
 ‘Did he regularly bring wet firewood?’ (based on Onočun mamalayn:4)  
 (15) Mamalay-ä-yä at'iw-t'a qaca r-ay-r-si?  
 rooster-ERG-INTERR wet-DISTR firewood.ABS.IV IV-come-CAUS-PST.WIT  
 ‘Was it the rooster that regularly brought wet firewood?’  
 (16) Mamalay-ä at'iw-t'a qaca-yä r-ay-r-si?  
 rooster-ERG wet-DISTR firewood.ABS.IV-INTERR IV-come-CAUS-PST.WIT  
 ‘Was it wet firewood that the rooster regularly brought?’  
 (17) Mamalay-ä at'iw-t'a-yä qaca r-ay-r-si?  
 rooster-ERG wet-DISTR-INTERR firewood.ABS.IV IV-come-CAUS-PST.WIT  
 ‘Is it true of the firewood that the rooster regularly brought that it was wet?’

In the next two sentences, the yes-no question is either about the entire event (18), or about the manner of that event (19); in the latter case, the interrogative marker appears on the adverb:

- (18) Ža durimoč' Ø-ay-ä?  
 DEM.ABS(.I) by.running I-come-PST.WIT.INTERR

- 'Did he come running?'
- (19) ža               durimoλ'-ä               Ø-ay-si?  
 DEM.ABS(.I) by.running-INTERR I-come-PST.WIT  
 'Is it hastily (lit.: in running) that he came?'

Most subconstituents can be the focus of yes-no questions, but we find at least two exceptions. First, the interrogative is considered unacceptable on the genitive in measure phrases. Normally adnominal genitives can combine with the interrogative marker, so measure phrases clearly stand out in that regard.<sup>3,4</sup>

- (20) Qema-s           axu-yä               q'ida-r           y-ay-x?  
 rain-GEN1       drop.ABS.II-INTERR   down-LAT       II-come-PRS  
 'Is it a drop of rain that fell?'
- (21) #Qema-s-ä       axu               q'ida-r           y-ay-x?  
 rain-GEN1-INTERR   drop.ABS.II       down-LAT       II-come-PRS  
 ('Is it rain that a drop of fell?')

Next, the placement of the interrogative marker on constituents of light verbs is often judged awkward, as shown by the next two examples:

- (22) #Nes-ä               elu-r               hurmat-ä               b-oy-x?  
 1SG.GEN1-INTERR   1PL-LAT           respect.ABS.III-INTERR III-do-PRS  
 'Is it respect that he is showing us?'
- (23) #Eniw               debe-χ'               χ'irāy-ä               y-oq-no?  
 mother.ABS.II   2SG-SUPER.ESS       from.above-INTERR   II-become-PST.nWIT  
 'Did mother forgive you?'

The examples presented so far also show that the word order in root polar questions is completely free and is not different in any way from the word order in declaratives. However, one may notice that the interrogative marker that attaches to non-verbal constituents appears only in the preverbal domain. This is not accidental. Postverbal material is generally interpreted as backgrounded, given information, and that information-structural status is incompatible with the focusing associated with questions. As we will show below, genuine (non-reprisal) wh-words are also impossible in the postverbal position. Interrogative markers in what looks like a postverbal yes-no question are observed in exclamatives, but not in interrogatives proper (see CH. YY [Exclamatives]).

In terms of prosody, the focus of the yes-no question (the word combining with the interrogative particle) has a rising contour on the syllable preceding the suffix -(y)ä and a falling contour on -(y)ä itself. This is similar to the pattern described for yes-no questions in Bagwali (Kibrik 2001:

---

<sup>3</sup> Recall that these genitives were also inaccessible to relativization, even with resumption (see CH. YY [Relative clauses]).

<sup>4</sup> We mark the unacceptable examples as # because it is unclear whether they are judged ungrammatical or infelicitous.

47–48). In polar questions that ask whether the proposition is true or not, there is strong focal prominence on the verb, regardless of the presence of the interrogative suffix.

If a yes-no question is in the affirmative, it can be answered in several ways. First, the answer can be simply *hudu* ‘yes’ or *anu* ‘no’. For example:

- (24) A: Debi zaman yol-ä?  
       2SG.GEN1 time.ABS.III be.PRS-INTERR  
       ‘Do you have time?’  
     B: Hudu/Anu.  
       Yes/No

Second, it is possible to reply with the word that is the focus of a given question, in the appropriate polarity. For example, consider the answer to the question below (note that the agreement in the answer has to match the agreement in the question):

- (25) A: Mež-ä fumru b-ig-ä b-oy-x?  
       2PL-ERG life.ABS.III III-well-INTERR III-do-PRS  
       ‘Do you live well?’ (is it well that you live?)  
     B: B-ig/b-ig-ānu.  
       III-well/ III-well-NEG  
       ‘Yes./No.’

The two answer strategies can also be combined. Finally, it is in principle possible to repeat the whole clause (with the appropriate polarity), but this is quite artificial.

In answers to a yes-no question with negative polarity, the negative answer confirms the speaker’s assessment that a given eventuality does not or did not take place. In such confirming negative answers, however, the use of the particle *anu* ‘no’ is not allowed. For instance:

- (26) A: Debe-r maroženi r-eti-x-an-ä/r-eti-x-ānu?  
       2SG-LAT ice.cream.ABS.IV IV-like-PRS-NEG-INTERR/IV-like-PRS-NEG  
       ‘You don’t like ice cream, right?’  
     B: (\*anu) r-eti-x-ānu.  
       no IV-like-PRS-NEG  
       ‘No, I don’t.’

A reply in the affirmative indicates that the listener rejects the speaker’s assessment. The use of *hudu* in such replies is possible:

- (27) A: Debe-r maroženi r-eti-x-an-ä/r-eti-x-ānu?  
       2SG-LAT ice.cream.ABS.IV IV-like-PRS-NEG-INTERR/IV-like-PRS-NEG  
       ‘You don’t like ice cream, right?’  
     B: (hudu) r-eti-x.  
       yes IV-like-PRS  
       ‘Yes I do.’

## 1.2 Embedded yes-no questions

Embedded yes-no questions appear with the quotative *-λin*. Their structure and properties are no different from those of matrix yes-no questions. The order of constituents in the question introduced by *-λin* remains as free as in questions in independent clauses.

In (28), the yes-no question with the interrogative on the predicate (*teλxā*) is embedded under the verb ‘say’.

- (28) Tusnaq'-ä-zo      uži-r      teλ-x-ä      mi  
jail-IN.ESS-ATTR.OS   boy-LAT   give-PRS-INTERR   2SG.ERG  
izmu      gulu-λ'      zow-ani-r-λin...      eλi-n.  
permission.ABS.III   horse-SUPER.ESS   climb-MASD-LAR-QUOT   say-PST.NWIT  
‘(She) asked if he gave his permission to the young man in jail to ride the horse.’  
(Qacis gulu:24)

In the next example, the embedded question has negative polarity, and the reply, which confirms that the addressees did not see the camel, is also negative.

- (29) Dey      ūhumukuli      b-ukay-nč'-ä-λin      esir-zaλ'  
1SG.GEN1      camel.ABS.III   III-see-NEG-INTERR-QUOT   ask-CAUSAL.I.CVB  
yiz-ä      b-ukay-nč'u-λin      ot'      b-is-xo.  
DEM.IPL-ERG   III-see-NEG-PST.WIT-QUOT   refusal.ABS.III   III-take-PRS  
‘When I asked them if they had seen my camel, they insist(ed) that they had not.’  
(Xanno, nesisigon Ḵono užin:85)

## 2 Alternative questions

Alternative questions require coordination of two or more interrogative clauses with the particles *ya...ya* or *yagi...yagi* ‘either or’. The first particle in such chains can be omitted. For example:

- (30) (ya)      y-ik'i-x(-ä)      ya      y-iči-x(-ä)?  
or      II-go-PRS-INTERR   or      II-stay-PRS-INTERR  
‘Are you going or staying?’ (addressing a woman)  
(31) (yagi)      eλ'i-yä      yeda      žek'u      Ø-ex-äsi,      yagi  
or      last.year-INTERR   DEM   person.ABS.I   I-die-RES   or  
žiλbo-yä?  
this.year-INTERR  
‘Did this man die last year or this year?’ (Ečruni žek'un, ſoloqanawni užin:30)

If the disjunction applies to predicates, the use of *ya...ya* or *yagi...yagi* is necessary, as in (30). However, if the alternatives are not expressed by the predicate, it is sufficient for each of the questioned constituents to combine with the interrogative marker, as in the following example:

- (32) Howla      imad-a-ł      hič'č'a ixiw      šebi      yoł:      is-ä,  
DEM.nI.OS      tale-OS-CONT.ESS   most      big      who.ABS      be.PRS   bull-INTERR

cey-ä,	t'eka-yä,	aħo-yä,	ziru-yä,
eagle-INTERR	billy.goat-INTERR	shepher-INTERR	fox-INTERR
q'orol	γ'anabi-yä?		
widowed	woman-INTERR		

'Who is the biggest one in this tale: The bull, the eagle, the goat, the shepherd, the fox or the widow?' (Yizaħäy hic'č'a ixiw šebi yoħ?:18)

- (33) Hobo-yä hik'e-yä yizi b-exu-x?  
now-INTERR later-INTERR DEM.IPL IPL-die-PRS  
'Are they going to die now or later?' (Qacis gulu:42)

As with yes-no questions, the syllable preceding -(y)ä has the rising tone, and the interrogative marker has the falling tone. There is also a boundary (probably a new onset) between the two interrogative phrases.

### 3 Wh-questions

Interrogative words are part of the set of indeterminate lexical items, which means that they can have an interrogative proper or an indefinite interpretation. For example, the word *šebi* 'what/who' can also mean 'something', and its interpretation depends on the nature of the clause in which it occurs.<sup>5</sup> Wh-words can occur in genuine information questions and in echo (or reprise) questions. The latter are requests for clarification, in which the speaker asks for a repetition of the preceding (or presupposed) utterance or part of it, typically because s/he did not hear properly or understand what was said (Bolinger 1957, 1978, 1987; Blakemore 1994, Sabin 1990, Noh 1995, a.o.).

Care should be taken to distinguish the two types of questions. In what follows, we will first discuss regular wh-questions, without the echo interpretation, and then will turn to echo questions in section 3.4.

#### 3.1 Matrix wh-questions

##### 3.1.1 Possible interrogative structures

An interrogative phrase can generally have two positions, although the details are more fine-grained, as we show below. First, an interrogative phrase can appear in the same position as the questioned constituent (*in situ*), but only as long as that constituent is in the preverbal domain (35a). Next, it can appear in a clause-initial position (35b). We illustrate these options for an object wh-question based on (34):

- (34) Už-ä yedu t'ek kid-be-r teħ-si.  
boy-ERG DEM book.ABS.II girl-OS-LAT give-PST.WIT  
'The boy gave this book to the girl.'
- (35) a. Už-ä šebi kid-be-r teħ-ä?  
boy-ERG what.ABS.IV girl-OS-LAT give-PST.WIT.INTERR

---

<sup>5</sup> When referring to objects, *šebi* is gender IV, as shown in glosses below. Its gender can also shift depending on context; such cases will be indicated separately.

- b. Šebi už-ä kid-be-r teλ-ä?  
 what.ABS.IV boy-ERG girl-OS-LAT give-PST.WIT.INTERR  
 ‘What did the boy give to the girl?’

Since the order in the preverbal domain is quite free, the in-situ position is not always distinguishable from an immediately preverbal position. Thus, (35a) can alternate with (36). Without further probing, it is impossible to tell if the word orders in (35a) and (36) correspond to the same baseline sentence or two different ones.

- (36) Už-ä kid-be-r šebi teλ-ä?  
 boy-ERG girl-OS-LAT what.ABS.IV give-PST.WIT.INTERR  
 ‘What did the boy give to the girl?’

Also, non-interrogative constituents are quite common in the postverbal domain, making it difficult to identify the actual position of a wh-word; for example, in (37), the only constituent in front of the verb is the wh-word.

- (37) Šebi näλ mi dä-r?  
 what.ABS give.FUT 2SG.ERG 1SG-LAT  
 ‘What will you give me?’

Barring such instances, Tsez wh-questions offer the speaker the choice between clause-initial wh-words and wh-words in situ.

Interrogative phrases corresponding to arguments are typically in situ; meanwhile, the preferred position for adjunct/adverbial interrogative expressions is clause-initial. For instance, all factors being equal, (35a) and (36) are preferred over (35b), but (38a) is preferred over (38b):

- (38) a. Neti yedu šebin r-oq-ä?  
          when DEM thing.ABS.IV IV-become-PST.WIT.INTERR  
 b. Yedu šebin neti r-oq-ä?  
       DEM thing.ABS.IV when IV-become-PST.WIT.INTERR  
 ‘When did that happen?’

While non-interrogative constituents can freely occur after the verb (cf. (37)), interrogative phrases cannot appear post-verbally, regardless of their argument/adjunct status. Compare the grammatical declarative in (39) and the ungrammatical interrogatives in (40a-c):

- (39) Už-ä teλ-si yedu t'ek kid-be-r.  
 boy-ERG give-PST.WIT DEM book.ABS.II girl-OS-LAT  
 ‘The boy gave this book to the girl.’
- (40) a. \*Už-ä teλ-ä šebi kid-be-r?  
       boy-ERG give-PST.WIT what.ABS.IV girl-OS-LAT  
 b. \*Už-ä teλ-ä kid-be-r šebi?  
       boy-ERG give-PST.WIT girl-OS-LAT what.ABS.IV  
 c. \*Už-ä kid-be-r teλ-ä šebi?  
       boy-ERG give-PST.WIT girl-OS-LAT what.ABS.IV

boy-ERG      girl-OS-LAT      give-PST.WIT    what.ABS.IV

Multiple wh-questions within a single clause are possible, although dispreferred. Multiple fronted wh-words are ungrammatical. Thus, multiple wh-questions are only possible when one of the interrogative phrases is fronted, and the rest appear in their base positions. If the wh-phrases in a multiple wh-question are all clausal arguments, their order is determined by their hierarchical structure. For example, in (41), the ergative wh-word can appear in the clause-initial position (in which case it is impossible to tell whether it has been fronted or appears in situ), but the lative wh-word cannot precede it:

- (41) a. Łu               t'ek               ɬa-r               teλ-ä?  
           who.ERG      book.ABS.II    who-LAT      give-PST.WIT.INTERR  
           'Who gave the book to whom?'  
   b. \*Łā-r               ɬu               t'ek               teλ-ä?  
           who-LAT      who.ERG      book.ABS.II    give-PST.WIT.INTERR

Similarly, in (41), the ergative wh-word must precede the absolute object interrogative; the opposite order is impossible:

- (42) a. Łu               šebi               r-oy-x?  
           who.ERG      what.ABS.IV    IV-do-PRS  
           'Who is doing what?'  
   b. \*Šebi               ɬu               r-oy-x?  
           what.ABS.IV    who.ERG      IV-do-PRS

In a biabsolutive construction without the resultative participle, only one argument can be questioned at a time, but that argument can be either agent or patient:<sup>6</sup>

- (43) a. Eniw               šebi               r-oy-x               zow-ä?  
           mother.ABS.II    what.ABS.IV    IV-do-IPFV.CVB      AUX.PST-PST.WIT.INTERR  
           'What was mother making?'  
   b. Šebi               čorpa               r-oy-x               zow-ä?  
           who.ABS.I/II     soup.ABS.IV    IV-do-IPFV.CVB      AUX.PST-PST.WIT.INTERR  
           'Who was making soup?'  
   c. \*Šebi               šebi               r-oy-x               zow-ä?  
           who.ABS.I/II     what.ABS.IV    IV-do-IPFV.CVB      AUX.PST-PST.WIT.INTERR  
           ('Who was making what?')

In a question with multiple wh-adjuncts, only one wh-word can be fronted:<sup>7</sup>

---

<sup>6</sup> We defer discussion of wh-questions in the biabsolutive construction with the resultative participle to section 3.1.2.

<sup>7</sup> Such multiple adjunct questions are judged particularly awkward, and speakers generally offer to break them into several independent questions, for example:

- (44) a. Nā neł-ä ža neti es-ä?  
       where DEM.nI-ERG DEM.ABS when say-PST.WIT.INTERR  
       ‘Where and when did she say that?’
- b. Neti neł-ä ža nā es-ä?  
       when DEM.nI-ERG DEM.ABS where say-PST.WIT.INTERR  
       ‘Where and when did she say that?’
- c. \*Neti nā neł-ä ža es-ä?  
       when where DEM.nI-ERG DEM.ABS say-PST.WIT.INTERR

If a multiple wh-question has an argument and an adjunct interrogative, either of them (but not both) can appear at the clause-initial position. The fronting of an adjunct is always preferred, so (45a) is judged more favorably than (45b):

- (45) a. Nā už-ä šebi t'et'er-xo?  
       where boy-ERG what.ABS.IV read-PRS  
       b. Šebi už-ä nā t'et'er-xo?  
       what.ABS.IV boy-ERG where read-PRS  
       ‘Where does the boy read what?’
- c. \*Šebi nā už-ä t'et'er-xo?  
       what.ABS.IV where boy-ERG read-PRS
- d. \*Nā šebi už-ä t'et'er-xo?  
       where what.ABS.IV boy-ERG read-PRS

The examples below illustrate some basic questions (note that in a number of the examples below, the actual interrogative predicate is omitted).

- (46) Šebi hal?  
       what state/health.ABS.III  
       ‘How are things?’
- (47) Šebi debe-r r-oq-no?  
       what.ABS.IV 2SG-LAT IV-become-PST.nWIT  
       ‘What happened to you?’
- (48) Šomo de-be-q źeb?  
       how.many 2SG-OS-POSS.ESS year.ABS.II  
       ‘How old are you?’
- (49) Dow-ź'o ci šebi?  
       2SG-SUPER.ESS name.ABS.III what  
       ‘What is your name?’ (lit.: name on you...)

- (i) Nā neł-ä ža es-ä? Neti  
       where DEM.nI-ERG DEM.ABS say-PST.WIT.INTERR when  
       (es-ä)?  
       say-PST.WIT.INTERR  
       ‘Where did she say that? When?’

- (50) Dice            Ø-exora            (yoł)    ſAli?  
       how.much      i-long            be.PRS Ali  
       ‘How tall is Ali?’
- (51) Dice-za-λ’                    teλ-xo?  
       how.much-OS-SUPER.ESS      give-PRS  
       ‘How much are you asking?’ (as in a sale)
- (52) Lu            ža                    r-oy-ä?  
       who.ERG      DEM.ABS(IV)      IV-do-PST.WIT.INTERR  
       ‘Who did that?’
- (53) Eni-y-ä                    lu-r            sayyat            b-is-ä?  
       mother-OS-ERG      who-LAT        gift.ABS.III     III-take-PST.WIT.INTERR  
       ‘For whom did mother buy a/the gift?’
- (54) Nā        mi                    halt’izi            Ø-oq-xo?  
       where    2SG.ABS(.I)        work            I-become-PRS  
       ‘Where do you work?’
- (55) Nā-r                    (Ø-ik’i-x)?  
       where-LAT      I-go-PRS  
       ‘Where are you going?’ (addressing a man)
- (56) Neti        b-ik’-än            idu-yor?  
       when        IPL-go-FUT.DEF      home-VERS  
       ‘When are we going home?’
- (57) Didur        ža                    r-oy-x?  
       how        DEM.ABS(.IV)        IV-do-PRS  
       ‘How is this done?’
- (58) Šida        nedur                    r-od-ä?  
       why        so                    IV-do-PST.WIT.INTERR  
       ‘Why did you do such a thing?’

The compound wh-expressions *didur-šebi* ‘how-what’ and *šebi-didur* ‘what-how’, which seem to be in free variation, are used the same way as the absolute *šebi*, but with the additional connotation of surprise:

- (59) Didur=šebi    r-oq-no?  
       what            IV-become-PST.nWIT  
       ‘What on earth happened?’

Tsez puts its rich case system to work by utilizing different forms of the word *šebi* to express distinct interrogative meanings. In particular, various forms of *šebi* can be used to express questions about reason and manner; such questions occur in addition to questions formed with the dedicated adverbial wh-words *šida* ‘why’ and *didur* ‘how’ (shown above).

- (60) Lina-q        mi                    nece    q’warid            y-oq-xo?  
       what-POSS.ESS 2SG.ABS(.II)    so        sad                    II-become-PRS  
       ‘Why are you so sad?’ (lit.: on what...)
- (61) Lina-r        ža                    šebin            r-ow-ä                    mi?  
       what-LAT      DEM        thing.ABS.IV    IV-bring-PST.WIT.INTERR    2SG.ERG

- 'What did you bring this for?'
- (62) Lina-x r-iy-ä?  
what-AD.ESS IV-know-PST.WIT.INTERR  
'How do you know?'
- (63) Babiy-ä mi lına-ł xizay Ø-egir-ä?  
father-ERG 2SG.ABS(.I) what-CONT.ESS behind I-send-PST.WIT.INTERR  
'What did Father send you for?'
- (64) T'ok'ow elu-r lına-s q'w<sup>s</sup>ariļi yoł?<sup>8</sup>  
more 1PL-LAT what-GEN1 woe.ABS.IV be.PRS  
'What else should we worry about?' (lit.: more to us what's woe is?)

The predicative component of a copular clause can also be questioned; in such cases, the copula itself may be omitted (as is often the case in regular copular clauses, see CH. YY [Basic clause types]). Most commonly, the interrogatives *šebi* 'what; who' and *didiw* 'what; which' are found in that predicative position. For example:

- (65) Mi šebi (yoł)?  
2SG.ABS who/what be.PRS  
'What are you?' (usually asked about profession, occupation)
- (66) Ža debi ţe didiw zow-n?  
DEM 2SG.GEN1 bridge.ABS.III what.ATTR be.PST-PST.nWIT  
'That bridge of yours was of what kind?' (Goqin zirun:20)
- (67) Yizi didiw xalq'i (yoł)?  
DEM.IPL.ABS what.ATTR people.ABS.IPL be.PRS  
'What kind of people are they?'

The wh-expression can be separated from the copula, as in the following example:

- (68) Šebi ža nediw baħarči Ø-oħix-ä?  
what/who DEM such hero.ABS.I I-appear-PRS-INTERR  
'Who is that brave man?' (Aliqilič:98)

Attributive and genitive modifiers of nouns can be questioned only in situ, in contrast to constituent wh-phrases, which can be displaced. In the next example, *didiw* 'what; which' can appear inside the noun phrase *didiw gedobi* but cannot be dislocated to the clausal periphery (69b). Note that non-interrogative attributive modifiers can be discontinuous, as shown by (70b) (see also CH. YY [Noun phrase]).

---

<sup>8</sup> In traditional texts, we also find the following version of this question, which is considered stylistically charged. The sentence in (64) was offered instead of (i):

- (i) T'ok'ow elu-r q'w<sup>s</sup>ariļi lına-s?  
more 1PL-LAT woe.ABS.IV what-GEN1 (Hibos hunar:27)  
'What else is there for us to worry about?'

- (69) a. Debe-r didiw gedo-bi r-eti-x?  
       2SG-LAT what.ATTR shoe-PL.ABS.n1PL n1PL-want-PRS  
       ‘What shoes do you like?’
- b. \*Didiw debe-r gedo-bi r-eti-x?  
       what.ATTR 2SG-LAT shoe-PL.ABS.n1PL n1PL-want-PRS
- (70) a. Debe-r cuda gedo-bi r-eti-x-ä?  
       2SG-LAT red shoe-PL.ABS.n1PL n1PL-want-PRS-INTERR  
       b. Cuda debe-r gedo-bi r-eti-x-ä?  
       red 2SG-LAT shoe-PL.ABS.n1PL n1PL-want-PRS-INTERR  
       ‘Do you like red shoes?’

In the following examples, the genitive of possessor appears in the interrogative; it cannot be discontinuous either. Non-interrogative adnominal genitives, on the other hand, can be displaced (CH.YY [Noun phrase]).

- (71) a. Debe-r lu-s kid y-ukay-ä?  
       2SG-LAT who-GEN1 girl.ABS.II II-see-PST.WIT.INTERR  
       ‘Whose daughter did you see?’
- b. \*Lu-s debe-r kid y-ukay-ä?  
       who-GEN1 2SG-LAT girl.ABS.II II-see-PST.WIT.INTERR
- (72) a. Eλ'i lu-s kid y-ik'- ä?  
       last.year who-GEN1 girl.ABS.II II-go-PST.WIT.INTERR  
       ‘Whose daughter left last year?’
- b. \*Lu-s eλ'i kid y-ik'- ä?  
       who-GEN1 last.year girl.ABS.II II-go-PST.WIT.INTERR
- (73) a. Lu-z esi-y-ä baru y-ow-ä?  
       who-GEN2 sibling-OS-ERG wife.ABS.II II-bring-PST.WIT.INTERR  
       ‘Whose brother got married?’ (lit.: brought wife)
- b. \*Lu-z baru esi-y-ä y-ow-ä?  
       who-GEN2 wife.ABS.II sibling-OS-ERG II-bring-PST.WIT.INTERR

Inanimate adnominal genitives are grammatically possible but rare. They are mainly observed in some set expressions such as the ones below:

- (74) Lina-s hal yisi-λ' yoł?  
       what-GEN1 state.ABS.III DEM.I-SUPER.ESS be.PRS  
       ‘What is weighing on him?’ (lit.: state of what is on him?) (based on Eniws esiw:35)
- (75) Mi lina-s pikru b-oy-x?  
       2SG.ERG what-GEN1 thought.ABS.III III-do-PRS  
       ‘What are you thinking about?’ (lit.: thought of what...)

Complements of postpositions can be questioned only in situ. Compare the grammatical question in (76a) and the ungrammatical (76b), where the wh-word has been dislocated:

- (76) a. Nes-ä yiλa sual-yo-r lä-λ'-äy xizaz

	DEM.I-ERG	DEM.nI question-OS-LAT	what-SUPER-ABL	behind
	žawab	neλ-ä?		
	answer.ABS.III	give-PST.WIT.INTERR		
	'Who did he answer after?'			
b.	*Łä-λ'-äy	nes-ä	yiλa	sual-yo-r
	what-SUPER-ABL	DEM.I-ERG	DEM.nI	question-OS-LAT
	žawab	neλ-ä?		xizaz
	answer.ABS.III	give-PST.WIT.INTERR		behind

Regular interrogative phrases in Tsez appear with prominence on the question word, followed by a falling contour, as shown in the charts below. Pitch prominence is observed in all three positions associated with wh-words (clause-initially and in situ), but it seems stronger when a wh-word is in situ.

This pattern is different from the pattern in English, where pitch prominence is associated with echo-questions, but it is similar to the pattern found in Japanese (Ishihara 2002; 2007), where regular interrogative phrases are also prominently accented.

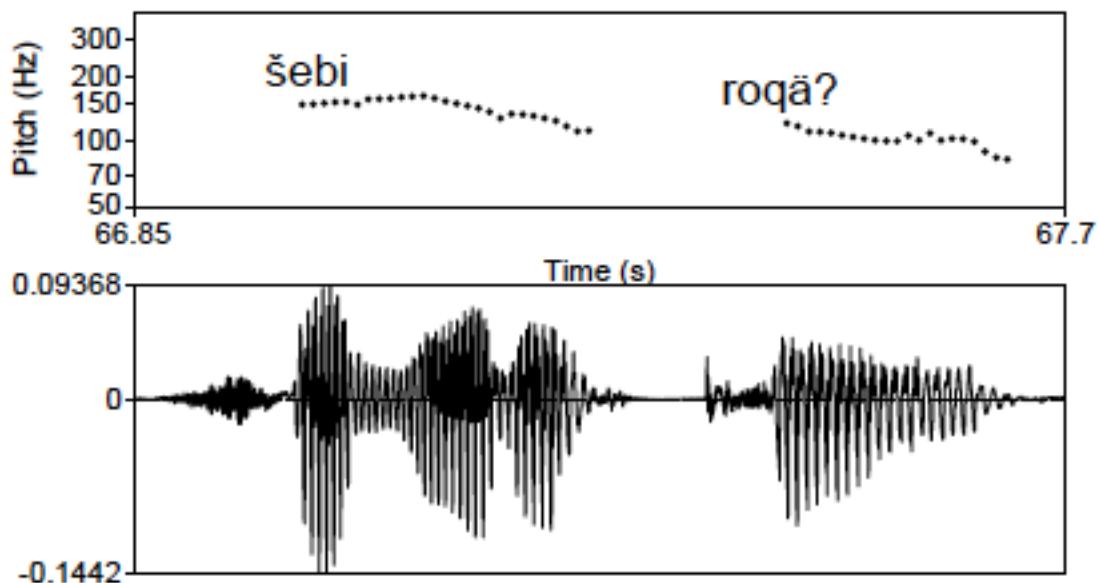


Figure 1. Pitch contour for the question *šebi roqä?* 'What happened?'

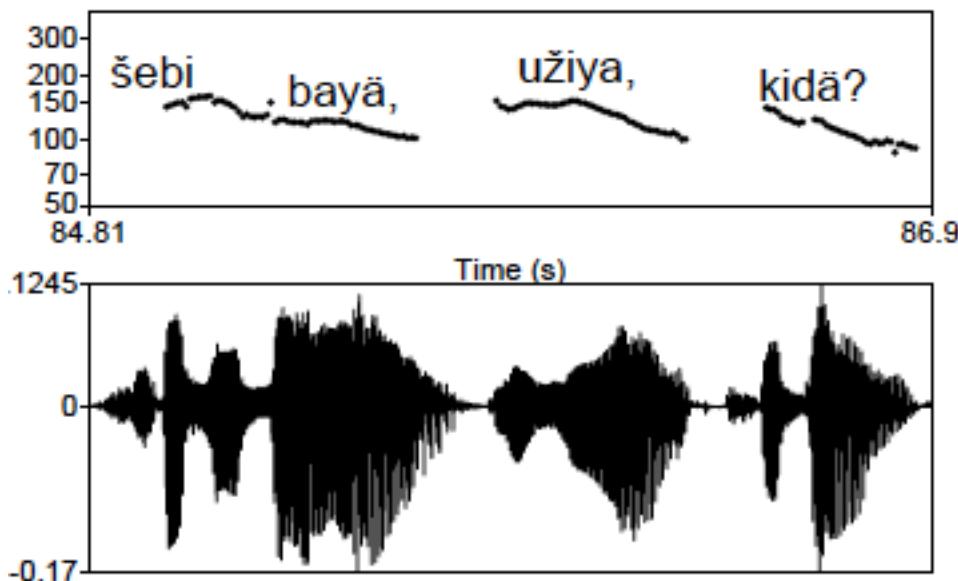


Figure 2. Pitch contour for the question *šebi bayä, užiyä, kidä?* ‘Who came, boy or girl?’

### 3.1.2 Impossible interrogative structures

The use of wh-phrases is extensive; however, it's not unconstrained. The following expressions cannot be questioned:

- (77) Expressions that cannot be questioned in wh-interrogatives:
- subconstituents of coordinate structures
  - the absolute patient in the biabsolutive construction with the resultative participle AGR-*ičäsi*
  - constituents of participial relative clauses
  - constituents of complements to nouns
  - constituents of adverbial clauses

We illustrate these constraints in turn. Wh-questions formed from a subconstituent of a coordinate structure are impossible, which indicates that Tsez wh-questions are sensitive to the coordinate structure constraint (Ross 1967). The constraint applies equally to coordination with ‘and’ and ‘or’:

- (78) \*Nes-ä šebi-n Sult'an-no goλ'-ä?  
DEM.I-ERG who.ABS.I/II-and Sultan.ABS.I-and call-PST.WIT.INTERR  
(“Did he call who and Sultan?”)
- (79) \*Yagi eλ'i yagi neti elu-s žek'u-bi  
or last.year or when 1PL-GEN1 person-PL.ABS.IPL  
b-ex-ä?  
IPL-die-PST.WIT.INTERR  
(“Did your people die last year or when?”)

Forker (2013:750) indicates that in Hinuq, one of the subconstituents in a coordinate structure can be questioned. We have not been able to obtain the same result for regular wh-questions in Tsez; however, such forms are possible as echo questions, which we will discuss in section 3.4.

In the biabsolutive construction with the resultative participle AGR-*ičäsi*, it is impossible to form a wh-question from the patient (object). Compare the examples in (43) above and their counterparts with AGR-*ičäsi*:

- (80) a. \*Eniw šebi r-oy-x y-ič-äsi  
           mother.ABS.II what.ABS.IV IV-do-IPFV.CVB II-stay-RES  
           zow-ä?  
           AUX.PST-PST.WIT.INTERR  
           ('What was mother making?')  
       b. Šebi čorpa r-oy-x y-ič-äsi  
           who.ABS.I/II soup.ABS.IV IV-do-IPFV.CVB II-stay-RES  
           zow-ä?  
           AUX.PST-PST.WIT.INTERR  
           ('Who was making soup?')

It is impossible to question constituents of participial relative clauses. Thus:

- (81) \*[Na-z-äy y-äy-ru] kid y-ukay-x debe-r?  
       where-OS-ABL II-come-PST.PTCP girl.ABS.II II-see-PRS 2SG-LAT  
       ('You see a girl who is coming from where?')  
       (82) \*[La-r tää-ru] micxir b-ok'ek'-ä žed-ä?  
       who-LAT give.PST.PTCP money.ABS.III III-steal-PST.WIT.INTERR DEM.IPL-ERG  
       ('They stole the money that had been given to whom?')

Nominalized participial clauses can also appear in the adnominal genitive, as complements of nouns such as ‘fact’, ‘rumor’, ‘news’ (see CH. YY [Noun phrase]). Wh-questions of such complement clauses are equally impossible, reflecting adherents to the complex noun phrase constraint on wh-questions (Ross 1967).

- (83) \*[Xalq'i-mo-r šebi r-äs-ru]-s xabar  
       people-OS-LAT what.ABS.IV IV-find-PST.PTCP-GEN1 news.ABS.III  
       teq-ä?  
       hear-PST.WIT.INTERR  
       ('What did you hear the news that people found?')

Wh-questions formed from constituents of adverbial clauses are ungrammatical. In a number of instances, adverbial clauses are based on nominalized participial clauses, so one could imagine that the same constraint examined above for relative clauses proper continues to apply. For example, the adverbial clause of simultaneity is produced from the ablative form of a nominalized participial clause:

- (84) \*[Beli-λ' šebi b-äk'-äsi yäl-zay] λirba-bi  
 chase-SUPER.ESS who.ABS.IPL IPL-go-RES be.PRS-while guest-PL.ABS.IPL  
 b-ay-ä?  
 IPL-come-PST.WIT.INTERR  
 (“The guests arrived when who was gone hunting?”)

However, it is equally impossible to form wh-questions from constituents of adjunct clauses which are not derived from participles. Consider the conditional clause below:

- (85) \*[Becaw-ni žek'-ä šebi oz-za-q r-ihi-näy]  
 blind-DEF person-ERG what.ABS.IV eye-PL.OS-POSS.ESS IV-put-COND  
 neł-ä kanlı b-ay-r-xo?  
 DEM.nI-IN.ESS light.ABS.III III-come-CAUS-PRS  
 (“What is it that if the blind man puts on his eyes, they will see again (lit.: he will bring light into it?)”)

### 3.1.3 Answers to wh-questions

The reply to a wh-question must match the case form of the wh-word. For example, the answer to (86-A) must be in the ergative, and the answer to (87-A), in the lative.

- (86) A: Łu že r-oy-ä?  
 who.ERG DEM.ABS(IV) IV-do-PST.WIT.INTERR  
 ‘Who did that?’  
 B: ɬAl-ä/\*ɬAli.  
 Ali-ERG/Ali-ABS  
 ‘Ali.’
- (87) A: Eni-y-ä t̪u-r sayyat b-is-ä?  
 mother-OS-ERG who-LAT gift.ABS.III III-take-PST.WIT.INTERR  
 ‘For whom did mother buy a/the gift?’  
 B: Mariyat-e-r/\*Mariyat/\*Mariyat-ko-r.  
 Mariyat-OS-LAT/ Mariyat-ABS/Mariyat-POSS-ESS  
 ‘For Mariyat.’

If the interrogative expression refers to an attributive constituent of a noun phrase or to the adnominal genitive, the head noun can be omitted from the answer. For example:

- (88) A: Didiw gedo-bi r-eti-x?  
 what.ATTR shoe-PL.ABS.n1PL n1PL-want-PRS  
 ‘What shoes would you like?’  
 B: R-ätiru italiya-s (gedo-bi).  
 n1PL-any Italy-GEN1 shoe-PL.ABS.n1PL  
 ‘Any Italian ones.’
- (89) A: Łu-z esi-y-ä baru y-ow-ä?  
 who-GEN2 sibling-OS-ERG wife.ABS.II II-bring-PST.WIT.INTERR  
 ‘Whose brother got married?’ (lit.: brought wife)  
 B: (Dä-z) iškola-zo halmay-e-z (esi-y-ä).

1SG-GEN2 school-ATTR.OS friend-OS-GEN2 sibling-OS-ERG  
 '(My) school friend's (brother).'

If an interrogative phrase is expressed by an adverbial, the answer appears in the form appropriate to the verb or postposition associated with it. For example, the expression of time in the reply below requires the use of the super-essive form, while the expression of reason can appear in the distal super-essive or in the sub-ablative:

- (90) A: (Mi) neti Ø-ik'i-x?  
 2SG.ABS(I) when I-go-PRS  
 'When are you going?'  
 B: Oc'ira-λ'.  
 nine.OS-SUPER.ESS  
 'At nine o'clock.'
- (91) A: (Mi) šida nedur r-od-ä?  
 2SG.ERG why so IV-do-PST.WIT.INTERR  
 'Why did you do such a thing?'  
 B: Šabdalli-λ'-āz/micxir-λ-āy.  
 foolishness-SUPER.ESS-DIST/money-SUB-ABL  
 'Out of stupidity/for the money.'

If a question is in the affirmative but the answer to it is negative, that answer must include both a negative verb and the negative polarity item triggered by it. Negative polarity items are derived either from interrogative expressions or from universally quantified expressions with the addition of the scalar focus particle *-kin* (see CH. YY [Particles]). The particle itself does not impart the negative reading, and this reading is only assumed under negation. However, in negative answers to wh-questions, the negative verb can actually be omitted, leaving only the polarity item, which continues to carry the negative interpretation. Consider the following examples:

- (92) A: lā-r yedu t'ek teλ-ä mi?  
 who-LAT DEM book.ABS.II give-PST.WIT.INTERR 2SG.ERG  
 'Whom did you give this book?'  
 B: i. lā-r-kin (teλ-inč'u).  
 who-LAT-FOC give-PST.WIT.NEG  
 ii. lā-r-no-kin (teλ-inč'u).  
 who-LAT-UNIV-FOC give-PST.WIT.NEG  
 'Nobody.'

### 3.2 Embedded wh-questions

The most common way of expressing what may count as an embedded wh-question is by introducing it with the quotative *-λin* (see CH. YY [Complement clauses]). Some wh-questions are clearly reported speech, as in the following example, where there is a pause between the reported constituent and *esirno*:

- (93) “Lu mi nediw b-od-ä-λin?” esir-no  
 who.ERG 2SG.ABS(.III) such III-do-PST.WIT.INTERR-QUOT ask-PST.nWIT  
 mamalay-ä.  
 rooster-ERG  
 ‘The rooster asked, “Who did that to you?”’ (Onočun, mamalayn:19)

The next example includes a vocative, which indicates reported speech as well:

- (94) “Hoboy-gon šebi r-oq-no, ziru-λin?” esir-no  
 now-CONTR what.ABS.IV IV-become-PST.nWIT fox-QUOTE ask-PST.nWIT  
 zey-ä.  
 bear-ERG  
 ‘“And now what happened, Fox?”, asked the bear.’ (Zirun zeyn:21)

In CH. YY [Complement clauses] we show that *-λin* can also introduce genuine embedded complements. The following example is less clear; in isolation it could be either reported speech or a finite complement clause:

- (95) Už-ä gulu-q esir-no [yedu šebi  
 boy-ERG horse-POSS.ESS ask-PST.nWIT DEM what.ABS  
 šebin]-λin.  
 thing.ABS.IV-QUOT  
 ‘The boy asked the horse what that thing was.’ (Beqes ŠUneyzat:200)  
 ‘The boy asked the horse, “What is that thing?”’

Finite clausal complements with interrogatives manifest indexical shift in the same way declarative clauses do, which indicates that they are not always instances of reported speech. The following example is ambiguous out of context. It could either have the regular indexical interpretation (IR) or the shifted interpretation (SR) where the second person pronoun is interpreted as referring to ‘Mother’:

- (96) Babi-y-ä eniw-q [nā-r mi  
 father-OS-ERG mother-POSS.ESS where-LAT 2SG.ABS(.II)  
 y-ik'-ä]-λin esir-xo.  
 II-go-PST.WIT.INTERR-QUOT ask-PRS  
 ‘Father is asking Mother where you (=female addressee) went.’ (IR)  
 ‘Father is asking Mother where she (=mother) went.’ (SR)

Wh-questions can also be embedded in nominalized clauses in *-li* (see CH.YY [Complement clauses]). For example:

- (97) Babiw-r [nā-r eniw y-äk'i-ru-li] r-iy-x-ānu  
 father-LAT where-LAT mother-ABS.II I-go-PST.PTCP-NMLZ IV-know-PRS-NEG  
 ‘Father does not know where Mother went.’

In these clauses, the embedded wh-word has to remain in situ; crucially, it cannot take scope over the material in the matrix clause (Polinsky and Potsdam 2001: 603-604). In other words, there is no Tsez equivalent of sentences such as the English (98):

- (98) What did Mother say the children saw?

The corresponding Tsez sentence only has the meaning of a yes-no question; the speaker is inquiring whether or not Mother expressed what the children saw.

- (99) Eni-y-ä [xex-za-r šebi r-ukäy-ru-li]  
       mother-OS-ERG child-PL.OS-LAT what.ABS.IV IV-see-PST.PTCP-NMLZ  
       eλ-ä/esir-ä?  
       say-PST.WIT.INTERR/ask-PST.WIT.INTERR  
       ‘Did Mother say/ask what the children saw?’  
       NOT: ‘What did Mother say/ask that the children saw?’

This construction is therefore minimally different from an affirmative sentence with an embedded wh-question:

- (100) Eni-y-ä [xex-za-r šebi r-ukäy-ru-li]  
       mother-OS-ERG child-PL.OS-LAT what.ABS.IV IV-see-PST.PTCP-NMLZ  
       eλi-s/esir-si.  
       say-PST.WIT/ask-PST.WIT  
       ‘Mother said/asked what the children saw.’

The closely related Hinuq also seems to disallow wide scope interpretation of wh-expressions in embedded interrogatives (Forker 2013: 753, examples (1408a,b)).

Nominalized clauses containing interrogative phrases are used to encode sluicing-type ellipsis. Under such ellipsis, all the material can be deleted except the wh-word and the predicate. For example (the elliptical indirect question is shown in brackets):

- (101) Ža kʷaxat'o Ø-āy amma  
       DEM.ABS(.I) soon I-come.FUT but  
       [neti \*(Ø-ay-xosi(-di))] r-iy-x-ānu  
       when I-come-PRS.PTCP-NMLZ IV-know-PRS-NEG  
       ‘He will arrive soon but I don't know when.’
- (102) Lu-λa dow-λ'-or qaλi-s amma  
       someone.ERG-INDEF 2SG-SUPER-LAT call-PST.WIT but  
       [lu yāl-ru(hi)] r-iy-x-ānu  
       who.ERG be-PST.PTCP-NMLZ IV-know-PRS-NEG  
       ‘Someone called you but I don't know who.’

While the predicate cannot be omitted from indirect sluicing, fragments in direct questions can be reduced to just the interrogative. For example:

- (103) A: Lu-λa dow-λ'-or qaλi-s.  
       someone.ERG-INDEF 2SG-SUPER-LAT call-PST.WIT  
       ‘Someone called you.’
- B: Lu?  
       who.ERG  
       ‘Who?’
- (104) A: Načalnik-ä ɬa-r-λa premiya teλ-no.  
       boss-ERG someone-LAT-INDEF bonus.ABS.III give-PST.nWIT  
       ‘The boss paid someone a bonus.’
- B: a. ɬā-r-no dice-n?  
       who-LAT-and how.much-and  
       b. Dice-n ɬā-r-no?  
       how.much-and who-LAT-and  
       ‘How much and to whom?’

Note that wh-words do not get coordinated with *-n(o)* ‘and’ outside such fragments (see section 3.1.1).

### 3.3 Discourse-linking

Discourse-linked interrogative phrases imply the existence of a context set of familiar entities. For example, in the question *Which dish did you eat?*, there must exist a set of dishes from which the choice is to be made (Pesetsky 1987, Enç 1991). Discourse-linked interrogatives contrast with non-discourse-linked interrogative pronouns such as *who*, which carry no necessary implication about familiar discourse entities. In Tsez, the discourse-linked phrase ‘which X’ is formed with the dedicated modifier *nāsi(ni)*. This is an attributive form of the adverb *nā* ‘where’; *nāsini* also includes the definite suffix *-ni*. Both *nāsi* and *nāsini* occur in texts, but *nāsini* seems preferred in spoken language. This adjective distinguishes between the direct and oblique form.

*Nāsi(ni)* is incompatible with questions about properties or kinds. Compare the dialogue above, where the answer ‘any Italian shoes’ is acceptable, and the infelicity of that answer in the following dialogue. A felicitous answer is shown in B':

- (105) A: Nāsi-ni gedo-bi r-eti-x?  
       which-DEF shoe-PL.ABS.n1PL n1PL-want-PRS  
       ‘Which shoes would you like?’
- B: #R-ätiru italiya-s.  
       n1PL-any Italy-GEN1  
       ‘Any Italian ones.’
- B': Inziri.  
       DEM.PL  
       ‘These ones.’

Some other examples:

- (106) Nāsi(-ni) ged debe-r y-eti-x?  
 which-DEF dress.ABS.II 2SG-LAT II-like-PRS  
 ‘Which dress do you like?’
- (107) Nāzo-ni kid-b-ā nāsi-ni ziya t’et’-ā?  
 which.OS-DEF girl-OS-ERG which-DEF cow.ABS.III milk-PST.WIT.INTERR  
 ‘Which girl milked which cow?’
- (108) Nāzo-ni otax-ā doxtur-ā xal b-oy-x?  
 which.OS-DEF room-IN.ESS doctor-ERG looking.ABS.III III-make-PRS  
 ‘In which room does the doctor see patients?’ (lit.: does the looking)

*Didiw* ‘what; which’ can combine with nouns in non-discourse linked interrogatives, as in the question about kinds displayed in (88) above, or in the next example.

- (109) Nes-ä didiw šebin k’ed-ä?  
 DEM.I-ERG what.ATTR thing.ABS.IV look.for-PST.WIT.INTERR  
 ‘What (what thing) did he look for?’

In a proper context, however, *didiw* NP can also receive a discourse-linked interpretation. For instance, in (110), a familiar set is established overtly by the postpositional phrase *mežuł teł* ‘among you’, and the phrase *didiw žek’-ä* is interpreted as discourse-linked:

- (110) Mežu-ł teł didiw žek’-ä dey gulu  
 2PL-CONT.ESS inside what.ATTR person-ERG 1SG.GEN1 horse.ABS.III  
 zow-ä?  
 climb-PST.WIT.INTERR  
 ‘Which of you rode (lit.: climbed) my horse?’

The same holds for the wh-word *šebi* used attributively; in a rich context, it can also receive a discourse-linked interpretation. For example, in the following question, the speaker has in mind a familiar set of the dragon’s female victims:

- (111) Šebi kid [aždah-e-r] teλ-ani-x]  
 what girl.ABS.II dragon-OS-LAT give-MASD-AD.ESS  
 y-ow-ä?  
 II-take-PST.WIT.INTERR  
 ‘Which girl did you bring (take) to give to the dragon?’ (based on ŠAliqilič:96)

See also CH. YY [Agreement] for a discussion of discourse-linked interrogative phrases and their interaction with long-distance agreement.

Wh-interrogatives that are not discourse-linked show superiority effects, as in English. Questions such as *Who saw what?* are possible, but questions like \**What who saw?* are not (see examples (41) and (42) above). When an interrogative expression is discourse-linked, it can appear at the

left periphery of a clause and/or can precede another interrogative. The superiority effects disappear. For example:<sup>9</sup>

- (112) Nāsi gulu              lu              b-is-ä?  
 which horse.ABS.III who.ERG       III-take-PST.WIT.INTERR  
 ‘Which horse did who buy?’

### 3.4 Wh-echo questions

In general, an echo-focused phrase can be a normal phrase (a polar or yes-no echo question) or a wh-word (a constituent or wh-echo questions). Here we will concentrate only on wh-echo questions. In such echo questions, the interrogative phrase is not associated with new information; its main function is to request a clarification or re-iteration of what has already been said. Although wh-questions proper and echo questions often overlap, languages have subtle ways of distinguishing them. For example, in the German example below, the stress pattern distinguishes the echo question from a regular one, if only for a subset of wh-words (Reis 1991; Truckenbrodt 2013):

- (113) Hans hat es        WOfür/\*woFÜR        gekauft.  
 Hans has it        what-for        bought  
 ‘Hans has bought this for WHAT?’

One of the clues identifying echo-questions is prosody. For example, in English, an echo-question involves an echo-focused phrase that bears L+H\* intonation with a HH% boundary tone (Bolinger 1987; Artstein 2002).

In Tsez, echo questions and regular wh-questions differ, although subtly. The first difference has to do with word order. Echo questions in Tsez can have an interrogative in the postverbal position, which is off limits to regular wh-questions. Recall the ungrammatical examples in (40a-c) and compare the acceptable questions below.<sup>10</sup> These questions MUST have an echo interpretation; the speaker can utter them only if s/he did not hear or understand what the boy gave to the girl. Such questions end with a slight rising contour.

- (114) a. Už-ä              teλ-ä              kid-be-r        šebi?  
 boy-ERG        give-PST.WIT        girl-OS-LAT        what.ABS.IV  
 b. Už-ä              kid-be-r        teλ-ä        šebi?  
 boy-ERG        girl-OS-LAT        give-PST.WIT        what.ABS.IV  
 ‘The boy gave the girl WHAT?’

We also noted, in section 3.2, that regular interrogatives in embedded nominalized questions do not take scope outside of their clause. When a wh-word can be interpreted clearly as an echo

---

<sup>9</sup> Multiple wh-questions are still dispreferred even if they include discourse-linked interrogatives, so examples like this one are only available in elicitations.

<sup>10</sup> In such echo questions, the preference is for the wh-word to appear in the final position, which is why only two options are shown.

interrogative, it can take scope over the matrix clause. For example, consider the following context. If B did not catch what A was saying, the echo question below is acceptable, and in that case, *šebi* ‘who’ takes wide scope. The question means ‘Who did he say was wrong?’, not “Did he say “Who is wrong”?”, as noted for (99) above.

- (115) A: Nes-ä eλi-s # ƒAli ƒayibiyaw yoł-žin  
DEM.I-ERG say-PST.WIT Ali wrong be.PRS-QUOT  
‘He said, “Ali is wrong.”’
- B. Nes-ä šebi ƒayibiyaw yäl-ru-li  
DEM.I-ERG who.ABS wrong be.PRS-PST.PTCP-NMLZ  
eλ-ä?  
say-PST.WIT.INTERR  
‘He said that WHO is wrong?’

Echo phrases in constituent questions are known to take the widest scope possible (Bolinger 1987; Noh 1995), so this result is in keeping with the general observations on the difference between regular wh-questions and echo questions.

If a wh-word appears preverbally, the differences between regular and echo questions become more subtle. Recall that regular wh-phrases bear pitch prominence followed by a falling contour. Preverbal interrogative phrases in Tsez echo questions also bear prominence, but this prominence is followed by a rise, not a fall. Although we have not had a chance to investigate this contrast instrumentally, it seems less pronounced than the difference in pitch found in English. This in turn raises questions about the prosodic signatures of echo questions in languages such as Tsez or Japanese, where the interrogative phrase can remain in situ.

If we assume both the difference in placement and the tentative prosodic difference just discussed, we can test the appearance of echo questions in contexts where regular wh-questions are impossible (see section 3.1.2 above). Cross-linguistically, echo questions are known to be insensitive to island constraints, so one would expect Tsez echo questions to follow that pattern. This expectation is confirmed. The first example is straightforward: since the coordinate structure can follow or precede the interrogative verb, the postverbal position is in and of itself a sign of an echo question. In both positions, the question is interpreted as a request for a reprise or clarification:

- (116) nes-ä goλ'-ä šebi-n Sult'an-no?  
DEM.I-ERG call-PST.WIT.INTERR who.ABS.I/II-and Sultan.ABS.I-and  
‘He called WHOM and Sultan?’ (cf. the ungrammatical (78))
- (117) nes-ä šebi-n Sult'an-no goλ'-ä?  
DEM.I-ERG who.ABS.I/II-and Sultan.ABS.I-and call-PST.WIT.INTERR  
‘He called WHOM and Sultan?’ (cf. the ungrammatical (78))

Recall that discontinuous wh-words are impossible, as was illustrated in (71) above. However, discontinuity is possible with echo questions. Thus, in reply to (118-A), one could use the echo question in (118-B):<sup>11</sup>

- (118) A: Pat'i-s            kid            y-ukay-s.  
           Fatima-GEN    girl.ABS.II    II-see-PST.WIT  
           'I saw Fatima's daughter.'  
   B: Łu-s            debe-r            kid            y-ukay-ä?  
           who-GEN1    2SG-LAT        girl.ABS.II    II-see-PST.WIT.INTERR  
           'You saw WHOSE daughter?'

Questions in which the interrogative phrase appears in a relative or adjunct clause do not offer the variation in word order needed to separate the readings; the interrogative is always preverbal. However, the instances where such interrogative phrases are allowed are invariably interpreted as requests for clarification and reprisal. Some examples:

- (119) A: [Nesi-z-tow            ḥakim-qo            tāλ-ru] micxir  
           DEM.I-GEN2-FOC    boss-POSS        give.PST.PTCP money.ABS.III  
           b-ok'ek'-si            rasul-ä  
           III-steal-PST.WIT    Rasul-ERG  
           'Rasul stole the money that they gave to his boss.'  
   B:    Nes-ä            [lu-q            tāλ-ru]            micxir  
           DEM.I-ERG        who-POSS        give.PST.PTCP money.ABS.III  
           b-ok'ek'-ä?  
           III-steal-PST.WIT.INTERR  
           'He stole the money that had been given to WHOM?'  
(120) [Lina-q-āy            fiyay-xosi]            kid            y-ay-ä?  
           what-POSS-ABL    cry-PRS.PTCP    girl.ABS.II    II-come-PST.WIT.INTERR  
           'The girl who was crying WHY came here?'

---

<sup>11</sup> The echo interrogative can also occur post-verbally:

- (i)    Debe-r            y-ukay-ä            lu-s            kid?  
       2SG-LAT        II-see-PST.WIT.INTERR    who-GEN1    girl.ABS.II  
       'You saw WHOSE daughter?'

The separation of the genitive and the noun, so that one would appear pre-verbally and the other post-verbally, is not allowed under any interpretation:

- (ii)    \*debe-r            lu-s            y-ukay-ä            kid?  
       2SG-LAT        who-GEN1        II-see-PST.WIT.INTERR    girl.ABS.II  
 (iii)    \*debe-r            kid            y-ukay-ä            lu-s?  
       2SG-LAT        girl.ABS.II        II-see-PST.WIT.INTERR    who-GEN1

We can summarize these preliminary observations on the differences between regular wh-words and echo wh-words as follows:

	<b>Regular Wh-words</b>	<b>Echo Wh-words</b>
Post-verbal placement	Impossible	Possible
Possible in islands	No	Yes
Takes scope over the entire utterance	No	Yes
Prosodic signature	Prominence with declining contour	Prominence without declining contour



## Exclamatives

Exclamative utterances are used to express surprise at the presence or intensity of a certain property, which has exceeded the speaker's expectations (cf. Grimshaw 1979; Michaelis 2001). As Michaelis puts it, exclamatives imply "a non-canonical situation ... whose absence a speaker would have predicted, based on a *a priori* assumption or set of assumptions, e.g. a stereotype, a set of behavioural norms, or a model of the physical world" (Michaelis 2001: 1039).

Cross-linguistically, exclamatives have a number of recurrent properties. In particular:

(1) Properties of exclamatives

- a. Co-occurrence with interjections that emphasize the speaker's affective stance
- b. Use of free-standing noun phrases
- c. Presence of degree adverbs, indicating reference to a particular scale
- d. Use of question words, which also reflects the scalar character of exclamatives
- e. Similarity to the complements of factive verbs, which can be explained by the fact that exclamatives contain a presupposed proposition (Grimshaw 1979)

Tsez uses several patterns to express exclamatives: noun phrases without a verb, wh-questions, and non-witnessed past-tense verb forms. All these patterns can be accompanied by exclamative interjections and often co-occur with a wh-word. All types of exclamative sentences can be embedded, but only under the quotative *-λin*. The main interjections found in exclamatives are as follows:

- |     |                          |   |
|-----|--------------------------|---|
| (2) | a. afa, λ'ef             | 'no, no way'                                  |
|     | b. ay, ah, alā           | 'ouch'  |
|     | c. aha(h)                | 'yes, oh yes, so, aha'                        |
|     | d. Ø-ey/y-ey             | 'hey' (addressing a man/a woman) <sup>1</sup> |
|     | e. ha, hay               | expressions of general surprise               |
|     | f. hale, wele, were      | 'whoa'  |
|     | g. he                    | 'hey, here'                                   |
|     | h. hē, hēhe, hehe        | 'gee'   |
|     | i. ho                    | 'here'  |
|     | j. oh                    | 'oh; alas'                                    |
|     | k. puh, puy, puy-pay     | expressions of disgust                        |
|     | l. wah, wah              | 'wow'   |
|     | m. walla(h), aman-allah, | 'Oh my God; gosh'                             |
|     | n. way                   | 'oh no; woe'                                  |

Noun phrases in the exclamative function (1b) are not very common. These noun phrase exclamatives are often set expressions, such as the ones shown in (5), (6) and (7):

- |     |          |         |             |                    |
|-----|----------|---------|-------------|--------------------|
| (3) | Puy-pay  | aq'iw   | žek'u-s     | gut'-muši.         |
|     | ew-blech | strange | person-GEN1 | [smoke-air].ABS.IV |

---

<sup>1</sup> Ey can be used for both males and females, by yej is only female-oriented.

- ‘Gross, an unknown person’s scent!’ (Aliqilič:146)
- (4) Oh q’urumsaq!  
oh rascal  
‘What a rascal!’
- (5) ꙗauw dey rok’u!  
oh 1SG.GEN1 heart.ABS.IV  
‘How scary!’ (typically used by female speakers)
- (6) Oh barkaman!  
oh grace  
‘How wonderful!’
- (7) Balah-ꝝandi!  
woe-misfortune  
‘Woe me!’

Free-standing infinitival or masdar clauses can be used as exclamatives. For example:

- (8) Šahar-y-a-yor Ø-ik’-a!  
city-OS-IN-VERS I-go-INF  
‘Oh, to go to the city!’
- (9) Xabar es-ānč’ini!  
news.ABS.III say-MASD.NEG  
‘Not to tell the news!’

A number of Nakh-Dagestanian languages use nominalized clauses as exclamatives — cf. Kalinina (2011) on such exclamatives in Archi, Avar, and the closely related Bezhta. Tsez does not seem to follow this strategy; although the nominalizing suffix *-li* is in wide use in Tsez, nominalized exclamatives with that suffix are rejected. Compare the well-formed verbal exclamative in (10) and its ungrammatical nominalized counterparts in (11a,b):

- (10) Dice Ø-‘eženi babiw ḥarλi-x!  
how.much I-old father.ABS.I snore-PRS  
‘Does grandfather snore!’ (lit.: how much grandfather snores!)
- (11) a. \*Dice Ø-‘eženi babiw ḥarλi-x-li!  
how.much I-old father.ABS.I snore-PRS-NMLZ  
b. \*Dice Ø-‘eženi babiw ḥarλa-li/ḥärλ-ru-li!  
how.much I-old father.ABS.I snore-NMLZ/snore-PST.PCP-NMLZ  
(‘Does grandfather snore?’)

The two most common ways of conveying exclamative content in Tsez are through questions with an interrogative particle (typically on the degree adverb or wh-word), and through verbs in the non-witnessed past tense. We will examine each of these strategies in turn.

Consider the following interrogative clause:

- (12) Didur dow-qo ža k’ezí r-oq-x-ä?  
how 2SG-POSS.ESS DEM.ABS(.IV) able IV-become-PRS-INTERR

'How do you get to do that?'

This question can be used as a genuine information question, but it can also indicate surprise, in which case its meaning is close to that of an exclamative. If the interrogative enclitic appears on the wh-word, and not on the predicate, the utterance is interpreted as exclamative:

- (13) Didur-ä dow-qo ža k'ezi r-oq-xo!  
 how-INTERR 2SG-POSS.ESS DEM.ABS.(IV) able IV-become-PRS  
 'The thing you did!'/“Really?” (lit.: how you were able to do that?)

Similarly, (14) is a question (albeit an odd one), while (15) is a clear exclamative:

- (14) Ža q'urumsaq (yoł-ä)?  
 DEM.ABS rascal be.PRS-INTERR  
 'Is s/he a rascal?'  
 (15) Oh, mi nedur-ä/didur-ä q'urumsaq!  
 oh 2SG.ABS so-INTERR/how-INTERR rascal  
 'Oh what a rascal you are!'

In the next minimal pair, (16) can be a genuine question or, given the proper context, an exclamative. Meanwhile, (17), with the interrogative marker on the postverbal locative expression, is unambiguously exclamative; postverbal expressions are interpreted as given, backgrounded information (see CH.YY [Word order]), and the appearance of an interrogative marker on the non-focused material resolves the ambiguity in favor of the exclamative:

- (16) Hoboy dā-de-si-tow žek'u ānu-yā t'oro??/  
 now 1SG-APUD.ESS-ATTR-FOC man.ABS.I be.PRS.NEG-INTERR here  
 'Isn't there anyone close to me in age here?'  
 'There is nobody close to me in age here!'  
 (17) Hoboy dā-de-si-tow žek'u ānu t'oro-yā!  
 now 1SG-APUD.ESS-ATTR-FOC man.ABS.I be.PRS.NEG here-INTERR  
 'There is nobody close to me in age here!'

When used in a question proper, the interrogative particle can attach to different constituents, as shown in

(18) and discussed in CH.YY [Interrogatives], but crucially it cannot appear on more than one constituent. Meanwhile, exclamatives allow for multiple occurrences of the interrogative particle, as illustrated in (19):

- (18) a. Sis-ä q'wariļi b-ay-si neł-λ'o?  
 one-INTERR hardship.ABS.III III-come-PST.WIT DEM.nI-SUPER.ESS  
 'Was it (only) one hardship that she had?' (lit.: did one hardship come upon her?)  
 b. Sis q'wariļi b-ay-ā neł-λ'o?  
 one hardship.ABS.III III-come-PST.WIT.INTERR DEM.nI-SUPER.ESS  
 'Did she experience hardship?'  
 c. \*Sis-ä q'wariļi b-ay-ā neł-λ'o?

- one-INTERR hardship.ABS.III III-come-PST.WIT.INTERR DEM.nI-SUPER.ESS  
 ('Did she experience hardship?')
- (19) Sis-ā q'wariħi b-ay-ā neħ-ħo!  
 one-INTERR hardship.ABS.III III-come-PST.WIT.INTERR DEM.nI-SUPER.ESS  
 'Did she suffer!'

Turning now to the use of wh-words with the interrogative marker, we have already noted that *nedur* 'so, such', and *didur* 'how' often appear interchangeably in exclamatives; cf. (15) and another example below:

- (20) Oh nedur-ä/didur-ä didur-ä ħočyaħ' k'oħxi-x debi  
 wow so-INTERR/how-INTERR dancing run-PRS 2SG.GEN1  
 esiw!  
 sibling.ABS.I  
 'How well your brother dances!'

Other wh-words can also appear with the interrogative marker in exclamatives. Compare the regular question in (21) and the corresponding exclamative in (22):

- (21) Howži šebi-tow r-ädi-yä?  
 now what.ABS.IV-FOC IV-do.FUT-INTERR  
 'What should I do now?'  
 (22) Šebi-tow-ä/R-aq'ʷu-tow-ä r-ädi!  
 what.ABS.IV-FOC-INTERR/IV-many/much-FOC-INTERR IV-do.FUT  
 'How much to do!'

*Dice* 'how much/many' is the most common wh-expression used in exclamatives. Unlike degree expressions and other wh-words, *dice* in exclamatives does not take the interrogative marker. In principle, this expression *can* co-occur with an interrogative marker; it is only in exclamatives that such a combination is disallowed. The interrogative marker appears on the predicate instead, as in regular questions:

- (23) a. Oh dice di akił-ä!  
 oh how.much 1SG.ABS get.tired-PST.INTERR  
 'Oh how tired I am!'  
 b. \*Oh dice-yä di akił-xo/akił-si.  
 oh how.much-INTERR 1SG.ABS get.tired-PRS/get.tired-PST.WIT
- (24) a. Dice ixiw miħ'i zow-ä ent'o!  
 how.much big ram.ABS.III be.PST-PST.WIT.INTERR here  
 'What a big ram was here!' (Babiwn uzin Okun:47)  
 b. \*Dice-yä ixiw miħ'i zow-s ent'o!  
 how.much-INTERR big ram.ABS.III be.PST-PST.WIT here
- (25) a. Dice zaman b-ik'i-x-ä.  
 how.much time.ABS.III III-go-PRS-INTERR  
 'How much time has passed?' (question)/'How much time has passed!' (excl.)  
 b. B-aq'ʷu-yä zaman b-ik'i-x!

III-many/much-INTERR time.ABS.III III-go-PRS  
 ‘How much time goes by!’

We hypothesize that this restriction may follow from the pervasive exclamative use of *dice*, rather than from a structural constraint. Because *dice* is such a common marker of exclamatives, it may be construed synchronically as a particle rather than as a regular interrogative expression, and that may prevent it from co-occurring with the interrogative marker.

A common way of conveying exclamative meaning is through the use of a non-witnessed past tense predicate. Compare example (10) above and its non-witnessed past tense counterpart below, which can be used to comment on the snoring that is going on at the moment of the utterance:

- (26) Dice Ø-<sup>i</sup>eženi babiw har̥i-n!  
 how.much i-old father.ABS.I snore-PST.nWIT  
 ‘Does grandfather snore?’

The next example illustrates the use of the unwitnessed past in addressing a villain:

- (27) Oh mi q’urumsaq zow-n!  
 oh 2SG.ABS rascal be.pst-PST.nWIT  
 ‘Oh what a rascal you are!’

Unwitnessed past is not typically used in statements about the speaker’s own experiences or cognitive states, since the speaker is assumed to have direct evidence of those. Consequently, the use of this predicate form with the first person is one of the clearest indications that the tense has been chosen to mark an exclamative. Consider the following example, which has a clear exclamative interpretation:

- (28) Wah... moλ’oq<sup>č</sup>oy sadaq ānu-si gulu  
 whoa bridle.ABS.IV together be.PRS.NEG-ATTR horse.ABS.III  
 teλ-xosi moči žäd dä-r b-ukad-äsi zow-nč’u!  
 give-PRS.PTCP place.ABS.III yet 1SG-LAT III-see-RES be-PST.nWIT  
 ‘Whoa, I have NEVER seen a place where they sell a horse separate from a bridle!’  
 (Babiwn, užin, Okun:51)

The interrogative and unwitnessed-past methods of expressing an exclamative are not mutually exclusive; for instance, in (29), both strategies co-occur and are reinforced by the use of the degree expression *nedur*:

- (29) Oh mi nedur-ä q’urumsaq zow-n!  
 oh 2SG.ABS such-INTERR rascal be.PST-PST.nWIT  
 ‘Oh what a rascal you are!’ ((Aliqilič:71))

Like some other Daghestanian languages, Tsez can make use of a specialized variant of the verb *ez<sup>w</sup>*- ‘look’ to signal the exclamative reading.<sup>2</sup> This verb, used either in the perfective converbal form or in the imperative form, expresses an exclamative utterance with the quotative enclitic –*λin*. Normally *ez<sup>w</sup>*- ‘look’ does not combine with quotative complement clauses, so this specialized use is unambiguously associated with the exclamative interpretation.

- (30) Dice bercinaw r-igu šeλ'u r-iži-x-λin  
 how.much beautiful IV-good clothes.ABS.IV IV-rise-PRS-QUOT  
 b-ezu-n nāsin xalq'i-n λexu-n  
 IPL-look-PFV.CVB all people.ABS.IPL-TOP remain-PST.nWIT  
 ‘The people were in awe, “How many beautiful nice clothes there are!”’ (Zirun,  
 habihanno:7)
- (31) Nes-ä r-a<sup>f</sup>q'u besuro-bi r-iqir-si-λin Ø-ezu  
 DEM.I-ERG n1PL-many fish-PL.ABS.n1PL n1PL-get-PST.WIT I-look.IMPER  
 ‘How many fish he caught!’ (lit.: look that he caught many fish)

Finally, exclamative constructions can include the emphatic particle *-wa*, which appears on the word immediately preceding the verb, regardless of that word’s constituency. For example, in (32), *-wa* appears on the pivot of an existential; in (33), it appears on the subject; in (34), on one constituent of a complex verb:

- (32) Gulu-λa pro b-iqi-s, idu r-ac'-a  
 horse.ABS.III-TOP GEN1 III-be.gotten-PST.WIT home IV-eat.TR-INF  
 šebin-wa ānu!  
 thing.ABS.IV-EXCL be.PRS.NEG  
 ‘A horse, he got, but there is nothing to eat at home!’ (Imnajšvili 1963:273)
- (33) Oh dice di-wa akił-ä!  
 oh how.much 1SG.ABS-EXCL get.tired-PST.INTERR  
 ‘Oh how tired I am!'
- (34) Oh nedur ločyaλ'-wa k'oλi-x debi esiw!  
 wow so dancing-EXCL run-PRS 2SG.GEN1 sibling.ABS.I  
 ‘How well your brother dances!'

Complements of factive verbs in Tsez are introduced by the quotative –*λin*, but that marker also introduces a wide range of other finite complement clauses; there is no evidence to show that exclamatives are similar to factive complements in any special way (cf. (1e) above).

---

<sup>2</sup> See Kalinina (2011) for the use of verbs ‘see’ and ‘look’ as exclamative markers in other Daghestanian languages.

## Complement clauses

### 1 General remarks

Tsez exhibits the following main types of clausal complements (see also CH. YY[NMLZ]):

- (1) Types of clausal complements
  - a. restructuring constituents
  - b. infinitival clauses
  - c. masdar clauses
  - d. nominalized clauses with the suffix *-li*
  - e. finite complement clauses introduced with the quotative enclitic *-λin*

Clausal complements always belong to gender IV, as do abstract nouns derived with the suffix *-li* (see also CH. YY[GENDER] and CH. YY [ARG STR]).

A small number of modal and aspectual verbs do not combine with noun phrase arguments and co-occur only with clausal complements. Aside from these verbs, discussed in sections 2 and 3, all verbs capable of combining with a clausal argument also permit nominal arguments in the same structural position. For example, the verb ‘forget’ can take a clausal complement or a noun phrase complement:

- (2) [Ac                *hiš-a*]                *šuλ'är-no!*  
             door.ABS.II    close-INF            forget-PROH  
             ‘Don’t forget to close the door!’
- (3) Reka-bi                *šuλ'är-no!*  
             key-PL.ABS. nPL            forget-PROH  
             ‘Don’t forget the keys!’

Modal verbs represent typical restructuring predicates, presented in section 2 of this chapter. Modal and aspectual verbs also take infinitival complements, which will be discussed in section 3. Section 4 presents verbs that take control complements, which can be expressed by infinitival or masdar clauses; these verbs include aspectual verbs, ‘try’, ‘remember’, ‘forget’, ‘promise’, ‘hope’, ‘fear’, ‘agree’, ‘refuse’, ‘decide’, ‘teach’, etc. Section 5 introduces verbs that take nominalized complements in *-li*; these verbs are exclusively verbs of perception and cognition. In section 6, we present and analyze verbs that take complements headed by the quotative *-λin*, probably the largest group of clausal-complement-taking verbs, with verbs of speech and propositional attitude most prominent in that group.

Some verbs can take more than one type of clausal complement; for example, *šuλ'ir-* ‘forget’ (causative of *šuλ'*-) takes infinitival/masdar complements, as shown in (2) above, but it also takes quotative complements, just like its English counterpart (*forget to* and *forget that*). The verb AGR-*oq-* presents a particularly complex picture. As we saw in CH.YY [ARG STR], AGR-*oq-* combines with a predicative complement to form a complex predicate. In this use, we translate

the verb as ‘become’ for consistency, although the meanings ‘happen’ or even ‘be’ are also possible. Combining with an infinitive, AGR-*oq-* means ‘begin’ and functions as a raising or control verb. This function is discussed in sections 3 and 4. Finally, in combination with a converb, AGR-*oq-* has the modal meaning ‘be able to; can’ (as shown in section 2). It is possible that several verbs AGR-*oq-* exist in the Tsez lexicon, each with its own meaning ('become; be', 'begin', 'be able to'), related to the others only diachronically. Alternatively, one could imagine a single verb whose different interpretations are determined by the categories it combines with: with a predicative complement, it is a light verb; with an infinitival clause, it is a raising or control verb; with a masdar clause, it is unambiguously a control verb; with a converb, it functions as a modal.

Researchers face similar dilemmas in descriptions of familiar languages such as English: is there one verb ‘begin’, or two? (Perlmutter 1970). We will proceed without taking a stand on this issue, but for expository reasons, we will be glossing the different uses of AGR-*oq-* differently, as ‘can’ (under restructuring), ‘become’ (as a raising verb), and ‘begin’ (as a control verb).

AGR-*oq-* is not the only highly polysemous verb found in Tsez. AGR-*et-*, which can be either a restructuring predicate or a complement-clause-taking predicate, has several meanings: ‘want’, ‘like’, ‘love’. However, only in the meaning ‘want’ can it function as a complement-clause-taking or restructuring verb. Cross-linguistically, it is quite common for ‘want’ to appear as a restructuring predicate (Aissen and Perlmutter 1983; Cinque 2006: 57-60, 103; den Dikken 2004; Givón 2009: Ch. 4; Wurmbrand 2004, 2007, a.o.)

## 2 Restructuring constructions

Restructuring (also known as “clause union” in Relational Grammar) is a process that unites two clauses to yield a single complex predicate consisting of two (or more) verbs, not necessarily in the same form. The selecting (highest) verb in the resulting monoclausal structure is often a modal or an auxiliary of some kind; this verb is the only one that can assume grammatical markings of finiteness, such as tense or polarity. The verbs in the complex predicate share their arguments, and the entire clause can have only one tense specification. The uniqueness of tense specification separates restructuring predicates from predicates that take clausal complements and form biclausal structures. However, as we already mentioned, several verbs can appear both as restructuring light verbs and as a complement-clause-taking verbs.

The restructuring verbs are the modal AGR-*ay-* ‘must’; the modal AGR-*äsu-* ‘may’; the verb AGR-*oq-* in the modal meaning ‘can, be able to’ (co-occurring with a converb);<sup>1</sup> the complex modal *behizi* AGR-*oq-* ‘can; be allowed to’; the verb AGR-*ič-* in the meaning ‘continue’; the verb *xec-* ‘leave; allow’; the verb AGR-*et-* in the meaning ‘want’; and the specialized use of the verb AGR-*esu-* ‘appear’ in conditionals. Of these, the modals AGR-*ay-*, AGR-*äsu-*, and *behizi* AGR-*oq-* ‘can’ seem to be the only Tsez verbs that do not combine with non-clausal arguments.

---

<sup>1</sup> Inability is often expressed by the complex verb *ħal ānu*, literally “strength not-be”, which can take an infinitival or masdar relative clause; see CH. YY [Relative clauses] for masdar relative clauses.

The use of ‘must’ is illustrated in the following examples:

- (4) Es-na-za-s daʃba b-oq-a b-āy-inč'i.  
     sibling-PL-OS-GEN1 dispute.ABS.III III-become-INF III-must-PRS.NEG  
     ‘Siblings should not quarrel.’ (lit.: siblings’ dispute must not happen)
- (5) Ža debi reč'iqoy bat'iyaw-tow-ä r-ič-a r-āy-x?  
     DEM 2SG.GEN1 glove.ABS.IV different-FOC-INTERR IV-stay-INF IV-must-PRS  
     ‘This glove of yours must be really special, mustn’t it?’ (Xanes ꝑono užin, sis kidno:30)
- (6) El-ä paprus ɬis-a r-āy-inči.  
     1PL-ERG cigarette.ABS.IV pull-INF IV-must-PRS.NEG  
     ‘We must not smoke.’

The verbs AGR-*äsu-* ‘may’ and AGR-*esu* (in the conditional form) represent specialized uses of the verb AGR-*esu* ‘be found; appear’, although it is unlikely that the regular and specialized uses of this verb are synchronically perceived as connected. AGR-*äsu-* ‘may’ appears only as a restructuring verb, while the conditional AGR-*esu* can also take clausal complements with the quotative *-žin*. This latter construction will be discussed later in this chapter (see also CH.YY[ADJUNCT cl}).

- (7) Ža ša ɿaq'u-ro-s mah yoł-äsi b-oq-no  
     DEM wine.ABS.III urine-OS-GEN1 smell.ABS.III be.PRS-RES III-become-PFV.CVB  
     b-äsu.  
     III-may  
     ‘This wine may have acquired the smell of urine.’ (lit.: this wine may have become one where the urine smell exists) (Xanno, nesisgon ꝑono užin:82)
- (8) Neła-s kayat šuł'i-n y-äsu debe-r.  
     DEM.NI-GEN1 letter.ABS.II forget-PFV.CVB II-may 2SG-LAT  
     ‘You possibly forgot her words.’
- (9) Irbahin-e-r yedu hält'i b-eti-x b-äsu.  
     Ibrahim-OS-LAT DEM work.ABS.III III-like-IPFV.CVB III-may  
     ‘Ibrahim may like this work.’
- (10) Debe-r ža y-iy-xo y-äsu-nč'i.  
     2SG-LAT DEM.ABS.(II) II-know-IPFV.CVB II-may-PST.NEG  
     ‘You may not have known her.’
- (11) Irbahin-ä yedu hält'i b-odi-n b-äsu.  
     Ibrahim-ERG DEM work.ABS.III III-like- PFV.CVB III-may  
     ‘Ibrahim may have done this work.’
- (12) Mi y-ik'i-n y-esu-näy...  
     2SG.ABS.(II) II-go-CVB II-appear-COND.CVB  
     ‘Assuming you go...’ (to a female addressee)
- (13) Meži dä-λ' bužzi b-oq-xo  
     2PL.ABS.(IPL) 1SG-SUPER.ESS trust IPL-become-IPFV.CVB  
     b-esu-nč'i-näy...  
     IPL-appear-NEG-COND.CVB  
     ‘If you don’t believe me...’ (fAliqilič:104)

The restructuring use of AGR-*oq-* as ‘can, be able to’ and AGR-*ič-* ‘stay’ is limited to combinations with converbs; when used with infinitives, these verbs take a clausal complement (see sections 3 and 4).

- (14) Neła k'et'-ä aw b-iqir-xo b-oq-n-ānu.  
DEM.nI cat-ERG mouse.ABS.III III-catch-IPFV.CVB III-can-PST.nWIT-NEG  
‘That cat could not catch a mouse.’
- (15) Paraxataw ɿumru b-odi-n b-iči-x nes-ä.  
quiet life.ABS.III III-do-PFV.CVB III-stay-PRS DEM.I-ERG  
‘He led a quiet life.’
- (16) Ražbadin halmay-qo-r Ø-ezu-n Ø-iči-x.  
Rajbadin.ABS.I friend-POSS-LAT I-look.for-PFV.CVB I-stay-PRS  
‘Rajbadin keeps waiting for his friend.’ (Ražbadinno Tawadin:73)
- (17) Xex-z-ä xabar teq-er-no b-ič-ix.  
child-OS-ERG story.ABS.III hear-CAUS-PFV.CVB III-stay-PRS  
‘The children kept listening to a/the story.’

All the verbs we have discussed so far assume the subcategorization frame of the verb with which they form a complex predicate. For instance, in (9), AGR-*äsu* is part of a complex predicate that takes a lative experiencer and an absolute stimulus, whereas in (11), it belongs to a regular transitive predicate that takes an ergative agent and absolute patient. These case frames are determined by the verbs AGR-*et-* ‘want’ and AGR-*od-* ‘do, make’, respectively.

The following verbs retain their own case frame when combining with a converb or an infinitive: *xec-* ‘leave; allow’, *behizi* AGR-*oq-* ‘can; be allowed to’, and AGR-*et-* ‘want’.

The transitive verb *xec-* ‘leave’ is commonly used with regular noun phrases in the meaning ‘leave’, as illustrated in (18), or in the meaning ‘cross, pass’:<sup>2</sup>

- (18) Sis-tow sis t'eka xeci-n yiz-ä xizor.  
one-FOC one billy.goat.ABS.III leave-PST.nWIT DEM.nIPL-ERG behind  
‘They had kept only one billy goat.’ (C'irdux:19)

As a restructuring verb, *xec-* bears the meaning ‘let; allow’. It combines with converbs, mostly the perfective converb, and contributes a telic interpretation. In its restructuring use, it takes the ergative subject and shares the absolute object with its converb.

- (19) Yił-ä ... pro b-eynod-a b-e gir-no xeci-n.

---

<sup>2</sup> The verb *xec-* with a noun phrase complement is used as a story-opener in traditional texts:

- (i) Esi-n šebi xeci-n šebi....  
tell-PST.nWIT what.ABS.IV leave-PST.nWIT what.ABS.IV  
‘Once there was, once there was not...’ (lit.: what [they] told, what [they] left out)

- DEM.nI-ERG ABS.IPL      IPL-work-INF    IPL-send-PFV.CVB      leave-PST.nWIT  
 ‘She had allowed them to work.’ (lit.: left them sent to work) (C’irdux:16)
- (20) *pro*    yedu-kin      b-exu-r-inč’ey                        xec-ā-č’in.  
 ERG    DEM(.III)-FOC III-die-CAUS-PFV.CVB.NEG    leave-FUT.DEF-NEG  
 ‘I will at least have killed it.’ (lit.: won’t leave not killing it) (Ceyes sayyat:4)

The complex modal *behizi* AGR-*oq-* ‘can; be allowed to’ (*behizi* is the Avar verb ‘be possible’) combines with infinitival complements and conveys general ability or permission; as such, it permits both a deontic and an epistemic interpretation. It always takes the presumed agent in the poss-essive, for instance:

- (21) a.    Nesi-q                  ža      t’ek                  y-is-a                  behizi  
 DEM.I-POSS.ESS            DEM    book.ABS.II    II-take-INF    possible  
 y-oq-inč’i.  
 II-become-PRS.NEG  
 ‘He is not allowed to take this book.’
- b.    \*Nes-ä                  ža      t’ek                  y-is-a                  behizi  
 DEM.I-POSS.ESS            DEM    book.ABS.II    II-take-INF    possible  
 y-oq-inč’i.  
 II-become-PRS.NEG
- (22) Nex-a            behizi            y-äq-ä?  
 come-INF      possible            II-become.FUT-INTERR  
 ‘Can I come in?’ (a woman speaking)
- (23) Q’uy-z-i-x            *pro*      y-ik’-a            behizi            y-äq-inč’i.  
 other-ATTR.OBL-OS-AD.ESS    ABS.II    II-go-INF            possible            II-become.FUT-NEG  
 ‘She cannot marry another man.’ (Bilq’isdi:44)

The restructuring verb AGR-*et-* ‘want’ combines with infinitives and always takes the experiencer in the lative form, even if the verb it combines with requires an ergative subject, as in (26) below.

- (24) Kid-be-r      yedu    t’ek            y-is-a            y-eti-x-ānu.  
 girl-OS-LAT    DEM    book.ABS.II    II-take-INF    II-want-PRS-NEG  
 ‘The girl does not want to buy this book.’
- (25) Debe-r            xabar      b-iy-a            b-eti-x-ä?  
 2SG-LAT        story.ABS.III    III-know-INF    III-want-PRS-INTERR  
 ‘Do you want to know the story/the news?’
- (26) Elu-q-or        xabar      b-egir-a            b-eti-x      nesi-r/\*nes-ä/\*ža.  
 1PL-POSS-LAT    news.ABS.III    III-send-INF    III-want-PRS DEM.I-LAT/DEM.I-ERG/DEM.ABS  
 ‘He wants to tell us the story/the news.’ (lit.: send us the story/news)

All the restructuring verbs register agreement, and their agreement must match the agreement on the lower verb (see CH.AGR and some discussion below).

Restructuring verbs differ from complement-clause-taking verbs in that they are able to select a wider range of verb forms than those listed in (1); in particular, they select not only infinitives, as

in (4) through (6) and (22) through (26), but also perfectives ((7), (8), (11), (12), (16), (17), (19), (20)) and imperfectives ((9), (13), (14), (15)) as conversbs. Table 1 summarizes the basic properties of restructuring predicates.

Table 1. Restructuring predicates and their distributional properties

Highest verb	Meaning	Selected non-finite form	Case assignment determined by
AGR-āy	'must'	Infinitive	Lower verb
AGR-äsu	'may'	Perfective/imperfective converb	Lower verb
AGR-esu- COND	'assuming; if'	Perfective/imperfective converb	Lower verb
AGR-oq-	'can, be able to'	Perfective/imperfective converb	Lower verb
AGR-ič-	'continue, keep at'	Perfective/imperfective converb	Lower verb
xec-	'leave; stop'	Perfective/imperfective converb	Higher (light) verb
behizi AGR- oq-	'can, be allowed to'	Infinitive	Higher (light) verb
AGR-et-	'want'	Infinitive	Higher (light) verb

When a restructuring predicate appears in a main clause, word order is no more constrained than it is in regular clauses with non-complex predicates. In addition, the verbs that comprise the restructuring predicate can be separated from each other. We will first illustrate the freedom of word order in restructuring clauses with an uninterrupted predicate. Consider the permutations of word order available for examples (8) and (24):

- |      |    |                                  |                            |                                |                                |                                 |       |
|------|----|----------------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|-------|
| (27) | a. | Neła-s<br>DEM.NI-GEN1            | kayat<br>letter.ABS.II     | šuł'i-n<br>forget-PFV.CVB      | y-äsu<br>II-may                | debe-r.<br>2SG-LAT              | (OVS) |
|      | b. | Debe-r<br>2SG-LAT                | šuł'i-n<br>forget- PFV.CVB | y-äsu<br>II-may                | neła-s<br>DEM.NI-GEN1          | kayat.<br>letter.ABS.II         | (SVO) |
|      | c. | Debe-r<br>2SG-LAT                | neła-s<br>DEM.NI-GEN1      | kayat<br>letter.ABS.II         | šuł'i-n<br>forget-PFV.CVB      | y-äsu.<br>II-may                | (SOV) |
|      | d. | Neła-s<br>DEM.NI-GEN1            | kayat<br>letter.ABS.II     | debe-r<br>2SG-LAT              | šuł'i-n<br>forget- PFV.CVB     | y-äsu.<br>II-may                | (OSV) |
|      | e. | Šuł'i-n<br>forget-PFV.CVB        | y-äsu<br>II-may            | neła-s<br>DEM.NI-GEN1          | kayat<br>letter.ABS.II         | debe-r.<br>2SG-LAT              | (VOS) |
|      | f. | Šuł'i-n<br>forget-PFV.CVB        | y-äsu<br>II-may            | debe-r<br>2SG-LAT              | neła-s<br>DEM.NI-GEN1          | kayat.<br>letter.ABS.II         | (VSO) |
|      |    | 'You possibly forgot her words.' |                            |                                |                                |                                 |       |
| (28) | a. | Kid-be-r<br>girl-OS-LAT          | yedu<br>DEM                | t'ek<br>book.ABS.II            | y-is-a<br>II-take-INF          | y-eti-x-ānu.<br>II-want-PRS-NEG | (SOV) |
|      | b. | Yedu<br>DEM                      | t'ek<br>book.ABS.II        | kid-be-r<br>girl-OS-LAT        | y-is-a<br>II-take-INF          | y-eti-x-ānu.<br>II-want-PRS-NEG | (OSV) |
|      | c. | Kid-be-r<br>girl-OS-LAT          | y-is-a<br>II-take-INF      | y-eti-x-ānu<br>II-want-PRS-NEG | yedu<br>DEM                    | t'ek.<br>book.ABS.II            | (SVO) |
|      | d. | Yedu<br>DEM                      | t'ek<br>book.ABS.II        | y-is-a<br>II-take-INF          | y-eti-x-ānu<br>II-want-PRS-NEG | kid-be-r.<br>girl-OS-LAT        | (OSV) |

- e. Y-is-a y-eti-x-ānu kid-be-r yedu t'ek.  
  II-take-INF II-want-PRS-NEG girl-OS-LAT DEM book.ABS.II (VSO)
- f. Y-is-a y-eti-x-ānu yedu t'ek kid-be-r.  
  II-take-INF II-want-PRS-NEG DEM book.ABS.II girl-OS-LAT (VOS)  
  'The girl does not want to buy this book.'

The following examples, related to (4) and (24), show that the verbs in the complex predicate can be separated by intervening material and can appear in a different order:

- (29) a. Es-na-za-s da᷑ba b-āy-inč'i b-oq-a.  
  sibling-PL-OS-GEN1 dispute.ABS.III III-must-PRS.NEG III-become-INF
- b. Es-na-za-s b-oq-a da᷑ba b-āy-inč'i.  
  sibling-PL-OS-GEN1 III-become-INF dispute.ABS.III III-must-PRS.NEG  
  'Siblings should not quarrel.'
- (30) a. Kid-be-r yedu t'ek y-eti-x-ānu y-is-a.  
  girl-OS-LAT DEM book.ABS.II II-want-PRS-NEG II-take-INF
- b. Y-eti-x-ānu kid-be-r y-is-a yedu t'ek.  
  II-want-PRS-NEG girl-OS-LAT II-take-INF DEM book.ABS.II  
  'The girl does not want to buy this book.'

When a restructuring clause is embedded, only verb-final orders are possible, and the light verb must appear last. Compare the grammatical (29a), with a restructuring predicate in the main clause, and the ungrammatical (31b,c):

- (31) a. Mežu-r r-iy-x esna-za-s da᷑ba b-oq-a  
  2PL-LAT IV-know-PRS sibling-OS.PL-GEN1 dispute.ABS.III III-become-INF  
  b-āy-inč'-ru-li.  
  III-must-NEG-PST.PTCP-NMLZ  
  >You know that siblings should not quarrel.'
- b. \*Mežu-r r-iy-x esna-za-s da᷑ba  
  2PL-LAT IV-know-PRS sibling-OS.PL-GEN1 dispute.ABS.III  
  b-āy-inč'-ru-li b-oq-a.  
  III-must-NEG-PST.PTCP-NMLZ III-become-INF
- c. \*Mežu-r r-iy-x esna-za-s da᷑ba  
  2PL-LAT IV-know-PRS sibling-OS.PL-GEN1 dispute.ABS.III  
  b-āy-inč'i b-āq-ru-li.  
  III-must-NEG III-become-PST.PTCP-NMLZ

Restructuring clauses denote events that are perceived as unitary. Accordingly, restructuring clauses can have only one adverbial quantification and only one temporal specification. For example, the following sentence can only mean that someone had an obligation to make two key turns or to lock two locks on the same door, not that he had two separate obligations to close the door.

- (32) K'ox nes-ä ac y-uq-a y-āy-x  
  twice DEM.I-ERG door.ABS.II II-close-INF II-must-IPFV.CVB

ZOW-S.

AUX.PST-PST-WIT

‘He had to close the door twice.’

NOT: ‘Twice, he had to close the door.’

Likewise, the following sentences are ungrammatical because they attribute two separate temporal specifications to the subevents expressed by the restructuring predicate:

- (33) \*ħak’o                  yude                  b-od-ani-x                  žaq”uł b-ay-x  
 dumpling.ABS.III      tomorrow      III-do-MSD-AD.ESS      today III-must-PRS  
 eni-y-ä.  
 mother-OS-ERG  
 (‘Today mother has the obligation to make dumplings tomorrow.’)
- (34) \*Žaq”uł                  kid-be-r                  yedu                  t’ek                  yude                  y-is-a  
 today                  girl-OS-LAT      DEM                  book.ABS.II      tomorrow      II-take-INF  
 y-eti-x-ānu.  
 II-want-PRS-NEG  
 (‘Today the girl does not want to buy this book tomorrow.’)

Negation is possible on either verb, with a slight variation in interpretation. Below, (35a) means that it is desirable for Father to not eat sugar, while (35b) means that Father is not allowed to eat sugar. Only the latter kind of negation takes scope over the entire restructuring predicate:<sup>3</sup>

- (35) a. Babi-y-ä                  čakar                  b-ac’-āč’i-ni-x                  b-āy-x.  
 father-OS-ERG sugar.ABS.III    III-eat.TR-NEG-MSD-AD.ESS    III-must-PRS  
 ‘Father must avoid sugar.’ (must [not eat] sugar)  
 b. Babi-y-ä                  čakar                  b-ac’-ani-x                  b-āy-nč’u.  
 father-OS-ERG sugar.ABS.III    III-eat.TR-MSD-AD.ESS    III-must.FUT-NEG  
 ‘Father must not eat sugar.’

These properties become important in disentangling the monoclausal use of AGR-*āy-* and AGR-*et-* from their use in biclausal constructions, where they take a clausal complement. We will turn to this use in the next section. First, however, we will discuss coordination of restructuring verbs.

---

<sup>3</sup> Negation in Tsez is not uncommon in nominalizations and infinitival/masdar clauses, and it receives a different interpretation in such instances than it does in finite contexts. Thus, sentences such as (35a) are in principle possible; however, there is a preference in such cases to treat AGR-*āy* as a matrix verb and the whole structure as biclausal. This leads to a different agreement pattern on the matrix verb. In (i), the embedded clause headed by the masdar is an argument of the modal and it agrees with the masdar clause in gender IV.

- (i) Babi-y-ä                  čakar                  b-ac’-āč’i-ni-x                  r-āy-x.  
 [father-OS-ERG sugar.ABS.III    III-eat.TR-NEG-MSD-AD.ESS].IV    IV-must-PRS  
 ‘Father must avoid sugar.’ (must [not eat sugar])

Coordination of finite verbs in Tsez is virtually unknown; occasional paratactic coordinations are observed, but finite coordination with the standard enclitic *-n(o)* ‘and’, which coordinates all other categories, is not possible. In order to express something like, ‘Am I allowed and do I have to come in?’, one restructuring predicate remains finite and the other attaches to it in an adjunct clause. However, such adjunction renders the sentence ambiguous, as shown in the two interpretations of (36) and (37): either the entire event is questioned (i), or just the event expressed in the main clause is questioned (ii).

- (36) (nex-a) behizi y-oq-no di nex-a  
 come-INF possible II-become-PFV.CVB 1SG.ABS(.II) come-INF  
*y-āy-ä?*  
 II-must-INTERR  
 (i) ‘Am I allowed and do I have to come in?’  
 (ii) ‘Since I am allowed to, do I have to come in?’
- (37) Dä-r nex-a r-eti-n di nex-a  
 1SG-LAT come-INF IV-want-PFV.CVB 1SG.ABS(.II) come-INF  
 behizi *y-oq-ä?*  
 possible II-become-INTERR  
 (i) ‘Do I want and am I allowed to come in?’  
 (ii) ‘Since I want to, can I come in?’

Even if the coordinated restructuring predicates use the same light verb, they still need to appear separately. This is illustrated in (38), where one of the conjoined predicates appears as a converb. In (38a), the absolute *Pat'i* is interpreted as belonging with the adjoined converbal clause, while the ergative *Pat'ä* is part of the main clause. The converbal adjunct is center embedded between that ergative and the rest of the clause:<sup>4</sup>

- (38) a. Pat'i<sub>i</sub>/Pat'-ä<sub>i</sub> idu-r oč'ira-λ'o-r y-ay-a  
 Fatima.ABS.II/Fatima-ERG home-LAT nine.OBL-SUPER-LAT II-come-INF  
*y-āy-n pro<sub>i</sub> t'ek t'et'r-a y-āy-x*  
 II-must-PFV.CVB ERG book.ABS.II read-INF II-must-PRS  
 b. *pro<sub>i</sub>* idu-r oč'ira-λ'o-r y-ay-a  
 Fatima.ABS.II home-LAT nine.OBL-SUPER-LAT II-come-INF  
*y-āy-n Pat'-ä<sub>i</sub> t'ek t'et'r-a y-āy-x*

---

<sup>4</sup> Alternatively, the first conjunct can be adjoined as a converbal clause, and the modal retained only in the main clause. Such sentences are scopally ambiguous; the modal may scope over the main predicate (a) or over the whole sentence (b):

- (i) [Pat'-ä<sub>i</sub> cen-no r-is-no] *pro* idu-r  
 Fatima-ERG dairy.ABS.IV-and IV-take-PFV.CVB home-LAT  
*oč'ira-λ'o-r y-ay-a y-āy.*  
 nine.OBL-SUPER-LAT II-come-INF II-must  
 (a) ‘Fatima will have bought dairy products and must be home by nine.’  
 (b) ‘Fatima must, having bought diary products, be home by nine.’

II-must-PFV.CVB	Fatima-ERG	book.ABS.II	read-INF	II-must-PRS
'Fatima must be home by nine and must read a book.'				

The omission of the first (converbal) modal in (38) is not allowed.

### 3 Biclausal structures with infinitival complements: Impersonal and raising constructions

#### 3.1 General remarks

A number of one-place predicates can take an infinitival clausal complement. Such predicates typically have evaluative semantics. For example,

- (39) [C'i er-a] onoč-a-r isal-xo zow-n  
 fire.ABS.IV put-INF hen-OS-LAT be.difficult-IPF.CVB AUX.PST-PST.nWIT  
 'It was hard for the hen to light a fire.' (Onočun, mamalayn:4)

Although there are many verbs with a dedicated intransitive suffix *-l-*, they typically do not have evaluative meaning and do not combine with clausal arguments (an exception is the verb *isal-* 'be difficult'). Instead, many evaluative predicates are formed by combining a predicative complement and an intransitive light verb 'be' or 'become' (see CH. ARG STR and AGRee). For example:

- (40) [Papyrus ūis-a] ḥaramaw<sup>5</sup> (yoł).  
 cigarette.ABS.IV pull-INF harmful be.PRS  
 'Smoking is harmful.' (lit.: to smoke cigarettes is ....)
- (41) [ʕaraq'i haλ-a] ḥaramaw r-iči-x.  
 booze.ABS.III drink-INF harmful IV-stay-PRS  
 'To drink alcohol continues to be harmful.'
- (42) [Q'olħo eλ-ani-x]-no [zaryadka b-od-ani-x]-no  
 ball.ABS.III perform-MSD-AD.ESS physical.exercise.ABS.III III-do-MSD-AD.ESS  
 r-igu yoł saxli-mo-r.  
 IV-good be.PRS health-OS-LAT  
 'It is good for one's health to play ball and do regular physical exercise.'
- (43) [Xan-zo meč-ā-r Ø-iz-ani-r] xan-λ'-āy  
 king-GEN2 place-IN-LAT I-rise-MSD-LATking-SUPER-ABL  
 c'aqaw-z-i-r mumpaʕataw ānu.  
 superior-ATTR.OBL-OS-LAT useful be.PRS.NEG  
 'It is useless for the one who is better than the king to rise to the royal position.'  
 (based on Bokarev 1959: 212)

In addition to their occurrence with evaluative predicates, a number of verbs can also appear with infinitival (but not with masdar) complements; these include AGR-*oq-* 'become', the complex

---

<sup>5</sup> The adjective *ḥaramaw* is derived from the Arabic word *haraam* 'forbidden'.

modals *behizi* AGR-*oq-* ‘can; be allowed; be permitted’ and *kʷeze* AGR-*oq-* ‘can; be able to’, the modal AGR-*āy*, and the aspectual verbs AGR-*ič-* ‘stay; continue’, *tiy-* ‘stop’, and *xec-* ‘stop, leave behind’. The resulting structure is illustrated in (44) for ‘stop’ and in (46) for ‘be able to’. Most of these verbs also function as restructuring predicates, which were discussed in section 2; we will address the differences between these two uses below. Restructuring verbs can combine with converbs, whereas a clausal complement in a biclausal construction cannot have a converbal predicate. This distribution limits the possible ambiguity between restructuring and complement-clause-taking verbs.

- (44) [Isi                y-ay-a]            liy-si.  
      snow.ABS.II    II-come-INF        stop-PST.WIT  
      ‘It stopped snowing.’
- (45) Dä-q                kʷeze                r-āq                [saʃat-y-ā-r                oc’ino  
      1SG-POSS.ESS    able                IV-become.FUT        hour-OS-IN-LAT        ten  
      kilometra            xec-a].  
      km                leave-INF  
      ‘I can run (lit.: leave behind) ten kilometers in an hour.’

A question arises: do clausal arguments with an infinitive/masdar predicate appear in subject position, or are they extraposed in an impersonal-type construction with a null pronominal in subject position? This latter scenario would make the construction similar to the English translations with the impersonal *it*. (46) presents a schematic representation of this contrast: (46a) shows a clausal subject structure, and (46b), an impersonal structure, with a silent expletive pronoun in the subject position:

- (46) a. [ʃaraq’i            haλ-a]            haramaw            r-iči-x.  
      booze.ABS.III    drink-INF            harmful                IV-stay-PRS  
      SUBJECT                                    PREDICATE  
      ‘To drink alcohol continues to be harmful.’
- b. *pro*                [ʃaraq’i            haλ-a]            haramaw            r-iči-x.  
      ABS.IV                booze.ABS.III    drink-INF            harmful                IV-stay-PRS  
      SUBJECT                                    EXTRAPPOSED COMPLEMENT    PREDICATE  
      ‘It continues to be harmful to drink alcohol.’

We have touched on this issue in CH. YY[ARG structure], where we offered some considerations in support of the impersonal structure in (46b); in particular, we noted in this connection that clausal subjects in the ergative position are impossible.

Cross-linguistically, modals and aspectual verbs often have an impersonal use, so (46b) is also feasible from the typological standpoint, at least for some of the verbs listed above. The analysis is also realistic in light of the fact that, as we show below, the modals found in biclausal structures are typically epistemic, a trend that is also common for impersonal and raising predicates. In the rest of this chapter, we will refer to verbs that combine with infinitival complement clauses as “impersonal.” This “impersonal” use will be contrasted to the use of a subset of such verbs as raising predicates (section 3.3) and as control predicates (section 4).

Infinitival clauses must occur as complements to the higher verb in the complex predicate; as such, their position with respect to the verb is quite free. As long as the internal integrity of the complement is preserved (see (53) below), it can appear to the left or to the right of the predicate. The placement is determined by information-structural considerations and often by the size of the complement; longer complements tend to be placed at the left sentential periphery.

As example (42) shows, complements embedded under the same verb can be coordinated, which introduces yet another dimension of difference between complement-clause-taking verbs and restructuring verbs.

### 3.2 Impersonal constructions with infinitival complements

#### 3.2.1 Clauses with complement-clause-taking modal verbs

In addition to forming monoclausal structures, AGR-*āy* can also take an infinitival clausal complement, producing a biclausal structure. Compare (47) and

(48), which on the surface differ only in agreement; in (48), the modal takes gender IV marking, thus agreeing with the entire infinitival clause:

- (47) Irbahin-ä yedu hält'i b-od-a b-āy.  
 Ibrahim-ERG DEM work.ABS.III III-do-INF III-must  
 'Ibrahim must do this work.'
- (48) [Irbahin-ä yedu hält'i b-od-a] r-āy.  
 [Ibrahim-ERG DEM work.ABS.III III-do-INF].IV IV-must  
 'Ibrahim must do this work.'

The two sentences seem close in meaning, an issue we will return to later in this section. Structurally, however, they are different. (47) is monoclausal, with the complex verb AGR-*od*-AGR-*āy* taking an absolute object and an ergative subject; (48), on the other hand, is biclausal: the modal AGR-*āy* takes a clausal complement, which accounts for the gender IV agreement.<sup>6</sup>

The difference in agreement is not the only property that separates (47) and (48). In (47), the ergative and the absolute may appear in any order with respect to the verb (as shown in (45)), while in (48), *rāy* cannot intervene between the absolute and the infinitive, and both noun

---

<sup>6</sup> If the absolute noun phrase is also gender IV, it is impossible to distinguish the two readings on the basis of agreement. For example, (i) is ambiguous out of context; the verb AGR-*āy* might agree with either the noun phrase *tupi* or the clausal complement *nesā tupi caλa*. This ambiguity is reflected in the ambiguity of adverbial quantification (compare (i) with (32) above).

- (i) K'ox nes-ä tupi caλ-a r-ay-x  
 twice DEM.I-ERG gun.ABS.IV throw-INF IV-must-IPFV.CVB  
 zow-s.  
 AUX.PST-PST-WIT  
 'He had to shoot twice.' (two shots)  
 'Twice, he had to shoot.' (two obligations)

phrases must precede the infinitive (below, we only show the relevant possibilities illustrating the contrast):

- (49) a. Irbahin-ä yedu ḥalt'i b-od-a b-āy. (SVO)  
           Ibrahim-ERG DEM work.ABS.III III-do-INF III-must  
       b. Yedu ḥalt'i b-od-a b-āy Irbahin-ä. (OVS)  
           DEM work.ABS.III III-do-INF III-must Ibrahim-ERG  
       c. B-āy b-od-a yedu ḥalt'i Irbahin-ä. (VOS)  
           III-must III-do-INF DEM work.ABS.III Ibrahim-ERG  
           ‘Ibrahim must do this work.’
- (50) a. Irbahin-ä yedu ḥalt'i b-od-a r-āy. (SOV)  
           Ibrahim-ERG DEM work.ABS.III III-do-INF IV-must  
           ‘Ibrahim must do this work.’  
       b. \*Yedu ḥalt'i b-od-a r-āy Irbahin-ä. (OVS)  
           DEM work.ABS.III III-do-INF IV-must Ibrahim-ERG  
       c. \*R-āy b-od-a yedu ḥalt'i Irbahin-ä. (VOS)  
           IV-must III-do-INF DEM work.ABS.III Ibrahim-ERG

Next, in (47), the case of the agent is fixed; it has to be ergative since the complex predicate ‘must do’ is transitive. The ergative in

(48), however, can alternate with a poss-essive noun phrase:

- (51) Irbahin-ä/Irbahin-qo yedu ḥalt'i b-od-a r-āy.  
           Ibrahim-ERG/Ibrahim-POSS.ESS DEM work.ABS.III III-do-INF IV-must  
           ‘Ibrahim must do this work.’

Recall that poss-essive is the form associated with potential or inadvertent agency (see CH.YY[ARG STR]). This suggests that the ergative appears when its presence is determined by the restructuring predicate or the embedded verb, and the poss-essive appears when it is called for by the matrix verb in a biclausal structure. This is represented schematically in (52).<sup>7</sup> Note that in (52b,c), the modal verb shows agreement with the infinitival clause in gender IV.

- (52) a. Irbahin-ä yedu ḥalt'i b-od-a b-āy.  
           Ibrahim-ERG DEM work.ABS.III III-do-INF III-must  
           ‘Ibrahim must do this work.’  
       b. [Irbahin-ä yedu ḥalt'i b-od-a] r-āy.  
           Ibrahim-ERG DEM work.ABS.III III-do-INF IV-must  
           ‘Ibrahim must do this work.’  
       c. Irbahin-qo [yedu ḥalt'i b-od-a] r-āy.  
           Ibrahim-POSS.ESS DEM work.ABS.III III-do-INF IV-must  
           ‘Ibrahim must do this work.’ MATRIX CLAUSE POSS-ESS

---

<sup>7</sup> We will return to the meaning of (51) and (52c) at the end of this section.

Word order permutations support these distinctions; in (52b), the ergative cannot follow *rāy* because it is not in the main clause, but in (52c), the poss-essive easily appears in the postverbal domain.



Unlike the monoclausal restructuring constructions discussed above, biclausal sentences can include adverbials that scope either over the state of affairs expressed in the embedded clause, or over the state of affairs denoted by the matrix verb. Compare example (32) above and the corresponding biclausal examples. Example (54a) can refer to either two closings or two obligations; this ambiguity arises because *k'ox* can be interpreted either as part of the infinitival clause (54b) or as part of the matrix clause (54c):

- (54) a. K'ox nes-ä ac y-uq-a r-āy-x  
       twice DEM.I-ERG door.ABS.II II-close-INF IV-must-IPF.CVB  
       zow-S.  
       AUX.PST-PST-WIT  
       ‘He had to close the door twice.’  
       ‘Twice, he had to close the door.’

b. [k'ox nesä ac yuqa] rāyx zows  
  c. k'ox [nesä ac yuqa] rāyx zows

In (55) and (56), the placement of the adverbial resolves the ambiguity; in (55) it is clearly inside the embedded clause, and in (56), in the matrix clause.

- (55) [Nes-ä ac k'ox y-uq-a] r-āy-x zow-s.  
DEM.I-ERG door.ABS.II twice II-close-INF IV-must-IPFV.CVB AUX.PST-PST-WIT  
'He had to close the door twice.' (two closings, \*two obligations)

(56) K'ox r-āy-x zow-s [nes-ä ac y-uq-a].  
twice IV-must-IPFV.CVB AUX.PST-PST-WIT DEM.I-ERG door.ABS.II II-close-INF  
'Twice, he had to close the door.' (two obligations, \*two closings)

The differences in meaning between restructuring sentences and biclausal sentences are often very subtle, and the discussion in this chapter cannot do them justice. However, some considerations can be offered. With ‘must’, restructuring corresponds mainly to deontic modality, indicating a set of obligations imposed on the referent. The biclausal construction is more appropriate in the epistemic context, where it reflects the speaker’s commitment to the truth of the proposition expressed in a given utterance. Since restructuring is used to express deontic modality, it is not surprising that the sentence below is judged infelicitous:

- (57) #Mi oč'ira-λ'o-r idu-r y-ay-a

- 2SG.ABS(.II) nine.OBL-SUPER-LAT home-LAT II-come-INF  
 r-āy-x/r-āy.  
 IV-must-PRS/IV-must.FUT  
 (“You must come home at nine.”)

The biclausal equivalent of (57) is judged fully acceptable, as it corresponds to the epistemic reading just like English *must*:

- (58) Mi oč’ira-λ’o-r idu-r y-ay-a  
 2SG.ABS(.II) nine.OBL-SUPER-LAT home-LAT II-come-INF  
 y-āy-x/y-āy.  
 IV-must-PRS/IV-must.FUT  
 ‘You must come home at nine.’

A deontic interpretation requires that the participant responsible for a given event be volitional or sentient; hence the correlation between deontic readings of modals and the use of control structures. No such requirement is observed with epistemic readings. If we now consider the subject idioms discussed in CH. YY[ARG STR], we find that they are impossible with restructuring ‘must’ but acceptable with clausal-complement-embedding ‘must’. Thus, the idiomatic expression *ziru λuλix* loses its non-compositional meaning under restructuring but retains it in the biclausal example below:

- (59) a. Ziru [λuλ-a] b-āy.  
 fox.ABS.III give.birth-INF III-must  
 ‘The fox had/has to give birth.’ (odd but acceptable)  
 NOT: ‘There must be a sun shower.’ (completely impossible)  
 b. [Ziru λuλ-a] r-āy.  
 [fox.ABS.III give.birth-INF].ABS.IV IV-must  
 ‘A sun shower (clear-sky hail) must be happening.’

Further evidence for the deontic:monoclausal/epistemic:biclausal distinction comes from the acceptability of these two interpretations in conditional clauses. The deontic reading is appropriate in such clauses, but the epistemic reading is odd (see Papafragou 2006 for a discussion and further references therein):

- (60) Uži-bi idu b-ič-a b-āy-näy eniw  
 boy-PL.ABS.IPL at.home IPL-stay-INF IPL-must-COND mother.ABS.II  
 woxzi y-oq-as.  
 joyful II-become-FUT  
 ‘If the boys have to be home mother will be happy.’ (it is the boys’ obligation to be home)
- (61) #Uži-za-q howži idu b-ik’-a r-ay-näy  
 boy-OS.PL-POSS.ESS now at.home IPL-go-INF IV-must-NEG-COND  
 eniw woxzi y-oq-as.  
 mother.ABS.II joyful II-become-FUT  
 ‘If it must be the case that the boys are home now mother will happy.’

Since epistemic modality deals with the speaker's assessment of the proposition expressed by a given utterance, such assessment cannot be reported as a factual statement. As a result, epistemic modals cross-linguistically resist appearing in the complements of factive predicates. Tsez data are consistent with this generalization; consider (62), where 'must' agrees with the entire infinitival clause in gender IV. This and similar examples are judged odd:

- (62) #[[Yiła q'arza nesi-z rok'-λ'o b-ay-r-a]  
DEM debt.ABS.III DEM.I-GEN2 heart-SUPER.ESS III-come-CAUS-INF  
r-äy-ru-li] ſažaibaw (yoł).  
IV-must-PST.PTCP-NMLZ surprising be.PRS  
'It is surprising that he must remember this debt.'

Since epistemic modals express the speaker's commitment to and assessment of a given proposition, clauses with such modals can include the mention of a referent that stands to benefit from the state of affairs expressed in the relevant utterance. In other words, if the current state of affairs is such that Ibrahim wins the race, then that outcome may be good for himself, for his team, for his coach, etc. The beneficiary of the event is expressed in Tsez by a noun phrase in the poss-essive, as in (51) and (52c) above. In this particular example, the beneficiary and the agent are the same person, but that does not have to be the case. Consider the following example, where the beneficiary is the coach, expressed by a poss-essive noun phrase, and the agent of the embedded infinitival clause is Ibrahim, expressed by an ergative noun phrase:

- (63) Terenir-qo [irbahin-ä berhenli r-iqir-a] r-äy-x.  
 coach-POSS.ESS Ibrahim-ERG victory.ABS.IV IV-catch-INF IV-must-PRS  
 'It must be good for the coach that Ibrahim wins.'

If we now revisit (51) with the beneficiary construal in mind, it can be interpreted as “It must be good for Ibrahim to do this work,” a reading that is again in keeping with the epistemic meaning ‘must’.

The distribution of the deontic and epistemic meanings of AGR-*āy* in Tsez is of general interest because it does not quite match the accepted cross-linguistic pattern whereby deontic modality is expressed by control structures, and epistemic modality, by raising structures. Here we find deontic modality linked to restructuring, and epistemic modality to the impersonal biclausal construction. The two modalities still exhibit a structural contrast, but the specific mechanism of contrast differs cross-linguistically.

The complex modal *behizi* AGR-*oq-* ‘can; be allowed to’ is sometimes used as an impersonal verb, in which case its agreement pattern is fixed in gender IV: *behizi roq-*. Its impersonal use is not common, and it seems that the restructuring construction is preferred. It is often used in the set phrases below, which do not have an overt complement. The presupposed clausal argument in these sentences could be either a noun phrase or an infinitival complement.

- (64) a. Behizi r-āq.  
possible IV-become.FUT

- b. behizi            r-oq-näy...  
 possible            IV-become-COND.CVB  
 ‘if possible...’

### 3.2.2 Clauses with other complement-clause-taking intransitive verbs

Other verbs that take infinitival clausal complements include the aspectual verbs AGR-*oq-* in the meaning ‘become; begin’, AGR-*ič-* in the meaning ‘continue’, *liy-* ‘stop’, and *xec-* ‘stop, leave behind’; the verb ‘be’, and the verb AGR-*et-* want’. For example, in (65), the absolute object of the infinitival clause is in gender II, but the verb AGR-*oq-* agrees with the entire clause in gender IV:

- (65) [Xex-z-ä        ciyo        y-ac'-a]        r-oq-si.  
 child-OS-ERG salt.ABS.II    II-eat-INF        IV-become-PST.WIT  
 ‘It came to be for the child to eat salt.’ / ‘The child began to eat salt.’

In

(66), AGR-*ič-* also agrees with the entire clausal complement:

- (66) [Nełä        k'et'-ä        aw-bi        r-iqir-a]        r-iči-xosi  
 DEM.nI        cat-ERG        mouse-PL.ABS.nI        ni-catch-INF        IV-stay-PRS.PTSP  
 yoł.  
 be.PRS  
 ‘The cat keeps catching mice.’ (lit.: “It continues for the cat to catch mice.”)

As with the clausal complement of ‘must’, the biclausal structure is supported not only by agreement facts (which are not always present, as *liy-* and *xec-* do not mark agreement) but also by word order permutations. The constituents of the infinitival clause can freely move around inside that clause as long as they precede the infinitive. Consider word order permutations in example (65):

- (67) a. [Xex-z-ä        ciyo        y-ac'-a]        r-oq-si.  
 child-OS-ERG salt.ABS.II    II-eat-INF        IV-become-PST.WIT  
 b. [Ciyo        xex-z-ä        y-ac'-a]        r-oq-si.  
 salt.ABS.II        child-OS-ERG    II-eat-INF        IV-become-PST.WIT  
 ‘It came to be for the child to eat salt.’ / ‘The child began to eat salt.’  
 c. \*[Ciyo        y-ac'-a        xex-z-ä]        r-oq-si.  
 salt.ABS.II        II-eat-INF        child-OS-ERG        IV-become-PST.WIT  
 d. \*[Xex-z-ä        y-ac'-a        ciyo]        r-oq-si.  
 child-OS-ERG    II-eat-INF        salt.ABS.II        IV-become-PST.WIT

The entire infinitival clause can also move as a unit; compare (67) and (68). However, as (69) shows, constituents of an infinitival complement cannot be displaced outside of that complement:

- (68) R-oq-si [xex-z-ä ciyo y-ac'-a].  
 IV-become-PST.WIT child-OS-ERG salt.ABS.II II-eat-INF  
 'It came to be for the child to eat salt.' / 'The child began to eat salt.'
- (69) a. \*[Xex-z-ä y-ac'-a] r-oq-si ciyo.  
 child-OS-ERG II-eat-INF IV-become-PST.WIT salt.ABS.II  
 b. \*Xex-z-ä r-oq-si [ciyo y-ac'-a].  
 child-OS-ERG IV-become-PST.WIT salt.ABS.II II-eat-INF  
 ('It came to be for the child to eat salt.' / 'The child began to eat salt.')

Also on par with epistemic 'must', impersonal sentences with aspectual verbs can include the mention of a referent that is affected, positively or negatively, by a given eventuality. The expression of this referent must occur in the main clause, not the infinitival complement. If a human participant stands to benefit from an event, he or she is usually expressed in the poss-essive; if a non-human participant is perceived as affected, it is usually expressed in the lative, as illustrated in (42) above (the lative can also be used with human participants, as in (43)).<sup>8</sup>

The impersonal use of the aspectual verb AGR-*oq*-/AGR-*oq*-NEG is often associated with the interpretation 'was (not) meant to be', as in the following examples. The infinitival clause in (70) is intransitive, with an absolute subject 'weather', and the poss-essive form *eluq* is interpreted together with the matrix verb:

- (70) a. Elu-q [hawa=baq tatanu yoł-a]  
 1PL-POSS.ESS weather.ABS.nIPL warm be.PRS-INF  
 r-oq-inč'u.  
 nIPL-become-PST.WIT.NEG  
 'It is not meant for us to enjoy warm weather.' (lit.: for the weather to get warm)
- b. \*[Hawa=baq elu-q tatanu yoł-a]  
 weather.ABS.nIPL 1PL-POSS.ESS warm be.PRS-INF  
 r-oq-inč'u.  
 nIPL-become-PST.WIT.NEG

In (71a), the embedded verb *t'et'ra* 'study' requires that its subject appear in the ergative, so the poss-essive phrase must be in the matrix clause. The poss-essive can freely move within the matrix clause, but as (71b) shows, it cannot appear inside the infinitival clause:

- (71) a. Nesi-q [institut-y-ä t'et'r-a]  
 DEM.I-POSS.ESS institute-OS-IN.ESS study-INF  
 r-oq-n-ānu.  
 IV-begin-PST.nWIT-NEG  
 'It was not meant to be for him to go to college.' (lit.: to study at the institute)
- b. \*[Institut-y-ä nesi-q t'et'r-a]  
 institute-OS-IN.ESS DEM.I-POSS.ESS study-INF

<sup>8</sup> The lative is also used with 'hen' in example

(39) above; the sentence comes from a fairy tale where the hen may be personified, but this is apparently not reflected in the marking.

r-oq-n-ānu.  
IV-become-PST.nWIT-NEG

This use of AGR-*oq*-/AGR-*oq*-NEG finds parallels in the use of the verb ‘be’ with infinitival complements, which also bear the typical interpretation ‘it was (not) meant to be’. For instance:

- (72) a. [Mi-n y-ex-a] zow-s.  
2SG.ABS(.II)-and II-die-INF be.PST-PST.WIT  
‘And you would have been meant to die.’ (Lux di yik'a yāy?:34)
- b. Zow-s [mi-n y-ex-a].  
be.PST-PST.WIT 2SG.ABS(.II)-and II-die-INF  
‘And you would have been meant to die.’
- (73) [Nela k'et'-ä aw b-iqir-a] zow-nč'u.  
DEM.nI cat-ERG mouse-ABS.III III-catch-INF be.PST-PST.WIT.NEG  
‘It was not meant to be for that cat to catch a mouse.’

Unlike the corresponding clauses with AGR-*oq*- in (71a) and (70), impersonal constructions with ‘be’ are judged infelicitous or downright unacceptable with a poss-essive or lative constituent in the main clause:

- (74) ??/\*Elu-q [elā-r b-ik'-a] zow-nč'u.  
1PL-POSS.ESS there-LAT IPL-go-INF be.PST-PST.WIT.NEG  
(‘It was not in the cards for us to get there.’)

Finally, the verb AGR-*et*- ‘want’ can also take an infinitival complement. For example:

- (75) [Šahar-y-ä ťex-ani-x] r-eti-x murad-e-r.  
city-OS-IN.ESS remain-MSD-AD.ESS IV-want-PRS Murad-OS-LAT  
‘Murad wants to stay in the city.’
- (76) [Už-ä šopir-li r-od-a] r-eti-x-ānu babiw-r.  
boy-ERG driver-ABSTR.ABS.IV IV-do-INF IV-want-PRS-NEG father-LAT  
‘The father does not want the boy to work as a driver.’

In (75), AGR-*et*- ‘want’ agrees with the entire clausal complement (the agreement in (76) is ambiguous, because the absolute *šopirli* in the embedded clause is also gender IV). In further contrast with restructuring clauses, where all the arguments of the complex predicate have to be shared, the embedding verb and the infinitive in clausal-complement-taking constructions can each have their own arguments. This is clear in (76), where the infinitive *roda* takes the ergative and absolute arguments, and the matrix verb *retix* takes the experiencer in the lative and the clausal complement in the absolute position.

### 3.3 Raising constructions: Aspectual verbs with infinitival complements

In addition to forming impersonal biclausal constructions, aspectual verbs can participate in a subject-to-subject raising construction, where the understood subject of the embedded clause is structurally represented as the subject of the matrix verb. Compare the impersonal construction

in (77), where the matrix verb agrees with the infinitival clause (or corresponding expletive) in gender IV, and its raising counterpart in (78):

- (77) [Nełā ay-ä ko y-ac'-a]  
       [DEM.nI bird-ERG raspberry.ABS.II II-eat.TR-INF].IV  
       r-iči-xosi yoł.  
       IV-stay-PRS.PTSP AUX.PRS  
       ‘This bird keeps eating (the) raspberries.’ IMPERSONAL
- (78) Ža ayi [ko y-ac'-a] b-iči-xosi yoł.  
       DEM bird.ABS.III raspberry.ABS.II II-eat.TR-INF III-stay-PRS.PTSP be.PRS  
       ‘This bird keeps eating (the) raspberries.’ SUBJECT-TO-SUBJECT RAISING

No constituent other than the subject can undergo raising to the matrix clause. (79) shows the ungrammatical raising of the absolutive object:

- (79) \*Ko y-oq-si [nełā ay-ä y-ac'-a].  
       raspberry.ABS.II II-become-PST.WIT DEM.nI bird-ERG II-eat.TR-INF  
       (‘This bird began to eat raspberries.’)

The impersonal and raising constructions differ in several respects. First, since the aspectual verbs are all intransitive, the case of the raised subject is always absolutive, regardless of the case exhibited by the same constituent in the embedded clause (of course, if the embedded clause is intransitive, the difference is not apparent). Second, the matrix verb agrees with the raised absolutive subject, not with the clausal complement; again, if the raised absolutive is gender IV or if the verb does not mark agreement, the difference in agreement patterns is not apparent. The raised subject can occupy different positions in the matrix clause, something that is impossible for constituents of the infinitival clause. Compare (67) above and the examples below:

- (80) a. Xexbi b-oq-si [ciyo y-ac'-a].  
       child.ABS.III III-become-PST.WIT salt.ABS.II II-eat-INF  
       b. B-oq-si [ciyo y-ac'-a] xexbi.  
       III-become-PST.WIT salt.ABS.II II-eat-INF child.ABS.III  
       c. B-oq-si xexbi [ciyo y-ac'-a].  
       III-become-PST.WIT child.ABS.III salt.ABS.II II-eat-INF  
       ‘The child began to eat salt.’

In contrast to control predicates, which we will discuss in section 4, raising verbs do not impose any selectional restrictions on their subjects. That means that inanimate subjects or subconstituents of idioms (idiom chunks) can freely appear as raised subjects. In (81), the raised subject is inanimate, and in (82a) it is part of the idiomatic expression *ziru žužix* (see also (59) above), which does not lose its idiosyncrasy under raising (compare the impersonal construction in (82b)):

- (81) [Gut kur-a] b-oq-si peč.  
       smoke.ABS.II throw-INF III-begin-PST.WIT furnace.ABS.III  
       ‘The furnace began to smoke (to send out smoke).’

- (82) a. Ziru [ɬuɬ-a] b-oq-xo.  
       fox.ABS.III give.birth-INF III-begin-PRS  
   b. [Ziru ɬuɬ-a] r-oq-xo.  
       [fox.ABS.III give.birth-INF].ABS.IV IV-begin-PRS  
       ‘A sun shower began.’

If the highest argument of the embedded clause in a raising construction is lative (e.g., for verbs of cognitive or psychological states) or poss-essive (e.g., in the accidental construction, CH. YY[ARG STR]), the case form of the argument is not preserved under raising, but changes to the absolute. Compare the following examples:

- (83) a. ɬirba-r biša r-eti-x.  
       guest-LAT food.ABS.IV IV-want-PRS  
       ‘The guest wants food.’ (lit.: the food is wanted to the guest)  
   b. ɬirba [biša r-et-a] Ø-oq-si.  
       guest.ABS.I food.ABS.IV IV-want-INF I-become-PST.WIT  
       ‘The guest began to be hungry (lit.: to want food).’  
   c. \*ɬirba-r [biša r-et-a] r-oq-si.  
       guest-LAT food.ABS.IV IV-want-INF IV-become-PST.WIT  
(84) a. Besuroqu-za-q tor yanq'izi r-oq-si.  
       fisherman-OS.PL-POSS.ESS net.ABS.IV drown IV-become-PST.WIT  
       ‘The net sank on the fishermen.’  
   b. Besuroqu-bi [tor yanq'izi r-oq-a]  
       fisherman-PL.ABS.IPL net.ABS.IV drown IV-become-INF  
       b-oq-si.  
       IPL-become-PST.WIT  
       ‘The net began to sink on the fishermen.’  
   c. \*Besuroqu-za-q [tor yanq'izi r-oq-a]  
       fisherman-OS.PL-POSS.ESS net.ABS.IV drown IV-become-INF  
       b-oq-si/r-oq-si.  
       IPL-become-PST.WIT/IV-become-PST.WIT  
       ‘The net began to drown on the fishermen.’

Interpretive differences between impersonal constructions and raising constructions are quite subtle, and the two structures are often offered interchangeably by our consultants. The subtle differences have to do with the perception of prominence, something that is hard to assess out of context. Roughly, if the entire event is perceived as prominent, the impersonal construction is warranted, whereas if the prominence is placed on the referent of the subject, the raising construction is more appropriate (see Langacker 1995, Grimm 2010 for a discussion of such perceptual prominence relations). Thus, when answering a question like the one posed in (85A), a Tsez speaker is more likely to use a raising construction:

- (85) A: ɬa-ɬ xizāy debi rok'u r-oɬ-xo?  
       who-SUB.ESS behind 2SG.GEN1 heart.ABS.IV IV-hurt-PRS  
       ‘Who are you worried about?’  
   B: [ɬaraq'i haɬ-a] Ø-iči-x ɬali.

booze.ABS.III	drink-PRS	I-continue-PRS	Ali.ABS.I
'Ali continues to drink.'			

On the other hand, if a general description of events is being offered, for instance in response to the question in (86A), the impersonal construction is quite appropriate:

- (86) A: Šebi                    hal?  
           what.ABS            health.ABS.III  
           'How are things?'  
  B: [f̥al-ā                    f̥araq'i                    haλ-a]            r-iči-x.  
       Ali-ERG            booze.ABS.III            drink-INF            IV-continue-PRS  
       'Ali continues to drink.'

All types of infinitival complements discussed in this section are transparent with respect to negation, binding, scope, relativization, and wh-question formation. The negation on the main clausal predicate can determine the presence of a negative polarity item inside the infinitival clause; for example, the negation on 'want' in (87) licenses the negative polarity item *närkin* 'anywhere' inside the infinitival clause:

- (87) [Uži                    nā-r-kin                    Ø-ik'a-a]            eniw-r            r-eti-x-ānu.  
       boy.ABS.I            where-LAT-FOC            I-go-INF            mother-LAT    IV-want-PRS-NEG  
       'Mother does not want the boy to go anywhere.'

Reflexive binding into the infinitival complement is possible and occurs in the same manner as clause-internal binding (Ch. YY[bind]). Constituents of an infinitival clause can be relativized and questioned the same way that constituents of the matrix clause can (see CH. YY[RCs]; CH. YY[wh]). As we show in section 4, masdar complement clauses are equally transparent, whereas nominalized clauses with *-li* and finite clausal complements with *-λin* are not.

#### 4 Biclausal structures with infinitival and masdar complements: Control constructions

##### 4.1 General remarks

In control clauses, such as (88), the subject *you* is semantically linked both to the matrix verb *try* and to the embedded verb *make happy*. Such double semantic linking separates control from raising, where the subject is semantically linked only to the embedded verb.

- (88) If you try to make everyone happy, everyone will be happy but you.

With the exception of the evaluative intransitive predicates 'be easy', 'be difficult', 'be useful', illustrated in (42) and (43), the verbs we have discussed up to this point take clausal complements only with the infinitival predicate, not the masdar predicate. Masdar clauses are understood as describing goal-oriented events, hence their subject has to be volitional and/or sentient (capable of goal-setting). This connotation makes masdars inappropriate with raising predicates (whose subject does not have to be volitional or sentient) but fitting for control

predicates. With control predicates, infinitival and masdar clauses seem interchangeable. For example:

- (89) Babi-y-ä [sult'an šahar-y-ā-yor Ø-egira-ani-x/Ø-egira-a]  
           father-OS-ERG Sultan.ABS.I city-OS-IN-VERS I-send-MASD-AD.ESS/I-send-INF  
           ħukmu b-oy-s.  
           decision.ABS.III III-do-PST.WIT  
           ‘Father decided to send Sultan to the city.’

The distinction between the two types of complements is subtle. Typically, the choice of a masdar clause entails that the event expressed in the clause is perceived as a specific (as opposed to a more general) goal. In some instances, the choice between a masdar and an infinitive may be informed by the degree to which a certain event is considered typical or mundane. For example, asking someone to close the door or to mail a letter is expressed by an infinitival clause, but asking someone to write down a commentary or help another person with a difficult task is more appropriately encoded by a masdar clause. The infinitival clause is joined to the higher verb without any case marking. Masdar clauses, meanwhile, appear in two forms, lative and adessive; we have not been able to determine interpretive differences between these forms. Imnajšvili (1963: 237) lists them both and indicates that the ad-essive form is more common to the Asakh dialect.

Control verbs are known to impose selectional restrictions on their arguments (subject or object, depending on the type of control), and such selectional restrictions are observed in Tsez. Inanimate noun phrases cannot participate in control constructions. For that reason, the following example is ungrammatical, although the underlying ergative construction is fully acceptable (see CH.YY [ARG STR]):

- (90) \*lał-ä [as r-iqir-a] baybik b-oy-x.  
       wind-ERG sky.ABS.IV IV-catch-INF beginning.ABS.III III-do-PRS  
       (‘The wind is beginning to fog up the sky.’)

The control relationship can be established only between the subject of an embedded infinitive or masdar and the subject or object of the higher clause. As the following example shows, control between the subject of the matrix clause and the object of the embedded clause is impossible:

- (91) \*Sult'an-ä [babı-y-ä šahar-y-ā-yor Ø-egira-ani-x/Ø-egira-a]  
       Sultan-ERG father-OS-ERG city-OS-IN-VERS I-send-MASD-AD.ESS/I-send-INF  
       ħukmu b-oy-s.  
       decision.ABS.III III-do-PST.WIT  
       (‘Sultan decided for father to send him to the city.’)

A subconstituent of the subject or object of a control verb also cannot determine the control relation. For example, (92) can only be interpreted as meaning that the director made the decision to send Sultan to the city, not that the father made that decision.

- (92) Babiw-z direktor-ä [Sult'an šahar-y-ā-yor

father-GEN2	director-ERG	Sultan.ABS.I	city-OS-IN-VERS
Ø-egira-ani-x/Ø-egira-a]		ħukmu	b-oy-s
I-send-MASD-AD.ESS/I-send-INF		decision.ABS.III	III-do-PST.WIT
'Father's director decided to send Sultan to the city.'			
NOT: "Father decided to send Sultan to the city."			

Verbs that impose strict requirements on the arguments in the control relation are known as obligatory control verbs (Davies and Dubinsky 2004: Ch. 1), and we will concentrate on such verbs in the discussion below. For brevity, we will be referring to these as “control verbs,” presupposing their obligatory control characterization.

As with impersonal and raising verbs, the position of an infinitival/masdar clause with respect to the verb is quite free. As long as the internal integrity of the complement is preserved, it can appear to the left or the right of the predicate. The placement is determined by information-structural considerations as well as the size of the complement; longer complements tend to be placed at the left sentential periphery (see CH.YY[Word order] for more discussion).

Control complements, like noun phrases, can be conjoined with the enclitic *-n(o)* on each conjunct. For example:

(93)  fal-ä	kul	er-xo	[masukuw-ā-yor
Ali-ERG	hope.ABS.III	put-PRS	Moscow-IN-VERS
Ø-ik'-ani-x]-no		[mašina	b-is-ani-x]-no.
I-go-MASD-AD.ESS-and		car.ABS.III	III-take-MASD-AD.ESS-and
'Ali hopes to go to Moscow and to buy a car.'			

The predicate of infinitival and masdar control complements can optionally carry the quotative marker *-λin*. For example:

(94)  fal-ä	kul	er-xo	[masukuw-ā-yor	Ø-ik'-ani-x-λin].
Ali-ERG	hope	put-PRS	Moscow-IN-VERS	I-go-MASD-AD.ESS-QUOT
'Ali hopes to go to Moscow.'				
(95)  fal-ä	[šeabin	r-od-a-λin]	šuλ'ir-no.	
Ali-ERG	thing.ABS.IV	IV-do-INF-QUOT	forget-PST. nWIT	

'Ali forgot what needs to be done (what to do).'

This kind of marking, also attested in Hinuq (Forker 2013: 617-618), is quite rare. It is somewhat common with infinitival and masdar adjunct clauses (see Ch. [ADV CL]), but very unusual with control clauses. When present, this marking does not change the transparency of an infinitival or masdar complement (see CH.YY [Binding] for the transparency of these complements to binding). In the following examples, the matrix subject binds reflexives inside the control complement regardless of the presence of the quotative, and the constituents of the main and masdar clauses scopally interact with each other. For instance, (97) could mean that a particular boy took it upon himself to bring all the balloons, or that for every available balloon there was a boy that was going to bring it. Such ambiguity would not be possible if the masdar clause were not transparent.

The lack of a syntactic contribution from *-xin* in these instances is in contrast with the syntactic role of quotative complements in finite clauses (see section 6 below), which are never transparent. It seems that the presence of the quotative on masdar and infinitival clauses serves a subtle pragmatic function, underscoring the hypothetical, future-oriented nature of the event under consideration.

## 4.2 Subject control constructions

### 4.2.1 Forward control

Tsez has a sizeable number of subject control verbs, all of which take infinitival or masdar complements. Only a few of the verbs in this group are simple verbs;<sup>9</sup> the majority are complex. A number of these complex subject control verbs include as their predicative component an abstract lexical item borrowed from Arabic.

- (98) Subject control verbs: Simple verbs

  - a. AGR-is- 'try' (lit. 'take')
  - b.  $\lambda'$ iri AGR-is 'take upon oneself' (lit.: up take)
  - c. šu $\lambda$ 'ir- 'forget'
  - d. ko $\lambda$ - 'know how; be equipped; be trained; be set'
  - e. AGR-et- 'want; need'
  - f. AGR-utik- 'have time to; manage'

Of these verbs, ‘try’, ‘take upon oneself’, and ‘forget’ (98a-c) are transitive and take a complement clause as the absolute object. ‘Try’ and ‘take upon oneself’ show invariant agreement in gender IV with the complement clause in absolute position. The verb *šuž’ir-* is the transitive (causative) form of the verb *šuž’-* ‘forget’, which takes a lative and absolute. The former combines with the ergative experiencer and absolute subject. Not surprisingly, it is often used in the prohibitive form, illustrated in (101).

- (99) [Kid-ba-bi r-iqir-a] r-is-no nes-ä.  
       [girl-OS.PL-PL.ABS.nIPL nIPL-catch-INF].IV IV-take-PST.nWIT DEM.I-ERG  
       ‘He tried to catch up with the girls.’ (after Č’ikayn, murin, hiłun:20)

(100) hakim-ä [yalat’ bit’izi b-od-ani-x]

<sup>9</sup> We include the verb *λ'iri AGR-is-* ‘take upon oneself’ in the simple-verb group, to distinguish it from the complex verbs which otherwise include an object and a light verb.

- boss-ERG [mistake.ABS.III correct III-do-MASD-AD.ESS].IV  
 þ'iri r-is-si.  
 upon IV-take-PST.WIT  
 'The boss took it upon himself to correct the mistake.'
- (101) [Ac hiš-a] šuλ'är-no!  
 door.ABS.II close-INF forget-PROH  
 'Don't forget to close the door!'

The verb 'know; be prepared' (98d) combines with the clausal complement in the absolute position (where it alternates with a regular noun phrase) and the controller in the lative.

- (102) Debe-r [ža hiλ'oqu r-eynoy-r-a-kin]  
 2SG-LAT DEM handkerchief.ABS.IV IV-work-CAUS-INF-FOC  
 koλ'i-xosi yoł-ä?  
 know-PRS.PTCP be.PRS-INTERR  
 'Are you prepared to at least put this handkerchief to work?' (Barkat yołasi hiλ'oqu:31)

This verb is very commonly used in a set expression 'not know what to do/where to go', where it alternates between taking a clausal complement, as in (103a), and taking a nominal complement modified by an infinitival or masdar relative clause, as in (103b), where *roda šebin* is a noun phrase:

- (103) a. [šebin r-od-a] koλ'i-nč'ey  
 thing.ABS.IV IV-do-INF know-NEG  
 'not know what to do' ("not know what things to do")  
 b. [[r-od-a] šebin] koλ'i-nč'ey  
 IV-do-INF thing.ABS.IV know-NEG  
 'not knowing what to do' ("not know things that have to be done")

The other control verb with a lative experiencer is AGR-*et-*; this verb is generally polysemous but, in the control structure, is used only in the meaning 'want; need'. For example:

- (104) Elu-r [b-iš-ani-x] r-eti-n  
 1PL-LAT [IPL-eatINTR-MASD-AD.ESS].IV IV-want-PST.nWIT  
 'We want/need to eat.' (Barkat yołasi hiλ'oqu:31)

In section 2, we observed the use of AGR-*et-* as a restructuring predicate with the meaning 'want'. In both uses, the denotation of the lative is limited to animate participants. The restructuring verb does not combine with masdars, only with infinitives, so the use of the masdar in (104) is a clear sign of a biclausal control structure (however, as we shall see from the examples below, infinitival control complements are also possible). In the restructuring use of this verb, all the clausal constituents move around freely, as shown in (28); in the control use, the constituents of the masdar or infinitival clause can only move in the left periphery of the embedded verb. The meaning difference between the restructuring and the control uses of AGR-*et-* seems subtle, and we can only offer some observations here. The control use is associated with the interpretation that the desire is somehow imposed on a person by external

circumstances, rather than coming from within. Probably related to this observation is the fact that, when used as a control verb, AGR-*et-* typically appears in the non-witnessed form in the past, thus accentuating the fact that the desire or need is perceived as greater than the participant's internal state. Based on this distinction, 'need' seems to be the most accurate translation of the control use, while 'want' is more appropriate for the restructuring use.

- (105) Xexlič'      b<sup>c</sup>ałay      maḥor      r-oλik',      *pro*  
       quickly      dagger.ABS.IV outside      IV-deliver.IMPER      1SG.LAT  
       gulu      b-exad-a      r-eti-n.  
       [horse.ABS.III III-slaughter-INF].ABS.IV      IV-want-PST.nWIT  
       'Quickly bring me the dagger, I need to slaughter the horse.' (Babiwn, užin, Okun:54)
- (106) Dä-r      [žek'u-de      kec-a]      r-eti-n.  
       1SG-LAT      [man-APUD.ESS      sleep-INF].IV      IV-want-PST.nWIT  
       'I needed to sleep with a man.' (Xanno: 66)

The intransitive verb AGR-*utik'* have time to; manage' occurs mostly with infinitival/masdar clauses; its use with postpositional phrases is possible but rare. Compare:

- (107) Howži biš<sup>w</sup>a      r-ac'-a-kin      Ø-utik'-x-ānu.  
       now food.ABS.IV      IV-eat.TR-INF-FOC      I-have.time-PRS-NEG  
       'I (man speaking) don't even have the time to eat.' (Eniws esiw:75)
- (108) Yedu ḥalt'i-de-r      Ø-utik'-x-ānu.  
       dem work-apud-lat      I-have.time.to-PRS-NEG  
       'I don't have time for this work.'

The following complex verbs all take infinitival or masdar complements and function as subject control predicates. Their argument structure and respective case marking is the same as that of the light verbs on which they are based; thus, verbs formed with AGR-*oq-* take the absolute controller, while all the other verbs in (109) express the controller in the ergative.

- (109) Subject control verbs: Complex verbs
- a. q'ač'azi AGR-oq      'get ready'
  - b. ḥadur/hatur AGR-oq      'be ready'
  - c. razi AGR-oq      'agree'
  - d. q'abul AGR-oq      'agree; concede'
  - e. muk'ur AGR-oq      'agree'
  - f. mut'iʃ AGR-oq      'agree'
  - g. ruhun AGR-oq      'learn'
  - h. xalbik(i) bod-      'try' (lit.: attempt make)
  - i. baybik(i) bod-      'begin' (lit.: beginning make)
  - j. ḥukmu bod-      'decide' (lit.: decision make)
  - k. inkar bod-      'refuse' (lit.: rejection make)
  - l. kul er-      'hope' (lit.: hope put)

- m. purma teλ<sup>-10</sup> ‘accede’ (lit.: consent give)  
 n. roži teλ- ‘promise’ (lit.: word give)

Here are some examples of control constructions; they are quite common in spontaneous speech and narratives.

- (110) Di [besuro-bi r-iqir-ani-x] ruhun Ø-oq-a Ø-āy.  
 1SG.ABS.(I) fish-PL.ABS.nIPL nIPL-get-MSD-AD.ESS learn I-become-INF I-must  
 ‘I must learn to catch fish.’ (Besurozaqu: 3)
- (111) Boc’-ä [keč’ q'aλ-a] baybik b-odi-n.  
 wolf-ERG song.ABS.III sing-INF beginning.ABS.III III-do-PST.nWIT  
 ‘The wolf began to sing a song.’ (Didur Šomoyä boc’ a k’irik’no:20)
- (112) Xan-e-z kid-b-ä [ža-x y-ik’-ani-x] inkar bodi-n.  
 king-OS-GEN2 girl-OS-ERG DEM-AD.ESS II-go-MSD-AD.ESS refuse-PST.nWIT  
 ‘The king’s daughter refused to marry him.’ (Xanes Šono užin, sis kidno:9)
- (113) Sidakin kid-b-ä [nesi-x y-ik’-ani-x] roži  
 any.OBL girl-OS-ERG DEM.I-AD.ESS II-go-MASD-AD.ESS word.ABS.IV  
 teλ-xo zow-n-ānu.  
 give-IPFV.CVB AUX.PST-PST.nWIT-NEG  
 ‘No girl would promise to marry him.’ (Hibos hunar:4)
- (114) [Bilq’isdi xan-łun xec-ani-x] žamañat razi  
 Bilq’isdi.abs.ii king-as leave-MASD-AD.ESS society.ABS.IPL agree  
 b-oq-no.  
 IPL-become PST.nWIT  
 ‘The locals agreed to make Bilq’isdi the leader (of the village).’ (Bilq’isdi:59)

Some verbs that tend cross-linguistically to behave as control verbs (cf. Davies and Dubinsky 2004: 11-12), such as ‘remember’, are missing from both lists in (98) and (109). This is not an accidental oversight; the meaning of ‘remember’ and certain other verbs is typically rendered by a higher verb with an embedded clause introduced by the quotative *-žin* (see section 6 below). Furthermore, several of the verbs listed as control verbs, especially the complex ones, can take both infinitival/masdar complements and quotative complements.

#### 4.2.2 Backward control

In all the examples considered so far, the direction of the control relation is forward: the matrix argument provides the referential identity of the understood embedded subject of an infinitival or masdar clause. The opposite situation is in fact impossible; compare the well-formed example (112) and its ungrammatical counterpart below, where the subject is expressed in the embedded clause:

- (115) \*[Ža-x xan-e-s kid y-ik’-ani-x] inkar  
 DEM-AD.ESS king-OS-GEN1 girl.ABS.II II-go-MSD-AD.ESS refusal.ABS.III  
 b-odi-n.

---

<sup>10</sup> Complex verbs with ‘give’ have two forms, *teλ-* and *neλ-*, depending on the direction of the transfer (away from vs. toward the speaker/attitude holder).

III-do-PST.nWIT  
 ('The king's daughter refused to marry him.')

The forward (or downward, depending on one's view of grammar) direction of the control relation, where the referential identity of the understood embedded subject determines the identity of the embedded subject, is cross-linguistically very common. A priori, however, there is no reason to rule out an inverse (backward, upward) control relation, where the matrix argument is silent and its referential identity depends on the overt embedded argument. This is a particularly reasonable assumption in the case of Tsez, where infinitival and masdar clauses in principle allow the expression of all the verbal arguments in the same cases as in a tensed clause (see CH.YY[NMLZ]). At least four control predicates, AGR-*oq*- 'begin', AGR-*iħw*- 'start, begin', AGR-*ik*'- 'begin (lit.: go)',<sup>11</sup> and AGR-*ič*- 'continue' exhibit this inverse pattern, which has become known as backward control (see Fukuda 2008 for an overview of the phenomenon from a cross-linguistic perspective and Polinsky and Potsdam 2002 for a detailed syntactic analysis of the Tsez pattern).<sup>12</sup> All these verbs are intransitive. In the examples below, these verbs, as matrix predicates, seem to agree with the embedded ergative argument (*yisä* in (116); *beliqanä* in (117), *nelä* in (118); *yedä* in (119)), which is otherwise impossible in Tsez (see CH.YY[AGR]). Moreover, alternative agreement is impossible; the verbs in (116) through (119) cannot show gender IV agreement (the default agreement with the infinitive or expletive subject).

- (116) Sosisi [yis-ä       esi-nč'ey]       Ø-iči-x/\*r-iči-x.  
          at.first DEM.I-ERG   say-NEG.INF   I-stay-PRS/IV-stay-PRS  
          'At first he persisted in not telling the answer.' (lit.: he continued not to tell)  
          (based on ſAq'ilawni kid:9)
- (117) [Beliqan-ä       kawu-bi       ser-a ]       Ø-iħu-n/\*r-iħu-n.  
          hunter-ERG   gate-PL.ABS.nIPL   unlock-INF   I-begin-PST.nWIT/IV-begin-PST.nWIT  
          'The hunter began to unlock the gates.' (T'omcenı žek'un, ſoħno beħiqanno:36)
- (118) [Nel-ä       bix       kos-a]       y-oq-no/\*r-oq-no.  
          DEM.nI-ERG   grass.ABS.III   mow-INF   II-begin-PST.nWIT/IV-begin-PST.nWIT  
          'She began to mow the grass.' (C'irdux:48)
- (119) [Yed-ä       q'irič'       k'ed-ani-ħe-r]       Ø-oq-no/  
          DEM.I-ERG   scissors.ABS.IV   look.for-MASD-CONT-LAT   I-begin-PST.nWIT  
          \*r-oq-no.  
          IV-begin-PST.nWIT  
          'He began to look for scissors.' (Bilq'isdi:26)

The expression of the corresponding absolutive argument in the matrix clause is impossible:

- (120) \*Sosisi       [esi-nč'ey]       ža       Ø-iči-x.  
          at.first       say-NEG.INF   DEM.ABS(I)   I-stay-PRS  
          ('At first he persisted in not telling the answer.')
- (121) \*[Kawu-bi       ser-a ]       beliqan       Ø-iħu-n.  
          gate-PL.ABS.nIPL   unlock-INF   hunter.ABS.I   I-begin-PST.nWIT

<sup>11</sup> AGR-*ik*'- is used as a control verb only in the meaning 'begin', not in the meaning 'go'.

<sup>12</sup> To the best of our knowledge, the pattern was first noted in Kibrik (1981: 38-39).

(‘The hunter began to unlock the gates.’)

Likewise, it is impossible to express both arguments simultaneously in either the infinitival/masdar clause or the matrix clause:

- (122) \*[Neł-ä bix kos-a] ža y-oq-no.  
DEM.nI-ERG grass.ABS.III mow-INF DEM.ABS.(II) II-begin-PST.nWIT  
('She began to mow the grass.')

The verbs that appear in the backward control construction have other uses. The verbs AGR-*oq-* and AGR-*ič-* were discussed in section 3, where we showed that they can appear as raising verbs. Outside its control use, the verb AGR-*iħʷ-* is interpreted as ‘go outside’. However, in non-control uses, the backward-control-permitting verbs do not impose selectional restrictions on their complements; furthermore, they can appear only in the matrix clause. In the control use discussed here, noun phrases expressing non-volitional subjects or idiom chunks are impossible. For example:<sup>13</sup>

- (123) \*[Ziru λuλ-a] b-iħu-x.  
           fox.ABS.III give.birth-INF III-begin-PRS  
           ('A sun shower (clear-sky hail) begins.')

(124) \*[T'ont'oh-ä buq' b-ac'-a] b-iči-x.  
           darkness-ERG sun.ABS.III III-eat.TR-PRS III-stay-PRS  
           ('The solar eclipse continues.')

Thus, whether the control structures presented here instantiate a special use of these verbs or represent several homophonous verbs, they need to be accounted for.

There is sufficient evidence that the ergative noun phrase in these sentences occurs within the embedded clause. That noun phrase can switch its position only with other elements in the embedded clause. Compare (117) and the well-formed example in (125), where noun phrases in the embedded clause change position, with the unacceptable (126a,b), where the same constituents are displaced into the matrix clause.

- (125) [Kawu-bi                  be- qan-ä                  ser-a ]                  Ø-iħu-n.  
gate-PL.ABS.nIPL        hunter-ERG        unlock-INF        I-begin-PST.nWIT  
'The hunter began to unlock the gates.'

(126) a.     \*[Kawu-bi                  ser-a ]                  Ø-iħu-n                  be- qan-ä.  
gate-PL.ABS.nIPL        unlock-INF        I-begin-PST.nWIT        hunter-ERG  
b.     \*[Beliqan-ä                  ser-a ]                  Ø-iħu-n                  kawu-bi.  
hunter-ERG        unlock-INF        I-begin-PST.nWIT        gate-PL.ABS.nIPL

These facts strongly suggest that the construction is indeed biclausal and that the ergative argument is in the embedded infinitival/masdar clause. Equally crucial is the observation that

<sup>13</sup> This sentence can be interpreted with the non-idiomatic meaning, “The fox got out to give birth”, but that is not relevant for our discussion.

there is a silent matrix subject in (116)-(119), which obligatorily corefers with the embedded subject. Evidence for the presence of that subject comes from reflexivization and long-distance agreement, as we will discuss immediately below.

Tsez reflexives are local and must have a c-commanding antecedent (CH.YY[BINDING]). For example, in (127), only the embedded subject can act as an antecedent for the compound reflexive; the “work” referred to can be Ibrahim’s work, but not the boss’s work.

- (127) hakim-qo [irbahin-ä nesä nesi-s halt'i b-od-a] r-äy.  
           boss-POSS.ESS Ibrahim-ERG REFL.I-GEN1 work.ABS.III III-do-INF IV-must  
           ‘For the boss<sub>i</sub>’s sake, Ibrahim<sub>i</sub> must do his<sub>i/\*i</sub> work.’

However, in (128) below, *nesä nesir* is licensed and interpreted as co-referential with the ergative noun phrase, despite the fact that the reflexive appears to be structurally higher than the ergative expression.

- (128) Nesä nesi-qo-r [Irbahin-ä yedu halt'i b-od-a] Ø-iħu-x.  
 REFL.I-POSS-LAT Ibrahim-ERG DEM work.ABS.III III-do-INF I-begin-PRS  
 'Ibrahim<sub>i</sub> begins to do this work for himself<sub>i</sub>.'

These facts can be accounted for by the presence of a silent matrix subject that c-commands the reflexive and co-refers with the ergative NP. This possibility is represented schematically in (129) for the sentence in (128):

- | COINDEXATION |  |                             |             |                          |      |              |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|--|-----------------------------|-------------|--------------------------|------|--------------|--|--|--|--|--|
| (129)        | <u>i</u>   | nesä <sub>i</sub> nesi-qo-r | Ø-iħu-x     | [irbahin <sub>i</sub> -ä | yedu | ħalt'i       |  |  |  |  |  |
|              |  | REFL.I-POSS-LAT             | I-begin-PRS | Ibrahim-ERG              | DEM  | work.ABS.III |  |  |  |  |  |
|              |  | <u>  </u>                   |             |                          |      |              |  |  |  |  |  |
|              | REFLEXIVE BINDING  |                             |             |                          |      |              |  |  |  |  |  |
|              | b-od-a]  |                             |             |                          |      |              |  |  |  |  |  |
|              | III-do-INF   |                             |             |                          |      |              |  |  |  |  |  |
|              | 'Ibrahim <sub>i</sub> begins to do this work for himself <sub>i</sub> .' |                             |             |                          |      |              |  |  |  |  |  |

The pattern of long-distance agreement also points to the presence of a silent matrix subject (see CH. YY[AGR]). Under long-distance agreement, a matrix verb exceptionally agrees with an absolute argument in an embedded clause, which is interpreted as a topic. For example:

- (130) Dä-r [debi kid y-äy-ru-li] y-iy-x.  
     1SG-LAT 2SG.GEN1 girl.ABS.II II-come-PST.PTCP-NMLZ II-know-PRS  
     'I know that your daughter has arrived.'

Long-distance agreement can only cross one clause boundary at a time. Given this single-clause-boundary restriction as well as the restriction that agreement must be with the absolute, there is no way to explain the long-distance agreement between the embedded absolute argument and the matrix verb unless there is a silent absolute subject in the clause immediately dominated by the verb ‘know’. This silent subject can properly induce long-distance agreement on the higher verb:

- (131) Dä-r [ [debe-z kid<sub>j</sub>-b-ä micxir b-is-a]  
 1SG-LAT 2SG-GEN2 girl-OS-ERG money.ABS.III III-take-INF  
 \_\_i y-äq-ru-li] y-iy-x.  
 II-begin-PST.PTCP-NMLZ II-know-PRS  
 'I know that your daughter began to receive money.'

We are thus left with the conclusion that several Tsez verbs instantiate the cross-linguistically less common, yet not impossible pattern of obligatory backward control. The control verb takes an obligatorily silent subject and the embedded infinitival clause includes the coreferential subject in the ergative or absolute case. Since the control relation is based on the presence of a sentient and volitional referent, experiencers and inadvertent agents cannot be expected in such constructions; thus, subjects of embedded infinitival or masdar clauses under backward control are either ergative (if the embedded predicate is transitive) or absolute (if the embedded predicate is intransitive). It is possible that the pattern of backward control in Tsez is found with these particular control verbs because they are highly polysemous. Under such circumstances, the use of a particular pattern may allow the language learner and speaker to distinguish between the raising/impersonal constructions discussed in section 3, and the control structures discussed here.

#### 4.3 Object control

Object control verbs are less numerous than subject control verbs in Tsez, for two unrelated reasons. First, many situations involving object control can be expressed by a verb denoting the base event in the causative form (see Nedjalkov and Silnitsky 1973, who discuss the polysemy of causative affixes and identify control-predicate-like meaning as one of the currently attested meanings). Recall that Tsez causatives can carry the meaning of either direct or indirect causation, and this polysemy allows speakers to use causatives to express meanings associated with verbs like 'ask', 'order', and 'tell', which are typically control predicates. For instance, the meanings of ordering, requesting, etc., are conveyed by causatives in the following examples.

- (132) Yił-ä nesi-q žedu-λ'o-si qaca  
 DEM.nI-ERG DEM.I-POSS.ESS DEM.IPL-SUPER.ESS-ATTR firewood.ABS.IV  
 r-et'ur-er-no.  
 IV-pluck-CAUS-PST.nWIT  
 'She told/ordered him to chop firewood instead of them.' (Hibos hunar:48)
- (133) Kid-be-q y<sup>ä</sup>ay bobori-k'-er-xo eni-y-ä.  
 girl-OS-POSS-ESS milk.ABS.II warm-TR-CAUS-PRS mother-OS-ERG  
 'Mother is asking/telling/ordering the girl to warm up the milk.'

The second reason for the paucity of object control verbs in Tsez has to do with the availability of quotative constructions in this language (section 6). As with subject control constructions, quotatives are often used in contexts where object control is typically found in other languages.

However, some object control verbs can be found. They include:

- (134) Object control verbs: Simple verbs  
 a. AGR-egir- 'send'

- b. esir- ‘ask’
- c. m<sup>č</sup>ol- ‘teach’
- d. xec- ‘allow’<sup>14</sup>

The verb AGR-*egir-* ‘send’ is particularly common as a control predicate. For example:<sup>15</sup>

- (135) Ø-<sup>s</sup>ež-e-ni      esi-y-ä      Ø-<sup>s</sup>eye-ni      esiw      [zeru  
       I-big-DEF      sibling-OS-ERG      I-small-DEF      sibling.ABS(.I) malt.ABS.III  
       ḥek’-ir-a]      Ø-egir-no.  
       mix-CAUS-INF I-send-PST.nWIT  
       ‘The older brother sent the younger one to make malt.’ (Gołno esiwn, sis esiyn:22)

Complex verbs that take infinitival or masdar control complements are listed below.

- (136) Object control verbs: Complex verbs
- a. q'ač'azi AGR-od- ‘prepare; make ready’
  - b. izmu teλ- ‘allow’ (lit.: permission give)
  - c. ixtiyar teλ- ‘permit’ (lit.: indulgence give)
  - d. ruhun AGR-od- ‘teach, train’
  - e. t'amizi AGR-od- ‘force’

Some examples:

- (137) yił-ä      harihun      hemedur      [sis      r-od-a]  
       DEM.NI-ERG      slowly      so      one      IV-do-INF  
       pro      t'amizi      Ø-odi-n.  
       ABS.I      force      I-do-PST.nWIT  
       ‘And so she slowly forced him to do one thing (after another).’ (Hibos hunar:12)

As example (138) shows, the nominal part of a complex control verb can be separated from the light verb:

- (138) Uži-r      teλ-x-ä      mi      izmu  
       boy-LAT      give-PRS-INTERR      2SG.ERG      permission.ABS.III  
       [gulu-λ’      zow-ani-r]?  
       horse-SUPER.ESS      climb-MASD-LAT  
       ‘Do you give the boy permission to get on the horse?’ (Qacis gulu:24)

Within object control, there is no evidence of the backward control pattern.<sup>16</sup>

---

<sup>14</sup> Recall that *xec-* is used as a restructuring verb (see section 2), in which case it combines with a converb. As a control verb, it combines with an infinitival or masdar complement.

<sup>15</sup> See also example (19) above.

<sup>16</sup> Backward object control is attested in Malagasy (Potsdam 2009).

As was the case with infinitival clauses that occur with raising and impersonal predicates (section 3), infinitival and masdar control complements are transparent to binding, relativization, wh-question formation, and negative-polarity-item licensing from the matrix clause. For instance, in (139), the negation on the matrix verb determines the presence of the negative polarity item *sidxokin* ‘to anyone’ in the masdar clause:

- (139) Eniw            razi            y-oq-xo            zow-n-ānu            [ža  
        mother.ABS.II    agreeing      II-become-PRS AUX.PST-PST.nWIT-NEG      DEM.ABS(.II)  
        sid-xo-kin        y-egir-ani]-x.  
        one-AD.ESS-FOC    II-send-MASD-AD.ESS  
        ‘Mother refused to give her to anyone in marriage.’ (Allahes ašuni:11)

## 5 Biclausal structures with nominalized complements

In nominalized clausal complements marked with the suffix *-li*, the predicate appears in either the past participle form in *-ru* or the present participle form in *-xosi*. If the predicate of the corresponding embedded clause includes the copula ‘be’, that copula appears in its participle form as well: *yǟl-ru* for the present (non-past) form, and *zǟw-ru* for the past form. Whereas the copula can easily be omitted in matrix clauses, as we have seen in many examples throughout this work, no such omission is possible in the nominalized clause. With the past participle, the complement clause has relative past time reference, and with the present participle, relative present or future time reference.

The nominalizer *-li* can be readily omitted (see CH. YY[NMLZ]), in which case a nominalized clause is indistinguishable from a participial relative (CH.YY[RCs]). For instance, Imnajšvili (1963:236-237) presents the following examples without *-li*, for which our consultants usually suggest reinstating the marker:

- (140) Di            y-ok'āk'-ru[-li]            r-iy-no            žedu-r.  
        1SG.ABS(.II)    II-steal-PST.PTCP-NMLZ      IV-know-PST.nWIT      DEM.IPL-LAT  
        ‘They found out (knew) that I was kidnapped.’ (Imnajšvili 1963:236)
- (141) Di            Ø-‘oλ’u-xosi[-li]-n            r-ij-ir-si;            neti  
        1SG.ABS(.I)    I-fall-PRS.PTCP-NMLZ-and      IV-know-CAUS-PST.WIT      when  
        di                Ø-exu-xosi[-li]                debe-r            r-āy-ā?  
        1SG.ABS(.I)    I-die-PRS.PTCP-NMLZ    2SG-LAT            IV-know.FUT-INTERR  
        ‘You knew that I fell; will you know when I die?’ (Imnajšvili 1963:237)

The two clauses can of course be distinguished by their function; a nominalized clause appears as a complement to a verb, and a relative clause is adnominal. In the examples below, we always show the nominalizer *-li* for expository purposes.

Nominalized clausal complements are impossible in impersonal constructions such as the ones discussed in section 3.2 above. Compare the well-formed example in (39), repeated below, and the ungrammatical (143):

- (142) [C'i            er-a]            onoč-a-r            isał-xo            zow-n.

- fire.ABS.IV put-INF hen-OS-LAT be.difficult-IPFV.CVB AUX.PST-PST.nWIT  
 'It was hard for the hen to light a fire.' (Onočun, mamalayn:4)
- (143) \*[Onoč-ä c'i er-xosi-li] lazataw zow-n.  
 hen-ERG fire.ABS.IV put-PRS.PTCP-NMLZ pleasant be.PST-PST.nWIT  
 ('That the hen was lighting a fire was pleasant.')

The verbs that take nominalized tensed complements with the nominalization marker *-li* are mostly cognition and perception verbs, with a lative experiencer and the clausal complement in the absolute position. For those verbs that mark agreement, the matrix verb agrees with the complement clause in the absolute position. A number of verbs that take nominalized complement clauses also register long-distance agreement with the embedded absolute (under proper information-structural conditions), as discussed in CH.YY [AGR].

- (144) a. AGR-iy- /AGR-iy-r  
 'know'/'inform, remind'  
 b. AGR-ukad-/AGR-uka-r  
 'see'/'show'  
 c. AGR-ac-  
 'dislike, disprefer'  
 d. bič'zi AGR-oq-/ bič'zi AGR-od-  
 'be clear'/'explain, make clear'  
 e. rok'-λo-r AGR-ay- / rok'-λo-r AGR-ay-r  
 heart-SUPER-LAT come/ heart-SUPER-LAT come-CAUS  
 'remember, memorize'/'make remember'  
 f. rok'-e-r AGR-it-  
 heart-OS-LAT touch  
 'learn, internalize'  
 g. teq-  
 'hear'  
 h. čuq-  
 'recognize, understand'  
 i. šuλ' -  
 'forget'

In addition, verbs of speech also take nominalized complements, although such complements are less common than finite complements, which will be discussed in section 6 below. For example:

- (145) Žoy-ä [babiy-ä tina-ł xizay Ø-egä-ru-li]  
 lad-ERG father-ERG what-CONT.ESS behind i-send-PST.PTCP-NMLZ  
 esi-n.  
 tell-PST.nWIT  
 'The youngster told what the father had sent him for.' (Eniws esiw:68)

The predicate of the nominalized clause must appear as its final constituent; material in front of the predicate can move around freely inside the clause. For instance, in the following sentence, the embedded predicate is *let'ix yälrułi*; as long as it stays in the final position in the nominalized

clause, all other orders are acceptable:

- (146) a. [Neł-ä ža beł'q'su b-ac'-ani-x ɬet'i-x  
DEM.nI-ERG DEM sheep.ABS.III III-eat-MASD-AD.ESS pick-PRS  
yäł-ru-li] nesi-r čuq'-no.  
be.PRS-PST.PTCP-NMLZ DEM.I-LAT recognize-PST.nWIT
- b. [Ža beł'q'su nel-ä b-ac'-ani-x ɬet'i-x  
DEM sheep.ABS.III DEM.nI-ERG III-eat-MASD-AD.ESS pick-PRS  
yäł-ru-li] nesi-r čuq'-no.  
be.PRS-PST.PTCP-NMLZ DEM.I-LAT recognize-PST.nWIT
- c. [Ža beł'q'su b-ac'-ani-x nel-ä ɬet'i-x  
DEM sheep.ABS.III III-eat-MASD-AD.ESS DEM.nI-ERG pick-PRS  
yäł-ru-li] nesi-r čuq'-no.  
be.PRS-PST.PTCP-NMLZ DEM.I-LAT recognize-PST.nWIT  
‘He recognized that she was picking that sheep to eat.’ (K’eneč’:10)
- (147) \*[Ža beł'q'su b-ac'-ani-x ɬet'i-x yäł-ru-li  
DEM sheep.ABS.III III-eat-MASD-AD.ESS pick-PRS be.PRS-PST.PTCP-NMLZ  
neł-ä] nesi-r čuq'-no.  
DEM.nI-ERG DEM.I-LAT recognize-PST.nWIT

No material inside the nominalized clause can be dislocated into the matrix clause. Observe the following minimal pair. In (148b), the absolute demonstrative *ža* appears outside the embedded clause, and the result is ungrammatical:

- (148) a. [Ža nesi-s uži yäł-ru-li]  
DEM.ABS(.I) DEM.I-GEN1 boy.ABS.I be.PRS-PST.PTCP-NMLZ  
Ø-iy-n.  
I-know-PST.nWIT  
‘He knew that that was his son.’ (Babiwn užin Okun:78)
- b. \*[Nesi-s uži yäł-ru-li] Ø-iy-n  
DEM.I-GEN1 boy.ABS.I be.PRS-PST.PTCP-NMLZ I-know-PST.nWIT  
ža.  
DEM.ABS(.I)

Negative polarity items inside nominalized clauses cannot be licensed by negation on the main predicate. In (149), the negative polarity adverbial *didurnokin* is appropriately licensed by the negative predicate in the embedded clause; in (150), the negation is too far away from the negative polarity item, and the sentence is ungrammatical, just like its English equivalent.

- (149) Učitel-e-r [už-ä darsi didurnokin  
teacher-OS-LAT boy-ERG lesson.ABS.III anyhow  
b-äy-inč'i-ru-li] bič'zi r-oq-si.  
III-do-NEG-PST.PTCP-NMLZ understand IV-become-PST.WIT  
‘The teacher understood that the boy did not prepare the lesson at all.’
- (150) \*Učitel-e-r [už-ä darsi didurnokin  
teacher-OS-LAT boy-ERG lesson.ABS.III anyhow

b-äy- ru-li]	bič'zi	r-oq-inč'u.
III-do-PST.PTCP-NMLZ	understand	IV-become-PST.WIT.NEG
("The teacher did not understand that the boy prepared the lesson at all.")		

In CH.YY [AGR, LDA], we show that the material inside the nominalized clause cannot interact scopally with the constituents of the matrix clause. Wh-words inside a nominalized complement cannot take scope over the matrix clause. For instance, (151) means ‘Did you understand who stole the money?’ but not ‘Who did you understand stole the money?’.

- (151) [lu micxir b-ok'ek'-xosi yäl-ru-li]  
 who.ERG money.ABS.III III-steal-PRS.PTCP be.PRS-PST.PTCP-NMLZ  
 debe-r čuq'-ä?  
 2SG-LAT understand-PST.WIT.INTERR  
 ‘Did you understand who was stealing the money?’

Embedded nominalizations can be coordinated. For example:

- (152) Xan-e-r bič'zi r-oq-no [elo q'čano c'ohor  
 king-OS-LAT understand IV-become-PST.nWIT there two thief.ABS.I  
 zäw-ru-li]-n [sisi-ni-gon el-äy Ø-oxi-n  
 be.PST-PST.PTCP-NMLZ-and other-DEF.ABS.(I)-CONTR there-ABL I-run-PFV.CVB  
 Ø-äk'i-ru-li]-n.  
 I-go-PST.PTCP-NMLZ-and  
 ‘The king understood that there had been two thieves and that the other one had run away from here.’ (Q'čano guluči sis aqiw esnabi:25)

Nominalized complement clauses typically occur in the object position immediately before the complement-taking verb (preceded by the lative argument), or at the left edge of the sentence, as in (151). In elicitations, native speakers usually place nominalized complement clauses before the verb, but text examples also instantiate postverbal placement.

## 6 Biclausal structures with finite clausal complements

### 6.1 General remarks

Clausal complements are introduced by the quotative particle *-čin*. In addition to combining with finite clauses, which we will examine below, the enclitic *-čin* can also combine with quoted fragments smaller than a clause. In particular, it always appears on proper names when the name is introduced for the first time, as in the following example:

- (153) Nesi-č ci-gon Umarqilič-čin zow-n.  
 DEM.I-SUPER.ESS name.ABS.IV-CONTR Umarqilič-QUOT be.PST-PST.nWIT  
 ‘His name was Umarqilič.’ (čAliqilič:1)

This usage is related to the presence of the verb *eč-* ‘say’ in the resultative participial form, which is more often than not omitted. This resultative participle is overt in the following example, where a proper name is introduced:

- (154) Sis zow-n-žax [Goqi-žin ež-äsi] miskinaw  
 one be.PST-PST.nWIT-QUOT Goqi- QUOT say-RES.PTCP poor  
 žek'u.  
 person. ABS.I  
 'Once there lived a poor man called Goqi.' (Goqin zirun:1)

Complements marked with *-žin* are extremely common and are selected by a wide variety of verbs, from verbs of speech to propositional attitude verbs to a large number of control verbs. It is probably easier to list the verbs that do not take quotative complements; these include the restructuring predicates, the modal and aspectual verbs discussed in section 3, the backward control verbs (section 4.2.2), the verb AGR-*už*- 'fear; be afraid', the verb AGR-*egir*- 'send', and the verbs *ruhun* AGR-*oq*- 'learn' / *ruhun* AGR-*od*- 'teach'.

In texts, the embedding verb can be omitted, leaving *-žin* as the only signal of the embedded structure; this is particularly common for the verbs of speaking and propositional attitude verbs. As a result, the sentence may contain multiple occurrences of *-žin* in the absence of a matrix verb, as in the following example. The first and the last clauses in (155) appear with *-žin*, and both represent reported speech, presumably embedded under the presupposed verbs of speaking.

- (155) [Ø-eynoy-xo-zo gurow žek'u-r dä-de idu Ø-ič-a  
 I-work-PRS-ATTR.OBL except person-LAT 1SG-APUD.ESS home I-stay-INF  
 moči ānu-žin], [eni-babiy-ä nesi-s nesi-r  
 place.ABS.III be.PRS.NEG-QUOT parents-ERG DEM.I-GEN1 DEM.I-LAT  
 želi-n tež-no], [Ø-eye-ni uži mahor  
 lamb-ABS.III-and give-PFV.CVB I-young-DEF boy.ABS.I outside-LAT  
 Ø-ox-ir-no], [debe-r r-äti-z-a Ø-ik'i-n  
 I-run-CAUS-CVB 2SG-LAT IV-want-ATTR.OBL.DIST-VERS I-go-PFV.CVB  
 ūmru b-od-o-žin].  
 life.ABS.III III-do-IMPER-QUOT  
 '“There is no place at my home except for those who work”, [said] the parents, gave him his little lamb, and chased the youngest son out, [telling him] that he should go where he wants and live [there].’ (Želä bečed ädiru miskin žek'u:8)

In contrast to the types of clausal complements discussed in previous sections, the clause introduced by *-žin* is always finite and can include interrogative marking (156), (162) or imperative marking (155) on the embedded predicate. Exclamatives can also appear with this enclitic, cf. (157).

- (156) [Yila čant-ä-kin an-ä r-ac'-ani-x  
 DEM.nI bag-IN.ESS-FOC be.PRS.NEG-INTERR IV-eat.TR-MASD-AD.ESS  
 šebin-žin] rok'-ž'o-r r-ay-n.  
 thing.ABS.IV-QUOT heart-SUPER-LAT IV-come-PST.nWIT  
 '(He) tried to recall whether there was something to eat in that very bag.' (lit.: recalled wasn't there something to eat... ) (Ceyes sayyat:37)
- (157) [Wah žigon šebi-tow nesi-r r-eti-n-žin]

whoa	again	what.ABS.IV-FOC	DEM.I-LAT	IV-want-PST.nWIT-QUOT
esir-no		neł-ä.		
ask-PST.nWIT	DEM.nI-ERG			
'Whoa, what else does he want!', exclaimed she. (C'irdux:36)				

The variety of verbs that combine with complements in *-λin* may be somewhat misleading, since *-λin* has two distinct functions: (i) marking genuine complementation and (ii) introducing quoted direct speech, which we will refer to as *direct quotation* (DQ).

If *-λin* introduces a direct quotation, the word order in the quoted speech can be as free as the word order in independent main clauses. For instance, the following text example is unambiguously a direct quotation, since *-λin* appears on the postverbal subject:

(158)	[Dä-z	ža-s	halmay-bi	yoł	yizi-λin]
	1SG-GEN2	son-GEN1	friend-PL.ABS.IPL	be.PRS DEM.IPL.ABS-QUOT	
	esi-n	nes-ä	Ražbadin-qo.		
	say-PST.nWIT	DEM.I-ERG	Rajbaddin-POSS.ESS		
“They are my son’s friends,” said he to Rajbaddin.’ (Ražbadinno, Tawadin:165)					

If *-λin* acts as a complementizer introducing a finite clausal complement (FCC below), the word order in the embedded clause has to be strictly verb-final. This can be demonstrated with a matrix verb that does not take direct quotation. In the following examples, the verb ‘forget’ is incompatible with quotation, and the embedded clause must be verb-final. Example (159) shows that the word order at the main clause level is completely free. However, only (159a) is possible in the embedding:

- |       |    |   |                     |                                     |
|-------|----|---|---------------------|-------------------------------------|
| (159) | a. | Di  | magazine-y-ā-γor    | y-ik'-ān.                           |
|       |    | 1SG.ABS(.II)  | store-OS-IN-VERS    | II-go-FUT.DEF                       |
|       | b. | Magazine-y-ā-γor  | y-ik'-ān            | di.                                 |
|       |    | store-OS-IN-VERS  | II-go-FUT.DEF       | 1SG.ABS(.II)                        |
|       | c. | Di  | y-ik'-ān            | magazine-y-ā-γor.                   |
|       |    | 1SG.ABS(.II)  | II-go-FUT.DEF       | store-OS-IN-VERS                    |
|       |    | ‘I (woman speaking) am going to the store.’   |                     |                                     |
| (160) | a. | Di  | šuλ'-ir-si          | [magazine-y-ā-γor y-ik'-ān-λin].    |
|       |    | 1SG.ERG   | forget-CAUS-PST.WIT | store-OS-IN-VERS II-go-FUT.DEF-QUOT |
|       |    | ‘I (woman speaking) forgot to go to the store.’ (lit.: that I was going to the store) |                     |                                     |
|       | b. | *Di   | šuλ'-ir-si          | [y-ik'-ān magazine-y-ā-γor-λin].    |
|       |    | 1SG.ERG   | forget-CAUS-PST.WIT | II-go-FUT.DEF store-OS-IN-VERS-QUOT |

Thus, those matrix verbs that do not introduce reported/quoted speech take complement clauses with *-λin* as a complementizer. But matrix verbs of speaking and propositional attitude verbs are equally compatible with direct quotation and embedded clauses, and unless the word order is straightforward, as in (158), it is not immediately obvious which function *-λin* serves in these cases (and, consequently, what type of clause they take, DQ or FCC). We will return to this issue in section 6.2 below.

Complements introduced by *-λin* can be coordinated:

- (161) Di šuλ'-ir-si [magazine-y-ā-yor y-ik'-ān-λin]-no  
       1SG.ERG forget-CAUS-PST.WIT store-OS-IN-VERS II-go-FUT.DEF-QUOT-and  
       [kayat y-ege-ān-λin]-no.  
       letter.ABS.II II-send-FUT.DEF-QUOT-and  
       'I (woman speaking) forgot to go to the store and to mail a letter.' (lit.: forgot that I was going and that I was sending...)

Finite clausal complements can also occur iteratively; in the following example, the first complement is embedded under a cognition verb, whose own clause is embedded under a verb of speaking:

- (162) [[Dä-ł-er hal-ruh r-ay-n-ā-λin]  
       1SG-CONT-LAT [health.ABS.III-strength.ABS.III].nIPL nIPL-come-PST.nWIT-INTERR-QUOT  
       r-iy-r-a r-eti-n-λin] eλi-n cey-ā.  
       IV-know-CAUS-INF IV-want-PST.nWIT-QUOT say-PST.nWIT eagle-ERG  
       'The eagle said, 'I want to find out if my might has come back to me.' (based on Ceyes sayyat:8)

If a given matrix verb has agreement marking, that verb agrees with the complement clause in gender IV. For instance, in (156), the complement clause is in the absolute position of the complex verb *rok'λ'or AGR-ay* 'remember, recall (lit.: come upon heart)'. In (163), the complement clause is either the subject or the extraposed sentential complement of the unaccusative predicate 'be bad'.<sup>17</sup> (See section 3.2 for discussion of this issue with respect to infinitival complements of impersonal verbs.)

- (163) [Mi hemedur q'waridi y-oq-xo-λin] žuka  
       2SG.ABS(I) so sad II-become-PRS-QUOT.ABS.IV bad  
       r-oq-si.  
       IV-become-PST.WIT  
       'It was not good that you (speaking to a woman) were so sad.'

In the following example, a finite clausal complement is embedded under the conditional AGR-*esu-näy* (which was discussed in section 2), and the embedding verb agrees with the complement in gender IV:

- (164) [Debe-q kid y-od-ir-oλ-λin] r-esu-näy...  
       [2SG-POSS.ESS girl.ABS.II II-do-CAUS-POT-QUOT].ABS.IV IV-appear-COND.CVB  
       'If you could have a daughter...'

---

<sup>17</sup> The question of whether sentences like (163) have a silent expletive subject in gender IV is similar to the question raised with respect to impersonal sentences with infinitival complements; see section 3.2 above.

An absolutive constituent inside a quotative complement cannot induce long-distance agreement (see CH. YY[AGR]), which makes these clauses different from the nominalized complements discussed in section 5. Example (165b) is minimally different from (165a) in that the complex matrix verb *harizi AGR-od-* agrees with the embedded absolutive *baša* in gender III, but such agreement renders the sentence ungrammatical.

- (165) a. [Behizi r-oq-näy, dä-q baša  
possible IV-become-COND.CVB 1SG-POSS.ESS finger.ABS.III  
b-ati-n-λin] di debe-q harizi r-oy-x.  
III-put-PROH-QUOT 1SG.ERG 2SG-POSS.ESS requestIV-do-PRS  
‘If possible don’t touch me, I am begging you.’ (Xanno, nesisgon ḫono užin:108)  
b. \*[Dä-q baša b-äti-n-λin] di  
1SG-POSS.ESS finger.ABS.III III-put-PROH-QUOT 1SG.ERG  
debe-q harizi b-oy-x.  
2SG-POSS.ESS request III-do-PRS

As with nominalized complements (section 5), constituents of a finite complement clause cannot interact scopally with constituents of the higher clause. A negative verb that takes a finite complement clause cannot license negative polarity items inside the complement clause; in (166), the negative polarity item *sidxokin* cannot be licensed by negation on the higher verb:

- (166) \*Eniw razi y-oq-inč’u [kid sid-xo-kin  
mother.ABS.II agree II-become-PST.NEG girl.ABS.II one.OBL-AD.ESS-FOC  
y-egir-xo-λin].  
II-send-PRS-QUOT  
(‘Mother did not agree to marry (lit.: send) the girl off to anyone.’)

No material from a finite complement can be dislocated into the matrix clause. Compare the well-formed example (156) above and its ungrammatical counterpart where the locative constituent *yila čantākin* is dislocated to the matrix clause:

- (167) \*[An-ä r-ac’-ani-x šebin-λin]  
be.PRS.NEG-INTERR IV-eat.TR-MASD-AD.ESS thing.ABS.IV-QUOT  
yila čant-ä-kin rok’-λ’or r-ay-n.  
DEM.nI bag-IN.ESS-FOC heart-SUPER-LAT IV-come-PST.nWIT  
(‘(He) tried to recall whether there was something to eat in that very bag.’)

Typically, a finite clausal complement linearly precedes the verb that takes that complement, but the complement can also appear further to the left of its selecting verb. The availability of a postverbal position varies depending on the class of the embedding verb. For instance, building on example (162), the following order, where the restructuring verb *riyra retin* precedes the quotative complement, is unacceptable:

- (168) \*Dä-r r-iy-r-a r-eti-n dä-ł-er  
1SG-LAT IV-know-CAUS-INF IV-want-PST.nWIT 1SG-CONT-LAT

hal-ruh	r-ay-n-ä-λin.
[health.ABS.III-strength.ABS.III].nIPL	nIPL-come-PST.nWIT-INTERR-QUOT
(‘I want to find out if my might has come back to me.’)	

With verbs of speech and propositional attitude verbs, finite clausal complements can follow the verb quite easily. Building on example (162) again, the orders in (169a, b) are both quite common (with a pause between the matrix verb and the rest of the sentence, indicated by # below):

- (169) a. Cey-ä eλi-n# dä-l-er hal-ruh  
           eagle-ERG say-PST.nWIT 1SG-CONT-LAT [health.ABS.III-strength.ABS.III].nIPL  
           r-ay-n-ä-λin r-iy-r-a r-eti-n-λin.  
           nIPL-come-PST.nWIT-INTERR-QUOT IV-know-CAUS-INF IV-want-PST.nWIT-QUOT  
           ‘The eagle said, ‘I want to find out if my might has come back to me.’’  
       b. Cey-ä pikru b-oy-n# dä-l-er  
           eagle-ERG thought.ABS.III III-do-PST.nWIT 1SG-CONT-LAT  
           hal-ruh r-ay-n-ä-λin.  
           [health.ABS.III-strength.ABS.III].nIPL nIPL-come-PST.nWIT-INTERR-QUOT  
           ‘The eagle was thinking, ‘Has my might come back to me?’’

We have already shown that the two functions of *-λin* can be distinguished based on the type of the matrix verb and on the order of constituents in the embedded clause. That still leaves a large body of clauses marked with *-λin* that are ambiguous between a finite-complement-clause interpretation and direct quotation. Yet another, more complex diagnostic separating FCC and DQ (and accordingly, the two functions of *-λin*) stems from the phenomenon of indexical shift, which we examine below.

## 6.2 Indexical shift in finite complement clauses

Consider the following sentence:

- (170) Irbahin-ä [di fayibiyaw yoł-λin] eλi-x.  
           Ibrahim-ERG 1SG.ABS wrong/foolish be.PRS-QUOT say-PRS  
       (i)   ‘Ibrahim says that I was wrong.’  
       (ii)   ‘Ibrahim<sub>i</sub> says that he<sub>i</sub> was wrong.’

Out of context, (170) is ambiguous, either meaning that the speaker of the utterance is wrong or that Ibrahim, the speaker in the reported context, is wrong. The utterance context calls for interpretation (i), and the local context imposes interpretation (ii). This latter interpretation involves a shift of the indexical expression (in this case *I*) from the (expected) utterance context. The phenomenon of indexical shift, which philosophers of language have explicitly rejected (see Kaplan 1979/1989) on the assumption that the semantic values of *I*, *you* or *now* are innately identified with their referents, has nevertheless proven quite pervasive across a number of languages. So far, it has been documented in Navajo (Speas 1999), Donno So (Culy 1994), Amharic (Schlenker 1999, 2003), Nez Perce (Deal 2012), Matses (Munro et al. 2012), Slave (Rice 1986), Uyghur (Sudo 2012; Shklovsky and Sudo 2014), Zazaki (Anand 2006; Anand and Nevins 2004), Tatar (Podobryaev 2014), Aghem (Hyman 1988; Hyman and Polinsky 2009),

Gokana (Hyman and Comrie 1981), several other West African languages (Nikitina 2013), and a number of sign languages (Zucchi 2004, Quer 2005). Data in Forker (2013: 662-664) suggest that Hinuq also has indexical shift.

### 6.2.1 Evidence for indexical shift

Tsez clearly belongs on the list of indexical-shifting languages. Indexical shift from the speaker to an attitude-holder is permitted in, and only in, finite complement clauses. Compare the finite clause in (171a), which allows indexical shift, to the nominalized clause in (171b), which does not.<sup>18</sup>

- (171) a. Žoy-ä neļo-qo-r [babiy-ä di  
lad-ERG DEM.nI-POSS-LAT father-ERG 1SG.ABS(.I)  
Ø-egir-si-λin] esi-n.  
I-send-PST.WIT-QUOT tell-PST.nWIT  
(i) ‘The youngster told her that the father had sent me.’ (IR)  
(ii) ‘The youngster<sub>i</sub> told her that the father had sent him<sub>i</sub>.’ (SR)
- b. Žoy-ä neļo-qo-r [babiy-ä di  
lad-ERG DEM.nI-POSS-LAT father-ERG 1SG.ABS(.I)  
Ø-egä-ru-ļi] esi-n.  
I-send-PST.PTCP-NMLZ tell-PST.nWIT  
‘The youngster told her that the father had sent me.’ (IR)  
NOT: ‘The youngster<sub>i</sub> told her that the father had sent him<sub>i</sub>.’ (SR)

Indexical shift is possible only within complements embedded under certain propositional attitude and speech verbs. For example,

- (172) [Di nesi-x y-ik'-inč'u-λin] xan-e-z kid-b-ä  
1SG.ABS(.II) DEM.I-AD.ESS II-go-FUT.NEG-QUOT king-OS-GEN2 girl-OS-ERG  
xalbiki b-odi-n.  
attempt.ABS.III III-do-PST.nWIT  
‘The king’s daughter tried to make sure that I (woman speaking) would not marry him.’  
NOT: ‘The king’s daughter tried not to marry him.’

The verbs that allow indexical shift are as follows:<sup>19</sup>

- (173) Verbs that allow indexical shift
- a. AGR-ukad- ‘see’; moļax AGR-ukad- ‘see in a dream’
  - b. AGR-<sup>s</sup>uλir- ‘scare, frighten’
  - c. bičzi rod- ‘explain’
  - d. buž(z)i AGR-oq- ‘believe’

<sup>18</sup> Here and below, SR stands for shifted reading, IR, for indexical reading.

<sup>19</sup> This list may not be exhaustive; it was established on the basis of narrative texts and elicitations, but we cannot exclude the possibility that other verbs may also permit indexical shift.

- e. eλ- ‘say’
- f. es- ‘tell’; heresi es- ‘lie’
- g. esir- ‘ask’
- h. harizi rod- ‘request, ask’
- i. kul er- ‘hope’
- j. λ’iräy AGR-oγ- ‘apologize’ (lit.: pull someone from above)
- k. λ’iräy AGR-oq- ‘be forgiven’ (lit.: from above become)
- l. λ’iri ris- ‘promise’ (lit.: take upon)
- m. pikru bod- ‘think’ (lit.: do thought)
- n. p<sup>a</sup>λanad- ‘brag, lie’
- o. rok’u roλ- ‘worry’ (lit.: heart hurts)
- p. izmu teλ- ‘allow, permit’ (lit.: give permission)
- q. roži teλ- ‘promise’ (lit.: give word)
- r. t’et’r- ‘read’
- s. ŋarza bod- ‘complain’ (lit.: make complaint)

Since we have already seen that verbs of speaking can introduce direct quotations (see (169a,b)), it is reasonable to imagine that indexical shift is simply a side effect of this phenomenon. In other words, it is possible to interpret the shifted interpretation of a sentence like (170) as simply a standard component of a direct quotation. This is similar to the way English *be like* introduces apparent indexical shift in the following sentence:

- (174) Last Saturday Ibrahim was like, “I am going to the movies tomorrow.” (DQ)<sup>20</sup>

Such direct quotations are certainly possible, especially when the matrix verb precedes the complement clause. In (170), however, the clause is verb-final. That in and of itself is not a strong enough argument against the direct-quotation interpretation (indeed, such an interpretation is still possible), but there are other reasons to reject it as well. First, on the direct-quotation interpretation, we would expect the adverbs of time such as ‘yesterday’ or ‘tomorrow’ to be interpreted within the direct quotation. Thus, in (175) ‘tomorrow’ should mean ‘last Sunday’ and should not refer to the day after the moment of the utterance. Yet the sentence below can describe Ibrahim’s, not the speaker’s plans, and still refer to the day after the time of the utterance, not the Sunday of last week. The direct-quotation reading is the only one where *yude* refers to the previous Sunday.

- (175) Di            yude            kino-me-ł-xor            Ø-ik'-ān-λin            eλ'I  
       1SG.ABS(.I)    tomorrow        movie-OS-CONT-VERS    I-go-FUT.DEF-QUOT    past  
       šamat-λ'o            eλi-s            irbahin-ä.  
       Saturday-SUPER.ESS    say-PST.WIT    Ibrahim-ERG  
       (i)     ‘Ibrahim said last Saturday that I was going to the movies tomorrow.’      (IR)  
       (ii)    ‘Ibrahim said last Saturday that he was going to the movies tomorrow.’    (SR)  
       (iii)   ‘Ibrahim said last Saturday, “I am going to the movies tomorrow.”’        (DQ)

---

<sup>20</sup> In English, several expressions serve as quotatives: *be like*, *be all*, *go* (see Buchstaller 2006).

The second consideration in support of Tsez indexical shift involves the distinction between de dicto ('what is said') and de re ("related to a particular thing") descriptions.

Quotations do not support de re construal, under which a noun phrase is interpreted as denoting a specific individual. Imagine that Ibrahim met Ali but does not know that Ali is actually the boss. The English sentence in (176) would then be inappropriate to describe Ibrahim's encounter, because the noun phrase *the boss* must be interpreted de dicto.

- (176) Ibrahim said, "I have spoken to the boss of the company."

But in Tsez, if the speaker wants to describe to a third party that Ibrahim has spoken to Ali, the equivalent of (176) is completely felicitous:<sup>21</sup>

- (177) [Di            h̥akim-qo        xabaryay-si-λin]        dä-q            eλi-s  
       1SG.ABS(.I)    boss-POSS.ESS talk-PST.WIT-QUOT    1SG-POSS.ESS say-pst.WIT  
       irbahin-ä.  
       Ibrahim-ERG  
       'Ibrahim told me that he had talked to Ali.' (lit.: I spoke to the boss)

Thus, the description 'the boss' in (177) is interpreted de re, despite the presence of the quotative marker on the embedded clause.

Finally, wh-words in genuine quotatives do not interact with the material of a higher clause. In the following English sentences, *what* in the quoted question does not take scope over the word *say*:

- (178) a. Ibrahim said, "What don't you understand?"  
       b. Did Ibrahim say, "What don't you understand?"

In Tsez, the corresponding sentence involves indexical shift and *šebi* 'what' takes scope over the *eλ*:

- (179) Irbahin-ä        [dä-r            šebe            r-iy-x-ānu-λin]  
       Ibrahim-ERG    1SG-LAT        what.ABS.IV    IV-know-PRS-NEG-QUOT  
       eλ-ä?  
       say-PST.WIT.INTERR  
       'What did Ibrahim say that I did not know?' (IR)  
       'What did Ibrahim<sub>i</sub> say that he<sub>i</sub> did not know?' (SR)

All these facts suggest that the function of *-λin* is twofold, as a complementizer introducing a finite embedded clause and as a genuine quotative marker. A similar functional ambiguity is observed in Tatar, where the respective quotative marker is ambiguous between a complementizer and an introducer of direct speech (Podobryaev 2014).

---

<sup>21</sup> See Deal (2012) for similar observations in Nez Perce.

In this section, we have identified  $-\lambda in$  as a dual-functional enclitic, we have established that Tsez allows indexical shift in finite embedded clauses, and we have determined the range of matrix predicates that accommodate such shift. The next section addresses the details of the shift itself.

### 6.2.2 Details of indexical shift

Let us revisit the sentence that we started this discussion with:

- (180) Irbahin-ä [di ḥayibiyaw yoł- $\lambda in$ ] e $\lambda i$ -x.  
 Ibrahim-ERG 1SG.ABS wrong/foolish be.PRS-QUOT say-PRS  
 ‘Ibrahim says that I was wrong.’ (IR)  
 ‘Ibrahim<sub>i</sub> says that he<sub>i</sub> was wrong.’ (SR)

We have already noted that temporal adverbials do not shift, cf. (175); locative phrases do not shift either. In (181) we find the adverb *elo*, which is potentially ambiguous between ‘here’ and ‘there’. Regardless of the interpretation of the sentence as indexical or shifted, this adverb still has the same interpretation.

- (181) [Elo dä-q q’ano k’onk’ā zow-n- $\lambda in$ ]  
 there 1SG-POSS.ESS two bicycle.ABS.III be.PST-PST.nWIT-QUOT  
 nesi-r bič’zi r-oq-no.  
 DEM.I-LAT understand IV-become-PST.nWIT  
 ‘He understood that I must have had two bicycles there/here.’  
 ‘He<sub>i</sub> understood that he<sub>i</sub> must have had two bicycles there/here.’

Only personal pronouns shift, regardless of their function in the embedded clause. We have seen examples of a shifted pronoun in the subject position; in (181), the shiftable pronoun encodes a temporary possessor, and in the next sentence it appears as the adnominal genitive:

- (182) [Dey uži ḥalaq’ Ø-oq-xo Ø-ik’i-x- $\lambda in$ ]  
 1SG.GEN1 boy.ABS.I skinny I-become-IPFV.CVB I-go-PRS-QUOT  
 neł-ä e $\lambda i$ -s.  
 DEM.nI-ERG say-PST.WIT  
 ‘She said that my son is getting skinnier and skinnier.’ (IR)  
 ‘She<sub>i</sub> said that her<sub>i</sub> son is getting skinnier and skinnier.’ (SR)

Indexical shift is equally possible for second person pronouns, for example:

- (183) Irbahin-ä zarema-qo-r [mi λ’ir-äy  
 Ibrahim-ERG Zarema-POSS-LAT 2SG.ABS(.II) above-ABL  
 y-oq-si- $\lambda in$ ] esi-s.  
 II-become-PST.WIT-QUOT tell-PST.WIT  
 ‘Ibrahim told Zarema that you are forgiven.’ (IR)  
 ‘Ibrahim told Zarema<sub>i</sub> that she<sub>i</sub> was forgiven.’ (SR)
- (184) [Debe-r r-oq-si- $\lambda in$ ] λ’ir-äy ža

2SG-LAT	nIPL-become-PST.WIT-QUOT	above-ABL	DEM.ABS(.II)
y-oy-no. <sup>22</sup>			
II-pull-PST.nWIT			
'(They) apologized to her for treating you badly.' (IR)			
'(They) apologized to her for treating her badly.' (SR)		(Isis rigli:15)	

Since Tsez freely allows the omission of argument (and adjunct) noun phrases, a question arises: is the same sentence ambiguous with a null pronoun? As (185) shows, it is not only ambiguous, but also has additional, unanticipated interpretations (the addressee of the utterance was wrong; a third party was wrong):

- (185) Irbahin-ä [pro fayibiyaw yoł-λin] eλi-x.  
     Ibrahim-ERG 1SG.ABS wrong/foolish be.PRS-QUOT say-PRS  
     'Ibrahim says that I was wrong.' (IR)  
     'Ibrahim says that you were wrong.' (IR)  
     'Ibrahim<sub>i</sub> says that he<sub>i</sub> was wrong.' (SR)  
     'Ibrahim<sub>i</sub> says that he<sub>j</sub>/she/they was/were wrong.' (SR)

If a finite clausal complement includes a first and a second person pronoun, these pronouns either do not shift, or have to shift together. In the following sentence, only two interpretations are possible:<sup>23</sup>

- (186) Irbahin-ä zarema-q-or [di dow-λ'o-r  
     Ibrahim-ERG Zarema-POSS-LAT 1SG.ABS(.I) 2SG-SUPER-LAT  
     bixzi Ø-oq-si-λin] eλi-s.  
     angry I-become-PST.WIT-QUOT say-PST.WIT  
     'Ibrahim told Zarema that I was angry with you.' (IR)  
     'Ibrahim<sub>i</sub> told Zarema<sub>k</sub> that he<sub>i</sub> was angry with her<sub>k</sub>.' (SR)  
     NOT: 'Ibrahim<sub>i</sub> told Zarema<sub>k</sub> that he<sub>i</sub> was angry with you.'  
     NOT: 'Ibrahim<sub>i</sub> told Zarema<sub>k</sub> that I was angry with her<sub>k</sub>.'

Likewise, if an embedded clause has two instances of the same pronoun, both have to be indexical or both have to shift:

- (187) [Dä-z eniw=babi-y-ä di becizi Ø-oy-x-λin]  
     1SG-GEN2 parents-ERG 1SG.ABS(.I) praise I-do-PRS-QUOT  
     Irbahin-ä eλi-s.  
     Ibrahim-ERG say-PST.WIT

<sup>22</sup> In the context of the fairy tale from which this sentence it is taken, it is unambiguously interpreted as shifted. The verb AGR-*oq-* 'become' is used in the embedded clause of an idiomatic reading; with a lative object, it means 'to be unpleasant/nasty to someone'.

<sup>23</sup> The embedded verb in (186) overtly marks gender agreement. If the speaker of that utterance is a woman, ambiguity does not arise and only the shifted interpretation is possible (the embedded verb would have to be marked for gender II to reference the female speaker).

'Ibrahim said that my parents are praising me.' (IR)

'Ibrahim<sub>i</sub> said that his<sub>i</sub> parents are praising him<sub>i</sub>.' (SR)

NOT: 'Ibrahim<sub>i</sub> said that my parents are praising him<sub>i</sub>.'

NOT 'Ibrahim<sub>i</sub> said that his<sub>i</sub> parents are praising me.'

These shift-together facts are consistent with observations on indexical shift in other languages, where the same constraint applies (see Anand and Nevins 2006 for Zazaki; Podobryaev 2014 for Tatar). The existence of this constraint suggests that the mechanism that is responsible for indexical shift takes scope over the entire embedded clause, not just a particular pronoun.

The data on plural pronouns are much less clear; Tsez does not have inclusive/exclusive distinctions in the plural, and indexical shift is not as apparent. When a plural personal pronoun is used, there is often a possibility that the attitude holder is included in the relevant group. However, in contexts where the contrast is presented in such a way that the attitude holder and the referents of the plural pronoun are well differentiated, both readings are possible, just like in the singular:

- (188) [El-ä q'una-n yedu hält'i b-oy-s-λin]  
       1PL-ERG two-COLL DEM work.ABS.III III-do-PST.WIT-QUOT  
       zarema-λ'o-r hakim-qo-r eλi-s irbahin-ä.  
       Zarema-SUPER-LAT boss-POSS-LAT say-PST.WIT Ibrahim-ERG  
       'Ibrahim<sub>i</sub> told the boss<sub>j</sub> about Zarema<sub>k</sub> that the two of them<sub>i+k</sub> had done that work.'
- (189) [Elu-s iħu telersi yoł-λin] λirba-z-ä elu-qo-r  
       1PL-GEN1 river.ABS.III deep be.PRS-QUOT guest-OS.PL-ERG 1PL-POSS-LAT  
       bičzi r-oy-xosi zow-s.  
       explain IV-do-PRS.PTCP AUX.PST-PST.WIT  
       'The guests were explaining to us that our river is deep.' (IR)  
       'The guests<sub>i</sub> were explaining to us that their<sub>i</sub> river is deep.' (SR)

Of course, sentences of the sort discussed here are not always ambiguous, and it takes serious elicitation work to explore the possibilities present in Tsez. In addition to the general context, which comes to the rescue when ambiguities between indexical and shifted interpretations arise, two disambiguating strategies deserve mention here: agreement and the use of the focus particle *-tow*.

If the predicate of the embedded clause marks agreement, and the speaker and attitude holder (or their respective addressees) differ in gender, gender distinctions help disambiguate between indexical and shifted readings. We already observed this distinction in the context of example (186). Let us now revisit it. In (190a), which is a repetition of (186), the embedded verb shows gender I agreement. If the speaker of that utterance is a man, the sentence is ambiguous, but if the speaker is a woman, she must use (190b), with gender II agreement, to encode the indexical reading.

- (190) a. Irbahin-ä zarema-q-or [di dow-λ'o-r  
       Ibrahim-ERG Zarema-POSS-LAT 1SG.ABS(.I) 2SG-SUPER-LAT  
       bixzi Ø-oq-si-λin] eλi-s.

- angry I-become-PST.WIT-QUOT say-PST.WIT  
 ‘Ibrahim told Zarema that I (a man speaking) was angry with you.’ (IR)  
 ‘Ibrahim<sub>i</sub> told Zarema<sub>k</sub> that he<sub>i</sub> was angry with her<sub>k</sub>.’ (SR)
- b. Irbahin-ä zarema-q-or [di dow-λ'o-r  
 Ibrahim-ERG Zarema-POSS-LAT 1SG.ABS(.I) 2SG-SUPER-LAT  
 bixzi y-oq-si-λin] eλi-s.  
 angry II-become-PST.WIT-QUOT say-PST.WIT  
 ‘Ibrahim told Zarema that I (a woman speaking) was angry with you.’ (IR)  
 ‘Ibrahim<sub>i</sub> told Zarema<sub>k</sub> that he<sub>i</sub> was angry with her<sub>k</sub>.’ (SR)

The disambiguating role of agreement is certainly limited, both by contextual factors (who is speaking and about whom) and by the range of verbs that actually mark agreement. The use of the focus enclitic *-tow* is a more robust indicator that allows Tsez speakers to distinguish the two readings. The role of *-tow* is categorical; it blocks the indexical interpretation:

- (191) If a potentially ambiguous pronoun in a finite complement clause is marked with the focus enclitic *-tow*, only the shifted interpretation is possible.

Compare (192a) and (192b) for first person and (193a) and (193b) for second person:

- (192) a. Nes-ä [dä-q q'anoquno λeb yoł-λin]  
 DEM.I-ERG 1SG-POSS.ESS forty year.ABS.III be.PRS-QUOT  
 eλi-s.  
 say-PST.WIT  
 ‘He said that I was 40 years old.’ (IR)  
 ‘He<sub>i</sub> said that he<sub>i</sub> was 40 years old.’ (SR)
- b. Nes-ä [dä-q-tow q'anoquno λeb yoł-λin]  
 DEM.I-ERG 1SG-POSS.ESS-FOC forty year.ABS.III be.PRS-QUOT  
 eλi-s.  
 say-PST.WIT  
 ‘He<sub>i</sub> said that he<sub>i</sub> was 40 years old.’ (SR)  
 NOT: ‘He<sub>i</sub> said that I was 40 years old.’ (IR)
- (193) a. Di Sult'an-e-r [dow-de sadaq šahar-y-ā-yor  
 1SG.ERG Sultan-OS-LAT 2SG-APUD.ESS with city-OS-IN-VERS  
 Ø-ik'-ān-λin] roži teλ-si.  
 I-go-FUT.DEF-QUOT word.ABS.IV give-PST.WIT  
 ‘I (man speaking) promised Sultan to go to the city with you.’ (IR)  
 ‘I (man speaking) promised Sultan<sub>i</sub> to go to the city with him<sub>i</sub>.’ (SR)
- b. Di Sult'an-e-r [dow-de-tow sadaq šahar-y-ā-yor  
 1SG.ERG Sultan-OS-LAT 2SG-APUD.ESS-FOC with city-OS-IN-VERS  
 Ø-ik'-ān-λin] roži teλ-si.  
 I-go-FUT.DEF-QUOT word.ABS.IV give-PST.WIT  
 ‘I (man speaking) promised Sultan<sub>i</sub> to go to the city with him<sub>i</sub>.’ (SR)  
 NOT: ‘I promised Sultan to go to the city with you.’ (IR)

When an embedded clause includes more than one pronoun that could potentially undergo

indexical shift, the enclitic can appear on all of them or on just one of them, but it usually appears on the pronoun that is structurally more prominent. Compare the well-accepted (194a,b) and the more marginal, albeit not impossible, (194c):

- (194) a. Irbahin-ä Zarema-q-or [di-tow  
           Ibrahim-ERG Zarema-POSS-LAT 1SG.ABS(.I)-FOC  
           dow-λ'o-r-tow bixzi Ø-oq-si-λin] eλi-s.  
           2SG-SUPER-LA-FOC angry     I-become-PST.WIT-QUOT say-PST.WIT  
           b. Irbahin-ä Zarema-q-or [di-tow dow-λ'o-r  
           Ibrahim-ERG Zarema-POSS-LAT 1SG.ABS(.I)-FOC 2SG-SUPER-LAT  
           bixzi Ø-oq-si-λin] eλi-s.  
           angry     I-become-PST.WIT-QUOT say-PST.WIT  
           c. ?Irbahin-ä Zarema-q-or [di dow-λ'o-r-tow  
           Ibrahim-ERG Zarema-POSS-LAT 1SG.ABS(.I) 2SG-SUPER-LAT-FOC  
           bixzi Ø-oq-si-λin] eλi-s.  
           angry     I-become-PST.WIT-QUOT say-PST.WIT  
           'Ibrahim<sub>i</sub> told Zarema<sub>k</sub> that he<sub>i</sub> was angry with her<sub>k</sub>.' (SR)

The enclitic *-tow* is not found only under indexical shift; we also see it regularly deployed in the marking of reflexive or reciprocal readings on regular pronouns or demonstratives (see CH.YY [BINDING]) and more generally, in contexts where a normally expected interpretation has to be rejected. The role of *-tow* under indexical shift is consistent with its general property of marking a reversal of expectations. A standard expectation is that the pronouns in an embedded finite clause will continue pointing to the same referents as their counterparts in the matrix clause. The appearance of *-tow* signals that the relevant pronouns have to be disjoint in reference from the matrix arguments.

An alternative to the use of the enclitic is the placement of emphatic pitch on the pronoun that undergoes indexical shift. Normally, pronouns are de-accented, so pitch prominence can be perceived as another way of indicating that normal expectations are not met. Pitch is often associated with focus; the fact that it can be used in lieu of *-tow* may follow from this association. However, we have not been able to investigate pitch placement instrumentally, so this observation requires further verification.

So far we have concentrated on pronouns, which limit indexical shift to first and second person pronouns. To indicate third persons, Tsez uses only demonstratives, and embedded demonstratives can never refer to utterance speakers and their addressees. On the other hand, the attitude holder and his/her addressee *can* be expressed by demonstratives in finite embedded clauses. Compare the now familiar example with a demonstrative in place of the first person pronoun:

- (195) Irbahin-ä [ža fayibiyaw yoł-λin] eλi-x.  
           Ibrahim-ERG DEM.ABS wrong/foolish be.PRS-QUOT say-PRS  
           'Ibrahim<sub>i</sub> says that he<sub>i/j</sub> was wrong.'

Example (195) is ambiguous: *ža* may refer to the attitude holder or to yet another third person. Because it is impossible to tell whether an omitted argument was represented by a pronoun or a demonstrative, we find the same type of ambiguity in sentences with argument drop; consider the multiply ambiguous (185) above.

The enclitic *-tow* can also appear in contexts like the one illustrated in (195). Its addition in such sentences makes coreference with the attitude-holder very unlikely or even impossible (judgments vary depending on the lexical verb and on the context). For example:

- (196) Irbahin-ä Zarema-q-or [ža-tow neļo-λ'o-r  
 Ibrahim-ERG Zarema-POSS-LAT DEM.ABS-FOC DEM.nI-SUPER-LAT  
 bixzi Ø-oq-si-λin] eλi-s.  
 angry i-become-PST.WIT-QUOT say-PST.WIT  
 'Ibrahim<sub>i</sub> told Zarema<sub>k</sub> that he<sub>m/\*/?i</sub> was angry with her<sub>k/n</sub>.'

Additionally, subject expressions are often privileged in maintaining coreference across clauses (e.g., van Valin and La Polla 1997), and such coreference in (195) may fall within normal expectations. If so, the use of the focus particle reverses this expectation, hence the unlikely coreference between *Irbahinä* and *ža-tow*. But we also know that clausal constituents other than subjects are less likely to maintain coreference across clause. So if the explanation for (196) is on the right track, we may see a different pattern when *-tow* is added to a lower constituent. Indeed, in (197), where focus appears on the super-lative complement, the judgments regarding coreference between *Zarema* and *neļoλ'or* are very similar to those for (196).

- (197) Irbahin-ä zarema-q-or [ža neļo-λ'o-r-tow  
 Ibrahim-ERG Zarema-POSS-LAT DEM.ABS-FOC DEM.nI-SUPER-LAT-FOC  
 bixzi Ø-oq-si-λin] eλi-s.  
 angry i-become-PST.WIT-QUOT say-PST.WIT  
 'Ibrahim<sub>i</sub> told Zarema<sub>k</sub> that he<sub>i/m</sub> was angry with her<sub>k/n</sub>'

Generally, judgments on the coreference between noun phrases and demonstratives are more flexible than the corresponding judgments on coreference among pronouns and reference between noun phrases (denoting attitude holders and their addressees) and pronouns.

Indexical shift is very common in texts and in spontaneous discourse. Occasionally, when several clausal complements occur one after another, it is possible to see an embedding with demonstratives, where no possibility for shifting exists, followed by another embedded complement with first or second pronoun, which does allow for indexical shift. Here is a typical example from a text:

- |  |                     |
|--|---------------------|
| (198) Tawad-ä harizi r-odi-n             | Ražbadin-qo         |
| Tawadi-ERG request.ABS.IV IV-do-PST.nWIT | Rajbaddin-POSS.ESS  |
| [nesi-s-no halmay-łi-s-no                | siršay <sup>a</sup> |
| DEM.I-GEN1-and friend-NMLZ-GEN1-and      | horses.ABS.nIPL     |
| r-od-o-λin],                             | hadur               |
| nIPL-do-IMPER-QUOT                       | ready               |

[žedu	howži-tow	xizo-q’im-e-r	b-uti-n	b-ik’-a
1PL.ABS.IPL	now-FOC	back-OS-LAT	IPL-turn-PFV.CVB	IPL-go-INF
b-āy-x-λin].				
IPL-must-PRS-QUOT				
‘Tawadi <sub>i</sub> asked Rajbaddin <sub>j</sub> to get his <sub>i</sub> and the friends <sub>k</sub> ’ horses ready; we <sub>i+j+k</sub> must go back right away.’ (Ražbadinno Tawadin:85)				

The first embedded clause (*nesisno halmaylisno siršay'a hadur rodožin*) includes a demonstrative, which is interpreted as coreferential with the subject of the main clause (Tawadi); this is consistent with the generalizations outlined above. The addressee is also male, so there is a potential for ambiguity, and the absence of *-tow* signals coreference with the subject, not the addressee. The embedded clause is closed off by *-λin*. In the next embedded clause, presumably embedded under the presupposed verb *ežin* ‘said’, we find the first person pronoun *žedu*, which is shifted; its index is associated with the attitude holder and his referential group, not the speaker and hearer of the utterance. Examples like this indicate that indexical shift is clause-bound and does not spread over the entire discourse. However, the order of embedded clauses that places the non-shifted clause before the shifted clause is strongly preferred over the opposite order: shift—no shift.

## Relative clauses

Tsez has several types of relative clauses: participial relatives, masdar/infinitival clauses, and free relatives. If a relative clause has an external head noun, that head noun always follows the relative clause (see CH. YY [Noun phrases] for details). For the relative order of relative clauses and other modifiers in the noun phrase, see the chapter on noun phrase structure as well.

### 1 Participial relative clauses

#### 1.1 Relativization of main clause constituents

Participial relatives are the most common type of relative clause in Tsez. The verb of the relative clause can appear in two participial forms: past participle and present participle. These participles must appear in the final position inside the relative clause. In terms of morphology, the past participle behaves exactly like an adjective, and in particular it does not show case concord based on the case of its head noun. By contrast, the internal structure of the present-participial form corresponds to that of the finite present tense, and is followed by the attributive morpheme *-si*. This morpheme differs depending on the case of the head noun: direct (*-si*) appears when the head noun is absolute, and oblique (*-zo*) appears when the head noun is in any other form. See CH.YY[MORPH] for the details of participle formation.<sup>1</sup> Compare (1a), (1b), where the form of the participle remains the same regardless of the case in the head noun, versus (2a),(2b), where the participle's ending changes depending on the absolute/non-absolute case of the head noun. The difference between the participial forms in (1) and (2) suggests that Tsez participles do not form a coherent class (see Comrie 2002 for further discussion). This conclusion is further underscored by the fact that past participles cannot inflect for mood whereas present participles can; this is clear from the appearance of the latter in the optative (see CH. YY[Predicate phrase]). However, from the standpoint of relative clause formation, the overall behavior of present and past participles is uniform.

- |  |                            |
|--|----------------------------|
| (1) a. [el-ä r-ädi-ru]<br>1PL-ERG IV-do-PST.PTCP<br>'the chair that we made'                 | q'uri<br>chair.ABS.IV      |
| b. [el-ä r-ädi-ru]<br>1PL-ERG IV-do-PST.PTCP<br>'on the chair that we made'                  | q'uri-λ<br>chair-SUPER.ESS |
| (2) a. [el-ä r-oy-xo-si]<br>1PL-ERG IV-do-PRS-ATTR<br>'the chair that we make/are making'    | q'uri<br>chair.ABS.IV      |
| c. [el-ä r-oy-xo-zo]<br>1PL-ERG IV-do-PRS-ATTR.OBL<br>'on the chair that we make/are making' | q'uri-λ<br>chair-SUPER.ESS |

---

<sup>1</sup> A more accurate morphemic analysis and gloss for the present participle would be *-xo-si* –PRS-ATTR, as shown in (2). For the purposes of this chapter, however, we will be adopting the participial gloss as a shorthand.

The participial predicate of a relative clause can appear with the definite suffix *-ni*, as shown for the participle *räc'ru* in the following example:

- (3) [Yiła-s posu r-äc'-ru]-ni boc'i-n zey-bi-n  
 DEM.nI-GEN1 cattle.ABS.IV IV-eat.TR-PST.PTCP-DEF wolf.ABS.III-and bear-ABS.PL.nIPL  
 r-esu-n.  
 nIPL-see-PST.nWIT  
 '(She) saw the wolf and the bears that had eaten her cattle.' (Isis rigli:14)

Tsez also has deverbal adjectives in *-li*, which bear the past tense interpretation. They resemble participles in that they retain the case frame of the verb they are derived from. For instance, the verb *teλ-* ‘give’ takes the ergative agent, absolute patient and lative or possessive recipient. The adjectival participle *teλali* ‘given’ has the same case frame:

- (4) [nesi žek'-ō teλ-a-li-ni] heneš  
 DEM.I person-ERG give-INF-PTCP-DEF apple.ABS.III  
 ‘the apple given by that man’ (Imnajšvili 1963: 216)

The forms in *-li* are very rare, probably obsolete, and we will not discuss them below.

All the examples presented so far happen to be object relatives. However, Tsez relativization appears to be ubiquitous. All Tsez constituents can be relativized with a participial relative, including some presupposed but unexpressed adjuncts. We illustrate the details of participial relative clause formation with the baseline sentence in (5).

- (5) Už-ää kayat kid-be-r teλ-si/teλ-xo.  
 boy-ERG letter.ABS.II girl-OS-LAT give-PST.WIT/give-PRS  
 ‘The boy gave/gives a letter to the girl.’
- (6) *subject relative clause*  
 [kayat kid-be-r tāλ-ru/teλ-xosi] uži  
 letter.ABS.II girl-OS-LAT give-PST.PTCP/give-PRS.PTCP boy.ABS.I  
 ‘the boy that gave/gives a letter to the girl’
- (7) *object relative clause*  
 [už-ää kid-be-r tāλ-ru/teλ-xosi] kayat  
 boy-ERG girl-OS-LAT give-PST.PTCP/give-PRS.PTCP letter.ABS.II  
 ‘the letter that the boy gave/gives to the girl’
- (8) *recipient relative clause*  
 [už-ää kayat tāλ-ru/teλ-xosi] kid  
 boy-ERG letter.ABS.II give-PST.PTCP/give-PRS.PTCP girl.ABS.II  
 ‘the girl to whom the boy gave/gives the letter’
- (9) *temporal adjunct relative clause*  
 [už-ää kayat kid-be-r tāλ-ru/teλ-xosi] sařat  
 boy-ERG letter.ABS.II girl-OS-LAT give-PST.PTCP/give-PRS.PTCP hour.ABS.III  
 ‘the hour at which the boy gave/gives the letter to the girl’

## (10) locative adjunct relative clause

[už-ä	kayat	kid-be-r	tāλ-ru/teλ-xosi]	otaxi
boy-ERG	letter.ABS.II	girl-OS-LAT	give-PST.PTCP/give-PRS.PTCP	room.ABS.IV
'the room where the boy gave/gives the letter to the girl'				

The next set of examples shows that it is possible to relativize an instrument:

- (11) Už-ä    ‘o-no-d    ažo    y-eč’-si.  
           boy-ERG axe-OS-INS    tree.ABS.II II-cut-PST.WIT  
           'The boy cut the tree with an axe.'
- (12) [už-ä    ažo    y-āč’-ru]    ‘o  
           boy-ERG tree.ABS.II    II-cut-PST.WIT    axe.ABS.IV  
           'the axe that the boy cut the tree with'

Scene-setting expressions in existential clauses such as (13) and genitives of external possession in possessive clauses such as (15) also relativize freely. Compare the following examples:

- (13) Nesi-λ'               q’wariļi               zow-s.  
           DEM.I-SUPER.ESS    sadness.ABS.IV    be.PST-PST.WIT  
           'There was sadness about him.' (lit.: on him)
- (14) [nesi-λ']               zäw-ru]               q’wariļi  
           DEM.I-SUPER.ESS    be.PST-PST.PTCP    sadness.ABS.IV  
           'the sadness that there was about him'
- (15) Kid-be-s               mesed-yo-s    nak’ila               yoł.  
           girl-OS-GEN1 gold-OS-GEN1 little.finger.ABS.III be.PRS  
           'The girl has a golden little finger.' (lit.: a little finger of gold)
- (16) [mesed-yo-s    nak’ila               yäł-ru]-ni               kid  
           gold-OS-GEN1 little.finger.ABS.III    be.PRS-PST.PTCP-DEF girl.ABS.II  
           'the girl that has a golden little finger' (Allahes ašuni:20)

There is no overt nominal reference to the head noun within the relative clause, and resumptive forms (such as demonstratives) are impossible inside the relative clause. Compare the valid instrumental relative in (12) with its unacceptable counterpart in (17). This comparison confirms that participial relative clauses in Tsez are formed using the gap strategy. The absence of resumption will be important when we compare these relative clauses to some other types below.

- (17) \*[už-ä    neļo-d/neļo-d-tow               ažo    y-āč’-ru]    ‘o  
           boy-ERG DEM.nI-INS/DEM.nI-INS-FOC    tree.ABS.II    II-cut-PST.WIT    axe.ABS.IV  
           ('the axe that the boy cut the tree with it')

As examples (6) through (10), (12), (14), (16), and (18) show, all other noun phrases in the relative clause retain the same form they have in a finite clause; based on this observation, we can conclude that there is no change in the relative clause construction depending on the function of the head noun within the relative clause.

The participial predicate agrees with the absolute noun phrase inside the relative clause, as shown in (1), (2), (3), and (12) above. If the relativized noun phrase is in the absolute position inside the relative clause, the participle agrees with that head noun, as in example (18a) below, which may create an impression that the participle agrees with the head noun. However, as (18b) shows, the function of the head noun in the matrix clause is irrelevant; the participle only cares about the absolute inside the relative clause.

- (18) a. [už-ä      kid-be-qo-r      y-egä-ru/y-egir-xosi]                        kayat  
           boy-ERG    girl-OS-POSS-LAT    II-send-PST.PTCP/II-send-PRS.PTCP    letter.ABS.II  
           'the letter that the boy sent/sends to the girl'  
   b. [už-ä      kid-be-qo-r      y-egä-ru/y-egir-xosi]                        kayat-yo-ł  
           boy-ERG    girl-OS-POSS-LAT    II-send-PST.PTCP/II-send-PRS.PTCP    letter-OS-CONT.ESS  
           'in the letter that the boy sent/sends to the girl'

Despite the freedom of relativization in Tsez, relativization of the dependent adnominal genitive, in which the head noun functions as possessor, is either rejected by native speakers or considered marginal, as in (20):

- (19) a. Uži-s      γʷay      b-oxi-n      b-ik'i-s.  
           boy-GEN1 dog.ABS.III    III-run-PFV.CVB    III-go-PST.WIT  
           'The boy's dog has run away.' (lit.: went running)  
   b. Uži-z      γʷay-ä      di      han-si.  
           boy-GEN2 dog-ERG    1SG.ABS    bite-PST.WIT  
           'The boy's dog has bit me.'  
(20) a. \*[γʷay      b-oxi-n      b-äk'i-ru]      uži  
           dog.ABS.III    III-run-PFV.CVB    III-go-PST.PTCP    boy.ABS.I  
           ('the boy whose dog has run away')  
   b. ??[γʷay-ä      di      han-ru ]      uži  
           dog-ERG    1SG.ABS    bite-PST.PTCP    boy.ABS.I  
           ('the boy whose dog bit me')

We speculate, however, that this is not the result of a specific restriction against relativizing of genitives, but rather the result of pragmatic factors. First, there are nearly always other, more natural ways of constructing such relative clauses. The three main compensatory strategies are as follows: (i) expressing the adnominal genitive as the external possessor and relativizing the external possessor; (ii) using a relative clause where a resumptive demonstrative is co-indexed with the head noun, and (iii) attaching a nominalized relative clause as the genitive modifier of the head noun.

The following example illustrates compensatory strategy (i); the baseline sentence is shown in (21a), and the relative clause, with the external possessor as the head noun, in (21b). External possessors relativize freely, so this strategy allows speakers to circumvent some of the restrictions on the relativization of adnominal possessors.

- (21) a. Yedu žek'u-s      mec-yo-za-λ'-ay-gon                        r-exora-t'a  
           DEM    person-GEN1    arm-OS-OS.PL-SUPER-ABL-CONTR.TOP    nIPL-long-DISTR

- |   |                 |              |
|---|-----------------|--------------|
| kiki-bi   | yoł.            |              |
| breast-PL.ABS.nIPL  | be.PRS          |              |
| 'This man has breasts longer than his arms.'                          |                 |              |
| b. [mec-yo-za-λ'-ay-gon   | r-exora-t'a     |              |
| arm-OS-OS.PL-SUPER-ABL-CONTR.TOP                                      | nIPL-long-DISTR |              |
| kiki-bi   | yoł-äsi]        | žek'u        |
| breast-PL.ABS.nIPL  | be-RES.PTCP     | person.ABS.I |
| 'the man whose breasts are longer than his arms' (Beqes ʕUneyzat:186) |                 |              |

A relative clause with a resumptive demonstrative co-indexed with the head noun (compensatory strategy (ii)) is shown in the pair of examples below:<sup>2</sup>

- (22) a. [nesi-s-tow γ<sup>w</sup>ay b-oxi-n b-äk'i-ru] uži  
DEM.I-GEN1-FOC dog.ABS.III III-run-PFV.CVB III-go-PST.PTCP boy.ABS.I  
‘the boy<sub>i</sub> such that his<sub>i</sub> dog has run away’

b. [nesi-z-tow γ<sup>w</sup>ay-ä di häñ-ru] uži  
DEM.I-GEN2-FOC dog-ERG 1SG.ABS bite-PST.PTCP boy.ABS.I  
‘the boy<sub>i</sub> such that his<sub>i</sub> dog bit me’

If a nominalized relative clause appears as the genitive modifier of the head noun (compensatory strategy (iii)), the head noun is also co-indexed with a resumptive demonstrative in the nominalization. Thus:

- (23) a. [nesi-s-tow γ<sup>w</sup>ay b-oxi-n b-äk’i-ru-li]-s  
DEM.I-GEN1-FOC dog.ABS.III III-run-PFV.CVB III-go-PST.PTCP-NMLZ-GEN1  
uži  
boy.ABS.I  
‘the boy whose dog has run away’ (lit.: the boy of his dog running away)

b. [nesi-z-tow γ<sup>w</sup>ay-ä di hǟn-ru-li]-s uži  
DEM.I-GEN2-FOC dog-ERG 1SG.ABS bite-PST.PTCP-NMLZ-GEN1 boy.ABS.I  
‘the boy whose dog bit me’ (lit.: the boy of his own dog biting me)

These compensatory strategies aside, the fact that the relative clause contains no reference to the head noun means that the hearer must use other criteria, such as the argument structure or frame (in the sense of Fillmore 1982) of the verb, in order to reconstruct the relation between the head noun and the rest of the relative clause; since genitives are not part of the argument structure or frame, they cannot be readily retrieved in this way. And, in fact, when the relationship between the relativized possessor and the noun phrase in the relative clause is transparent, as it is in the case of kinship or whole-part relations, the respective relative clause becomes much more acceptable. Compare the next example pairs (see also Comrie and Polinsky 1999):

- (24) a. Uži-s babiw Ø-exu-s.  
boy-GEN1 father.ABS.I I-die-PST.WIT

<sup>2</sup> We will discuss more examples of this kind at the end of section 1.1.

- ‘The boy’s father died.’
- (25) b. [babiw            Ø-äxu-ru]        uži  
           father.ABS.I     I-die-PST.PTCP boy.ABS.I  
           ‘the boy whose father died’
- a. Kid-be-s            xot’o            b-oλ-xo.  
           girl-OS-GEN1    foot.ABS.III    III-hurt-PRS  
           ‘The girl’s foot hurts.’
- b. [xot’o            b-oλ-xosi]        kid  
           foot.ABS.III    III-hurt-PRS.PTCP      girl.ABS.II  
           ‘the girl whose foot hurts’

Tsez does not have possessor raising or external possessor constructions of the type ‘the father died on the boy’ or ‘the foot is hurting the girl’, so these constructions cannot be a plausible source for (24b) and (25b).

Relative clauses where the head noun functions as the standard of comparison, as in (26b), are impossible. We hypothesize that this restriction is due to the fact that the standard appears in a particular spatial form; once relativized, it cannot retain this form, and the head noun simply cannot be interpreted in relation to the relative clause:

- (26) a. Pat’i            Zarema-λ’āy            q’üun-a            l’eb-ā  
           Fatima.ABS.II    Zarema-SUPER-ABL    two-OBL          year-IN.ESS  
           y-<sup>s</sup>eže            (yoł).  
           II-old            be.PRS  
           ‘Fatima is two years older than Zarema.’
- b. \*[Pat’i            q’üun-a            l’eb-ā            y-<sup>s</sup>eže    yäl-ru]        kid  
           Fatima.ABS        two-OBL            year-IN.ESS    II-old    be.PST.PTCP      girl.ABS.II  
           (‘the girl that Fatima is two years older than’)

In principle, relativization of the nouns that occur in (one of the many) spatial forms is possible. Consider the following sentence:

- (27) Ažo-m-λ’o        cey            b-ič-ix.  
           tree-OS-SUPER.ESS eagle.ABS.III III-stay-PRS  
           ‘A/The eagle is on the tree.’

It is possible to relativize ‘tree’ in (27) to give (28), but the idea that the eagle is specifically on the tree, rather than *at* or *near* the tree, is lost, because of the failure of Tsez relative clauses to encode explicitly the role of the referent of the head noun in the relative clause:

- (28) [cey            b-äči-ru]        ažo  
           eagle.ABS.III    III-stay-PST.PTCP      tree.ABS.II  
           ‘the tree where a/the eagle is’

Tsez has another way of encoding the notion of ‘on’, namely by using the postposition λ’iri ‘above’, which combines with a preceding noun in the super-essive case, as in (29):

- (29) Ažo-m-λ'o λ'iri cey b-ič-ix.  
 tree-OS-SUPER.ESS above eagle.ABS.III III-stay-PRS  
 'A/The eagle is up on the tree.'

One can form a relative clause as in (30):

- (30) [cey λ'iri b-äči-ru] ažo  
 eagle.ABS.III above III-stay-PST.PTCP tree.ABS.II  
 'the tree up on which a/the eagle is'

At least at first sight, this clause appears to involve relativization of the object of the postposition of (29), together with postposition stranding. However, as we discussed in CH. YY [Adverbial phrase], in addition to its role as a postposition, as in (29), *λ'iri* (and likewise other local postpositions) can also function as an adverbial, as in the examples of (31a, b), which illustrate different positions of the adverbial in the clause:

- (31) a. λ'iri cey b-iči-x.  
 above eagle.ABS.III III-stay-PST  
 b. cey λ'iri b-iči-x.  
 eagle.ABS.III above III-stay-PST  
 'A/The eagle is above.'

This being the case, it is possible to analyze *λ'iri* in (30) not as a stranded postposition, but rather as an adverb. The interpretation is thus more akin to 'the tree such that the eagle is above', with the relation between the tree and the adverb established in terms of semantic well-formedness and pragmatic plausibility. Indeed, one might even question whether *λ'iri* is a postposition in (29), although our current understanding of the structure of (29) suggests that it is. For instance, it is not possible to put *λ'iri* anywhere other than immediately after *ažomλ'o* and retain the intended meaning, as shown by (32) (compare it with the acceptable (29)):

- (32) \*λ'iri ažo-m-λ'o cey b-ič-ix.  
 above tree-OS-SUPER.ESS eagle.ABS.III III-stay-PST  
 ('A/The eagle is on the tree.')

We have already mentioned the possibility of relative clauses where the head noun, corresponding to an adnominal genitive inside a noun phrase within the relative clause, is represented by a resumptive demonstrative—consider examples (22a,b) above. Such relativization of genitives seems to be quite common, and it is available to different types of genitives, including the genitive of possessor, the whole-part genitive (leg of a chair; below), and the genitive of property (color of paint; below):

- (33) [Neļo-s-tow ūλ' r-äči-ru] beļay  
 DEM.nI-GEN1-FOC handle.ABS.IV IV-break-PST.PTCP dagger.ABS.IV  
 ec'no-si zow-s.  
 new-ATTR be.PST-PST.WIT

- 'The dagger whose handle broke was new.'
- (34) [Debe-r neło-s-tow λ'er b-ät'i-ru] lak  
 2SG-LAT DEM.nI-GEN1-FOC color.ABS.III III-like-PST.PTCP paint.ABS.III  
 magazin-y-ā teλ-xo.  
 store-OS-IN.ESS give-PRS  
 'The (wall) paint whose color you like (lit.: that you like its color) is on sale at the store.'

However, genitives in measure phrases (see CH. YY [Noun phrase], section 3.7.3) cannot be relativized even with such resumption. The following relative clause is ungrammatical:

- (35) \*[di neło-s-tow t'akan y-äsi-ru] ša  
 1SG.ERG DEM.nI-GEN1-FOC glass.ABS.II II-take-PST.PTCP wine.ABS.III  
 ceq'iла yoł.  
 sour be.PRS  
 ('the wine that I bought a glass of is sour')

A similar restriction against the relativization of genitives in measure phrases is observed in Bagwali, although in that language, non-measure genitives relativize without resumption in the relative clause (Kibrik 2001: 498-99).

## 1.2 Relativization of constituents inside embedded clauses

We have so far discussed the accessibility of main clause constituents to relativization, and we now turn to the relativization of constituents that appear in embedded clausal complements. These are instances where a relative clause includes a clausal complement in which the gap plays a role, as in the English *the movie [that Mary believes [John likes \_\_ ]]* or *the city [that John decided [to visit \_\_ next summer]]*.

Relativization of constituents inside infinitival or masdar clauses proceeds in the same way as relativization of main clause constituents. Compare:

- (36) a. Boc'-ä [keč' q'aλ-a] baybik b-odi-n.  
 wolf-ERG song.ABS.III shout-INF beginning.ABS.III III-do-PST.nWIT  
 'The wolf began to sing a song.' (Didur ſomoyä boc'a k'irik'no:20)  
 b. [boc'-ä [q'aλ-a] baybik b-äy-ru] keč'  
 wolf-ERG sing-INF beginning.ABS.III III-do-PST.PTCP song.ABS.III  
 'the song that the wolf began to sing'
- (37) a. Dä-r [čirah b-it'r-a] šuλ'i-s.  
 me-LAT light.ABS.III III-extinguish-INF forget-PST.WIT  
 'I forgot to turn off (extinguish) the light.'  
 b. [dä-r [b-it'r-a] šuλ'i-ru] čirah  
 me-LAT III-extinguish-INF forget-PST.PTCP light.ABS.III  
 'the light that I forgot to turn off'
- (38) a. [Mi-n y-ex-a] zow-s.  
 2SG.ABS(.II)-and II-die-INF be.PST-PST.WIT  
 'And you had been meant to die.' (Lux di yik'a yāy?:34)  
 b. [[y-ex-a] zäw-ru] kid

- II-die-INF be.PST-PST.PTCP girl.ABS.II  
 ‘the girl that was meant to die’

Likewise, constituents inside nominalized embedded clauses can undergo relativization. For example, (39b) relativizes the object and (39c), the subject of the embedded clause shown in (39a). Such clauses can show long-distance agreement (see CH. YY [Agreement]); in (39), long-distance agreement is shown alternating with properly local agreement. Relativization takes place regardless of the agreement on the embedding verb:

- (39) a. [Neł-ä micxir b-ok'ek'-xosi yäł-ru-li]  
 DEM.nI-ERG money.ABS.III III-steal-PRS.PTCP be.PRS-PST.PTCP-NMLZ  
 xan-e-r b-iy-n/r-iy-n  
 king-OS-LAT III-know-PST.nWIT/IV-know-PST.nWIT  
 ‘The king knew that she was stealing the money.’
- b. [[neł-ä b-ok'ek'-xosi yäł-ru-li] xan-e-r  
 DEM.nI-ERG III-steal-PRS.PTCP be.PRS-PST.PTCP-NMLZ king-OS-LAT  
 b-äy-ru/r-äy-ru] micxir  
 III-know-PST.PTCP/IV-know-PST.PTCP money.ABS.III  
 ‘the money that the king knew she was stealing’
- c. [[micxir b-ok'ek'-xosi yäł-ru-li] xan-e-r  
 money.ABS.III III-steal-PRS.PTCP be.PRS-PST.PTCP-NMLZ king-OS-LAT  
 b-äy-ru/r-äy-ru] y'anabi  
 III-know-PST.PTCP/IV-know-PST.PTCP woman.ABS.II  
 ‘the woman that the king knew was stealing the money’

Examples (39b) and (39c) contrast with the clearly ungrammatical clauses that arise when relativization is attempted on a constituent inside a finite complement clause with the quotative marker *-λin*.

- (40) a. [Neł-ä micxir b-ok'ek'-xosi yol-λin]  
 DEM.nI-ERG money.ABS.III III-steal-PRS.PTCP be.PRS-QUOT  
 xan-e-r r-iy-n  
 king-OS-LAT IV-know-PST.nWIT  
 ‘The king knew that she was stealing the money.’
- b. \*[[[neł-ä b-ok'ek'-xosi yol-λin] xan-e-r  
 DEM.nI-ERG III-steal-PRS.PTCP be.PRS-QUOT king-OS-LAT  
 r-äy-ru] micxir  
 IV-know-PST.PTCP money.ABS.III  
 (‘the money that the king knew she was stealing’)
- c. \*[[micxir b-ok'ek'-xosi yol-λin] xan-e-r  
 money.ABS.III III-steal-PRS.PTCP be.PRS-QUOT king-OS-LAT  
 r-äy-ru] y'anabi  
 IV-know-PST.PTCP woman.ABS.II  
 (‘the woman that the king knew was stealing the money’)

Let us now consider so-called double relativization: the relativization of constituents that appear in relative clauses, as in *the dog that its master that it always waited for died*. In some languages, for instance, in Japanese or Korean, such clauses are acceptable if there is a connection between the events represented in the two relative clauses or if the respective heads are in a kinship or whole-part relationship (Haig 1976, 1996; Na and Huck 1993; Han and Kim 2004). In Tsez, such relativization is impossible even if the relevant contextual conditions are met:

- (41) \*[[c'aq žäk'-ru] mamalay b-äx-ru] uži  
       very hit-PST.PTCP rooster.ABS.III III-die-PST.PTCP boy.ABS.I  
       ('the boy that the rooster that he hit very badly died')  
 (42) \*[[hičča b-äti-ru] kamanda b-äyu-ru] balešik  
       most IPL-like-PST.PTCP team.IPL IPL-lose-PST.PTCP fan.ABS.I  
       ('the fan whose team that he likes best lost')

We now turn to what looks like relativization across the boundary of an adverbial clause. In Tsez, nearly all adverbial clauses are non-finite, making use of a rich array of conversbs (see CH. YY [Adverbial clauses]).

In some instances, relativizing constituents of adverbial clauses turns out to be perfectly acceptable, as in the case of the object of a conditional clause, shown in (43):

- (43) a. Yedu bišʷa r-ac'-näy mi untizi Ø-äq.  
       DEM food.ABS.IV IV-eat.TR-COND.CVB 2SG.ABS(.I) sick I-become.FUT  
       'If you eat this food, you will get sick.'  
 b. [[r-ac'-näy] mi untizi Ø-oq-xosi] bišʷa  
       IV-eat.TR-COND.CVB 2SG.ABS(.I) sick I-become-PRS.PTCP food.ABS.IV  
       'the food that, if you eat it, you'll get sick' (speaking to a man)<sup>3</sup>

Similarly, (44b), which is based on (44a) and includes a temporal clause, is judged acceptable when a context is established of looking for a bush whose blooming is known to be a harbinger of spring:

- (44) a. Qaraq-y-ä gagali b-oy-nosi ix b-äy.  
       bush-OS-ERG flower.ABS.III III-pull-ANT.CVB spring.ABS.III III-come.FUT  
       'When the bush blooms, spring will come.'  
 b. [[gagali b-oy-nosi] ix b-ay-xosi] qaraq  
       flower.ABS.III III-pull-ANT.CVB spring.ABS.III III-come-PRS.PTCP bush.ABS.II  
       'the bush that, when it blooms, spring will come'

Such relative clauses, although similar to the other ones we have discussed in this chapter, differ from them in at least one respect: they freely allow the presence of a demonstrative (with or without the enclitic *-tow*) that is coreferential with the head noun. (We have already observed the

<sup>3</sup> Since the verb *untizi* AGR-*oq* shows gender agreement, the gender of the addressee is recoverable.

use of such demonstratives in examples (22) and (23) above, where the demonstrative was coreferential with the noun modified by the relative clause or the adnominal genitive). To illustrate, compare the ungrammatical example in (17) above with the fully grammatical versions of (43b) and (44b) featuring resumptive demonstratives:

- (45) [[ža<sub>i</sub>/ža<sub>i</sub>-tow r-ac'-näy] mi untizi  
DEM.ABS/DEM.ABS-FOC IV-eat.TR-COND.CVB 2SG.ABS(.I) sick  
Ø-oq-xosi] biš<sup>w</sup>a<sub>i</sub>  
i-become-PRS.PTCP food.ABS.IV  
'the food that, if you eat *it*, you'll get sick'
- (46) [[neł-ä<sub>i</sub>/neł-ä<sub>i</sub>-tow gagali b-oj-nosi] ix  
DEM.nI-ERG/ DEM.nI-ERG-FOC flower.ABS.III III-pull-ANT.CVB spring.ABS.III  
b-ay-xosi] qaraqi  
III-come-PRS.PTCP bush.ABS.II  
'the bush that, when *it* blooms, spring will come'

Not only can the head noun be resumed by a demonstrative, as in these examples, but it can also be coreferential with a noun inside the relative clause. Compare (45) and the following example, where the word *biš<sup>w</sup>a* is coreferential with the noun phrase *ža zaq'um* 'this poison/bitterness'. Note that in this case, the agreement in the embedded conditional clause is no longer gender IV but gender III, as determined by *zaq'um*:

- (47) [[ža zaq'um<sub>i</sub> b-ac'-näy] mi untizi  
DEM poison/bitterness.ABS.III III-eat.TR-COND 2SG.ABS(.I) sick  
Ø-oq-xosi] biš<sup>w</sup>a<sub>i</sub>  
i-become-PRS.PTCP food.ABS.IV  
'the food that, if you eat *it*, you'll get sick'

Given these examples, it is likely that the "gap" in embedded adjunct clauses within relative clauses is a null pronoun (which can alternate with overt expressions, as in (45) through (47)). The relationship between the head noun and the gap in the embedded adjunct clause is that of coreference, determined by the plausibility of context. The participial clause gap we discussed earlier in this section does not allow for such an alternation with overt expressions.

### 1.3 Gapless adposition

Let us now turn to gapless relative clauses (also known as pseudo-relative clauses). In a noun phrase containing such a relative clause, the head noun does not correspond to any gap position inside the relative. Gapless relative clauses are widely attested in Japanese, Korean, and Mandarin. Consider the following example from Japanese:

- (48) [sakana-ga yakeru] nioi *Japanese*  
fish-NOM burn smell  
'the smell of fish burning'

Gapless adpositions are possible but quite rare in Tsez. We have not found gapless relative clauses in narrative texts, but they are accepted in elicitations. For example:

- (49) [ša                b-ädi-ru]                maħ  
       wine.ABS.III    III-do-PST.PTCP      smell.ABS.III  
       ‘the smell of wine being made’

A preferred way of modifying a head noun, which may call for a gapless relative, is to use an adnominal noun modifier in the genitive case. For instance, (49) can be expressed as (50), where ‘making wine’ is represented as a nominalization in *-li*; this nominalization then appears as the adnominal genitive modifying the head noun *maħ*:

- (50) [ša                b-ädi-ru-li]-s                maħ  
       wine.ABS.III    III-do-PST.PTCP-NMLZ-GEN1      smell.ABS.III  
       ‘the smell of wine being made’

The comparison between (49) and (50) bring us to the question of whether or not a participial clause placed before a head noun can receive other interpretations, such as that of a complement clause dependent on the head noun; Matsumoto (1988; 1997) argues for precisely such a syntactic identity between relative clauses and nominal-headed complement clauses in the case of Japanese. In Tsez, however, these two types of clauses have different properties. For complement clauses selected by such nouns as ‘news’, ‘rumor’, ‘fact’, etc., see Ch. YY [Noun phrase].

#### 1.4 Participial relative clauses with a null head

The examples presented so far all show participial relative clauses with an overt external head. However, relative clauses without such an overt head are also possible. When a relative clause occurs without an overt head, it typically features the definite attributive marker *-ni*; the past participle can also optionally take the attributive suffix *-si*, as shown in (51) below. Compare example (7) above and its null-headed counterparts, shown below in the absolute and postpositional forms. Such relative clauses always have a definite interpretation:

- (51) [už-ä            kid-be-r            teλ-ru(-si)-ni]  
       boy-ERG     girl-OS-LAT     give-PST.PTCP-ATTR-DEF  
       ‘the thing that the boy gave to the girl’  
(52) [už-ä            kid-be-r            teλ-xo-zo]-z                meča  
       boy-ERG     girl-OS-LAT     give-PRS-ATTR.OBL-GEN2 instead  
       ‘instead of the thing that the boy gives to the girl’

Headless relative clauses with the past participle in *-zo-* are often used to express spatial relations, and in that function they appear in various spatial forms (see Ch. YY [Adverbial phrase] for details).

Headless participial relative clauses are also used in comparative correlatives of the type illustrated by the English *the more the merrier*. In such comparative correlatives, the relative clause always appears with the equative suffix *-ce*, and the parallel clause is expressed by a regular finite construction. In the following examples, we show the relative clauses in brackets:

- (53) [Eli b-<sup>s</sup>ežə b-äq-ru]-\*(ce) r-aq<sup>s</sup>u  
 1PL.ABS.IPL IPL-big IPL-become-PST.PTCP-EQUAT IV-many/much  
 šebin r-äy elu-r.  
 thing.ABS.IV IV-come.FUT.DEF 1PL-LAT  
 ‘The older we get, the more we know.’ (lit.: the bigger we become, the more things will come to us)
- (54) [Harihun ža Ø-eynäy-ru]-\*(ce) babiw  
 slowly DEM.ABS(.I) I-work-PST.PTCP-EQUAT father.ABS.I  
 nesi-ko-r Ø-aq<sup>s</sup>u Ø-aλ'i-x.  
 DEM.I-POSS-LAT I-many/much I-be.angry-PRS  
 ‘The slower he works, the more father chides him.’
- (55) [yudi r-äk'i-ru]-\*(ce) nesi-s tatu  
 day.abs.iv iv-go- PST.PTCP-EQUAT DEM.I-GEN strength.ABS.III  
 b-exu-x b-ik'i-x zow-n.  
 III-die-IPFV.CVB III-go-IPFV.CVB AUX.PST-PST.nWIT  
 ‘The more time passed, the less strength he had.’ (lit: day going, his strength went dying)  
 (L'ono esiw:3)
- (56) [Žedu b-et'u-k'äλi-ru]-\*(ce) q'ano-n  
 DEM.PL.ABS.IPL IPL-jump-run-PST.PTCP-EQUAT two-and  
 esna-bi b-eži-gon teł-xo-r šiši-x  
 sibling-ABS.PL(.IPL) IPL-big-CONTR.TOP inside-AD-LAT be.stuck-IPFV.CVB  
 b-ik'i-x zow-n.  
 IPL-go-IPFV.CVB AUX.PST-PST.nWIT  
 ‘The more they kept jumping, the more the two brothers got stuck.’ (Q'ano guluči sis aqiw esnabi:13)

Comparative correlatives are not the only correlative constructions found in Tsez; the other types, which are formed somewhat differently, will be discussed in Section 3.

## 2 Masdar and infinitival relative clauses

### 2.1 Masdar and infinitival clauses: Relative vs. purpose clauses

Relative infinitive clauses, as non-finite modifiers of nouns, are quite common. In English, they can be illustrated by sentences such as:

- (57) a. This is [a hard nut [to crack]].  
 b. Here is [the table [to put the lamp on]].  
 c. Here's [a new neighbor [for mom to bicker with]].

In the noun phrase *the table [to put the lamp on]*, the infinitive clause corresponds to the finite clause *on which one could/should/will put the lamp*. Such relative clauses have attracted the attention of many researchers (e.g., Berman 1974a, b; Bolinger 1988; Faraci 1974; Fleischer 2008; Green 1973; 1992; Geisler 1995, among others). The details of infinitival relatives in English and other familiar languages tend to be quite complex, but in general, such clauses often have a modal reading (*a table on which one could put the lamp*) and also a purposive reading. The latter use often makes infinitival relative clauses hard to distinguish from purpose adjunct

clauses expressed by infinitives (see Simonin 2011 for a detailed discussion). When an infinitival clause is used to denote purpose, it does not syntactically form a unit with the head noun and therefore does not depend on the head noun for placement or identification. There are quite a few diagnostics that distinguish the two uses of infinitival clauses, which we discuss below.

Tsez infinitival and masdar relative clauses always express a property that can be understood as *available for potential use*. For example, in (58), we find a description of some general ability that could be used in order to lift the main character of a fairy tale into a higher world. In (59), there is an implication of “any set of things that can be done,” while (60) bears an implication of “any set of places to which one could escape”:

- (58) [mi        elo        λ'iri-r        Ø-izi-r-ani-x]  
       2SG.ABS.(I)    there    above-LAT    I-rise-CAUS-MASD-AD.ESS  
       res-no                        mahal-no  
       possibility.ABS.III-and might.ABS.III-and  
       ‘ability and might to lift you up there.’ (fAliqilič:113)
- (59) [r-od-a-r-is-a]                šebin  
       IV-make-INF-IV-take-INF    thing.ABS.IV  
       ‘things to do’ (Eniwn kidno:1)
- (60) [Mi        ži        da-q-äy        Ø-ok'ł-a]        moči        ānu.  
       2SG.ABS.(I)    now    1SG-POSS-ABL    I-run.away-INF    place.ABS.III    be.PRS.NEG  
       ‘Now there is no place for you to run away from me.’ (K'eneč':39)

Infinitival and masdar relative clauses modify nouns denoting something that is generally necessary in order for a potential event to take place. Because of the general potential interpretation, such noun phrases often occur with intensional predicates (‘look for’, ‘know’) and in questions or statements concerning the availability of an item. For example,

- (61) [At'        q'uq'-ani-r]        hí        r-oq-inč'i.  
       dough.ABS.IV    knead-MASD-LAT    water.ABS.IV    IV-become-PST.WIT.NEG  
       ‘There was no water to knead the dough.’ (fAliqilič:43)
- (62) Učitel-ä        [xex-z-ar        r-ukad-ani-x]        kino  
       teacher-ERG    child-OS-LAT    IV-see-MASD-AD.ESS    movie.ABS.IV  
       k'edi-x.  
       look.for-PRS  
       ‘The teacher is looking for a movie for the children to see.’
- (63) [Gulu-λ'        zow-ani-x]        bažari        yoł-ä        debi?  
       horse-SUPER.ESS    climb-MASD-AD.ESS    skill.ABS.III    be.PRS-INTERR 2SG.GEN1  
       ‘Do you know how to ride a horse?’ (lit.: do you have the skill for climbing on a horse?)
- (64) [R-ac'-a]        šebi-n        yoł-ä        debe-q?  
       IV-eat.TR-INF    thing.ABS.IV    be.PRS-INTERR        2SG-POSS.ESS  
       ‘Do you have something to eat?’

In infinitival and masdar relatives, the subject (or the highest argument, to be more precise) can be mentioned inside the relative clause, just as in English (57c). Unlike English, arguments in Tsez masdars and infinitives have the same case marking as in finite clauses, so the case on the subject of a relative clause can be ergative, lative, absolute, or possessive; for instance:

- (65) [kid-b-ä nełā neła-z tuple-za-λ teλ-ani-x] micxir  
     girl-OS-ERG REFL.nI-GEN1 shoe-OS.PL-SUB.ESS pay-MASD-AD.ESS money.ABS.III  
     ‘(the) money for the girl to pay for her shoes’
- (66) [y<sup>č</sup>ana-za-r taʃam b-iy-ani-x] čorpa  
     woman-OS.PL-LAT taste.ABS.III III-know-MASD-AD.ESS soup.ABS.IV  
     ‘soup for the women to taste’
- (67) [gulu b-et’u-n k’oλ-a] huni  
     horse.ABS.III III-tear.away-PFV.CVB run-INF road.ABS.IV  
     ‘the/a road for a/the horse to gallop on’
- (68) [debe-q qiqi ɬek’ir-eł-ani-r] k’oši  
     2SG-POSS.ESS gruel.ABS.IV stir-POT-MASD-LAT wooden.spoon.ABS.IV  
     ‘a wooden spoon so that you could stir gruel’

The pragmatic and semantic factors that determine the choice between an infinitive and masdar seem quite nuanced. In general, masdar relative clauses are more common in texts, but speakers readily replace them with infinitival relatives and do not perceive a significant meaning change. Likewise, if a masdar clause is used, the masdar predicate can appear either in the lative or in the adessive without creating a discernible meaning difference.

As in English, it may not be immediately obvious how to draw the line between the use of an infinitival/masdar clause as a relative clause and its use as a purpose clause. For instance, in the following example, the masdar clause *ša bodanix* ‘to make wine’ can denote either the property of the grapes (grapes intended for wine-making) or the purpose of pressing those grapes:

- (69) Di [ša b-od-ani-x] k’udi q’uq’i-λ’orey  
     1SG wine.ABS.III III-do-MASD-LAT grapes.ABS.III press-DUR.I.CVB  
     ‘While I was pressing grapes to make wine...’ (Xanno, nesisgon ḁono užin: 81)

It is impossible to avoid ambiguity in all cases, but several properties differentiate genuine purpose clauses (containing an infinitival or masdar predicate) from their corresponding relative clauses. First, recall that all noun phrases in Tsez are head-final, so the relative clause cannot follow the head noun, whereas a purpose clause, which does not depend structurally on a noun phrase, can follow it. In the next example, the masdar clause follows the noun phrase *hič’č’ā riguni šeλ’un gulun*, so it is clearly a purpose clause. Likewise, in (71), the masdar clause with the predicate *riyanix* follows the possible head noun (*zaman*), thus appearing as a purpose, not relative, clause:

- (70) Xan-ä hič’č’ā r-igu-ni šeλ’u-n gulu-n  
     king-ERG most nIPL-good-DEF clothes.ABS.IV-and horse.ABS.III-and  
     [nesi-r r-iž-ani-x] ziru-qo-r teλ-no.  
     DEM.I-LAT nIPL-carry-MASD-AD.ESS fox-POSS-LAT give-PST.nWIT  
     ‘The king gave the best clothes and horse to the fox so that it would bring them to him.’  
     (Goqin zirun:25)
- (71) Debe-r zaman b-ay-n [[nā-r [t’et’r-a]]]  
     2SG-LAT time.ABS.III III-come-PST.nWIT where-LAT study-INF

Ø-ik'i-xosi	yäł-ru-li]	r-iy-ani-x].
I-go-PRS.PTCP	be.PRS-PST.PTCP-NMLZ	IV-know-MASD-AD.ESS
'It is time for you to decide (lit.: know) where to go to study.'		

Purpose clauses can appear without any head noun, whereas the omission of a head noun with relative clauses of this type is impossible:<sup>4</sup>

(72)	[unto-de	dandir	ħaλ-ani-x/ħaλ-ani-r]
	sickness-APUD.ESS	against	drink-MASD-AD.ESS/drink-MASD-LAT
	*(daru)		
	medicine.ABS.III		
'medicine to take against illness'			

A purpose clause can be embedded under another purpose clause, whereas double relativization is impossible with masdar or infinitival relative clauses. Compare the following examples. In (73), the infinitival clause *Goqi owa* takes an embedded masdar clause (*xanqo ukaranix*). In (74), the noun *li* 'water' is modified by a masdar clause *ħaλanix* 'to drink', but the masdar clause embedded under it can only be interpreted as a purpose clause.

(73)	Ziru	k'oλi-n	b-ik'i-n	[[xan-qo
	fox.ABS.III	run-PFV.CVB	III-go-PST.nWIT	king-POSS.ESS
	Ø-uka-r-ani-x]		Goqi	Ø-ow-a].
	I-see-CAUS-MASD-AD.ESS		Goqi.ABS.I	I-bring-INF
'The fox went running to get (bring) Goqi to show him to the king.' (Goqin zirun:13)				
(74)	Nes-ä	esir-no	yil-q-ay	[ħaλ-ani-x
	DEM.I-ERG	ask-PST.nWIT	DEM.NI-POSS-ABL	drink-MASD-AD.ESS
	[hal	b- <sup>s</sup> aq'iλ-ani-x]]		li.
	strength.ABS.III	III-increase-MASD-AD.ESS		water.ABS.IV
'He asked her for water to drink so that he could increase his strength.'				

The infinitival or masdar predicate in a purpose clause can optionally appear with the quotative marker *-λin*, as shown below.<sup>5</sup> But such marking is impossible in infinitival and masdar relative clauses. Thus, the two uses of infinitival/masdar relative clauses form a minimal pair:

---

<sup>4</sup> Masdar (but not infinitival) relative clauses can be nominalized with the abstract suffix *-li*, but such nominalizations, while technically grammatical, are dispreferred:

(i)	a.	[unto-de	dandir	ħaλ-ani-x]-li
		sickness-APUD.ESS	against	drink-MASD-AD.ESS-NMLZ
'(something) to take against illness'				
	b.	*[unto-de	dandir	ħaλ-a]-li
		sickness-APUD.ESS	against	drink-INF-NMLZ

If the entire complex noun phrase with an infinitival or masdar relative has to refer to an unspecified or generic entity, it occurs with the head noun *šebin* 'thing' or *žek'u* 'person'.

- (75) Nes-ä daru b-is-si [unto-de dandir  
DEM.I-ERG medicine.ABS.III III-take-PST.WIT sickness-APUD.ESS against  
haλ-ani-x-(λin)].  
drink-MASD-AD.ESS-QUOT  
‘He bought a medication to take against sickness.’
- (76) Nesi-r [unto-de dandir haλ-ani-x-(\*λin)]  
DEM.I-LAT sickness-APUD.ESS against drink-MASD-AD.ESS-QUOT  
daru b-eti-x.  
medicine.ABS.III III-want-PRS  
‘He wants a medication to take against sickness.’

Finally, purpose clauses depend on the main predicate for their interpretation, and relative clauses depend on the head noun. In several examples above, a head noun modified by a masdar/infinitival relative clause appeared with such verbs as ‘be’ or ‘become’, which do not combine with purpose clauses.

## 2.2 The highest argument/subject restriction

Infinitival and masdar relative clauses allow for the relativization of all constituents except the highest argument of the relative clause. We will first list some typical examples of relative clauses. For instance, “ditransitive transitives”, discussed in CH. YY [Basic clause types], freely allow relativization on both of their objects, in the absolute and in an oblique case:

- (77) [ged-mo-λ’ r-iħ-ani-x] ito  
clothes-OS-SUPER.ESS IV-put-MASD-AD.ESS iron.ABS.IV  
‘the/an iron to iron clothes’
- (78) [ito r-iħ-ani-x] λ’iriku-bi  
iron IV-put-MASD-AD.ESS kerchief-OS-PL.ABS.nIPL  
‘kerchiefs to iron’
- (79) [ok’o-bi r-ok’ā-ani-r] kʷart’ā  
nail-ABS.PL IV-hit-MASD-LAT hammer.ABS.IV  
‘a/the hammer to hammer in nails’
- (80) [kʷart’ā r-ok’ā-ani-r] ok’o-bi  
hammer.ABS.IV IV-hit-MASD-LAT nail-PL.ABS.nIPL  
‘nails to hammer in’

Example (81) shows relativization on an instrument/medium:

- (81) [awtobus-a-λ’-no poezd-a-λ’-no b-ik’-ani-x]  
bus-OS-SUPER.ESS-and train-OS-SUPER.ESS-and IPL-go-MASD-AD.ESS  
belet  
ticket.ABS.II  
‘ticket to go on bus and train’

---

<sup>5</sup> Control complement clauses can also appear with *-λin*, as discussed in CH. YY[COMPL CL].

Examples (82) through (84) show relativization on various locative expressions:

- (82) [kec-ani-x] diwan  
sleep- MASD-AD.ESS couch.ABS.IV  
'a/the couch to sleep on'
- (83) [ʃimru b-od-ani-r] y<sup>c</sup>utku  
life.ABS.III III-do-MASD-LAT house.ABS.IV  
'a house to live in'
- (84) [magalu b-is-ani-x] magazin  
bread.ABS.III III-take-MASD-AD.ESS store.ABS.IV  
'a/the store to buy bread at'

While the relativization of adjuncts is possible, relativization of subjects is not. The noun phrase below can be interpreted only as "the horse for someone on which to gallop on the road" (since the verb shows agreement, the understood subject could be either an animal, belonging to gender III, or a group of people whose denotation belongs to IPL); the intended interpretation in (85), where the subject is relativized, is impossible:

- (85) \*[huni-λ] b-et'u-n k'oλ-a] gulu  
road-SUPER.ESS III-tear.away-PFV.CVB run-INF horse.ABS.III  
('the/a horse to gallop on on the road')

Likewise, the following noun phrase with an intransitive masdar clause can only be interpreted as indicating the doctor to talk to, not the doctor who would do the talking. In (86a), there is no ambiguity, because the second-person singular *mi* can only be absolute or ergative, and its absolute status clearly qualifies it as the subject of the masdar. In (86b), the literal meaning is "your doctor to talk to," and in principle, an interpretation is possible in which the doctor is somehow connected to the addressee of the utterance and will do the talking. With a masdar relative, on the other hand, this interpretation is completely ruled out:

- (86) a. [mi xabary-ani-x] doxtur  
2SG talk-MASD-AD.ESS doctor.ABS.I  
'the/a doctor for you to talk to'
- b. [xabary-ani-x] debi doxtur  
talk-MASD-AD.ESS 2SG.GEN1 doctor.ABS.I  
'the/a doctor for you to talk to'  
'your doctor for someone to talk to'  
NOT: 'your doctor who will talk'

In transitive and ditransitive clauses with a masdar/infinitival predicate, the ergative cannot be relativized:

- (87) [c'alduqan-z-ä žawab teλ-ani-x] sual-ya-bi  
student-OS.PL-ERG answer.ABS.III give-MASD-AD.ESS question-OS-PL.ABS.nIPL  
'questions for (the) students to answer'
- (88) \*[sual-yo-s žawab teλ-ani-x] c'alduqan-bi

question-OS-GEN1      answer.ABS.III give-MASD-AD.ESS      student-PL.ABS.IPL  
 ('(the) students to answer a/the question')

In the affective construction (see CH. YY [Basic clause types]), we find two separate patterns. Those verbs that causativize into transitives ('know', 'hear') permit only relativization of the absolute argument. Thus, their lative arguments behave as subjects with respect to relativization. Compare example (66) above and the ungrammatical (89):

- (89) \*[Čorpa-s      tařam      b-iy-ani-x]      yčana-bi  
 soup-GEN      taste.ABS.III      III-know-MASD-AD.ESS      women-ABS.PL.IPL  
 ān-ä?  
 be.PRS.NEG-INTERR  
 ('Aren't there any women to taste soup?')

Those verbs of cognition and perception that form ditransitive causatives (e.g., 'see', 'like, want') allow for relativization of both noun phrases in the affective construction. Compare the following examples:

- (90) Učitel-ä      [xex-za-r      r-ukad-ani-x]      kino      k'edi-x.  
 teacher-ERG      child-OS.PL-LAT      IV-see-MASD-AD.ESS      movie.ABS.IV      look.for-PRS  
 'The teacher is looking for a movie for the children to see.'  
 (91) Žed-ä      [yedu      halt'i      b-eta-ani-x]      žek'u-bi  
 DEM.I.PL-RG      DEM      work.ABS.III      III-want-MASD-AD.ESS      person-ABS.PL.IPL  
 žin      k'edi-x.  
 still      look.for-PRS  
 'They are still was looking for people who would want this work.' (lit.: to want this work)

The verbs that appear in the accidental construction are structurally identical to masdars and infinitives, but their semantics is probably incompatible with the purposive/goal-oriented reading of masdar clauses, and speakers reject such readings in general, regardless of the constituent that is relativized. In the potential construction with the predicate in the potential or optative form, the poss-essive agent cannot be relativized with a masdar, but all other constituents can:

- (92) K'et'u-q      besuro      b-ac'a-ł-xo.  
 cat-POSS.ESS      fish.ABS.III      III-eat-POT-PRS  
 'The cat could eat (the) fish.'
- (93) a.      [k'et'u-q      b-ac'a-ł-ani-x]      besuro  
 cat-POSS.ESS      III-eat-POT-MASD-AD.ESS      fish.ABS.III  
 'fish for the cat to eat'  
 b.      [k'et'u-q      besuro      b-ac'a-ł-ani-x]      k'ot'i  
 cat-POSS.ESS      fish.ABS.III      III-eat-POT-MASD-AD.ESS      small.plate.ABS.III  
 'a plate for the cat to eat fish on/from'  
 c.      \*[besuro      b-ac'a-ł-ani-x]      k'et'u  
 fish.ABS.III      III-eat-POT-MASD-AD.ESS      cat.ABS.III  
 ('the/a cat able to eat fish')

In existential and possessive clauses, the pivot (possessum) can be relativized, but the scene-setting expression and the possessor noun phrase cannot. Compare:

- (94) Yiła kid-be-s kidila yoł.  
DEM girl-OS-GEN1 doll.ABS.II be.PRS  
‘That girl has a doll.’
- (95) a. [yiła kid-be-s yoł-ani-r] kidila  
DEM girl-OS-GEN1 be.PRS-MASD-LAT doll.ABS.II  
‘a doll for that girl to have’
- b. \*[kidila yoł-ani-r] kid  
doll.ABS.II be.PRS-MASD-LAT girl.ABS.II  
(‘a girl to own a doll’)

Since relative clauses with infinitival or masdar predicates are often hard to distinguish from purpose clauses with the same predicate, one may even get an impression that subject relativization is possible; consider, for example, the sentence below, which may at first glance be interpreted as something like, “The people destined to look for money came”:

- (96) [Micxir k’ed-ani-x] žek’u-bi b-ay-s.  
money.ABS.III look.for-MASD-AD.ESS person-PL.ABS.IPL IPL-come-PST.WIT  
‘People came here to look for money.’

However, the masdar clause in this sentence can be separated from its apparent head noun, which indicates that it is a purpose clause:

- (97) Žek’u-bi b-ay-s [micxir k’ed-ani-x].  
person-PL.ABS.IPL IPL-come-PST.WIT money.ABS.III look.for-MASD-AD.ESS  
‘People came here to look for money.’

And if the semantics of the matrix predicate is such that it does not combine with a purpose clause, then the masdar becomes impossible:

- (98) \*Dä-r [micxir k’ed-ani-x] žek’u-bi  
1SG-LAT money.ABS.III look.for-MASD-AD.ESS person-PL.ABS.IPL  
b-ukay-s.  
IPL-see-PST.WIT  
(“I saw the people to look for money.”)

### 2.3 Comparison between participial and infinitival/masdar relatives

The main difference between participial relatives and relative clauses with a masdar or infinitive has to do with modality. Infinitival/masdar relative clauses express some general property of the head noun, which could potentially be put to use by the agent. Such an agent is either presupposed, as for instance, in (61), or overtly mentioned in the relative clause, as in (86) or (87).

Structurally, we already showed that infinitival/masdar relative clauses cannot relativize the subject or the highest structural argument. No such restriction is found in participial relative clauses.

Infinitival/masdar relative clauses can include a reflexive whose antecedent is in the matrix clause. For example:

- (99) [Nelä nelä-s ac y-a<sup>f</sup>y-ani-x] hal ānu  
 REFL.nI-GEN1 door.ABS.II II-open-MASD-AD.ESS ability.ABS.III be.PRS.NEG  
 dä-z ečuy-s.  
 1SG-GEN2 grandmother-GEN1  
 'My grandmother<sub>i</sub> cannot even open her<sub>i</sub> door.'

On the other hand, a reflexive inside a participial relative clause cannot be bound by an external antecedent:

- (100) \*Kid-b-ä tungi [nelä neł-ä teł zäw-ru]-zo  
 girl-OS-ERG jug.ABS.III DEM.nI-IN.ESS-FOC inside be.PST-PST.PTCP-ATTR.OBL  
 li-d esay-s.  
 water-INS wash-PST.WIT  
 ('The girl washed the jug with the water that was in itself.')

Participial relative clauses in which the head noun is the nominal component of a complex verb are well formed; in contrast, infinitival/masdar clauses with nouns embedded in complex verbs are impossible. Observe the following contrast:<sup>6</sup>

- (101) a. [fäl-ä irbahin-e-r b-ädi-ru] kumak  
 Ali-ERG Ibrahim-OS-LAT III-do-PST.PTCP help.ABS.III  
 'Ali's help to Ibrahim' (lit: the help that Ali did for Ibrahim)  
 b. \*[fäl-ä irbahin-e-r b-od-ani-x] kumak  
 Ali-ERG Ibrahim-OS-LAT III-do-MASD-AD.ESS help.ABS.III
- (102) a. [fäl-ä er-xosi] kul  
 Ali-ERG put-PRS.PTCP hope.ABS.III  
 'the hope that Ali has' (lit.: puts)  
 b. \*[fäl-ä er-ani-r] kul  
 Ali-ERG put-MASD-LAT hope.ABS.III

## 2.4 Modal existential relatives with the infinitival or masdar predicate

Infinitival and masdar clauses can form existential relative clauses, which appear without an external head. Such clauses have the general structure shown below:

- (103) [Wh-expression Verb-INF/Verb-MASD]

---

<sup>6</sup> In the complex verb *kumak bod-* 'help', the light verb agrees with the absolute *kumak* in gender III.

These relative clauses fit the profile of so-called modal existential constructions (see Šimik 2013 for an overview and discussion); such constructions are typically associated with stative verbs, most often the existential (although some other verbs can also be used, as we show below).

To illustrate, let us first consider such clauses occurring in the pivot position in a construction that is close in meaning to the existential construction ‘there is/are + NP’ (e.g., *There’s something to eat*) or to the possessive construction (e.g., *Ali has a place to go*). For example:

- (104) a. Howt'a [nā-r Ø-ik'-a] ānu.  
there where-LAT I-go-INF be.PRS.NEG  
b. [Nā-r Ø-ik'-a] ānu howt'a.  
where-LAT I-go-INF be.PRS.NEG there  
‘There is nowhere to go from there.’ (lit.: there is not where to go)  
c. \*Ø-ik'-a howt'a nā-r ānu.  
I-go-INF there where-LAT be.PRS.NEG
- (105) a. Kid-be-q [šebi es-ani-x] zow-n-ānu.  
girl-OS-POSS.ESS what.ABS.IV tell-MASD-AD.ESS be.PST-PST.nWIT-NEG  
b. [Šebi es-ani-x] zow-n-ānu kid-be-q.  
what.ABS.IV tell-MASD-AD.ESS be.PST-PST.nWIT-NEG girl-OS-POSS.ESS  
‘The girl had nothing to say.’ (lit.: there was no what to say...)  
c. \*Kid-be-q šebi zow-n-ānu es-ani-x.  
girl-OS-POSS.ESS what.ABS.IV be.PST-PST.nWIT-NEG tell-MASD-AD.ESS

In (104) and (105), the respective infinitival and masdar clauses appear without an external head and have the interpretation typical of a modal existential relative (cf. Grosu 1994, 2004; Caponigro 2003; Šimik 2013). As the examples above show, these modal existential relatives serve as the pivot of the existential or possessive clause. The next example shows that the wh-word has to appear as the first constituent of such relative clauses; this characteristic differentiates this subtype of relatives from other types (including other infinitival and masdar clauses), where the word order before the predicate is generally free:

- (106) a. Nesi-q [neti ſal-ā-r Ø-ik'-a] ānu.  
DEM.I-POSS.ESS when village-IN-LAT I-go-INF be.PRS.NEG  
‘He does not have the time to go to the village.’ (lit.: when to go to the village)  
b. ??/\*Nesi-q [ſal-ā-r neti Ø-ik'-a] ānu.  
DEM.I-POSS.ESS village-IN-LAT when I-go-INF be.PRS.NEG

Modal existential relatives are most common in existential or possessive clauses, but they can occur with other predicates as well. Mostly these are intensional predicates such as ‘look for’, ‘believe’, ‘need’, or ‘want’. For example:

- (107) Nes-ä [lu-q xabary-ani-x] k'edi-x.  
DEM.I-ERG who-POSS.ESS talk-MASD-AD.ESS look.for-PRS  
‘He is looking for someone to talk to.’
- (108) Neła-r [nā xaltizi y-oq-a] y-eti-xosi zow-s.  
DEM.NI-ERG where work II-become-INF II-want-PRS.PTCP be.PST-PST.WIT  
‘She needed a place to work.’ (lit.: where to work)

With the exception of ‘why’, and ‘how’, all wh-words can occur in such existential relatives. In addition, since infinitival and masdar relatives have a subject restriction (see 2.2 above), a wh-word in the subject position of such relative clauses is impossible. Finally, modal existential relatives with complex wh-words are rejected (although it is unclear whether they are ungrammatical or merely infelicitous). Thus:<sup>7</sup>

- (109) #Nes-ä [nāzo doxtur-qo xabary-ani-x] k’edi-x.  
DEM.I-ERG which.OBL doctor-POSS.ESS talk-MASD-AD.ESS look.for-PRS  
(lit.: “He is looking for which doctor to talk to.”)

Modal existential relative clauses cannot appear with a head noun; compare the headless relative in (107) and its ungrammatical externally headed counterpart below:

- (110) \*Nes-ä [lu-q xabary-ani-x] žek’u-bi k’edi-x.  
DEM.I-ERG who-POSS.ESS talk-MASD-AD.ESS person-PL.ABS.IPL look.for-PRS  
(‘He is looking for people to talk to.’)

If an infinitival/masdar relative clause does not include a wh-word, then it can appear with an external head. This means that it is possible to construct a minimal pair of existentially interpreted infinitival/masdar relative clauses, as schematized below:

- (111) [Wh-expression Verb-INF/Verb-MASD] \*Head Noun

- (112) [...] Head Noun

The option in (112), with semantically light heads such as ‘person’, ‘thing’, ‘time’, ‘place’, etc., is a common alternative to the headless type in (111). Compare the headless relative in (105) to the existentially interpreted headed relative clause below, whose head noun is šebin ‘thing’. Note that the order of the masdar and the head noun cannot be reversed:

- (113) a. Kid-be-q [es-ani-x] šebin  
girl-OS-POSS.ESS tell-MASD-AD.ESS thing.ABS.IV  
r-iq-n-ānu.  
iv-be.had-PST.nWIT-NEG  
‘The girl had nothing to say.’ (lit.: thing for saying)  
b. \*Kid-be-q šebin [es-ani-x]  
girl-OS-POSS.ESS thing.ABS.IV tell-MASD-AD.ESS  
r-iq-n-ānu.  
iv-be.had-PST.nWIT-NEG

Interpretive differences between existential headless relatives and existential relatives with a semantically light external head such as (113) are very subtle. Generally, speakers use these two types of relatives interchangeably in elicitations and spontaneous discourse. However,

---

<sup>7</sup> This contrasts with the grammaticality of free relatives with complex wh-words (see section 4 below).

difference becomes more apparent if we contrast a genuine existential relative and a relative clause with an indefinite in the head noun position. Compare the following two sentences:

- (114) a. Dey [nā-r Ø-ik'-a] ānu.  
           1SG.GEN1 where-LAT I-go-INF be.PRS.NEG  
           'I don't have where to go (man speaking).'  
       b. Dey [nā-r Ø-ik'-a] moči-kin ānu.  
           1SG.GEN1 where-LAT I-go-INF place.ABS.III-FOC be.PRS.NEG  
           'I don't have anywhere to go.'

The only way to express the exhaustive reading is by using a headed relative clause, as in (114b).

### 3 Definite free relative clauses

#### 3.1 Formation of definite free relatives

Free relative clauses with a definite interpretation (as opposed to the existential interpretation discussed in section 2.4, and *ever*-free relatives, which we will address below) can be illustrated by the following English examples, where the free relative is shown in brackets.

- (115) a. [What Fred offered to her] went into the trash. (Baker 1995: 206)  
       b. I did not see [whoever you saw].

These relatives occur in noun phrase positions and can alternate with regular noun phrases—for instance, *what Fred offered to her* can be replaced by *it* or *his gift*.

In many languages with free relative clauses, one can make the claim that they have a structure partially similar to that of wh-questions, although it is clear that the two structures are not identical. Indeed, in English, one finds a difference between the root wh-question *Whoever did you see?*, with obligatory subject–auxiliary inversion, and the relative clause *whoever you saw*, without inversion (see Baker 1995: Ch. 7 for an extensive discussion). In Tsez, however, the two constructions are formally identical.

Headless free relatives in Tsez are expressed by interrogative clauses in the attributive form, schematized as follows (the attributive suffix is often omitted, as in other cases we have discussed in this chapter):<sup>8</sup>

- (116) [Wh-expression                      Verb-INTERR(-ATTR)]

In most tense–aspect–mood formations, Tsez uses the same verb form in an interrogative as in a declarative sentence, so the identity of free relatives and interrogatives is obscured. In the past

---

<sup>8</sup> As some examples below show, the wh-expression does not have to appear at the left edge and can be placed anywhere in the preverbal domain inside the relative clause. This makes this type different from the modal existential relative clauses discussed in section 2.4 above; in those clauses, the wh-expression has to be clause-initial.

witnessed tense, however, there is a distinction: declarative sentences have the suffix *-s(i)*, whereas interrogative sentences have the suffix *-ä*, as illustrated in the following example:

- (117) Nāsi uži hič'č'a adāz Ø-ay-ä/\*Ø-ay-si?  
 which boy.ABS.I most first I-come-PST.WIT.INTERR/I-come-PST.WIT  
 'Which boy came first?'

Even though the relative clause does not function as a question in speech-act terms, nonetheless it must have the form of an interrogative, as shown below:

- (118) Nāsi uži hič'č'a adāz Ø-ay-ä(-si)/\*Ø-ay-si,  
 which boy.ABS.I most first I-come-PST.WIT.INTERR-ATTR/I-come-PST.WIT  
 di ža žek'-si.  
 1SG.ERG DEM.ABS beat-PST.WIT  
 'I beat the boy who came first.' (lit.: which boy came first, I beat him)

Tsez is not the only language of its family that forms free relative clauses based on the interrogative; the attributive use of interrogatives is also found in Tsaxur (Kibrik 1999: 462-463).

The pattern presented in (116) is extremely productive and can be used to relativize any position in a clause. For example, assuming sentence (119) as the baseline, a series of headless relative clauses can be formed:

- (119) huł babi-y-ä uži žek'-si.  
 yesterday father-OS-ERG boy.ABS.I hit-PST.WIT  
 'Yesterday Father beat/hit the boy.'
- (120) *free subject relative*  
 huł (lu) uži žek'-ä(-si)  
 yesterday who.ERG boy.ABS.I hit-PST.WIT.INTERR-ATTR  
 'the one that beat the boy yesterday'
- (121) *free object relative*  
 huł babi-y-ä (šebi) žek'-ä(-si)  
 yesterday father-OS-ERG who/what.ABS hit-PST.WIT.INTERR-ATTR  
 'the one/whom that Father beat yesterday'
- (122) *free temporal adjunct relative*  
 neti babi-y-ä uži žek'-ä(-si)  
 when father-OS-ERG boy.ABS.I hit-PST.WIT.INTERR-ATTR  
 'when(ever) Father beat the boy'
- (123) *free locative adjunct relative*  
 nā babi-y-ä uži žek'-ä(-si)  
 where father-OS-ERG boy.ABS.I hit-PST.WIT.INTERR-ATTR  
 'where/wherever Father beat the boy'
- (124) *free causal adjunct relative*  
 šida babi-y-ä uži žek'-ä(-si)  
 why father-OS-ERG boy.ABS.I hit-PST.WIT.INTERR-ATTR  
 'for what(ever) reason Father beat the boy'

Free relatives with complex wh-expressions are possible but dispreferred; compare (121) and the following examples. The dispreference is particularly strong for complex wh-expressions in situ; (125b) is fully acceptable, and (125a) is questionable at best:

- (125) a. ??ħuł babi-y-ä didiw/nāsi uži žek'-ä(-si)  
           yesterday father-OS-ERG what/which boy.ABS.I hit-PST.WIT.INTERR-ATTR  
   b. didiw/nāsi uži babi-y-ä ħuł žek'-ä(-si)  
       what/which boy.ABS.I father-OS-ERG yesterday hit-PST.WIT.INTERR-ATTR  
       ‘whichever boy that Father beat yesterday’

As we mentioned earlier, the attributive suffix is optional, but so far, all our examples have featured relative clauses in the absolute noun phrase position. If a free relative is used in a position other than the absolute, the oblique attributive form has to be present. Compare (121) and (126):

- (126) ħuł babi-y-ä (šebi) žek'-ä-\*zo-)\*r  
           yesterday father-OS-ERG who/what.ABS hit-PST.WIT.INTERR-ATTR.OBL-LAT  
       ‘to the one/whom that Father beat yesterday’

An interrogative phrase inside a free relative can be omitted, but only if it is immediately recoverable from the context. This limits such omissions to core arguments of a given predicate. For example, in the sentences we used to illustrate free relatives, it is possible to omit the interrogative in the absolute object position (as in (121)) and the ergative subject position (as in (120)), because each of these positions can be recovered from the case marking of the remaining constituents and from the context. The omission of all other interrogatives, however, is judged unacceptable.

### 3.2 Contexts where definite free relatives occur

Definite free relatives are commonly found in correlative constructions. In a correlative construction, neither the relative clause nor the main clause is embedded in the other, and both clauses include explicit nominal reference to the notional head. Usually, the notional head is expressed by a full noun phrase in the relative clause, and by a pronoun in the main clause. However, in at least some languages, the relation can also be inverted. It is also possible for there to be a full noun in both clauses, or to have a pronoun in both clauses, in translation equivalents of free relatives.

The following English example illustrates the pattern. The headless relative clause *whatever proposal he made* corresponds to the anaphoric *it* in the main clause.

- (127) [Whatever proposal he made] she rejected it.

Tsez definite free relatives are widely used in correlatives, as illustrated in (128) and (129):

- (128) [Nāsi uži hič'č'a adāz Ø-ay-xo] hemes-ä ahi b-od-o.  
 which boy.ABS.I most first I-come-PRS DEM-ERG alarm.ABS.III III-do-IMPER  
 'The boy who comes first is to sound the alarm.' (lit.: which boy comes first, he is to sound the alarm)
- (129) [Šebi hič'č'a adāz Ø-ay-xo] hemes-ä ahi b-od-o.  
 wh.ABS(.I) most first I-come-PRS DEM-ERG alarm.ABS.III III-do-IMPER  
 'Whoever/he who comes first is to sound the alarm.' (lit.: who comes first, he is to sound the alarm)

Any position in a correlative can be relativized, and in that sense, correlatives are even more free than externally headed participial clauses, since they allow relativization of adnominal genitives and standards of comparison. In the following example, the anaphoric demonstrative, which does not distinguish gender in the absolute, is ambiguous between referring to the dog and to its owner:

- (130) [Nāzo uži-z γʷay-ä mi han-ä] šuλ'-ir  
 which.OBL boy-GEN2 dog-ERG 2SG.ABS bite-PST.WIT.INTERR forget-CAUS.IMPER  
 ža!  
 DEM.ABS  
 'Which boy's dog bit you, forget it/him.'

With a few exceptions, Tsez does not allow multiple wh-questions (see CH. YY [Interrogatives]), and we were unable to find multi-head correlatives of the type noted for Hungarian (Lipták 2005) and some other languages.

Definite free relatives are also found in the absolute subject position of specifical copular clauses (see CH. YY [Agreement] and CH. YY [Reflexives]). For instance, in the following example, the subject is a headless relative clause *deber yetixosi* 'one you like' (speaking of a woman, since the verb agrees with the absolute in gender II):

- (131) [Debe-r (šebi) y-eti-xo-si] mi-tow yoł.  
 2SG-LAT who.ABS(.II) II-like-PRS-ATTR 2SG.ABS-FOC be.PRS  
 SUBJECT PREDICATE  
 'Who you really like is yourself.'

Finally, free relatives can occur in all other noun phrase positions; for example:

- (132) [huł (lu) uži žek'-ä]-\*(zo) kid-no  
 yesterday who.ERG boy.ABS.I hit-PST.WIT.INTERR-ATTR.OBL.ERG girl.ABS.II-and  
 žek'-si.  
 hit-PST.WIT  
 'Whoever (that) beat the boy yesterday beat the girl too.'

- (133) Eniw [ħuł (ħu) uži žek'-ä]-zo-ħ-äy  
 mother.ABS.II yesterday who.ERG boy.ABS.I hit-PST.WIT.INTERR-ATTR.OBL-SUB-ABL  
 qʷarid y-oq-xo.  
 upset II-become-PRS  
 'Mother is upset with whoever beat the boy yesterday.'

#### 4 Free relative clauses with free choice interpretation

The notion of free choice, signaling uncertainty, indifference, or a universal implication, is expressed by concessive clauses, whose predicate is the concessive converb in *-lin*. Concessive clauses correspond to *ever-free* relatives in other languages, as attested by their English translations.

- (134) [Eni=babi-y-ä esir-lin] nes-ä esi-x  
 parents-OS-ERG ask-CONCESS.CVB DEM.I-ERG tell-IPFV.CVB  
 zow-n-ānu.  
 AUX.PST-PST.nWIT-NEG  
 'Although his parents kept asking, he would not tell.'

In concessive correlatives, the concessive clause includes a wh-word with the contrastive topic particle *-gon*, which forms free-choice (FC) expressions (see CH. YY [Particles]). Compare (134) and its free-choice free relative counterpart in (135):

- (135) [Eni=babi-y-ä dice-gon esir-lin] nes-ä  
 parents-OS-ERG how.much-FC ask-CONCESS.CVB DEM.I-ERG  
 esi-x zow-n-ānu.  
 tell-IPFV.CVB AUX.PST-PST.nWIT-NEG  
 'No matter how much his parents asked, he would not tell.' (Allahes ašuni:13)

Concessive clauses with the verb AGR-*oq-* 'become' (which is semantically quite light) represent one of the most neutral ways of encoding free-choice phrases. In such clauses, the absolute subject of AGR-*oq-* is either expressed by the interrogative, as in (140) below, or is coreferential to the absolute noun phrase in the main clause, as in (136):

- (136) [ħina-r-gon pro<sub>i</sub> r-oq-lin] bix<sub>i</sub> teħ  
 what-LAT-FC IV become-CONCESS.CVB grass.ABS.IV give.IMPER  
 nesi-r!  
 DEM.I-AT  
 'Give him hay for whatever he needs it for.' (Imnajšvili 1963:131)

Concessive clauses are headless, and they can be cross-referenced by an anaphoric expression in the main clause. For example, the concessive clause in (137) is resumed by the anaphorically interpreted *nāsin* 'all':

- (137) [Nel-ä šebi-gon r-oy-lin] nāsin gimušaw (yoł).  
 DEM.nI-ERG what.ABS.IV-FC IV-do-CONCESS.CVB all.ABS.IV tasty be.PRS  
 'Whatever she makes tastes good.' (lit.: whatever she makes all is tasty)

- (138) [la-de-gon mi Ø-iči-lin] neduga-ni-q-āy  
 who-APUD.ESS-FC 2SG.(I) I-stay-CONCESS.CVB such-DEF-POSS-ABL  
 r-iqi-xosi (yoł).  
 IV-be.gotten-PRS.PTCP AUX.PRS  
 ‘Whoever you hang out with you learn from them.’
- (139) [Nā-r-gon y-ik'i-lin] huni bit'izi r-oq-ož!  
 where-LAT-FC II-go-CONCESS.CVB road.ABS.IV smooth IV-become-OPT  
 ‘Wherever you go (speaking to a woman) have a safe journey.’
- (140) [Šebi b-oq-lin] gož'-o žedu t'o-r!  
 who.ABS(.IPL) II-become-CONCESS.CVB call-IMPER DEM.ABS(.IPL) here-LAT  
 ‘Call whoever you can.’ (a group of people including males)

Concessive relative clauses can include complex wh-expressions, as illustrated below. This property sets them apart from modal free relatives and definite free relatives, which are incompatible with such complex interrogative phrases.

- (141) [Nāsi baru y-ow-lin] neł-ko-r ſenekizi  
 which wife.ABS.II II-bring-CONCESS.CVB DEM.nI-POSS-LAT listen  
 Ø-oq.  
 I-become.IMPER  
 ‘Whichever wife you choose (lit.: take), listen to her.’

Another way of expressing free choice is by participial relatives which combine with semantically light head nouns such as ‘thing’, ‘person’, ‘place’, etc. For example:

- (142) [Q'arž'o Ø-izi-xosi] žek'u reñizi Ø-oq-xosi (yoł)  
 early I-rise-PRS.PTCP person.ABS.I prepare I-become-PRS.PTCP AUX.PRS  
 r-aq'ſu šebin r-od-a.  
 IV-many thing.ABS.IV IV-do-INF  
 ‘The early bird catches the worm.’ (lit.: a person that rises early is prepared to do many things)
- (143) [Buži(z) yäł-ru] šebin t'ubazi r-oq-xosi (yoł).  
 belief be.PRS-PST.PTCP thing.ABS.IV fulfilled IV-become-PRS.PTCP AUX.PRS  
 ‘Whatever you hope for will come true.’ (lit.: a thing that belief is in will come true)
- (144) [Allah-ä näž-ru] īina-ž' razi b-oq-a b-āy  
 God-ERG give-PST.PTCP thing.OBL-SUPER.ESS agree IPL-become-INF IPL-must  
 eli.  
 1PL.ABS.IPL  
 ‘We should accept whatever God gives us.’ (lit.: agree on the thing that God gives)

## Adverbial clauses

### 1 General remarks

The majority of Tsez adverbial clauses have a converb as their predicate. A converb is a verbal form that depends syntactically on another verb form that is not its argument. Converbs can be defined negatively as forms that can neither be the only predicate of a simple sentence, nor clausal arguments (Nedjalkov 1995: 97; Haspelmath 1995).

Tsez has a rich system of converbs. The formal marking of converbs is quite diverse, and we will discuss individual converbs below, but for the purposes of classification, two main subtypes can be recognized:

- (i) primary converbs, derived from the present tense form of the verb
- (ii) specialized converbs

Primary converbs include the perfective (completive) converb in *-n(o)* and the imperfective converb in *-x(o)*. These converbs can be used as predicates of adverbial clauses but they also combine with auxiliaries to form complex tense forms. Both these converbs have suffixes that are homophonous with the suffixes of tense forms used in independent clauses (the unwitnessed past and simple present, respectively).

Specialized converbs only occur as predicates of adverbial clauses, and they constitute the bulk of the material discussed in this chapter. Both sets of converbs can be expressed by simple and complex verbs, and some specialized converbs can be periphrastic. All converbal clauses are predicate-final, but the word order before the predicate can be relatively free and is subject to some general principles that are discussed in CH. YY [Word order].

There is clear distributional evidence that converbs constitute non-finite forms of the verb. Tsez has a series of enclitics that can combine with any category but finite verbs. These include the focus markers *-tow* and *-kin*, the topic markers *-n(o)* (plain topic) and *-gon* (contrastive topic), the coordinator *-n(o)* ‘and’, and the distributive suffix *-t'a*. These markers freely combine with converbs (although the suffix *-t'a* is more selective, co-occurring with only a subset of converbs, as we discuss below). For example:<sup>1</sup>

- |     |  |                       |                        |                |
|-----|--|-----------------------|------------------------|----------------|
| (1) | Xan-e-s  | kid-gon               | [ <i>fiyay-x-tow</i> ] | <i>fiyay-x</i> |
|     | king-OS-GEN1   | girl.ABS.II-CONTR.TOP | cry-IPFV.CVB-FOC       | cry-IPFV.CVB   |
|     | y-ič-äsi   |                       | zow-n.                 |                |
|     | II-stay-RES.PTCP   |                       | AUX.PST-nPST.WIT       |                |
|     | ‘The king’s daughter kept crying.’ (lit.: stayed crying really crying) (Qacis gulu:14) |                       |                        |                |

---

<sup>1</sup> Here and below we indicate the boundaries of converbal clauses by brackets.

- (2) B-iqir-ān-λin [neł-ä reλ'a r-egir-nosi-**gon
 III-catch-FUT.DEF-QUOT DEM.nI-ERG hand.ABS.IV IV-send-ANT.CVB-CONTR.TOP  
 t'umi b-oxi-n el-āy...  
 pigeon.ABS.III III-fly-PST.nWIT there-ABL  
 'As she reached with her hand (lit.: when she sent her hand) to catch it, the pigeon flew away...' (based on Moλu:67)**
- (3) [Ič'č'a-n y-eye-ni esi-y-ä [sasił-zaλ'or-**tow-n**] xexliλ'  
 most-and II-young-DEF sibling-OS-ERG get.dark-POST.CVB-FOC-and quickly  
 idu-γor λa-λin dařba b-ič-ir-lin]  
 home-VERS go.IMPERF-QUOT dispute.ABS.III III-stay-CAUS-CONCESS.CVB  
 neł-qo-r žedu ğenekizi r-oq-no-ānu.  
 DEM.nI-POSS-LAT DEM.PL.ABS(.nIPL) listen nIPL-become-PST.nWIT-NEG  
 'Although the youngest sister insisted (lit.: sent dispute) that they should go quickly to get home before it gets dark, they did not listen to her.' (Č'ikayn, murin, hiλun:7)

Finite verbs can be coordinated asyndetically or with such conjunctions as *amma* 'but, but never with the coordinating enclitic *-n(o)*; see also CH. YY [Coordination] and CH. YY [Particles]. Meanwhile, converbs easily combine with *-n(o)*, as shown in (3) and (55) below. This again sets converbs apart from finite verbs.

With the exception of some coordinate structures (CH.YY [Coordination]), the main way of linking event sequences in a complex sentence is through the use of converbs. Such complex sentences can include a string of converbal clauses but may have only one finite clause. Sentences formed by joining one or more converbal clauses to a finite clause are referred to as "clause chains" (Longacre 1985: 263ff.; Foley and van Valin 1984: ch. 6), a widespread phenomenon found across many languages. While clause chains are not unique to Nakh-Dagestanian, these languages make extensive use of such chains; see Good (2003) for Chechen, Nichols (2011) for Ingush, Forker (2013: Ch. 7, 21, 25) for Hinuq, Kibrik (2001: 595-612) for Bagwali, Kibrik (1999: 542-545) for Tsaxur, and Haspelmath (1993: 303-309) for Lezgian.

The clause chain structure is often reinforced by the addition of the enclitic *-n(o)* 'and' to the constituent immediately preceding the converb. For example, in

(6), *-n(o)* appears on the non-verbal part of the complex predicate, *qʷarid* 'sad', and in (22), it appears on the noun phrase *eniw* 'mother'. See also examples (27), (30), (31), (41) below, and see Forker (2013: 543) for a similar pattern in Hinuq. Care should be taken to distinguish the clause-chaining use of *n(o)* from its topic-marking function (the topic-marking *-n(o)* is not limited positionally to the immediate preverbal constituent), and from the regular 'and', which appears on two or more constituents (see also CH. YY [Particles]). The clause-chaining *-n(o)* is always optional, and its presence or absence does not correlate with the coordinate vs. subordinate status of the converbal clause in which it appears (see section 5).

In what follows, we will first present different types of converbs (sections 2 and 3), then turn to coreference across converbal clauses (section 4); we address the status of these clauses as coordinate or subordinate in section 5. In addition to the converbal clauses, clauses with masdar/in infinitival predicates and clauses with attributive predicates can also be used adverbially, and we will present such clauses in sections 6 and 7 respectively.

## 2 Converbs and their properties

### 2.1 Primary converbs

#### 2.1.1 Perfective converb

The perfective converb in *-n(o)* is probably the most frequently used member of its class; it is also, semantically, the least specified. Its form in *-n(o)* is homophonous with the unwitnessed past form in the affirmative. Under negation, the two forms differ; negative unwitnessed past has the suffix *-ānu*, but the negative perfective converb has the suffix *-inc'ey*. Only the finite form can occur in the interrogative. As we already mentioned above, only the converb can co-occur with topic and focus markers.

The converbal and finite forms also differ in their time reference; the time reference of a converbal clause is dependent on the time of the main clause, which means that a perfective converbal clause can have present or future time reference. Such time reference is impossible for finite verbs, which express exclusively the past. In (4), the future temporal reference of the converb is determined by the main predicate *biyrān*:

(4)	Elo-r	Ø-ik'i-n	neļa-s	adres
	there-LAT	I-go-PFV.CVB	DEM.nI-GEN1	address.ABS.III
	b-iy-r-ān		di.	
	III-know-CAUS-FUT.DEF		1SG.ERG	
'I will go there and find out her address.'				

In example (5) below, the event of eavesdropping, expressed by the converb *teqerno*, is in the future and takes its time reference from the purpose masdar *esanix*. Meanwhile, the main predicate *egirno* is in the unwitnessed past.

(5)	Xan-ä	wazir	Ø-egir-no	[žed-ä	elo	tel
	king-ERG	vizier.ABS.I	I-send-PST.nWIT	DEM.IPL-ERG	there	inside
	b-äd-iru	xabar-no		teq-er-no]		xizyo
	III-do-PST.PTCP	conversation.ABS.III-and		hear-CAUS-PFV.CVB		after
	nesi-q	es-ani-x].				
	DEM.I-POSS.ESS	tell-MASD-AD.ESS				
'The king sent his vizier to eavesdrop on their conversation in there so that he could tell him about it thereafter.' (Xanno, nesisgon ḫono užin:49)						

Another dissimilarity between the converb and the homophonous unwitnessed past form has to do with evidentiality. Whereas unwitnessed past refers to situations for which the speaker does not have direct evidence, the perfective converb may refer to situations where the speaker is/was present. This is particularly clear in reports about emotions and internal states. With finite verbs denoting past emotions, it is normal to use the unwitnessed form in speaking about second or third person; after all, the speaker does not have direct access to the internal state of such persons and can only make judgments about that internal state by inference. On the other hand, when

reporting one's own emotional state, the speaker can use witnessed past. Perfective conversbs are quite natural in reports of a speaker's emotions, with the finite verb appearing in the witnessed past form. For example:

- (6) [Q<sup>w</sup>arid-no y-oq-no] dä-q šebin-kin  
 sad-and II-become-PFV.CVB 1SG-POSS.ESS thing.ABS.IV-FOC  
 r-uq<sup>w</sup>ik'-a k<sup>w</sup>eze y-oq-inč'u.  
 IV-hide-INF able II-become-PST.WIT.NEG  
 'I was upset and could not hide anything.' (woman speaking)

## 2.1.2 Imperfective converb

This converb has the suffix *-x(o)*, which is homophonous with the suffix of the present tense. As with the perfective converb, this converb takes its temporal reference from the main predicate, while the temporal reference of a predicate in the present tense is specified. Imperfective converbal clauses can be combined with finite clauses whose predicates are in the past or future, and the interpretation of the converbal clause (as denoting an event that is simultaneous with the event described in the main clause) is determined by the finite verb's tense. For example, in (7), the converb bears past time reference, due to the tense of the finite predicate:

- (7) [Išam-t'a b-is-xo] caλi-n.  
 aim.ABS.III-DISTR III-take-IPFV.CVB throw-PST.nWIT  
 'He aimed and made a shot.' (Hasanno Husenno:61)

## 2.2 Specialized conversbs

Specialized converses are formed by a series of suffixes attached to the verb stem. The rules determining stem alternations are discussed in CH. YY [VERB MORPH], so in this chapter we will only focus on the suffixes used with the stem.

The majority of specialized converbs have spatial suffixes. Spatial suffixes are also used to derive adverbial expressions from nouns (see CH.YY [Adverbial phrases]), which underscores the similarity between adverbial clauses and adverbial phrases. Several converbs are formed by combining the verb stem with a suffix from the SUPER series: super-essive  $-\lambda'(o)$ , and (a suffix built upon) super-lative:  $-\lambda'o-rey$ . These converbs, illustrated for the verb ‘read’ below, have the general semantics of simultaneity. We gloss converbs in  $-\lambda'orey$  as “durative I”, in contrast with another durative form which will be presented shortly.

- (8) t'et'er- $\lambda$ 'o  
read-SIM.CVB  
'while reading'

(9) t'et'er- $\lambda$ 'orey  
read-DUR.I.CVB  
'during/in/while reading'

The suffix of the AD series  $-x(o)$  appears in the converb in  $-xoy$ , thus:

- (10) t'et'er-xoy  
 read-CAUSAL.II.CVB  
 'because X read'

A number of converbs are formed with the suffix *-za*; this suffix then combines with spatial markers, such as in-essive, super-essive, etc. Each of these *za*-based forms has a specific interpretation, although the causal converbs in *-zaλ'* and *-zaq* are used interchangeably. Thus:

- (11) t'et'er-zaλ'  
 read-CAUSAL.I.CVB (<SUPER.ESS)  
 'because one reads'
- (12) t'et'er-zaq  
 read-CAUSAL.I.CVB (<POSS.ESS)  
 'because one reads'
- (13) t'et'er-zaλ'or  
 read-POST.CVB (<SUPER-LAT)  
 'before/until reading' (see also example (3) above)

The durative converb in *-zey* is probably based on the form in *-za* as well:

- (14) t'et'er-zey  
 read-DUR.II.CVB (<SUPER-LAT)  
 'during/in/while reading'

In addition to converbs formed with spatial suffixes, Tsez has a terminative converb, formed with the suffix *-ace*, based on the equative suffix *-ce*. Thus:

- (15) t'et'r-ace  
 read-TERM.CVB  
 'till one reads; as long as one reads'

Two converbs may be diachronically related to participles. These are the immediate anterior converb in *-run* (<*ru-n*) and the anterior converb in *-nosi* (-*no-si*, where *si* is the attributive suffix).

- (16) t'et'är-un (<t'et'är-run)  
 read-IMM.CVB  
 'as soon as one reads'
- (17) t'et'er-nosi  
 read-ANT.CVB  
 'after reading'

There are three conditional converbs: non-counterfactual converb in *-näy* and counterfactual ending in *-li* and *-liri*. In the glosses, we mark the non-counterfactual converb as "conditional," without further qualification, and add CF for the other two converbs.

- (18) t'et'er-näy  
 read-COND.CVB  
 'if one reads'
- (19) a. t'et'er-li  
read-COND.CVB.CF  
 b. t'et'er-liri  
read-COND.CVB.CF  
 'if one had read'

Concessive converbs are formed by the addition of the suffix *-lin*:

- (20) t'et'er-lin  
 read-CONC.CVB  
 'although one reads/read; despite reading'

The table below summarizes the converbs presented in this section. Some converbs only occur in the affirmative, and we indicate that in the table as well. We again illustrate these converbs using the verb *t'et'r-* 'read'.

Table 1. Tsez converbs

Converb	Suffix	Occurs in the negative form	Example (affirmative/negative)
Perfective	-n(o)	Yes	t'et'er-no/t'et'r-inc'ey
Imperfective	-x(o)	No	t'et'er-xo/--
Anterior	-nosi	Yes	t'et'er-nosi/t'et'r-inc'i-nosi
Immediate anterior	-run	Yes	t'et'är-un/t'et'är-inc'i-run
Simultaneous	-λ'(o)	No	t'et'er-λ'o/--
Durative I	-λ'orey	No	t'et'er-λ'orey/--
Durative II	-zey	No	t'et'er-zey/--
Posterior	-zaλ'or	Yes	t'et'er-zaλ'or/t'et'r-inc'i-zaλ'or
Terminative	-ace	No	t'et'r-ace/--
Causal I	-zaλ'/-zaq	Yes	t'et'er-zaλ'/t'et'r-inc'i-zaλ' t'et'er-zaq/t'et'r-inc'i-zaq
Causal II	-xoy	Yes	t'et'er-xoy/t'et'r-inc'i-xoy
Conditional, non-counterfactual	-näy	Yes	t'et'er-näy/t'et'r-inc'i-näy
Conditional, counterfactual	-li/-liri	Yes	t'et'er-li(ri)/t'et'r-inc'i-li(ri)
Concessive	-lin	Yes	t'et'er-lin/t'et'r-inc'i-lin

As this table shows, temporal converbs constitute the largest portion of the Tsez converbal lexicon. In the next section, we will explore the meaning and usage of various converbs.

### 3 Types of converbal clauses based on their meaning

#### 3.1 Temporal converbal clauses

Several converbs can express temporal relations, and their relationship to the predicate of the main clause can be characterized according to two criteria: (i) is the event denoted by the converbal clause contemporaneous with the event in the main clause, or does it precede or follow that event? and (ii) is the event denoted by the converbal clause construed as durative or not?

##### 3.1.1 Clauses with perfective and imperfective converbs

As we already mentioned, the converb in *-n(o)* is semantically the most neutral form of the event converb. Although the converb itself is compleutive/perfective, it is widely used in expressing both simultaneous and sequential events. When joined to another clause, it can be rendered in English as ‘and’ (expressing simultaneity) or ‘and then’ (expressing sequentiality). For example, in (21), *-n(o)* has a clear simultaneous reading, and in (22), it has a clear sequential reading:

- (21) [fAčq<sup>f</sup>ay-n]    mekoy-xosi                yoł        xexoy-bi.  
       be.thirsty-CVB be.hungry-PRS.PTCP    be.PRS    young.animal-PL.ABS.nIPL  
       ‘The young animals are thirsty and hungry.’
- (22) [Sosi                eniw-n                goλ'i-n]                xabar                es-o.  
       at.first            mother.ABS.II-and    call-CVB            news.ABS.III    tell-IMPER  
       ‘First call Mother and then tell the news.’

Clause chains with multiple perfective converbs are extremely common, and constitute a typical way of obtaining cohesion in a narrative sequence. The following example illustrates a particularly long sentence with three perfective converbs (*rišin*, *kurno*, and *xecin*). The converbal clauses with the predicates *rišin* and *xecin* are adjoined to the main clause, and the converbal clause whose predicate is *kurno* is embedded under the converbal clause *aybi idutow xecin* ‘left the birds at home’.

- (23) [Boc'a-n                zey-bi-n                yuro                yäλ-zā  
       wolves.COLL.ABS.nIPL-and    bear-PL.ABS.nIPL-and    cattle.ABS.nIPL be.PRS-LCV.CVB  
       re<sup>č</sup>-u-λ                ay<sup>č</sup>n-ä                teł                r-iši-n]  
       calf.shed-OS-SUB.ESS    cowshed-IN.ESS                inside    nIPL-drive.into-PFV.CVB  
       [ay-bi                [giri-ma-bi-n                kur-no]                idu-tow  
       bird-PL.ABS.nIPL    pole-PL-PL.ABS.nIPL-and    throw-PFV.CVB            home-FOC  
       xeci-n]                beλi-s                čanya-bi-n                reso-bi-n  
       leave-PFV.CVB    wild.goat-GEN1                goat-PL.ABS.nIPL-and    roe-PL.ABS.nIPL-and  
       čolow                yäλ-zā                hiya-r                r-egir-no.  
       straw.ABS.IV    be.PRS-LCV.CVB                hayloft-LAT    nIPL-send-PST.nWIT  
       ‘(She) drove the wolves and bears into the calf-shed of the cow-shed where the cattle  
       were; she left the birds in the house, having put up poles, and she let the wild goats and  
       roes in the hayloft where there was straw.’ (Isis rigli:7)

In a particular subcase of its simultaneous use, the perfective converb denotes the manner in

which a given event proceeds; thus, this type of converbal clause can be used in the function of a manner adverbial. Verbs of motion are most commonly used in this function, specifying in more detail the general motion expressed by the finite verb. For example,<sup>2</sup>

- (24) a. [Uži-bi<sub>i</sub> b-et'u-n] *pro<sub>i</sub>* k'ołanay-x.  
          boy-PL.ABS.IPL      IPL-jump-PFV.CVB      run-PRS  
   b. Uži-bi<sub>i</sub> [pro<sub>i</sub> b-et'u-n] k'ołanay-x.  
       boy-PL.ABS.IPL      IPL-jump-PFV.CVB      run-PRS  
       ‘The boys are jumping up and down.’

Sometimes the expression of manner can have additional connotations as well; for instance, ‘frightened’ in (25) could be interpreted either as the manner of the running or the reason for the running:

- (25) B-<sup>č</sup>uł'-no           k'et'u           b-ox-xo.  
      III-be.afraid-PFV.CVB   cat.ABS.III   III-run-PRS  
      ‘The cat is running in fear (frightened).’

In the next example, we find a particularly long string of converbs specifying the abrupt, rapid manner of motion. The converbal string *bet'un k'ołin* is identical to the string shown in (24) (the verb *k'oł-* takes a converbal clause); it is then joined to the verb AGR-iz- ‘rise’, and the whole converbal string is associated with the main predicate:

- (26) Boc'i           b-et'u-n           k'ołi-n           b-izi-n  
      wolf.ABS.III   III-jump-PFV.CVB   run-PFV.CVB   III-rise-PFV.CVB  
      b-oxi-n           el-äy.  
      III-run-PST.nWIT   there-ABL  
      ‘The wolf jumped up and ran away.’

Some other examples illustrating converbal manner clauses are provided below. In (27), the manner converbal clause žarno yiync'ey ‘lit.: (she was) unknown to the young man’ is embedded in the perfective converbal clause with the predicate *yoqno*. Note that in this example, although the lower converbal clause denotes manner, its constituent is still marked with *-n(o)* ‘and’:

- (27) [Sasaqozox           [ža-r-no   y-iy-nč'ey]           maḥo-r-no  
      early.in.the.morning   lad-LAT-and   II-know-PFV.CVB.NEG   outside-LAT-and  
      y-oq-no]           q'orol-ä           ža-z           babiw-q           esi-n  
      II-become-PFV.CVB   widow-ERG   lad-GEN2   father-POSS.ESS   tell-PST.nWIT  
      nesi-λ'           yä'l-ru           q'warili-l-äy.  
      DEM.I-SUPER.ESS   be.PRS-PST.PTCP   sadness-CONT-ABL  
      ‘In the morning the widow slipped outside unnoticed by the young man and told his father about the woes that befell him.’ (Allahes ašuni:21)

---

<sup>2</sup> In this example, *užibi* could either be part of the converbal clause or the matrix clause; we present both schematics.

This use of perfective converbs as denoting the manner of motion allows us to characterize it as a path-incorporating language in terms of Talmy's classification of motion verb constructions (Talmy 1972, 1975, 1985, 2000; see also Croft 2003: 220-224; Rappaport Hovav and Levin 2001). Talmy's classification is based on the grammatical encoding of the two semantic components of the motion event—manner and path. The manner-incorporating type, instantiated by English, expresses manner of motion in the main verb. The path-incorporating type, exemplified by Spanish, encodes path in the main verb and encodes manner in a separate, satellite construction. Tsez is clearly a member of this type. The manner of motion is expressed primarily by perfective converbs, but occasionally, other types of converbs can serve that role as well.

In terms of word order, converbal clauses most commonly appear before the main predicate, either at the left periphery of the sentence, or as a center embedding. An example of center embedding is shown in

(23) above, where the clause with the converbal predicate *kurno* is center-embedded in another converbal clause. These are just preferences, and there are no categorical restrictions preventing a converbal clause from following the finite clause, as in the following text example:

- (28) K'et'u-z      elo      aw      yol-λin      rok'-λ'o-r-no  
 cat-GEN2      there      mouse.ABS.III be.PRS-QUOT heart-SUPER-LAT-and  
 r-ay-n      [[b-et'u-n]]      b'eλ-e-z      q'sim-λ'o-r  
 IV-come-PST.nWIT      III-jump-PFV.CVB      aper-OS-GEN2 head-SUPER-LAT  
 k'oλi-n].  
 run-PFV.CVB

'When it (the cat) saw that, it thought that it was a mouse that jumped on the aper's head.' (K'et'uš hunar:17)

The imperfective converb refers to events that occur simultaneously with the main event, which mean that it overlaps in function with the perfective converb. The main difference between the two converbs has to do with their aspectual interpretation. The imperfective converb often underscores the ongoing nature of the event. For example, in (29), the emphasis is on the event-in-progress nature of withering away, as accentuated by the adverbial phrase 'day after day':

- (29) Bečedaw      žek'u-s      [yud-λ'-āy      yud-λ'o-r      halaq'  
 rich      man-GEN1      day-POSS-ABL day-POSS-LAT emaciated  
 Ø-oq-xo]      uži      Ø-ik'i-x      zow-n.  
 I-become-IPFV.CVB      boy.ABS.I      I-go-IPFV.CVB be.PST-PST.nWIT  
 'Day after day a rich man's son continued to wither away.' (Allahes ašuni:12)

Similarly, in (30), the use of the imperfective converb emphasizes the ongoing nature of speaking; the use of the *ing*-form in the English translation is intended to reflect that. In (31), all the events are construed as punctual:

- (30) [nes-ä      muši-n      kur-no]      neļa-r      [eλi-x]  
 DEM.I-ERG      breath.ABS.III throw-PFV.CVB      DEM.nI-LAT say-IPFV.CVB  
 teq-no...]

- hear-PST.nWIT  
 ‘She heard him sigh and then heard him saying...’ (lit.: she heard as he was saying)  
 (Allahes ašuni:19)
- (31) [nes-ä muši-n kur-no] nelä-r [eλi-n]  
 DEM.I-ERG breath.ABS.III throw-PFV.CVB DEM.nI-LAT say-PFV.CVB  
 teq-no...  
 hear-PST.nWIT  
 ‘She heard how he sighed and said...’

Because imperfective converbs denote ongoing events, they are infelicitous with individual-level predicates. This kind of infelicity mirrors the English situation, in which individual-level predicates are incompatible with the progressive, cf.:

- (32) a. \*Kim is knowing mathematics/the answer.  
 b. \*The mountain was being tall.  
 c. ?Sandy was being able to lift 60 lbs.

Whereas regular present tense use of individual-level predicates is completely acceptable, these predicates are rejected in simultaneous imperfective converbal clauses; our informants offer perfective converbs (or other forms) instead. Compare the contrast between (33a) and (33b):

- (33) a. \*[Alpawit b-iy-x] pat'i-r hašiw  
 alphabet.ABS.III III-know-IPF.CVB Fatima-LAT thick  
 t'ek-ma-bi t'et'r-a r-eti-x.  
 book-OS.PL-PL.ABS.nIPL read-INF IV-like-PRS  
 b. [Alpawit b-iy-n] pat'i-r hašiw  
 alphabet.ABS.III III-know-PFV.CVB Fatima-LAT thick  
 t'ek-ma-bi t'et'r-a r-eti-x.  
 book-OS.PL-PL.ABS.nIPL read-INF IV-like-PRS  
 ‘Fatima knows the alphabet and likes to read thick books.’

Imperfective converbal clauses often include distributive expressions, primarily noun phrases or adverbs marked with the distributive suffix *-t'a* (see CH.YY [Noun phrase] for a detailed discussion of this suffix). We found 82 instances in folklore texts (Abdulaev and Abdulaev 2010) of the distributive marker *-t'a* appearing on a constituent of a converbal clause. Of these 82 occurrences, *-t'a* appeared with the imperfective converb in 68 instances (cf. example (7) above), and only in ten cases did it appear with the perfective converb. Of the other occurrences, there were three distributive phrases in the causal converbal clause, and one in the anterior converbal clause. The low numbers for causal and anterior clauses are not surprising, since their predicates are specialized, rare converbs. However, perfective and imperfective converbs have comparable frequency, so the imperfective bias of distributive expressions is quite striking. To add to these statistics, we also observed that the distributive suffix appeared on the converb itself; there were 17 instances where the suffix occurred with the imperfective converb, as illustrated in (34):<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>3</sup> In five other instances, *-t'a* occurred with the terminative converb, as in the example below:

- (34) Neła-r      r-iy-x      [babiy-ä      [uži-q-äy      b-is-xo-t'a]  
DEM.nI-LAT IV-know-PRS father-ERG boy-POSS-ABL III-take-IPFV.CVB-DISTR  
micxir                c'i-da-yor                kur-xosi  
money.ABS.III        fire-APUD-VERS                throw-PRS.PTCP  
yäл-ru-li].  
be.PRS-PST.PTCP-NMLZ  
‘She knows that father takes money from the son and throws it into fire.’  
(Debi xarži anu yedu:13)

The correlation between the event-in-progress interpretation and the presence of distributive expressions is consistent with the general semantics of distributivity, which involves a distribution of described eventualities over different locations, different times, and/or different participants. In fact, eventualities that are thought of as extended in space and/or time are often expressed by imperfectives in languages with the perfective/imperfective distinction. To put this differently, both the distributive and the imperfective have a plural/repetitive semantic component. It is therefore no accident that there is a connection between distributive marking and the imperfective converb. That, in turn, raises the question of which converbs can and cannot combine with the distributive marker. Within the primary converbs, the perfective converb is incompatible with the distributive. Compare the following examples, where the distributive expression is possible in the perfective converbal clause (35a), but actual distributive marking of the converb is ungrammatical (35b):

- (35) a. [Micxir      babiy-ä      ɬox-uyrax      c'i-da-yor-t'a  
money.ABS.III father-ERG three-four.times      fire-APUD-VERS-DISTR  
kur-no]                Ø-ik'i-n.  
throw-PFV.CVB      I-go-PST.nWIT  
‘Father threw money into the fire three or four times and left.’ (based on Debi xarži anu yedu:10)  
b. \*[Micxir      babiy-ä      ɬox-uyrax      c'i-da-yor  
money.ABS.III      father-ERG      three-four.times      fire-APUD-VERS  
kur-no-t'a]                Ø-ik'i-n.  
throw-PFV.CVB-DISTR      I-go-PST.nWIT  
‘Father threw money into the fire three or four times and left.’ (based on Debi xarži anu yedu:10)

Note that both forms, the imperfective and the perfective, are homophonous with tensed forms, so their contrast with respect to distributivity cannot be explained just by similarity to tense. Furthermore, the fact that a converb denotes an ongoing event is not sufficient to allow it to

- (i) Howži hudu žedu      xexbi      ax  
now      so      DEM.PL      children.ABS(.IPL)      stomach.ABS.IV  
r-oq-ace-t'a                b-iš-no.  
IV-become-TERM.CVB-DISTR      IPL-eat.ITR-PST.nWIT  
‘Since then, the children ate till they were full.’ (Beqes fUneyzat:81)

combine with  $-t'a$ . The durative conversbs in  $-\lambda'orey$  and  $-zey$  and the simultaneity converb in  $-\lambda'o$  do not combine with the distributive suffix either. Thus:

- (36) a. \*t'et'er- $\lambda$ 'orey-t'a  
           read-DUR.I.CVB-DISTR  
       b. \*t'et'er-zey-t'a  
           read-DUR.II.CVB-DISTR  
       c. \*t'et'er- $\lambda$ 'o-t'a  
           read-SIM.CVB-DISTR

To anticipate the facts presented below, we find that only two conversbs, imperfective and terminative, can be marked with the distributive *-t'a*.

### 3.1.2 Clauses with specialized temporal conversbs

Anterior and immediate conversbs indicate that the event expressed in the converbal clause precedes the event in the main clause. For example:



The immediate anterior converb also denotes a preceding event, but as its name suggests, it emphasizes *immediate* precedence. This is often translated with the English ‘as soon as’, as in the following example:

- (39) Ža gulu [sis čuret' b-äk'-run] hawa-λ'  
DEM horse.ABS.III one whip.ABS.III III-hit-IMM.CVB air-SUPER.ESS  
b-ik'i-n.  
III-go-PST.nWIT  
‘As soon as it received one touch of the whip, that horse would fly (lit.: go) up in the air.’  
(Qacis gulu:16)

Causal converbs can also express precedence (see also Imnajšvili 1963: 225-226). Examples (40) and (41) illustrate this use of causal converb I (in example (40), the converb is embedded in a relative clause:

- (40) [Y-eye-zaλ'] kid žäk'-inč'i-ru eni-y-ä

II-young-CAUSAL.I.CVB      girl.ABS.II      beat-NEG-PST.PRT      mother-OS-ERG  
 xizyo      nelā neļa-s      λ'ontu-bi      žek'-a      r-āy.  
 later      DEM.nI-GEN1      knee-ABS.PL.nIPL      beat-INF      nPL-must  
 'A mother who did not beat her daughter when she was little will have to beat her own knees later.'

- (41) [[Idu-r-no      Ø-ay-n      [w'aļe-r      q'īm-no      kur-no]  
 home-LAT-and      I-come-PFV.CVB      down-LAT      head.ABS.IV-and      throw-PFV.CVB  
 xediw      Ø-iči-zaq]      bar-ä      esir-no...  
 husband.ABS.I      I-stay-CAUSAL.I.CVB      wife-ERG      ask-PST.nWIT  
 'When/because the husband came home hanging his head, the wife asked...' (Eniws  
 esiw:28)

Example (42) and (43) show the temporal use of causal converb II, which is also common; the temporal interpretation of this converb is typically associated with the meaning 'as soon as':

- (42) [Ža      r-ukay-xow]      k'et'u-z      elo      aw      yoł-žin  
 DEM.ABS.IV      IV-see-CAUSAL.II.CVB      cat-GEN2      there      mouse.ABS.III be.PRS-QUOT  
 rok'-ž'o-r-no      r-ay-n      b-et'u-n      b'ež-e-z  
 heart-SUPER-LAT-and      IV-come-PST.nWIT      III-jump-PFV.CVB      aper-OS-GEN2  
 q'īm-ž'o-r      k'oži-n.  
 head-SUPER-LAT      run-PFV.CVB  
 'As soon as/because it (the cat) saw that, it thought that it was a mouse that jumped on the aper's head.' (K'et'us hunar:17)
- (43) [Di      y-ok' el-xoy-tow]      esir-a      ø-ay-si      že  
 1SG.ABS(.II)      II-tear.away-CAUSAL.II.CVB-FOC      ask-INF      I-come-PST.WIT      DEM.ABS(.I)  
 dā-z      obiz      esiy-de-r.  
 1SG-GEN2      father-GEN2      sibling-APUD-LAT  
 'As soon as I escaped he went to my father's sister to ask (for my hand in marriage).'

Turning now to simultaneous converbs, the event expressed by such a converb occurs at the same time as the event encoded in the main clause. For example:

- (44) Nes-ä      žedu ...      [r-egi-ž']      r-egir-no  
 DEM.I-ERG      DEM.PL.nIPL      nIPL-be.loose-SIM.CVB      nIPL-send-PFV.CVB  
 xec-äsi      zow-n.  
 leave-RES.PTCP      AUX.PST-PST.nWIT  
 'He left them free.' (lit.: sent them being free) (Wasiyat:3)
- (45) haži-n      q'una-n      esna-z-ä      ged-ma-bi  
 exchange-PST.nWIT      two.OBL-COLL sibling-OS.PL-ERG      garment-OS.PL-PL.ABS.nIPL  
 [huni-x      r-ik'i-ž'-tow].  
 road-AD.ESS      nIPL-go-SIM.CVB-FOC  
 'The two sisters traded dresses while on the road (as they were going on the road).' (Eniwn, Ḳonon kidno:32)

With the simultaneous converb, the "ongoing/durative" interpretation of the event is optional; durativity can be inferred, as in (45), but it is not an obligatory component of the converbal

meaning. Meanwhile, the two durative converbs specifically serve to emphasize the ongoing nature of the event they denote. For example:

- (46) Neširu                    maħo-r                    y-oq-ħ'orey,                    didiw-ħa                    ħa-s  
       in.the.evening            outside-LAT            II-become-DUR.I.CVB    which-INDEF    who-GEN1  
       yäl-ru                    r-iy-x-anu-si            r-ilē                    q'aħu-quy  
       be.PRS-PST.PTCP        IV-know-PRS-NEG-ATTR    IV-similar            noise-rumpus.ABS.IV  
       teq-no.                    hear-PST.nWIT  
       'In the evening, as she was walking outside, she heard some strange (lit.: unknown what or whose) noise.' (Isis rigli:4)
- (47) Di                        ša                        b-od-ani-x                    k'udi                        q'uq'i-ħ'orey  
       1SG.ERG                wine.ABS.III            III-do-MASD-AD.ESS    grapes.ABS.III    mix-DUR.I.CVB  
       elo        šet'u        b-ut-äsi                hadam-bi                    b-oq-si.  
       there      around      IPL-turn-RES.PTCP    person-PL.ABS.IPL    IPL-become-PST.WIT  
       'When I was mixing the grapes to prepare wine, people were standing there around (me).' (based on Xanno, nesisgon Ħono užin:81)
- (48) [[Haq-ä                Ø-ogu-n]                    heresi    mec                        esi-xosi-ni  
       mouth-IN.ESS            I-stretch-PFV.CVB        false      language.ABS.III        tell-PRS.PTCP-DEF  
       ħex-äsi                yäl-zay]                    b-uy-xo-r                mec  
       remain-RES.PTCP        be-DUR.II.CVB            III-real-AD-LAT        language.ABS.III  
       esi-xosi-ni            hal-a-r-no                Ø-oħix-no.  
       tell-PRS.PTCP-DEF      state-OS-LAT-and        I-appear-PST.nWIT  
       'While the lying one stayed with his mouth agape, the truthful one came to the rescue.'(Beliqanbi:16)

As far as we can tell, the two durative converbs have the same meaning, but their distribution is different. The form in *-zay/-zey* (durative II) occurs mainly with the verb 'be', whereas the form in *-ħ'orey* (durative I) is found elsewhere. As a result, durative I seems more common, if only because it can occur with more verbs.

Finally, two temporal converbs are used to express events that follow the event denoted by the main predicate. The most common of these is the posterior converb, illustrated in the following examples (see also example (3) above). The posterior converb denotes an event that occurs after the event expressed in the main clause:

- (49) [Ciyo-s                put                        b-agħi-zaħ'or]                    žek'u-s                ħal  
       salt-GEN1            bushel.ABS.III            III-lick-POST.CVB        man-GEN1        state.ABS.III  
       b-āy-nč'i.  
       III-know.FUT-NEG  
       'Before you choose a friend eat a bushel of salt with him.' (lit.: one will not know the man's character until they lick a bushel of salt)
- (50) [Ža                        b-ay-zaħ'or]                    Ħono-n                        esna-bi  
       DEM.ABS.III            III-come-POST.CVB        three-COLL                sibling-PL.ABS.IPL  
       iħu-n                    b-oġ-no                        taq'-a-ġor-gon  
       river.ABS.III-and     III-pull-PFV.CVB        over.there-IN-VERS-CONTR.TOP

b-ok'ɬ-äsi zow-n.  
IPL-escape-RES.PTCP AUX.PST-PST.nWIT  
'The three brothers crossed the river (lit.: pulled the river) and escaped to the other side before it (=the dragon) came.' (C'iyruk':30)

The terminative converb denotes the end point of the event expressed in the main clause, so it presupposes a tighter connection between the two events than the posterior converb does. For example, in (51), *ax roqace* ‘till the stomach is full (lit.: becomes)’ sets the end point of eating. Note that this converb, like the imperfective converb above, combines with the distributive suffix.

- (51) Howži hudu žedu xexbi ax  
 now then DEM.IPL children.ABS(.IPL) stomach.ABS.IV  
 r-oq-ace-t'a b-iš-no.  
 IV-become-TERM.CVB-DISTR IPL-eat.INTR-PST.nWIT  
 ‘After that the children ate till they were full.’ (Beqes ቅUNEYZAT:81)

Terminative and posterior converses often combine with the focus particle *-kin* (see CH. YY [Particles]), which serves to emphasize the endpoint of the event denoted by the converbal predicate. The particle *-kin* is particularly common in negative contexts, and it typically appears on a converb joined to a clause with a negative predicate. For example:

- (52) [Qah̪li b-egira-ce]-kin b-iči-nč'u.  
dawn.ABS.III III-send-TERM.CVB-FOC III-stay-PST.WIT.NEG  
‘They did not even wait till dawn.’

(53) [yudi q'aši-zaλ'or]-kin žedu bužzi  
day.abs.iv dawn-POST.CVB-FOC DEM.ABS(.IPL) believe  
b-oq-no-ānu.  
IPL-become-PST.nWIT-NEG  
‘Before the day came (lit.:dawned) they could not believe it.’

We summarize the Tsez inventory of temporal conversbs in the following table.

Table 2. Temporal conversbs

(C: event expressed by the converb; M: event expressed by the main predicate)

	<b>Relation to the event expressed in the main clause</b>	<b>Expression of an ongoing/durative event</b>
Perfective	C precedes M	No
Anterior	C precedes M	No
Immediate anterior	C precedes M	No
Imperfective	C and M are coextensive	Yes
Simultaneous	C and M are coextensive	No
Durative I	C and M are coextensive	Yes
Durative II	C and M are coextensive	Yes
Posterior	C follows M	No
Terminative	C follows M	No

### 3.2 Manner verbal clauses

There are no dedicated manner conversbs, but temporal conversbs are often used to express the manner of an event. The perfective converb is the most common predicate in manner adverbial clauses. We have already presented instances of this converb's manner use (see section 2.1.1). Sometimes, the manner reading of the perfective converb may not be fully distinguishable from the temporal reading. For instance, in the next example, we find two perfective conversbs; both can be interpreted temporally ("they ate when they sat down for a moment" and "the mirror appeared when it fell out") or as denoting manner ("they ate being seated for a moment" and "the mirror appeared by falling out"):

- (54) [Elo [ence q'ida-n b-iči-n] b-iš-λ'oräy] Ø-eye-ni  
 there a.little down-and IPL-stay-PFV.CVB IPL-eat.ITR-DUR.I.CVB I-young-DEF  
 esiw-s ham-āy č'ikay [y-<sup>s</sup>oλ'un] y-oλix-no.  
 brother-GEN1 chest-IN.ABL glass.ABS.II II-fall-PFV.CVB II-appear-PST.nWIT  
 'When they were eating seated there for a brief moment, the mirror fell out of from under the younger brother's shirt.' (Lux di yik'a yay?:23)

Imperfective conversbal clauses can also express manner; in the following example, the imperfective conversbal clause<sup>4</sup> is coordinated with the perfective converb and the frozen conversbal *retinč'ey* 'unwillingly' (from the negative perfective converb of AGR-*et-* 'want').

- (55) Ža [rok'u-n q'uq'i-x-no] [retinč'ey-no]  
 DEM.ABS(.1) heart.ABS.IV-and mix-IPFV.CVB-and unwillingly-and  
 [q'<sup>w</sup>arid-no Ø-oq-no-n] Ø-ik'i-x zow-s.  
 sad-and I-become-IPFV.CVB-and I-go-IPFV.CVB AUX.PST-PST.WIT  
 'He went grudgingly, against his will, and in sadness.'

<sup>4</sup> The idiomatic expression *rok'u q'uq'*- means 'to be reluctant'.

The imperfective converb, which is identical to or synonymous with the main predicate, can be used to express manner and/or intensity of an event. An example of such use was already presented in (1) above, where the intensity is further underscored by the use of the focus particle on the converb. Another example is shown below:

- (56) ፩Araq'i                  ካልሆ-x                  ካልሆ-s                  nes-ä.<sup>5</sup>  
      booze.ABS.III drink-IPF.CVB drink-PST.WIT DEM.I-ERG  
      ‘He got really drunk on booze.’ (lit.: he drinking drank...)

### 3.3 Converbal clauses expressing cause or reason

Two converbs form cause/reason clauses: the causal converb *-zaλ'*/*-zaq*, which is used most commonly, and the converb *-xow/xoy*, which is quite rare.<sup>6</sup> Some examples:

- (57) [Yedu q'ut'u                  teλ-xo                  b-oq-zaλ']                  yiλa-s  
      DEM jug.ABS.III give-IPF.CVB III-become-CAUSAL.I.CVB DEM.nI-GEN1  
      hunar-no                  es-o                  mi                  dä-q.  
      skill.ABS.III-and tell-IMPER                  2SG.ERG                  1SG-POSS.ESS  
      ‘Since you are selling this jug (for so much money) tell me what it does.’ (Lux di yik'a yay?10)  
(58) [Čot-no<sup>7</sup>                  dä-λ'-āy-gon                  b-ig                  b-iy-xoy]  
      counting-ABS.III-TOP 1SG-SUPER-ABL-CONTR.TOP III-well III-know-CAUSAL.II.CVB  
      magazine-y-ä                  Ø-iči                  mi.  
      store-OS-IN.ESS I-stay.IMPER                  2SG.ABS(.I)  
      ‘Since you know how to count (counting) way better than I, you stay in the store.’  
      (after Imnajšvili 1963:226)  
(59) Ža                  hoboy                  [pro                  ūmru-n                  b-eγur-zaλ']

---

<sup>5</sup> In principle, two structures could underlie this sentence; the object *ʕaraq'i* can be interpreted with either the gerund or the main predicate, thus:

- (i) [pro<sub>i</sub> ʕaraq'i<sub>k</sub>                  ካልሆ-x]                  pro<sub>k</sub>                  ካልሆ-s                  nes-ä<sub>i</sub>.  
      booze.ABS.III drink-IPF.CVB drink-PST.WIT DEM.I-ERG  
(ii) ʕaraq'i<sub>k</sub>                  [pro<sub>i</sub> pro<sub>k</sub>                  ካልሆ-x]                  ካልሆ-s                  nes-ä<sub>i</sub>.  
      booze.ABS.III drink-IPF.CVB drink-PST.WIT DEM.I-ERG

Both structures are possible in Tsez (see section 4 for more discussion), and without a more detailed analysis, including prosodic information, it is impossible to decide in favor of one or the other.

<sup>6</sup> This converb is presented in Imnajšvili (1963: 226), but we found very few instances of it in texts and speakers never offer it as their first choice.

<sup>7</sup> The word for ‘counting’ here is *čot*, from the Russian *ščjot*. Imnajšvili (1963) lists this word, but it is not included in Xalilov (1999). *Čot* and its variant *šot* are both accepted but do not seem to be widely used, and the word *ħisab* ‘math; counting’ is preferred.

- DEM.ABS(.I) thus life.ABS.III-and III-make.less-CAUSAL.I.CVB  
 parti-łe-r Ø-oq-äsi zow-s.  
 party-CONT-LAT I-become-RES.PTCP be.PST-PST.WIT  
 'So he joined the (Communist) party because he lied about his age (lit.: made his life smaller).'
- (60) Žed-ä [ža hemece Ø-eti-zaq]  
 DEM.IPL-ERG DEM.ABS(.I) so I-love-CAUSAL.I.CVB  
 λ'at'u-mo-λ'-no Ø-egir-no.  
 whim-OS-SUPER.ESS-and I-send-PST.nWIT  
 'Because they loved him they indulged his every whim (lit.: sent him up to his whim).'  
 (Debi xarži anu yedu:3)

The form in *-zaq* (but not in *-zaλ'*) is found in the set phrase *y'ay'u AGR-izizaq* 'being happy' (lit.: happiness rising), which is used without a noticeable causal interpretation. This use is illustrated in (61), where we also find a regular causal converbal clause with the predicate in *-zaλ'*:

- (61) [Idu-r saylı-λ' q'ano-n esna-bi  
 home-LAT health-SUPER.ESS two-COLL sibling-PL.ABS(.IPL)  
 b-ay-zaλ'] [y'ay'u [b-iži-zaq] eni-babiw-r  
 IPL-come-CAUSAL.I.CVB happiness.ABS.III IPL-rise-CAUSAL.I.CVB parents-LAT  
 b-iči-n] moči b-iqi-x zow-n-ānu.  
 III-stay-PFV.CVB place.ABS.III III-be.got-IPFV.CVB be.PST-PST.nWIT-NEG  
 'Because/When the brothers came home safe, their parents were so happy that they could not contain themselves.' (lit.: ... happiness, as it rose, stayed with the parents, and there was no place to be obtained) (Hasanno Husenno:64)

As these examples show, a typical position for causal clauses is either preceding the clause they are associated with, or center-embedded, as in (59) and (60). There is no categorical restriction against placing causal clauses after the main sentence, but such an order is not found in texts and is never offered as speakers' first choice.

Temporal converbs can also be used to express cause or reason. Consider the following example, which also illustrates that converbs can be coordinated, provided that they are associated with a single finite clause:

- (62) Elo-gon č'ač'ane-ł-no [yā simindi  
 there-CONTR.TOP Chechnya-CONT.ESS-TOP or corn.ABS.IV  
 r-iλ-a koλ'i-nčey] [yā b-eynod-a b-iz-a  
 IV-cutlivate-INF know-PFV.CVB.NEG or IPL-work-INF IPL-rise-INF  
 koλ'-inčey] ūrāw qwarili r-ay-si  
 know-PFV.CVB.NEG numerous hardship.ABS.IV IV-come-PST.WIT  
 axo-s.  
 stomach-GEN1  
 'And there, in Chechnya, because we did not know how to sow corn or how to run a household (lit.: to stand to work), we suffered a lot of hardship.'

### 3.4 Conditional converbal clauses

Tsez has separate converbs for non-counterfactual (factual, predictive) and counterfactual conditional clauses. Non-counterfactual conditional clauses use the converb in *-näy* (*-nāy*). For example,

- (63) [Tatanu yudi r-oq-näy] eli ker-ä-yor  
 warm day.ABS.IV IV-become-COND.CVB 1PL.ABS(.IPL) river-IN-VERS  
 esanad-a b-ik'-ān.  
 wash-INF IPL-go-FUT.DEF  
 'If it gets warm we will go swim in the river.'

Non-counterfactual conditional converbs are often found in proverbs. For example:

- (64) [Reλ'a λaλa-näy] micxir b-āqi,  
 hand.ABS.IV itch-COND.CVB money.ABS.III III-become.FUT  
 [rori λaλa-näy] huni-x Ø-āgi.  
 foot.ABS.III itch-COND.CVB road-AD.ESS I-stretch.FUT  
 'If you hand itches, you will get money; if your foot itches, you will be on the road.'  
 (65) [Allah-ä c'ax-inč'i-näy] farada-z  
 God-ERG write-PST.WIT.NEG-COND.CVB cannon-GEN2  
 hut'-ā-r kur-no-kin Ø-āxu-nč'i.  
 opening-IN-ALL throw-PFV.CVB-FOC I-die.FUT-NEG  
 'A man does not die if he is not meant to die.' (lit.: If God does not write (it), one won't die even if they throwing one into the opening of a cannon)  
 (66) [Baru kec-näy] yutku-n kāc.  
 wife.ABS.II sleep-COND.CVB house.ABS.IV sleep.FUT  
 'The home of a lazy woman suffers.' (lit.: if the wife sleeps, the house will also sleep)  
 (67) [Zaħmathi b-ikad-a b-et-inč'i-näy] moči  
 hardship.ABS.III III-see-INF III-want-NEG-COND.CVB field.ABS.III  
 b-iħ-inč'ey xec.  
 III-plant-PFV.CVB.NEG leave.IMPER  
 'If you don't want to see any hardship don't start anything.' (lit.: ... leave the field unplanted) (Khalilov 1999: 122)

The counterfactual conditional (glossed as CF) is expressed by the converb in *li* or *-liri*, where the former is probably a truncation of the latter. Compare (63) and (68):

- (68) [Tatanu yudi r-oq-li(ri)] eli ker-ä-yor  
 warm day.ABS.IV IV-become-COND.CVB.CF 1PL.ABS(.IPL) river-IN-VERS  
 esanad-a b-ik'-a zow-s.  
 wash-INF IPL-go-INF be.PST-PST.WIT  
 'If it had been warm we would have gone to swim in the river.'

The predicate of the consequent (protasis) clause in expressions of conditional meaning does not have a special form; instead, it appears in a regular tense form (past, present, future). In counterfactual conditionals, the predicate of the consequent is typically in the past tense, consider (68) above.

Although the contrast between (63) and (68) is quite clear and mirrors the difference between non-counterfactual and counterfactual conditionals in other languages, Tsez also uses the difference between the two converbs to express the likelihood of an event in the future. If a future hypothetical event is viewed as likely, the converb in *-näy* is used, but if the prospects of an event are considered dim, the counterfactual converb is called for. Compare (69) and (70). In (69), the speaker signals his assessment that his listeners are likely to desire to hear stories, whereas in (70), the speaker views the need to marry another woman as unlikely (and undesirable).

- (69) Dä-q šet'u-n b-uti-n b-iči  
 1SG-POSS.ESS around-and IPL-turn-PFV.CVB IPL-stay.IMPER  
 [[[xabar-ya-bi teqer-no] b-ič-a] r-et-äsi]  
 story-OS-PL.ABS.nIPL hear-PFV.CVB IPL-stay-INF IV-want-RES.PTCP  
 meži b-esu-näy].  
 2PL.ABS(.IPL) IPL-find-COND.CVB  
 'Stand around me if you find yourselves wanting to continue to hear stories.' (§Aliqilič:1)
- (70) [[Mi y-owa-n y-oq-inč'ey] q"uya y'anabi  
 2SG.ABS.II II-take-PFV.CVB II-be.able-PFV.CVB.NEG other woman.ABS.II  
 y-ow-liri] sosi di-n alni  
 II-take-COND.CVB.CF at.first 1SG.ERG-and embrace.ABS.III  
 b-ic'-r-er-ān.  
 III-fill-CAUS-CAUS-FUT.DEF  
 'If I cannot marry you and I marry a different woman I too will also you embrace me first.' (Xanno, nesisigon ḥono užin:105)

Example (70) illustrates yet another property of conditional converbs. In this example, there is only one conditional converb, *yowliri* 'if (I) took'; however this verbal clause also has a perfective verbal clause adjoined to it [*mi yowan yoqinč'ey*] 'unable to take you [as my wife]'.<sup>8</sup> This perfective verbal clause is interpreted under the scope of the conditional, and the result is that both eventualities, the inability to marry the addressee and the betrothal to a different woman, are conceptualized as hypothetical events. Such linking of converbs, where only one converb is marked as conditional but takes adjoined converbs under its scope, is the preferred option of expressing that several events are viewed as hypothetical or counterfactual. Further still, such linking is the only option if the two or more events are viewed as causally or temporally related, as is the case in (70), where the speaker is unable to marry the girl he loves and as a consequence has to marry another person. If two events are viewed as relatively independent of each other, then the corresponding conditional verbal clauses can be conjoined, either using the coordinator *-n(o)* 'and', or by parataxis (see section 5 for further

<sup>8</sup> See CH. YY [Clausal compl] on the use of AGR-*oq-* 'be able to' as a restructuring verb that combines with perfective or imperfective converb.

discussion of such linking). But using such converbal coordination for (70) is judged infelicitous, because the coordination of converbs leads to the perception that the two events are unrelated:

- (71) #[[Mi            y-owa-n            y-oq-inč'i-liri]-n            q'čuya  
       2SG.ABS.II    II-take-PFV.CVB    II-be.able-NEG-COND.CVB.CF-and    other  
       y'anabi       y-ow-liri]-n...  
       woman.ABS.II   II-take-COND.CVB.CF-and  
       ('If I cannot marry you, and if I marry a different woman ...')

Conditional clauses often although not always correspond to presupposed context; that context needs to be assumed in order to make predictions as to what happens next. This makes the antecedent clause of a conditional sentence similar to a topic/discourse-old expression, something that has been noted by a number of researchers (cf. Haiman 1978, Comrie 1986, Bhatt and Pancheva 2006; see also Iatridou 2000, 2013, Constant 2014 for a discussion). Conditional converbal clauses can combine with topic particles, which reinforces their topic interpretation. For example, in (72), the conditional converbal clause precedes the finite clause expressing the consequent of the respective conditional and is overtly marked as topic, which signals its discourse-old interpretation:

- (72) [B-aq'ču        micxir        b-oq-näy]-λa,        [qala-m-ä-yor-no  
       III-much/many    money.ABS.III    III-become-COND.I.CVB-TOP    fortress-OS-IN-VERS-and  
       Ø-izi-n,           Ø-ik'-ān        di                neł-dä-yor].  
       I-rise-PFV.CVB    I-go-FUT.DEF    1SG.ABS(.I)    DEM.nI-APUD-VERS  
       'If I am/were rich I would/will go up into the fortress and go to her chambers.'  
       (K'ešonad mi, pakmos ſabasi!:17)

However conditional clauses do not always express presupposed context and can be overtly marked with a focus particle as well, as shown in (73):

- (73) [B-aq'ču        micxir        b-oq-näy]-kin,        [qala-m-ä-yor-no  
       III-much/many    money.ABS.III    III-become-COND.I.CVB-TOP    fortress-OS-IN-VERS-and  
       Ø-izi-n,           Ø-ik'-ān        di                neł-dä-yor].  
       I-rise-PFV.CVB    I-go-FUT.DEF    1SG.ABS(.I)    DEM.nI-APUD-VERS  
       'Even if I were rich I would go up into the fortress and go to her chambers.' (based on  
       K'ešonad mi, pakmos ſabasi!:17)

In examples (72) and (73), the converbal clause precedes the finite clause; in this position, a converbal clause can be interpreted either as topic or as focus. Converbal conditional clauses that follow the finite clause are more restricted in their interpretation. Postverbal material in Tsez has a strong topic, discourse-old interpretation in general (see CH.YY [Word order] for a discussion). So if a conditional converbal clause, which expresses the conditional antecedent, follows the finite clause then that clause has to be interpreted as backgrounded, topic-like, given material. Such a postposed clause can receive overt topic marking, as shown in (74), but cannot be focused, as (75) illustrates. Example (74) would be most appropriate if the speaker's affluence has already been under discussion; it it has not been explicitly brought up in preceding discourse, than (72) is more felicitous.

- (74) [Qala-m-ä-yor-no Ø-izi-n, Ø-ik'-än di neł-dä-yor]  
 fortress-OS-IN-VERS-and I-rise-PFV.CVB I-go-FUT.DEF 1SG.ABS(.I) DEM.nI-APUD-VERS  
 [b-aq'su micxir b-oq-näy](‐λa).  
 III-much/many money.ABS.III III-become-COND.I.CVB-TOP  
 'If I had a lot of money/If I am/were rich I would/will go up into the fortress and go to her chambers.' (based on K'ešonad mi, pakmos ʕabasi!:17)
- (75) [Qala-m-ä-yor-no Ø-izi-n, Ø-ik'-än di neł-dä-yor]  
 fortress-OS-IN-VERS-and I-rise-PFV.CVB I-go-FUT.DEF 1SG.ABS(.I) DEM.nI-APUD-VERS  
 [b-aq'su micxir b-oq-näy](‐\*-kin).  
 III-much/many money.ABS.III III-become-COND.I.CVB-FOC  
 'If I had a lot of money/If I am/were rich I would/will go up into the fortress and go to her chambers.' (based on K'ešonad mi, pakmos ʕabasi!:17)

Conditional converbal clauses can include the adverb *nagah* ‘suddenly; unexpectedly’, which emphasizes the hypothetical nature of a given event. If this adverb is used in a conditional clause, it has to appear at the left edge of that clause. (By comparison, when it appears in other types of clauses, there are no strict constraints on its placement.) For instance:

- (76) [Nagah xalq'i-mo huni-za-x ruh-č'agoyaw  
 suddenly people-ERG road-OS.PL-AD.ESS life-living  
 šebin q'warid r-oy-x r-esu-näy]  
 thing.ABS.IV sad IV-do-IPFV.CVB IV-find-COND.CVB  
 mi ža xʷasar r-od-o.  
 2SG.ERG DEM.ABS(.IV) rescue IV-do-IMPER  
 'If perchance you find that someone starts hurting the animals on the way, come to their rescue.' (Barkat yołası hıλ'oqu:4)

The expression *behizi roqnäyi* (lit.: possible IV-become-COND) is used idiomatically in requests, with the meaning ‘please; if possible’.

Non-counterfactual and counterfactual conditional semantics can also be expressed by a finite clause with the contrastive particle *yoli* ‘however; in contrast’ (from *yol-li*, the conditional converb of the present form of ‘be’). This type of conditional is not converbal, and we discuss it in CH.YY [Coordination].

### 3.5 Concessive converbal clauses

The predicate of a concessive converbal clause bears the suffix *-lin*. For example:<sup>9</sup>

- (77) [ɿomoy hon-λ'o-r-go b-ox-ir-łin]  
 donkey.ABS.III mountain-SUPER-ALL-CONTR.TOP III-run-CAUS-CONCESS.CVB  
 iħ-ā xwari-λ'o-r b-ik'i-xosi yoł.  
 river-IN.ESS grass-SUPER-ALL III-go-PRES.PRT be.PRES

---

<sup>9</sup> See also example (3) above, which contains a concessive converbal clause.

‘A leopard cannot change its spots.’ (lit.: even if you chase a donkey over to the mountains, it will come back to the river to graze grass.)

Concessive clauses can appear both before or after the clause they adjoin to. Compare (77) and (78):

- (78) Howži biš<sup>wā</sup> r-ac'-a-kin Ø-utik'-x-ānu  
now food.ABS.IV IV-eat.TR-INF-FOC I-have.time-PRS-NEG  
[gug-yo-q r-oq-lin].  
back-OS-POSS.ESS IV-become-CONCESS.CVB  
‘Now I don’t even have the time to eat the food although it is plentiful (lit.: is upon my back).’ (Eniws esiw:75)

Concessive clauses are widely used as free-choice free relatives in correlative constructions (see CH. YY [Relative clauses]), as illustrated by the example below:

- (79) As-āy c'a-bi r-äq-inč'i [dice-gon  
sky-ABL star-PL.ABS.nIPL nIPL-be.got.FUT-NEG how.much-FC  
Ø-ezu-n Ø-iči-lin].  
I-look-PFV.CVB I-stay-CONCESS.CVB  
‘No matter how much you stare, you won’t get stars from the sky.’

Sometimes causal converbal clauses have a use similar to concessive clauses; consider example (96) below.

### 3.6 Converbal clauses in expression of comparison

Typically, comparison is expressed by noun phrases, with the standard of comparison in the super-ablative form (see Ch. YY [Adverbial phrase] and CH.YY [Adjectival phrase]). However, there are also some converbal clauses that can be used to denote the standard of comparison. Most commonly, the standard of comparison is expressed by a clause with the posterior converb as predicate. For example:

- (80) [Žek'u-z raλ'-m-ä xan-łun Ø-iči-zaλ'or]  
person-GEN2 land-OS-IN.ESS king-as I-stay-POST.CVB  
dä-z-tow raλ'-m-ä lay-łun r-igu dä-r.  
1SG-GEN2-FOC land-OS-IN.ESS slave-as IV-good 1SG-LAT  
‘I would rather be a slave in my land than the king in someone else’s land.’  
(Aliqilič:111)

### 4 Coreference across converbal clauses and word order preferences

Regardless of the type of converb, there are no restrictions on coreference between the arguments of a converbal clause and the finite clause it is adjoined to. The arguments of two or more clauses do not have to be coreferential at all, as in the following example:

- (81) [Oz-e-s oz-λ'o rok'u r-ay-nč'ey]  
 eye-OS-GEN eye-SUPER.ESS heart.ABS.IV IV-come-PFV.CVB.NEG  
 $pro_{arb}$  b-oλλ'o m'ali er-no.  
 III-middle nose.ABS.III set-PST.NEV  
 'Since the eyes could not agree with each other, they put a nose in the middle.' (lit.: the eye's heart did not come on the eye...)

It is common for subjects and objects to be in a position of advantage in controlling coreference across clauses, so instances where the subject of a perfective converbal clause is coreferential with the subject of the main clause are quite common, as in (21) through (23) above; however, this does not rule out other possibilities of coreference. If a sentence includes several converbal clauses, multiple relations of coreference can be established within it. For instance, in (82), the subject of the first converbal clause, *eženi esiw* 'the older brother', is coreferential with the possessive noun phrase *nesiq* 'to him' in the clause headed by the causal converb. The causal converbal clause is embedded in the perfective converbal clause, whose understood object is coreferential with the object of the matrix clause, *cugu* 'barrel'.

- (82) [Xizyo-gon Ø-<sup>s</sup>ež-e-ni esiw<sub>i</sub> Ø-ik'i-n] [[nesi-q<sub>i</sub>-no  
 then-CONTR.TOP I-old-DEF sibling.ABS(I) I-go-PFV.CVB DEM.I-POSS.ESS-and  
 šebin r-oq-inč'i-zaλ'] q'čim  
 thing.ABS.IV IV-become-NEG-CAUSAL.I.CVB head.ABS.IV  
 λ'iyoho-r  $pro_j$  r-ut-ir-no ] cugu<sub>j</sub> kur-no.  
 down-LAT IV-turn-CAUS-PFV.CVB barrel.ABS.IV throw-PST.nWIT  
 'Then the older brother went, and because he could not do anything (lit.: thing did not become), they turned the barrel upside down (lit.: turning the barrel down threw it).' (¶Oλno esiw, sis esiyin:26)

These examples already indicate that coreference is not sensitive to the form of the nominal; in (82), the absolute in the first converbal clause is co-indexed with the possessive in the second, causal converbal clause. Similarly, in the next example, the lative experiencer of the converbal clause *eyeni esiw* 'younger brother' is coreferential with the understood ergative subject of the main clause. In addition, the head noun of the relative clause headed by the participle *bezuxosi* (from the intransitive verb AGR-ez<sup>w</sup>- 'look') is co-indexed with the understood object of the imperfective converbal clause (*bazaryā teλxo*), which is embedded inside the relative clause.

- (83) [Ø-eye-ni esiw-r<sub>i</sub> [[bazar-y-ā pro<sub>k</sub> teλ-xo]  
 I-young-DEF sibling-LAT market-OS-IN.ESS give-IPFV.CVB  
 b-ezu-xosi] č'ikay-n<sub>k</sub> y-ukay-n]  $pro_i$  bazargan-qo  
 IPL-look.at-PRS.PTCP glass.ABS.II-and II-see-PFV.CVB merchant-POSS.ESS  
 esir-no...  
 ask-PST.nWIT  
 'The younger brother saw the mirror that was sold at the market and asked the merchant...' (lit.: saw the glass that people looked at as one was selling it at the market...) (Łux di yik'a yay?:18)

In the next sentence, the two perfective converbs indicate a sequence of events; the sequential

reading is reinforced by the connective *-n(o)* in each of the converbal clauses. The clause chain involves the same participants, Goqi and Fox. *Goqi* is the subject in the first converbal clause, where *zirä* is inside the relative clause modifying the head noun *tinaλ'no* ‘thing’ (the relative clause is shown in brackets as well). In the second converbal clause, both main participants are expressed by demonstratives, and the omitted subject in the finite clause refers to Goqi and Fox together; since Goqi is a male, the intransitive verb agrees with that omitted subject in IPL:

- (84) [Goqi<sub>i</sub> [zir-ä<sub>k</sub> äλi-ru] tinaλ'-no  
 Goqi.ABS.I fox-ERG say-PST.PTCP what-SUPER-ESS-INDEF  
 bužzi-n Ø-oq-no] [nes-ä<sub>i</sub> ža<sub>k</sub> idu-γor-no  
 believe-and I-become-PFV.CVB DEM.I-ERG DEM.ABS.III home-VERS-and  
 b-iči-n] q'čano-n sadaq pro<sub>i+k</sub> b-iči-x  
 III-lead-PFV.CVB two-COLL together IPL-stay-IPFV.CVB  
 zow-n.  
 AUX.PST-PST.nWIT  
 ‘Goqi believed what Fox said, took him home, and the two of them started living together.’ (Goqin zirun:3)

All these examples confirm that anaphoric relations across the boundaries of converbal clauses are quite free. This fact, combined with the general tendency of the language to drop noun phrases both in argument and adjunct positions, results in clause chains with multiple omitted nominal expressions. The omission can take place equally in converbal and main clauses. In sum, a converbal clause can include either a null pronominal or a demonstrative coreferential with a fully specified noun phrase in a finite clause; the opposite coreference pattern, in which a noun phrase in a converbal clause is coreferential with a null pronominal or a demonstrative in a finite clause, is equally possible.

While there are no grammatical constraints on omission, we find a strong word order preference: if an overt expression and a null pronominal are co-indexed, it is more natural for the overt expression to appear first. In other words, (85a) is preferred to (85b):

- (85) a. overt expression precedes null pronominal  
 b. null pronominal precedes overt expression

This is a manifestation of a more general dispreference for cataphora, a dispreference that Tsez shares with many other languages. Tsez also exhibits a preference for placing converbal clauses before the main clause. This is not a robust constraint (we have seen instances of the opposite order throughout this chapter), but rather a tendency. If we now combine the two tendencies (preference for anaphora over cataphora and preference for converbal-before-main clause order), two main strategies of clause linkage emerge. First, converbal clauses containing an overt noun phrase tend to be followed by main clauses containing an unexpressed coreferential noun phrase. Second, converbal clauses tend to be center-embedded (we will return to this issue in the next section). Thus:

- (86) a. [overt-expression<sub>i</sub>... CONVERB] pro<sub>i</sub> MAIN-PREDICATE  
 b. overt-expression<sub>i</sub> [pro<sub>i</sub> CONVERB] MAIN-PREDICATE

The common occurrence of (86a) may create an impression that overt nominal expressions have to occur in converbal clauses, but this tendency is simply a side effect of the preferences discussed here.

## 5 Coordination or subordination?

In the examples presented in the chapter so far, we have observed clause linkages where a single finite clause combines with one or more non-finite (converbal) clauses that linearly precede, follow, or appear center-embedded in the finite clause.

A structure with a single finite verb and a series of non-finite verbs is expected to show properties of subordination — that is, the elements should be joined in such a way that one of them is dominated by the other. Such syntactic subordination is contrasted with coordination, in which two or more elements are joined in such a way that any one element could be the head of the structure, and no single element is clearly dominant. Despite this seemingly straightforward distinction and the expectation that clause chains should be instances of clausal subordination, a number of researchers, including those who work on Nakh-Dagestanian languages, have shown that the situation with clause chains is more complex. In a nutshell, the finite/non-finite distinction is not always sufficient to identify a subordinate structure, and clause chains can have either subordination-like or coordination-like properties. In other words, overt structural asymmetry, in which one of the clauses in a sentence has a non-finite predicate, may not be sufficient to rule out coordination. For Nakh-Dagestanian languages, the difficulties inherent in determining the type of linkage in clause chains are discussed by Haspelmath (1995; 2004); van den Berg (2004); Creissels (2010); Kazenin and Testelec (2004); Jeschull (2004); Forker (2013: Ch.20-22).

To distinguish between coordination and subordination, researchers have proposed a number of criteria, some of which are presented in Table 3 below (we have excluded the criteria that are inapplicable to Tsez; for a full list of criteria, see Haspelmath 1995; Kazenin and Testelec 2004; Kwon and Polinsky 2008). As we just mentioned, however, the presence of a non-finite predicate does not necessarily qualify the structure as subordinate; this suggests that the criteria listed in Table 3 may not be absolute. At best, they should be understood as a cluster of diagnostics.

Table 3. Criteria for distinguishing coordination and subordination

	Coordination	Subordination
Overt structural asymmetry (e.g., one of the clauses has a non-finite predicate)	✗	✓
Coordinate structure constraint observed	✓	✗
Same illocutionary force in all clauses	✓	✗
Center embedding	✗	✓
Backward pronominalization	✗	✓
Gapping	✓	✗

We will start by briefly illustrating these diagnostics using English data.

(87) *Coordinate Structure Constraint* (Ross 1967)

In a coordinate structure,

- a. no conjunct may be moved,
- b. nor may any element contained in a conjunct be moved out of that conjunct

The coordinate structure constraint is supposed to be inviolable within coordinate structures, as shown by the following English example, where *who* is displaced from a coordinate noun phrase:

- (88) \*Who<sub>i</sub> did you invite [ \_\_<sub>i</sub> and Pat]?

Nevertheless, acceptable violations of the coordinate structure constraint have long been noted for English (Ross 1967, Schmerling 1975, Goldsmith 1985, Lakoff 1986, Kehler 2002). For example, extraction out of a single conjunct can occur when *and* is paraphraseable by *nonetheless*. Consider (89), where *how much* belongs only in the first conjunct:

- (89) How much<sub>i</sub> can you drink \_\_<sub>i</sub> and still stay sober?

Lakoff (1986) notes a similar type of case, in which the relationship between the conjuncts is construed as that of result. In such a case, *and* is paraphraseable by *and therefore* or *and as a result*. Again, the extraction is only out of the first conjunct:

- (90) That's the stuff<sub>i</sub> [that the guys in the Caucasus drink \_\_<sub>i</sub> and live to be a hundred].  
(Lakoff 1986), attributed to Farley)

Note that such acceptable violations are often accompanied by a mismatch in illocutionary force; for instance, in (89), one of the clauses conjoined by *and* is declarative and the other, interrogative.

Next, center embedding is ungrammatical under coordination but acceptable in subordinate structures, as shown by the following English contrast:

- (91) a. John, while everyone was talking about center embedding, fell asleep.  
b. \* John, and everyone was talking about center embedding, fell asleep.

Center embedding can be considered a particular subcase of a more general property separating coordination and subordination: under coordination, the respective positions of the joined clauses are generally fixed, whereas under subordination, they can be changed.

The difference between coordination and subordination is also observed in coreference relations. In (92), *she* and *Emma* can corefer, but in (93) such coreference is impossible. A pronoun, demonstrative or epithet in the first coordinate clause cannot be coreferential with a lexically specified noun phrase in the next coordinate clause:

- (92) When she<sub>i</sub> leaves the house Emma<sub>i</sub> always locks the door twice.  
(93) She<sub>i</sub> leaves the house and Emma<sub>k/\*i</sub> always forgets her keys.

Finally, gapping is possible under coordination, but impossible under subordination:

- (94) a. Ed will buy a Toyota and John ~~will buy~~ a Volvo  
       b. \*Ed will buy a Toyota whereas John ~~will buy~~ a Volvo

If we now attempt to apply this cluster of properties to Tsez, we find that converbal clauses are not uniform in terms of subordination/coordination. Some converbal clauses show unequivocal properties of subordination. In particular, they allow violations of the coordinate structure constraint, do not share illocutionary force with the finite clause, can be center-embedded (see (22), (27), (28), (29), (34), (39), (41), (44), (54), (55), (59), (60), (82) above), and do not permit gapping. In sentences with such converbal clauses, a non-reprise (non-echo) question can be asked of the main clause, but not the embedded clause.

The following examples serve as further illustrations. In (95), a question is asked only of the finite clause, and the converbal clause does not share polarity with the main clause:

- (95) [Maħin r-ok'-nosi] ziru-q yun-ä r-<sup>s</sup>oλ'u-x?  
      tail.ABS.IV IV-hit-ANT.CVB fox-POSS.ESS tree.ABS.IV-INTERR IV-fall-PRS  
      ‘Can the fox make the tree fall when it hits it with its tail?’ (lit.: is it the tree that falls on  
      the fox when (it) hits (its) tail (on it))  
      NOT: ‘Can the fox hit the tree with its tail, and can the tree fall?’

In (96), the wh-question is asked only of the main clause. If the two clauses were coordinated, the question below would be in violation of the coordinate structure constraint:

- (96) [Sadaq fo-n r-iž-äsi zow-zaλ’]  
      together axe.ABS.IV-and IV-carry-RES.PTCP be.PST-CAUSAL.I.CVB  
      yaq'ul-gon šida mi at'iw qaca  
      today-CONTR.TOP why 2SG.ERG wet firewood.ABS.IV  
      r-ay-r-ä?  
      IV-come-CAUS-PST.WIT.INTERR  
      ‘And today, why did you bring wet firewood? Didn’t you have your axe with you?’  
      (Onočun mamalayn: 11)

The next example shows two conditional clauses (each containing an anterior converbal clause); they are paratactically joined, and precede the main clause, which is a question (*t'ok'ow elur q'w<sup>c</sup>arili linas?* ‘from what will we have more trouble?’). Again, the polarity of the converbal clauses is different from that of the main clause:

- (97) [[Ačq<sup>c</sup>ay-nosi] ža b-äk'-z-ä haλ-ani-x  
      be.thirsty-ANT.CVB DEM.ABS(.III) III-hit-ATTR.OBL-IN.ESS drink-MASD-AD.ESS  
      li-n r-oλix-näy] [[mekoy-nosi-gon] hemedur-tow  
      water.ABS.IV-and IV-appear-COND.CVB be.hungry-ANT.CVB-CONTR.TOP so-FOC  
      bišwa-n r-iqi-näy] t'ok'ow elu-r q'w<sup>c</sup>arili  
      food.ABS.IV-and IV-be.got-COND.CVB more 1PL-LAT woe.ABS.IV  
      lina-s?  
      what-GEN1  
      ‘If drinking water appears where we hit it on the ground when we are thirsty and the food  
      likewise appears when we are hungry, what else is there to worry about?’ (Hibos hunar:27)

The examples below illustrate relativization out of a finite clause with the converbal clause inside that finite clause. Such relativization violates the coordinate structure constraint (87); the fact that this relativization is possible out of the finite clause, without a parallel extraction from the converbal clause, indicates that the converb and the finite clause are not coordinated.

- (98) a. [y<sup>w</sup>ad-ä q<sup>'w</sup>a-q<sup>'w</sup>a-q<sup>'w</sup>a-λin haraλ' b-äy-run]  
 crow-ERG caw-caw-caw-QUOT voice.ABS.III III-do-IMM.CVB  
 haqo-λ-äy reλ q<sup>'w</sup>ida-r r-<sup>s</sup>aλ'u-n.  
 mouth-SUB-ABL meat.ABS.IV down-LAT IV-fall-PST.nWIT  
 'The crow began to caw, and the meat fell out of its beak.' (V<sup>w</sup>adin, zirun:5)
- b. [[y<sup>w</sup>ad-ä q<sup>'w</sup>a-q<sup>'w</sup>a-q<sup>'w</sup>a-λin haraλ' b-äy-run]  
 crow-ERG caw-caw-caw-QUOT voice.ABS.III III-do-IMM.CVB  
 haqo-λ-äy q<sup>'w</sup>ida-r r-<sup>s</sup>aλ'-ru] reλ  
 mouth-SUB-ABL down-LAT IV-fall-PST.PTCP meat.ABS.IV  
 'the meat that fell out of its beak as soon as the crow began to caw'
- (99) a. [Elo-si li haλu-r-näy] Ø-exu-λ'o-si  
 there-ATTR water.ABS.IV drink-CAUS.COND.CVB I-die-SUPER.ESS-ATTR  
 žek'u č'agu Ø-oq-xo.  
 person.ABS.I alive I-become-PRS  
 'If you make him drink the water over there, the dying person will come alive.'  
 (Łux di yik'a yay?:12)
- b. [[elo-si li haλu-r-näy] č'agu Ø-oq-xosi]  
 there-ATTR water.ABS.IV drink-CAUS.COND.CVB alive I-become-PRS.PTCP  
 žek'u  
 person.ABS.I  
 'the person that comes alive if he is made to drink the water over there'

Backward pronominalization of the highest argument, similar to that illustrated in the English example in (92), is fully acceptable in Tsez. In (100a), the absolute subject in the converbal clause is expressed by a demonstrative, coreferential with a lexically specified noun phrase in the main clause (the reverse anaphoric dependency is shown in (100b)). In (101a), the highest argument in the lative is also expressed by a demonstrative, coreferential with a lexically specified noun phrase in the main clause.

- (100) a. [Ža<sub>i</sub> žedu-de<sub>k</sub> igo-r Ø-ay-nosi]  
 DEM.ABS(.I) DEM.IPL-APUD.ESS close-LAT I-come-ANT.CVB  
 yisi žek'-ä<sub>i</sub> pro<sub>k</sub> salam teλ-si.  
 DEM person-ERG greeting.ABS.III give-PST.WIT  
 'Having come up to them, this man greeted them.'
- b. [Žek'u<sub>i</sub> pro<sub>k</sub> igo-r Ø-ay-nosi] pro<sub>i</sub> žedu-qo-r<sub>k</sub>  
 person.ABS.I close-LAT I-come-ANT.CVB DEM.IPL-POSS-LAT  
 salam teλ-si.  
 greeting.ABS.III give-PST.WIT  
 'The man came up to them and greeted them.'
- (101) a. [Nesi-r<sub>i</sub> micxir b-esu-zaλ'] fali<sub>i</sub> siskin

- DEM.I-LAT money.ABS.III III-find-CAUSAL.I.CVB Ali.ABS.I      anyhow  
 $\emptyset$ -eynoy-nč'u.  
I-work-PST.WIT.NEG  
‘Because he found money, Ali did not work at all.’
- b. [fali-r<sub>i</sub>      micxir      b-esu-zaλ']      ža<sub>i</sub>      sis-kin  
Ali-LAT      money.ABS.III III-find-CAUSAL.I.CVB DEM.ABS(.i)      one-FOC  
 $\emptyset$ -eynoy-nč'u.  
I-work-PST.WIT.NEG  
‘Because Ali found money, he did not work at all.’

Consistent properties of subordination are found in clauses with concessive, conditional, causal, terminative, anterior, immediate anterior, and posterior predicates. We can conclude that these are bona fide adverbial clauses.

Clauses with perfective, imperfective, durative, and simultaneous converbs present a more complex picture. With respect to these converbs, the following generalization emerges: if the events denoted by a converbal clause and the main clause are perceived as causally linked, the converbal clause shows all the properties of subordination: it permits center-embedding, violation of the coordinate structure constraint, and cooccurrence with a non-reprisal (non-echo) wh-word in the main clause. If, however, the two events are viewed as parallel and unrelated to each other, the converbal clause shows all the properties of a coordinate conjunct, with the exception of the finite marking on the verb.

In principle, it is almost always possible to construe a connection between events, so the real test of the proposed generalization comes from those instances where the link between the two events is explicitly canceled. Consider a situation where one person is laughing and the other is crying; the situation is inherently ambiguous, as the two events are unrelated, but may be connected. The following sentence can be understood either to mean that Fatima is upset at Ayshat, or that Fatima is crying for another reason (or for no reason whatsoever):

- (102) [Ayšat      qoqoλ-äsi      y-oq-λ'o]      pat'i      ſiya-xosi  
Ayshat.ABS.II      laugh-RES.PTCP      II-become-SIM.CVB      Fatima.ABS.II      cry-PRS.PTCP  
(yoł).  
be.PRS  
‘Ayshat is laughing and Fatima is crying.’ (ambiguous)

If a clause with the simultaneous converb is embedded in the main clause, the causal link between the two events is emphasized; the interpretation that Fatima is crying for no reason or for reasons that have nothing to do with Ayshat is rejected.

- (103) Pat'i      [Ayšat      qoqoλ-äsi      y-oq-λ'o]  
Fatima.ABS.II      Ayshat.ABS.II      laugh-RES.PTCP      II-become-SIM.CVB  
ſiya-xosi      (yoł).  
cry-PRS.PTCP      be.PRS  
‘Fatima is crying as (because) Ayshat is laughing.’  
NOT: ‘Fatima happens to be crying while Ayshat is laughing.’

The causal interpretation is also enforced if the converbal clause appears after the finite clause, as shown below. Recall that subordination is often associated with greater positional flexibility of the embedded clause in relation to the matrix clause.

- (104) Pat'i                fiya-xosi        (yoł) [Ayšat                qoqoλ-äsi        y-oq-no].  
             Fatima.ABS.II cry-PRS.PTCP be.PRS Ayshat.ABS.II laugh-RES.PTCP II-become-PGV.CVB  
             'Fatima is crying as (because) Ayshat is/was laughing.'  
             NOT: 'Fatima happens to be crying and Ayshat is/was laughing.'

However, if the main clause contains an overt rejection of any connection between the two events, the two clauses need to be encoded as structurally parallel. In (105), the causal link between the two events is explicitly canceled, and the events expressed in these two clauses can only be construed as parallel. As a result, the converbal clause can no longer be treated as subordinate, which in turn rules out center embedding and violations of the coordinate structure constraint:

- (105) \*Pat'i                [Ayšat                qoqoλ-äsi                y-oq-λ'o]  
             Fatima.ABS.II Ayshat.ABS.II laugh-RES.PTCP II-become-SIM.CVB  
             endurtow/bahana-tow ānu-si                fiya-xosi        (yoł).  
             simply/reason-FOC be.PRS.NEG-ATTR cry-PRS.PTCP be.PRS  
             ('Fatima is crying for no reason and Ayshat is laughing.')  
 (106) \*[[Ayšat                qoqoλ-äsi        y-oq-λ'o]                endurtow/  
             Ayshat.ABS.II laugh-RES.PTCP II-become-SIM.CVB        simply  
             bahana-tow ānu-si                fiya-xosi]                kid  
             reason-FOC be.PRS.NEG-ATTR cry-PRS.PTCP                girl.ABS.II  
             ("the girl that is crying for no reason and Ayshat is laughing")

These facts, achieved through targeted elicitations, support the generalization above. To recapitulate, if two events are construed as unrelated, the structural relationship between the converbal construction and the main clause shows coordinate structure properties (with the exception of the converbal–finite distinction). If two events are viewed as related, the converbal clause has the properties of a subordinate (adjoined) structure. The overall generalization bears a striking similarity to the set of principles proposed by Kazenin and Testelec (2004).

When two events are construed as unrelated, we also observe the omission of the converb (gapping), as shown below. This type of omission is generally quite rare in Tsez, and is primarily observed with imperfective converbs, as in (107) and (108).<sup>10</sup>

---

<sup>10</sup> If speakers are offered a structure with gapping and asked to reinstate the missing verb, they always include the imperfective converb as well. In support of the general tendency to avoid gapping altogether, Testelec (1997:264) presents the following example (we modify his transcription and glossing for consistency with ours):

- (i) Q'sida Ø-āči-ru                Maħama                \*(yoł),        hečk'er  
             down I-stay-PST.PTCP        Mohammed.ABS.I        be.PRS        standing

- (107) [Dey eniw **faλ-ä** **y-iči-x]** fali-s  
     1SG.GEN1 mother.ABS.II village-IN.ESS II-stay-IPFV.CVB Ali-GEN1  
     babiw šahar-y-ä Ø-iči-xosi yoł.  
     father.ABS.I city-OS-IN.ESS I-stay-PRS.PTCP be.PRS  
     ‘My mother lives in the village, and Ali’s father, in the city.’
- (108) Eλ'i-si riλu žek'u-s **r-iči-xosi** žiλbo-si  
     last.year-ATTR field.ABS.IV person-GEN1 IV-stay-PRS.PTCP this.year-ATTR  
     riλu q'čim-e-s r-iči-xosi (yoł).  
     field.ABS.IV self-OS-GEN1 IV-stay-PRS.PTCP be.PRS  
     ‘One ploughs last year’s field for someone else, and this year’s field, for oneself.’  
     (Ečruni žek'un, foloqanawni užin:29)

The omission only works one way — omission of the converb — and therefore constitutes what is called “backward gapping.” Forward gapping, with the omission of the main verb, is completely ungrammatical:

- (109) \*[Dey eniw **faλ-ä** **y-iči-x]** fali-s  
     1SG.GEN1 mother.ABS.II village-IN.ESS II-stay-IPFV.CVB Ali-GEN1  
     babiw šahar-y-ä Ø-iči-xosi **yoł.**  
     father.ABS.I city-OS-IN.ESS I-stay-PRS.PTCP be.PRS  
     (‘My mother lives in the village, and Ali’s father, in the city.’)

One could question whether (107) or (108) are actually instances of converb omission. In principle, one could analyze these examples as instances of right node raising, where the two conjoined constituents simply share the verb, as shown in (110) (cf. Hartmann 2000; Johannessen 1998, a.o.). However, such verb sharing is not attested otherwise in Tsez. Furthermore, if the verb were shared, it should be possible to see resolved agreement in IPL gender (see CH. YY [Agreement]), but such agreement is completely ungrammatical in (110):

- (110) [Dey eniw **faλ-ä**]  
     1SG.GEN1 mother.ABS.II village-IN.ESS  
     [**fali-s** babiw šahar-y-ä]  
     Ali-GEN1 father.ABS.I city-OS-IN.ESS  
     Ø-iči-xosi/\*b-iči-xosi yoł.  
     I-stay-PRS.PTCP/IPL-stay-PRS.PTCP be.PRS  
     ‘My mother lives in the village, Ali’s father, in the city.’

Thus, sentences with perfective, imperfective, durative, and simultaneous verbal clauses can show either properties of coordination or properties of subordination. Researchers have tried to account for the unexpected mix of coordination and subordination properties in terms of a mismatch between semantic and syntactic clause linkage types (Culicover and Jackendoff 1997),

---

Ø-āči-ru                         fali                         yoł.  
   I-stay-PST.PTCP             Ali.ABS.I             be.PRS  
   ‘Mohammed is sitting and Ali is standing.’

a continuum between coordination and subordination (Foley and Van Valin 1984), and an appeal to structural ambiguity (Goodall 1987; Kazenin and Testelec 2004; Kwon and Polinsky 2008). If structural ambiguity is assumed, the choice between coordination and subordination is determined on semantic grounds (Na and Huck 1992, Kehler 2002). The structural ambiguity approach, in which a semantically or pragmatically determined choice between subordination and coordination is offered, is effective when applied to sentences such as (102) in Tsez.

Converbal–main clause combinations such as (102) either manifest all the properties associated with coordination or all the properties associated with subordination (see Table 3). We have not observed in-between cases indicative of a continuum, as has been described for other languages. In other words, the properties associated with sentences such as (103) and (105) are internally consistent. This fact, in turn, suggests that there is a regular correspondence between the semantic connection between two clauses and the structural representation of that linkage.

We can now revisit the converbs presented in Table 1 and update the list to include the data on (i) co-occurrence with the distributive suffix *-t'a*, and (ii) the way in which a given converb is linked to the main clause: via coordination or via subordination.

Table 4. Tsez converbal clauses and their main properties

Converb	Suffix	Occurs in the negative form	Combines with distributive <i>-t'a</i>	Linked to finite clause via
Perfective	-n(o)	Yes	No	Subordination/Coordination
Imperfective	-x(o)	No	Yes	Subordination/Coordination
Anterior	-nosi	Yes	No	Subordination
Immediate anterior	-run	Yes	No	Subordination
Simultaneous	-λ'(o)	No	No	Subordination/Coordination
Durative I	-λ'orey	No	No	Subordination/Coordination
Durative II	-zey	No	No	Subordination/Coordination
Posterior	-zaλ'or	Yes	No	Subordination
Terminative	-ace	No	Yes	Subordination
Causal I	-zaλ'/-zaq	Yes	No	Subordination
Causal II	-xoy	Yes	No	Subordination
Conditional, realis	-näy	Yes	No	Subordination
Conditional, irrealis	-li/-liri	Yes	No	Subordination
Concessive	-lin	Yes	No	Subordination

## 6 Masdar and infinitival clauses as purpose clauses

Masdar and infinitival clauses appear as complements of control clauses (see CH. YY [Complement Clauses]) and as relative clauses, also with a purposive interpretation (see CH.YY [Relative clauses]). These clauses are thus consistently used to express purpose and goal, and their appearance as adverbial purpose clauses is yet another manifestation of that general meaning. Infinitival and masdar purpose clauses are often observed in sentences where the main predicate is a verb of motion or existence, but they are not limited to those possibilities.

In examples (111) through (115), we observe infinitival clauses denoting purpose. As example(115) shows, the subject of the purpose clause can be different from the subject of the main clause.

- (111) Meži            l<sup>f</sup>ono-n-tow            [esir-a]            dä-de-r            nex-lin...  
       2SG.ABS        three-COLL-FOC        ask-INF        1SG-APUD-LAT come-CONCESS.CVB  
       'Although all three of you come here in order to ask me to marry (one of you)...' (Lux di yik'a yay?:5)
- (112) [Šebin            r-oγ<sup>w</sup>-a]            hor-o  
       thing.ABS.IV      IV-pull-INF        come-IMPER  
       'Come pull this out.' (Yizałay hič'č'a ixiw šebi yoł?:8)
- (113) Q<sup>w</sup>ano-n            es-na-bi            [č<sup>w</sup>ad-m-āy            micxir            b-ow-a]  
       two-COLL        sibling-PL-PL.ABS(IPL)    ruins-OS-IN.ABL        money.ABS.III    III-take-INF  
       b-ik'i-n.  
       IPL-go-PST.nWIT  
       'The two brothers went to take money from the ruins' (Aelä bečed adiru miskin žek'u:27)
- (114) Nesi-s            uži-bi            b-ik'i-n...  
       DEM.I-GEN1        boy-PL-ABS.IPL        IPL-go-PST.nWIT  
       [babıw-s            irsi            žedä žedu-ž            biλ'zi    b-od-a].  
       father-GEN1        inheritance.ABS.III        REFL.IPL-SUB.ESS        divide III-do-INF  
       'The sons went in order to divide their father's inheritance.'  
       (Xanno, nesisgon l<sup>f</sup>ono užin?:7)
- (115) [Už-ä            felmu            t'et'r-a]            babiw            dibir-qo  
       boy-ERG        science.ABS.III        study-INF        father.ABS.I        mullah-POSS.ESS  
       faq'lu            esir-si.  
       advice.ABS.III        ask-PST.WIT  
       'In order for the boy to study science, his father asked the mullah for advice.'

Masdar clauses are used more often than infinitival clauses to express purpose, perhaps because of the subtle interpretive differences between these two non-finite forms: masdars generally have a more salient interpretation of goal (see also CH. YY [Causal complements]). Masdar purpose clauses are illustrated in the following examples. As with control complements, masdar clauses cannot appear without case marking, and the most common marking is that of ad-essive or lative:

- (116) [Riya            r-od-anix-gon]            nesi-s            hibo-n            b-is-no  
       mark.ABS.IV      IV-do-MASD-AD.ESS        DEM.I-GEN1        stick.ABS.III        III-take-PFV.CVB  
       dä-qo-r            b-a.  
       1SG-POSS-LAT III-bring.IMPER  
       'Bring me his stick so that I could make a mark on it.' (Q<sup>s</sup>ay:26)

- (117) [At' r-ac'-ani-r] q<sup>7</sup>ano-n ayi  
 wheat.ABS.IV IV-eat.TR-MASD-LAT two-COLL vbird.ABS.III  
 oc-ä-r b-ay-n.  
 threshing,floor-IN-LAT III-come-PST.nWIT  
 'Two birds came to the threshing floor going to peck (lit.: eat) the wheat.' (based on Q<sup>6</sup>ay:68)
- (118) Nes-ä q<sup>7</sup>irič' nełä-z meži-λ  
 DEM.I-ERG scissors.ABS.IV DEM.nI-GEN2 bedding-SUB.ESS  
 r-uq<sup>7</sup>-si [neł-λ'o-r r-ut-ir-ani-λ-äy].  
 IV-hide-PST.WIT DEM.nI-SUPER-LAT IV-turn-CAUS-MASD-SUB-ABL  
 'He hid the scissors under her mattress so that they would suspect her (lit.: turn it upon her).' (based on Bilq'isdi:78)

In infinitival or masdar purpose clauses, the predicate can optionally combine with the quotative marker *-λin*, as for example in (119) and (120), where we use parentheses to indicate the optional status of this marker.<sup>11</sup>

- (119) Dibir-ä Q'ur?an y-uqi-n [λirba-qo-r  
 mullah-ERG Quran.ABS.II II-close-PST.nWIT guest-POSS-LAT  
 hiq'i=baq'i r-od-ani-x-(λin)].  
 greetings.ABS.nIPL nIPL-do-MASD-AD.ESS-QUOT  
 'The mullah closed the Quran so that that he could chat with the guest (lit.: do greetings).' (Bilq'isdi:51)
- (120) Žed-ä ža [q'ač'azi y-od-a-(λin)] el-āy  
 DEM.IPL-ERG DEM.ABS.(II) repair II-do-INF-QUOT here-ABL  
 xizo-r y-egär.  
 back-LAT II-send.FUT  
 'They will send it (the box) back so that it can be repaired.' (based on K'ešonad mi, pakmos ſabasi!:46)

In addition, the quotative marker appears on purpose clauses with the predicate in the definite future form, as illustrated in example (2), which we repeat below. The purpose clause *bıqırānλin* is adjoined to the converbal clause *nełä reλ'a regirnosi* 'she reached with her hand'. Such purpose clauses cannot appear without the quotative marker:

- (121) [[B-iqir-ān-\* (λin)] neł-ä reλ'a r-egir-nosi-gon]  
 III-catch-FUT.DEF-QUOT DEM.nI-ERG hand.ABS.IV IV-send-ANT.CVB-CONTR.TOP  
 t'umi b-oxi-n el-āy...  
 pigeon.ABS.III III-fly-PST.nWIT there-ABL  
 'As she reached with her hand (lit.: when she sent her hand) to catch it, the pigeon flew away...' (based on Moλu:67)

---

<sup>11</sup> This use of the quotative marker is also observed with infinitival/masdar complements of control clauses, but never with infinitival/masdar relative clauses (see CJ. YY[COMPL CL] and CH. YY[RCs]).

A similar use of the quotative in purpose clauses is observed in Hinuq, where it also appears with infinitival/masdar clauses and with the intentional future, which is a close equivalent to the Tsez future definite (see Forker 2013: 617-619).

## 7 Adverbial clauses with a participial predicate

Adverbial clauses that take a participle as predicate are not typical, but resultatives or present participles denoting an event/state concomitant with the main event are common. In that use, participles form manner or depictive adverbial clauses. For example:

- (122) [Mekod-äsi-n                        akił-äsi-n                        tatu  
       be.hungry-RES.PTCP-and    be.tired-RES.PTCP-and strength.ABS.III  
       b-ex-äsi-n]                        yeda                        elo                        tel-xo-r                Ø- ik'i-n.  
       III-die-RES.PTCP-and    DEM.I.ABS                        there                        inside-AD-LAT I-go-PST.nWIT  
       ‘Hungry, tired, and with no energy left, he went in there.’ (cf. Aliqilič:167)
- (123) ɻiyay-x-tow                        ɻiyay-xosi                idu-yor                        y-ay-s                        kid.  
       cry-IPFV.CVB-FOC                cry-PRS. PTCP home-VERS        II-come-PST.WIT                girl.ABS.II  
       ‘The girl came home crying unconsolably.’

In summary, Tsez uses its rich converbal system to express the majority of adverbial clauses, primarily temporal, manner, concessive, conditional, and causal clauses. Purpose clauses are different from the rest of the adverbial clauses because their predicates are typically masdars or infinitives. By way of summary, we present the main mappings between adverbial clause types and the mode of their expression in Tsez.

Table 5. Adverbial clauses and their mode of expression

<b>Adverbial clause type by meaning</b>	<b>Mode of expression</b>
Temporal	Clauses with temporal converbs, primary and specialized
Manner	Perfective converbal clause; imperfective converbal clause; participial clause
Cause/reason	Clauses with causal adverbs; perfective converbal clause
Purpose	Clauses with masdar or infinitival predicate
Conditional	Clauses with conditional converbs
Concessive	Clauses with concessive converbs
Comparative	Clauses with posterior converb

## The linking of finite clauses

In this chapter, we will consider sentences composed of two or more finite clauses. Such sentences are instances of clausal coordination, with or without an overt conjunction.

For coordination of noun phrases, see CH. YY [Noun phrase]; for coordination of clausal complements, see Ch. YY [Clausal complements], and for coordination vs. subordination of converbal clauses, see CH. YY [Adverbial clauses]. Coordination of finite clauses is on the rise in Tsez, probably under the influence of Russian, but it would be incorrect to attribute all of Tsez clausal coordination to that influence. An examination of older texts, including those in Imnajšvili (1963), shows that some coordination was present in the language even before Russian influence became such a significant factor. Asyndetic (paratactic) coordination is particularly prominent. This type of coordination is available for declarative, imperative, and interrogative clauses.

### 1 Asyndetic (paratactic) coordination

The following example illustrates asyndetic coordination of declarative clauses. In the first clause, the absolute noun phrase *y'utkabi* ‘houses’ appears in the right periphery; the presence of the absolute in this position unambiguously identifies the clause as finite, since embedded clauses are strictly verb-final. The subject of the first clause is coreferential with the omitted subject of the second clause:<sup>1</sup>

- (1) [Q'una-n es-na-z-ä<sub>i</sub> r-igu-t'a r-odi-n  
two-OS-COLL sibling-PL-PL.OS-ERG nIPL-good-DISTR nIPL-do-PST.nWIT  
*y'utka-bi-n]*, [paraxat fumru b-odi-x  
house-PL.ABS.nIPL-and restful life.ABS.III III-do-IPFV.CVB  
*pro<sub>i</sub> b-iči-n]*.  
IPL-stay-PST.nWIT  
‘The two brothers built nice homes and led a quiet life.’ (Miλ'i:72)

In (1), the absolute noun phrase at the end of the first finite clause appears with the enclitic –*n(o)*, which reinforces the link between this clause and the next one. Recall that –*n(o)* often appears on the immediately preverbal constituent of converbal clauses (CH. YY [Adverbial clauses]) to indicate clause linkage. When finite clauses are coordinated, –*n(o)* either appears on the very last constituent of the first clause (as in (1)), or, if the clause is verb-final, on the immediately preverbal constituent, as in the example below:

- (2) [Dey žuka qizan-no ānu], [dā-r kamuraw  
1SG.GEN1 bad family.ABS.III-and be.PRS.NEG 1SG-LAT lacking  
šebin ānu].  
thing.ABS.IV be.PRS.NEG  
‘I have a good family and I lack for nothing.’

---

<sup>1</sup> Throughout this chapter, we indicate the boundaries of conjoined finite clauses in brackets. Unless necessary for our discussion, we do not mark converbal clauses that may appear internal to finite clauses.

Two or more imperative clauses can be coordinated asyndetically, as in example (3) below, but such coordinate imperatives are dispreferred. Instead, speakers use a converbal clause adjoined to a finite imperative clause, as in (4):

- (3) [Debe-r r-äti-z-ä Ø-ik'], [fumru b-od-o].  
     2SG-LAT IV-like-ATTR.OS-IN.ESS I-go.IMPER life.ABS.III III-do-IMPER  
     ‘Go wherever you like and live (there).’
- (4) [[Debe-r r-äti-z-ä Ø-ik’i-n] fumru b-od-o].  
     2SG-LAT IV-like-ATTR.OS-IN.ESS I-go-PFV.CVB life.ABS.III III-do-IMPER  
     ‘Go wherever you like and live (there).’ (Aelä bečed adiru miskin žek’u:8)

Declarative and imperative clauses can be coordinated asyndetically, as in the example below. In such coordinations, there is often an implicit causal link between the event expressed in the declarative clause and the event expressed by the imperative, and the order is typically declarative-before-imperative.<sup>2</sup>

- (5) a. [Mi di say y-oy-s], [dä-x hor-o].  
     2SG.ABS(.II) 1SG.ERG cure II-do-PST.WIT 1SG-AD.ESS come-IMPER  
     ‘I brought you back to health, so now marry me!’ (Lux di yik’ay?:31)
- b. ??[Dä-x hor-o], [mi di say y-oy-s].  
     1SG-AD.ESS come-IMPER 2SG.ABS(.II) 1SG.ERG cure II-do-PST.WIT  
     INTENDED: ‘Marry me, because I brought you back to health.’

Examples (6) through (8) illustrate the coordination of interrogative clauses; in (6) and (8), the interrogative suffixes are expressed in each clause, but in (7) they are omitted; this omission occurs frequently regardless of coordination (see CH. YY [Interrogatives]).<sup>3</sup>

- (6) [Debe-r di y-eti-x-ä], [mi di y-ow-a yoł-ä]?  
     2SG-LAT 1SG.ABS(.II) II-love-PRS-INTERR 2SG.ERG 1SG.ABS(.II)  
     II-take-INF be.PRS-INTERR  
     ‘Do you love me, will you marry me?’ (Qacis gulu:11)
- (7) [Šebi mež-är r-oq-äsi], [lina-q meži fiyay-x]?  
     what.ABS.IV 2PL-LAT IV-become-RES.PTCP what-POSS.ESS 2PL.ABS cry-PRS  
     ‘What happened to you, why (on account of what) are you crying?’ (Aliqilič:90)

---

<sup>2</sup> It is more typical for an imperative clause to have an adjoined converbal clause; compare the following paraphrase of (5a) and see Ch. YY [Adverbial clauses] for more discussion.

(i) [Mi di say y-oy-no] [dä-x hor-o].  
     2SG.ABS(.II) 1SG.ERG cure II-do-PFV.CVB 1SG-AD.ESS come-IMPER  
     ‘I brought you back to health, marry me!’ (lit.: Me having brought you back to health, marry me)

<sup>3</sup> Note the postverbal material in each of the finite questions in (8).

The question in (8) is interpreted as an alternative question, but this is alternative interpretation is pragmatically inferred; it is not encoded in any special way in the clause:

- (8) [Mi               debez       xalq'i-mo-λ'-ä               bužzi       Ø-āq],  
   2SG.ABS(.I)   2SG-GEN2 people-OS-SUPER.ESS-INTERR believe i-become.FUT  
   [aq'iw       maħ           yoł-äsi               ensi       žek'u-λ'-ä  
   strange      smell.ABS.III be.PRS-RES.PTCP   DEM person-SUPER.ESS-INTERR  
   bužzi       Ø-āq]?  
   believe      i-become.FUT  
   ‘Are you going to believe your people or are you going to believe this man who smells of foreign lands?’ (Aliqilič:102)

If clauses connected asyndetically express events that are viewed as divergent or contrastive, the second clause can include the “viewpoint” adverbial *hudun* ‘still, nevertheless’. For example:

- (9) [Mežu-r-no   r-iy-x],               [ža               hudun           di               mežu-ł-äy  
   2PL-LAT-TOP IV-know-PRS           DEM.ABS(.IV) nevertheless 1SG.ABS.II 2PL-CONT-ABL  
   side-r       gurow       y-äq-inč'i].  
   one-LAT      except       II-become.FUT-NEG  
   ‘You know this; no matter what, I will belong to only one of you.’ (Lux di yik'a yay?:5)

Sentences with *hudun* thus resemble sentences linked by the conjunction *amma* (see section 2), and speakers often use them interchangeably, however, *hudun* is an adverb, not a conjunction and can occur in unconnected clauses just as well, as in the following example where *hudun* appears as a regular adverb inside an adjunct clause:

- (10) Zir-ä           hudun           zey           muk'ur-no           b-odi-n,  
   fox-ERG       nevertheless   bear.ABS.III   concurring-and   III-do-PFV.CVB  
   q'ano-n       žedu           hunix           r-oq-no.  
   two-ADD       DEM.ABS.(nIPL)   road-AD.ESS   nIPL-become-PST.nWIT  
   ‘Even so the fox managed to convince the bear, and the two of them got going.’ (Zirun  
   zeyn:41)

It is not always possible to tell the difference between, on the one hand, two separate finite clauses, one of which includes *hudun*, and, on the other hand, a pair of conjoined clauses with *hudun*, without assessing their prosody, so text examples may be ambiguous. Prosodically, a separate finite clause preceding the clause with *hudun* has a more pronounced falling contour than the first of a pair of conjoined clauses. Further differences may arise based on coreference rules discussed in section 4.

## 2 Syntactic coordination

The main coordinating conjunctions are *amma* ‘but’ and *ya... ya* (variant *yagi.. yagi*) ‘either or’. The use of *amma* is illustrated in the following example; note that both clauses are clearly finite, with a noun phrase in the postverbal domain in each clause:

- (11) [humukuli-λa b-ukay-nč'u elu-r] amma [neλa-s  
 camel-INDEF III-see-PST.WIT.NEG 1PL-LAT but DEM.nI-GEN1  
 sipat debe-q es-ān el-ä].  
 appearance.ABS.III 2SG-POSS.ESS tell-FUT.DEF 1PL-ERG  
 'We have not seen a camel but we can describe its appearance to you.' (Xanno, nesisgon  
 ꝑono užin:28)

The use of *ya... ya* (variant *yagi.. yagi*) is observed in disjunctive sentences; occasionally only one of the two elements of this complex conjunction is expressed.

- (12) Dice-gon bar-ä eλi-łin  
 how.much-CONTR wife-ERG say-CONSESS.CVB  
 ya [pro<sub>i</sub> qaca r-et'ur-xo zow-n-ānu]  
 or firewood.ABS.IV IV-pluck-IPFV.CVB be.PST-PST.nWIT-NEG  
 ya [pro<sub>i</sub> ɿi r-ow-a Ø-ik'i-x zow-n-ānu]  
 or water.ABS.IV IV-bring-INF I-go-IPFV.CVB be.PST-PST.nWIT-NEG  
 ya [pro<sub>i</sub> q'uya idu-zo ɬalt'-o-ko-r Ø-uti-n  
 or other home-ATTR.OS work-OS-POSS-LAT I-turn-PFV.CVB  
 Ø-ezu-x zow-n-ānu].  
 I-look-IPFV.CVB be.PST-PST.nWIT-NEG  
 'No matter what his wife said, (he) neither chopped firewood, nor brought water,  
 nor bothered to do any other housework.' (Hibos hunar:9)

The two variants of the disjunctive conjunction can also be mixed, as in the example below, where the first question has *ya*, and the second, *yagi*. This example instantiates a particularly common use of *ya... ya* as a linker between two or more interrogative clauses (compare a similar question with asyndetic coordination in (8) above):

- (13) Ya [di b-odi-xosi adab=ḥurmat-ä debe-z  
 or 1SG.ERG III-do-PRS.PTCP respect.ABS.III-INTERR 2SG-GEN2  
 rok'-e-r ſeze b-oq-inč'u] yagi  
 heart-OS-LAT enough III-become-PST.WIT.NEG or  
 [dä-z halmay-z-ä debe-r rok'-e-r r-eti-x-ānu-si  
 1SG-GEN2 friend-PL.OS-ERG 2SG-LAT heart-OS-LAT IV-like-PST-NEG-ATTR  
 ſebin-ä r-od-ä]?  
 thing.ABS.IV-INTERR IV-do-PST.WIT.INTERR  
 'Do you not feel I am giving you enough respect, or did my friends do something that  
 was not to your liking?' (Ražbadinno, Tawadin:82)

Next, two finite clauses can be joined using the complex expression *šidaλin eλili/eλiliri*, which is morphologically decomposed as follows:

- (14) šida-λin eλi-łi(ri)  
 why-QUOT say-COND.CVB.IRR  
 'if I/one were to say why'

This expression is used in the meaning of ‘because; the reason being’; for instance:

- (15) [Debi-n kid-ba-bi nełä-r howži ḥaram  
 1SG.GEN1-and girl-PL.OS-PL.ABS.NIPL DEM.nI-LAT now forbidden  
 r-oq-si], [šidaλin=eλili ža aždaħ b-exu-r-si].  
 nIPL-become-PST.WIT because DEM dragon.ABS.III III-die-CAUS-PST.WIT  
 'The dragon won't get my daughters anymore because the dragon was killed.'  
 (Aliqilič:97)

(16) [Di sabaw-ya-bi-n cax-xosi ānu],  
 1SG.ERG talisman-OS-PL.ABS.nIPL-TOP write-PRS.PTCP be.PS.NEG  
 [šidaλin=eλiliри šayt'an-z-ä dä-r faq'uba neλ-xo],  
 because devil-PL.OS-ERG 1SG-LAT torment.ABS.III give-PRS  
 amma [dey nesi-r-si sis daru yoł].  
 but 1SG.GEN1 DEM.I-LAT-ATTR one medicine.ABS.III be.PRS  
 'I don't create talismans because demons would torture me (for doing that) but I have a potion against him.' (Riynoxu:25)

Although we show *šidažin ežiliri* as part of one of the conjoined clauses, we hypothesize that it may be in the process of developing into a conjunction. Unlike *hudun*, it cannot be used adverbially and seems to be limited to its syndetic function.

### 3 The particle *-yoti* in finite clause coordination

In a special case of finite clause linkage, one of the finite clauses has its predicate marked with the enclitic particle *-yoli*. The clause with *-yoli* serves as the antecedent (protasis) of the conditional, and the other finite clause expresses the consequent (apodosis). We can represent this structure schematically as follows:

- (17) [ ... Finite Predicate-*yoli*] [ .... Finite Predicate]  
           ANTECEDENT (PROTASIS)           CONSEQUENT (APODOSIS)

The particle *-yoli* is probably a contraction of *yol-ti* ‘be.PRS-COND.CVB’, literally meaning ‘if it was/were’. It is widely used as a marker of contrastive topics, including but not limited to topics that can be marked by *as for* (Gundel 1974, 1985; Reinhart 1981; see Constant 2014: Ch. 1, for a helpful discussion of the terminology). In that particular use, *-yoli* does not combine with finite verbs, and the details of that use are presented in CH. YY [Particles]. For the current discussion, we will concentrate on cases where *-yoli* appears on finite predicates, as indicated in the schematics in (17) and as shown in (18a) and (19a).

A comparison between examples (a) and (b) in (18) (19) shows that only the examples with *-yōti* have a clear conditional interpretation. The parallel examples without that particle can be interpreted as paratactic coordinations, but the cause-effect connection between the two clauses is absent (it can of course be inferred, in an optional way), and the hypothetical reading of the events is also missing. Thus, the conditional interpretation is dependent on the presence of *-yōti*; placing the particle on a finite verb makes that a conditional, and the absence of the particle does not allow for a conditional interpretation.

- (18) a. [Dä-z č'ikay-ä mi y-uk-ar-si-yoļi]  
       1SG-GEN2 mirror-ERG 2SG.ABS(.II) II-see-CAUS-PST.WIT-COND  
       [di mi y-ow-s].  
       1SG.ERG 2SG.ABS(.II) II-take-PST.WIT  
       ‘If my mirror had shown you, I would have married you.’
- b. [Dä-z č'ikay-ä mi y-uk-ar-si],  
       1SG-GEN2 mirror-ERG 2SG.ABS(.II) II-see-CAUS-PST.WIT  
       [di mi y-ow-s].  
       1SG.ERG 2SG.ABS(.II) II-take-PST.WIT  
       ‘My mirror showed you; I married you.’
- (19) a. [Dä-z č'ikay-ä mi y-uk-ar-xo-yoļi]  
       1SG-GEN2 mirror-ERG 2SG.ABS(.II) II-see-CAUS-PRST-COND  
       [di mi y-ow-ān].  
       1SG.ERG 2SG.ABS(.II) II-take-FUT.DEF  
       ‘If my mirror shows/showed you, I will/would marry you.’
- b. [Dä-z č'ikay-ä mi y-uk-ar-xo].  
       1SG-GEN2 mirror-ERG 2SG.ABS(.II) II-see-CAUS-PST.WIT  
       [di mi y-ow-ān].  
       1SG.ERG 2SG.ABS(.II) II-take-FUT.DEF  
       ‘Mirror shows you; I will marry you.’

The particle *-yoļi* can co-occur with finite predicates in different tenses. Depending on the tense of the predicate marked with *-yoļi* and the tense of the predicate in the consequent, the conditional can be interpreted as referring to the past, present, or future. For instance, in the example below, the predicates in the consequent appears in the future tense, and the sentence can be interpreted as either counterfactual (i) or hypothetical (ii):

- (20) [Dow-qo-r b-eč'-no b-igu hibo neλ-si-yoļi],  
       2SG-POSS-LAT III-cut-PFV.CVB III-good stick.ABS.III give-PST.WIT-COND  
       [neł-ä-n ūrāw b-igu kumak b-ädi].  
       DEM.nI-ERG-and enough III-good help.ABS.III III-do.FUT  
       (i) ‘If they had cut out and given you a good stick it would also have been of great help.’  
       (ii) ‘If they cut out and gave you a good stick it would/will also be of great help.’  
       (Ečruni žek'un, ūloloqanawni užin:25)

In the following example, the predicate of the consequent is in the past tense, and the sentence has to be interpreted as counterfactual:

- (21) [Q'og-ce bix eger-si-yoļi q'ida  
       armful-EQUAT hay.ABS.IV put-PST.WIT-COND down  
       Ø-äči-z-ä] [kokoru q'iłci r-oq-xosi  
       I-stay-ATTR.OS-IN.ESS soft cushion.ABS.IV IV-become-PRS.PTCP  
       zow-s].  
       be.PST-PST.WIT  
       (i) ‘If one had put an armful of hay at the place where (I) sat, that would have made for a soft cushion.’ (Ečruni žek'un, ūloloqanawni užin:23)

NOT: (ii) ‘If one had put an armful of hay at the place where (I) sit, that would/will make for a soft cushion.’

The marking of topic and conditional by the same exponent is not unique to Tsez; such marking has been noted in several other languages, Turkish in particular (Haiman 1978).

"The most immediate connection between the syntactic categories of topic and conditional is manifested in those languages where the regular mark of the conditional is also the regular mark of the topic. I know of two languages where this identity holds. If the analysis of topics defended here is accurate, there are doubtless others ... One such language is Turkish, where the conditional suffix -sA, suffixed to an NP, establishes it as a contrastive topic." – (Haiman 1978: 577)

Just as *-yoli*, the Turkish *-sA* combines with a tensed predicate; moreover, it can be followed by agreement morphology. Haiman suggests that there is a deep similarity between conditionals and topics, and he gives the following definitions for the two to bring out their parallels:

(22) "A conditional clause is (perhaps only hypothetically) a part of the knowledge shared by the speaker and his listener. As such, it constitutes the framework which has been selected for the following discourse." (Haiman 1978: 583)

(23) "The topic represents an entity whose existence is agreed upon by the speaker and his audience. As such, it constitutes the framework which has been selected for the following discourse." (Haiman 1978: 585)

Not all conditional antecedents can be interpreted as topics or as discourse-old material, but *-yoli* is limited to those antecedents that are topical or given. This limitation is apparent from its inability to mark conditional antecedents when they are focused. Consider the following contrast. In (24), the conditional describes a set of circumstances under which the event described in the consequent can be true, and that set of circumstances can be interpreted as discourse-old, backgrounded, given information, or using Haiman's terms, as “the framework which has been selected for the following discourse”. In this context, the use of *-yoli* is accepted. In (25) and in (26), the conditional antecedent is in focus, and the use of *-yoli* is impossible (the required meaning can be expressed by a conditional converb; see CH. YY [Adverbial clauses]). Assuming that (non-contrastive) topic and (non-contrastive) focus are mutually exclusive,<sup>4</sup> the distribution shown in the examples below confirms the connection between the use of *-yoli* as a conditional marker and the topic/background status of the respective conditional clauses.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| (24) [Meži            b-ik'i-no-si<br>2PL.ABS(.IPL) IPL-go-PST-ATTR<br>'If y'all are going, I will go too.' | (yoł)-yoli]      [di-n<br>be.PRS-COND      1SG.ABS(.II)-and<br>y-āk'i].<br>II-go.FUT |
| (25) *[Meži            b-ik'i-no-si<br>2PL.ABS(.IPL) IPL-go-PST-ATTR<br>y-āk'-inč'i].                       | (yoł)-yoli]      taraw [di<br>be.PRS-COND      except 1SG.ABS(.II)                   |

---

<sup>4</sup> See Bach (1972); Lambrecht (1994); for Tsez, see also Polinsky and Potsdam (2001).

- II-go-FUT-NEG  
(‘I will not go unless y’all go.’)
- (26) \*[Meži b-ič’i-no-si (yoł)-yoł]-kin [di  
2PL.ABS(.IPL) IPL-go-PST-ATTR be.prs-COND 1SG.ABS(.II)  
y-āk’-inč’i].
- II-go-FUT-NEG  
(‘I will not go even if y’all go.’)

Further still, material appearing on the right periphery of a clause, after the finite predicate, has a strong topic/discourse-old interpretation (see CH. YY [Word order] for a detailed discussion). Conditional antecedent clauses with *-yołi* most commonly precede their consequent clauses. However such an antecedent clause can also follow the consequent; in such a case, the information expressed in the antecedent clause must be interpreted as discourse-old, given. For example, in (27b), the information in the antecedent clause (“if I do the reading”) has to be interpreted as something that has already been brought up in preceding discourse; if no such discussion has taken place, only (27a) is appropriate.

- (27) a. [Di teter-xo-yołi] [mi kayat cax-a  
1SG.ERG read-PRS-COND 2SG.ERG letter.ABS.II write-INF  
y-āy].  
II-must
- b. [Mi kayat cax-a y-āy] [di teter-xo-yołi].  
2SG.ERG letter.ABS.II write-INF II-must 1SG.ERG read-PRS-COND  
‘If I read, you have to write a/the letter.’ (presupposes a prior discussion of who does the reading)

Turning now to the contrastive component of conditionals, many conditional structures imply the choice between two contrasting scenarios: *p* and  $\neg p$ . As Constant (2014:320-321) suggests, “with few exceptions, if you utter a conditional, I can reasonably respond with ‘And if not?’” The contrastive function of *-yołi* is therefore warranted when it appears on a finite predicate of a clause that is interpreted as a conditional antecedent.

It is subject to a debate whether or not the contrastive topic marking on noun phrases is the same as the marker that appears on finite verbs to bring out the conditional interpretation; see Iatridou (2014) for a discussion of the Turkish *-sA* and some arguments against Haiman’s proposal that one and the same suffix appears in two related functions. We do not take a stand on this issue; for the ease of exposition, we gloss *-yołi* uniformly as contrastive topic (CONTR.TOP) when it appears on constituents other than finite verbs and as conditional (COND) when it appears on finite verbs. Thus:

- (28) If *-yołi* appears on a finite verb, the clause where this verb is predicate must have a conditional interpretation; in all other contexts, *-yołi* marks a contrastive topic.

We would like to emphasize that the enclitic *-yołi* is not a conjunction, nor does it form converbs. First, as we already noted, it appears on all kinds of constituents, both noun phrases and predicates. Second, clauses with *yołi*-marked predicates are clearly finite; the verb can

appear in any tense and the word order is typical of finite clauses and permits postverbal material—see examples (21) and (29)**Error! Reference source not found.**). These facts indicate that *-yoļi* is not a converbal suffix, unlike the suffixes of the conditional conversbs discussed in CH. YY [Adverbial clauses].

Finite clauses with the predicate marked with *-yoļi* do not always appear followed by an overt consequent. They can also occur as complete sentences on their own, with the material expressed in the consequent simply inferred. Compare the following example, where the implied contrast in (29) is between having and not having a wonderful leather bag; as in the examples above, without *-yoļi* the sentence would have a simple possessive interpretation in the past (“I had such a leather bag to keep food.”):

- (29) Dey-n zow-s-yoļi biš-ad-yo-qo-r hemediw  
 1SG.GEN1-and be.PST-PST.WIT-COND eat-ITER-OS-POSS-LAT such  
*ežuk’.*  
 leather.bag.ABS.IV  
 ‘If (only) I also had such a leather bag to keep food.’ (Xanes užin kidno:25)

In the minimal pair below, (30a) is a genuine yes-no question with the presupposition that nobody has the right answer. The answer to that question could be ‘yes’ or ‘no’, depending on whether it is true that the right answer is amiss or not. Meanwhile, (30b) does not require a ‘yes’ or ‘no’ answer; instead, it asks a substantive question: what should be done if nobody has the right answer? In other words, the addition of *-yoļi* turns a yes-no question into a fragment question,<sup>5</sup> with the conditional expressed and the consequent serving as the focus of the query (see Constant 2014: 350 for a similar contrast in Mandarin questions).

- (30) a. Bit’araw žawab ļa-r-kin b-iy-x-ān-ä?  
 correct answer.ABS.III someone-LAT-FOC III-know-PRS-NEG-INTERR  
 ‘Is it true that nobody knows the correct answer?’  
 b. Bit’araw žawab ļa-r-kin  
 correct answer.ABS.III someone-LAT-FOC  
*b-iy-x-ān-ä-yoļi?*  
 III-know-PRS-NEG-INTERR-COND  
 ‘What if nobody knows the correct answer?’

A finite clause expressing the consequent of a conditional often includes the word *łemu(ri)*. Consider the example below, noting that we will delay categorizing this lexical item for now and represent it in the glosses simply as LEMU:

- (31) [Neļa ziy-s īoši-s r-‘eže-gon r-‘eye-t’ā  
 DEM.nI cow-GEN1 hide-GEN1 nIPL-big-CONTR nIPL-small-DISTR  
 t’it’ur-bi r-oy-s-yoļi] [b-eže-gon b-aq’ū  
 piece-PL.ABS.nIPL nIPL-do-PST.WIT-CONTR.TOP III-big-CONTR III-many/much]

---

<sup>5</sup> A fragment or truncated question is one where there is a necessarily presupposed component which is recoverable but not expressed (cf. Constant 2014: 327).

- łemu      dä-r      micxir      b-äqi].  
 LEMU      1PL-LAT      money.ABS.III      III-become.FUT  
 ‘If I had cut the cowhide into even smaller pieces, I would have made even more money.’  
 (Q’orolas uži:62)
- (32) [Mi      sadaq      zow-s-yoli]      [q’üs-un-qo-n      sadaq  
 2SG      together      be.PST-PST.WIT-CONTR.TOP      two-POSS.ESS-TOP      together  
 b-iq-as      ža      łemu].  
 III-be.gotten-FUT      DEM.ABS(.III)      LEMU  
 ‘If you had been with me, together the two of us could have captured it (the ram).’  
 (Babiwn, užin, Okun:27)

Unlike *-yoli*, *łemu* seems to be a freestanding element, rather than an enclitic. Imnajšvili (1963:272) characterizes it as a particle occurring primarily with verbs. However, as the examples above attest, it has a broader distribution and a more defined meaning, and furthermore it does not lean on any other clausal constituent, the way enclitic particles in Tsez do (see CH.YY [Particles]). All of these facts qualify *łemu* as an adverb rather than a particle. Its placement in clauses also matches that of an adverb: it may occur at the left periphery of the clause, at the right periphery, or preverbally.

The main function of *łemu(ri)* is to indicate that a given state of affairs may hold if a given condition is met. In that general function, *łemu* is found not only in finite clauses joined with finite conditional clauses containing *-yoli*, but also in clauses joined with conditional converbal clauses with predicates in *-näy* and *-li(ri)*, and in concessive converbal clauses in *-lin* (see CH.YY [Adverbial clauses]). In all these uses, *łemu* seems to have the general function of indicating the hypothetical nature of the consequent, and we therefore propose to gloss it as ‘hypothetical consequence’ (HYP.CONS). In addition to this function, it conveys the desirability of the hypothetical event, which is why it is rejected in clauses expressing negative consequences such as (33):

- (33) [Nagaħ      mi      ža      teħ-näy]      [di  
 suddenly      2SG.ERG      DEM.ABS      give-COND.CVB      1SG.ABS(.I)  
 Ø-exu-xosi      yoł      (\*łemu)].  
 I-die-PRS.PTCP      be.PRS      HYP.CONS  
 ‘If you sold it I would die.’ (based on Babiwn, užin, Okun:47)

The following examples illustrate the use of *łemu* in the consequent of a concessive and conditional antecedent and in separate finite clauses; note that these later clauses could be interpreted as having an implicit conditional antecedent:<sup>6</sup>

- (34) [*pro<sub>i</sub>*      b-oč’č’iw      b-oq-lin]      [buq<sub>i</sub>      łemu].  
 III-cold      III-become-CONC.CVB      sun.ABS.III      HYP.CONS  
 ‘If only the sun were not so hot (lit: although cold... )’ (Xalilov 1999:173)
- (35) [Aždaħ      b-ex-ur-näy]      [kid-ba-bi      xasar

<sup>6</sup> Imnajšvili (1963:272) characterizes the use of *łemu* in separate finite clauses as conjunction-like and translates it as ‘but then; so then’ (Russ. *a to*).

- (36) dragon.ABS.III III-die-CAUS-COND.CVB girl-PL.OS-PL.ABS.nIPL safe  
 r-äq ɬemu].  
 nIPL-become.FUT HYP.CONS  
 'If the dragon were killed (lit.: if someone killed the dragon) the girls would be saved.'  
 (based on ɬAliqilič:97)

(36) ɬemu b-oɬλik'u ric'q'i xan-q-āy b-äqi.  
 HYP.CONS III-half riches.ABS.III king-POSS-ABL III-be.gotten.FUT  
 'So then half of the king's riches could become yours.' (Q<sup>c</sup>ano halmay:19)

(37) y<sup>c</sup>ay-n y-aq'<sup>c</sup>äł ɬemu.  
 milk.ABS.II-and II-increase.FUT HYP.CONS  
 'Then milk would also be more plentiful.' (Q<sup>c</sup>ay:38)

The appearance of *lemu* in a clause conjoined with another clause, where the predicate is marked with *-yoli*, is therefore a particular subcase of the more general adverbial use of *lemu(ri)*.

## 4 Coreference across conjoined finite clauses

In CH. YY [Adverbial clauses], we examined coreference across converbal clause boundaries and showed that it is quite free. In particular, a converbal clause can include either a null pronominal or a demonstrative pronoun coreferential with a fully specified noun phrase in a finite clause; the opposite coreference pattern, whereby a noun phrase in a converbal clause is coreferential with a null pronominal or demonstrative in a finite clause, is equally possible.

Coreference across coordinated finite clauses is more restricted, and we will examine it in several stages: first, with respect to subject/highest argument antecedents, and then with respect to all other antecedents. For each of these subcases, we also need to distinguish between third person arguments and pronouns expressing speech act participants.

Third persons can be denoted by a demonstrative, a null pronominal, or a fully specified noun phrase. Coreference between a demonstrative or a null pronominal subject in the first finite clause and a fully specified noun phrase, regardless of its function, in the subsequent clause is impossible—compare the following example and its English counterpart, both of which are unacceptable when they exhibit coreference between the pronoun in the first clause and a noun phrase in the second:<sup>7</sup>

- (38) [Ža/*pro<sub>i</sub>* y-ay-s], [Pat’i<sub>k</sub> fiyay-xosi yoł].  
DEM.ABS.(II) II-come-PST.WIT Fatima.ABS.II cry-PRS.PTCP be.PRS  
‘She<sub>i</sub> came and Fatima<sub>k</sub> is crying.’  
NOT: ‘Fatima<sub>k</sub> came and she<sub>k</sub> is crying.’

<sup>7</sup> In the following examples, we hold gender constant across the arguments to avoid additional disambiguation cues.

The opposite pattern is fully acceptable (the disjoint reading is also possible in this case):<sup>8</sup>

- (39) [Pat'<sup>i</sup><sub>k</sub> y-ay-s], [ža/*pro<sub>i</sub>* ſiyay-xosi yoł].  
 Fatima.ABS.II II-come-PST.WIT DEM.ABS(.II) cry-PRS.PTCP be.PRS  
 ‘Fatima<sub>k</sub> came and she<sub>k</sub> is crying.’  
 ‘Fatima<sub>k</sub> came, and she<sub>i</sub> is crying.’

The disjoint reading can be enhanced by the use of the focus particle *-tow* on the demonstrative:<sup>9</sup>

- (40) [Pat'<sup>i</sup><sub>k</sub> y-ay-s], [ža<sub>i</sub>-tow ſiyay-xosi yoł].  
 Fatima.ABS.II II-come-PST.WIT DEM.ABS(.II)-FOC cry-PRS.PTCP be.PRS  
 ‘Fatima<sub>k</sub> came and she<sub>i</sub> is crying.’

The pattern illustrated here stays the same even if the two clauses each have their highest argument expressed by a different case form. In the next sentence, the highest argument of the first finite clause is the external possessor (genitive) and the highest argument of the second clause is the absolute subject:

- (41) a. [Micxir ānu neł-qo<sub>i</sub>] amma [Pat'<sup>i</sup><sub>k</sub>  
 money.ABS.III be.PRS.NEG DEM.nI-POSS.ESS but Fatima.ABS.II  
 y-ik'-a y-āy].  
 II-must II-go-INF  
 ‘She<sub>i/k</sub> does not have money but Fatima<sub>k</sub> has to leave.’
- b. [Micxir ānu Pat'<sup>i</sup>-q<sub>k</sub>] amma [ža<sub>i</sub>  
 money.ABS.III be.PRS.NEG Fatima-POSS.ESS but DEM.ABS(.II)  
 y-ik'-a y-āy].  
 II-must II-go-INF  
 ‘Fatima<sub>k</sub> does not have money but she<sub>i/k</sub> has to leave.’

Turning now to speech act participants, they can be expressed by either overt pronouns or by null pronominals. In several examples above, we have shown that overt pronouns are repeated in both finite clauses in a clausal coordinate structure—consider (5), (6), (7), (8), and (9). It is also possible for both pronouns to be omitted in the second clause, as in example (42) below, but it is generally unacceptable to omit the first pronoun and keep the one in the subsequent finite clause(s), as shown in (43).<sup>10</sup>

<sup>8</sup> See also example (1), with the same coreference pattern; the antecedent, expressed by a noun phrase, appears in the first finite clause and is coindexed with a null pronominal in the second clause.

<sup>9</sup> See CH. YY[binding] and CH.YY[compl clauses] for similar use of the particle *-tow* in establishing coreference.

<sup>10</sup> Exceptions to this generalization have to do with what is known as “diary drop”: the omission of subject pronouns or nouns in simple declarative sentences (Haegeman 1990, 1997). In (42) and (43), we find interrogatives that do not allow such diary drop.

- (42) [Debe-*r<sub>i</sub>*      *di<sub>k</sub>*      y-eti-x-ä],      [*pro<sub>i</sub>*      *di/pro<sub>k</sub>*  
 2SG-LAT      1SG.ABS(.II)      II-love-PRS-INTERR      2SG.ERG      1SG.ABS(.II)  
 y-ow-a      yoł-ä]?  
 II-take-INF be.PRS-INTERR  
 ‘Do you love me, will you marry me?’ (cf. (6))
- (43) \**pro<sub>i</sub>*      *pro<sub>k</sub>*      y-eti-x-ä,      *mi<sub>i</sub>*      *di<sub>k</sub>*  
 2SG-LAT      1SG.ABS(.II)      II-love-PRS-INTERR      2SG.ERG      1SG.ABS(.II)  
 y-ow-a      yoł-ä?  
 II-take-INF be.PRS-INTERR  
 (‘Do you love me, will you marry me?’)

If, however, the antecedent in the first finite clause is not the subject or the highest structural argument, it can be expressed by a demonstrative or even a null pronominal coreferential with a lexically expressed noun phrase in the next clause. For example:

- (44) [Nela-r      ža<sub>i</sub>      Ø-ɻaq'cu      Ø-eti-x      zow-n],  
 DEM.nI-LAT      DEM.ABS(.I)      I-many/much      I-love-IPFV.CVB      be.PST-PST.nWIT  
 [hudun      Musa<sub>i</sub>      hiλ'ar      ānu-si      Ø-iči-x  
 nevertheless      Musa.ABS.I      care.ABS.III      be.PRS.NEG-ATTR      I-stay-IPFV.CVB  
 zow-n].  
 AUX.PST-PST.nWIT  
 ‘She was madly in love with him<sub>i</sub>; nevertheless Musa<sub>i</sub> did not pay attention to that.’  
 (Qacis gulu:7)
- (45) [Ziru      neł-ɻ'o-r<sub>i</sub>      nex-xo-yoli]      [k'et'u<sub>i</sub>  
 fox.ABS.III      DEM.nI-POSS-LAT      come-PRS-CONTR.TOP      cat.ABS.III  
 yun-o-q-āy      b-ok'-as].  
 tree-OS-POSS-ABL      III-escape-FUT  
 ‘If a fox attacks it<sub>i</sub> (lit.: comes upon it), a cat<sub>i</sub> will escape from the tree.’

In summary, the rules of coreference across finite clauses are similar to those observed in more familiar languages such as English. However, since Tsez also uses null pronominals, there are more coreference options, as illustrated in the examples above.

## Agreement and concord

### 1. General remarks

There are two domains of agreement in Tsez: the noun phrase and the clause. Within noun phrases, certain modifiers *agree* with the head noun in *gender and number*. Modifiers also show grammatical *concord* with the head noun in *case*. Within clausal syntax, the predicate and some adverbs *agree* with the absolute noun phrase in *gender and number*. In a distinct case of long-distance agreement, such predicate agreement crosses the boundary of a tensed clause.

In what follows, we will discuss these instances of agreement in turn. Before we do so, we would like to remind our readers of the morphology of agreement and the composition of gender classes in Tsez. Agreement is marked by prefixes, which are given in Table 1. The prefixes that appear on verbs, adjectives, and adverbs are the same.

Table 1. Agreement prefixes

	Singular	Plural
Gender I	Ø-	b-
Gender II	y-	
Gender III	b-	r-
Gender IV	r-	

Not only do we find syncretism among the prefixes, but we also observe that only a subset of Tsez agreeing categories show agreement overtly (see CH. YY [Verb morphology]). If we assess the percentage of agreeing categories within their respective classes, agreeing verbs, adjectives, and adverbs make up only a small proportion of total verbs, adjectives, and adverbs in the dictionary (27% of verbs, 4% of adjectives).<sup>1</sup>

However, agreeing verbs and adjectives are highly frequent. In a corpus of child-directed speech, the majority of verb types and a minority of adjective types showed agreement (i.e., 60% of the different verbs that appeared in the corpus were agreeing verbs; 35% of the different adjectives were agreeing adjectives). Within tokens (the number of occurrences), however, the majority of both verbs and adjectives showed agreement—i.e., 84% of verbal tokens and 77% of adjectival tokens agreed with an associated noun phrase (Gagliardi and Lidz 2014: 68). In our own count of adverbial types and tokens within a set of over one hundred randomly selected adverbially modified clauses from Abdulaev and Abdulaev (2010), we observed only three types that took

---

<sup>1</sup> Estimating the percentage of adverbs is challenging because many adverbial phrases are expressed either by a noun in a spatial form or by a conversal clause.

agreement (AGR-*sax̥o* ‘quickly’, AGR-*ig* ‘well’, and AGR-*ačq’u* ‘many, much, very’), and a token count of 24. These numbers indicate that Tsez makes up for the paucity of agreeing items in its lexicon by using those items quite extensively. As a result, agreement is very frequent in the language system and is highly visible to a child language learner (for the discussion of L1 agreement acquisition in Tsez, see Gagliardi and Lidz 2014).

## 2. Agreement and concord within a noun phrase

Adjectival modifiers that have an agreement prefix slot show obligatory agreement with the head noun in gender:

- (1) a. Ø-exora žek’u  
I-tall person.ABS.I  
'a tall person/man'
- b. y-exora yčanabi  
II-tall woman.ABS.II  
'a tall woman'
- c. b-exora got’i  
III-tall haystack.ABS.III  
'a high haystack'
- d. r-exora yun  
IV-tall tree.ABS.IV  
'a tall tree'
- e. b-exora uži-bi  
IPL-tall boy-PL.ABS.IPL  
'tall boys'
- f. r-exora gulu-bi  
nIPL-tall horse-PL.ABS.nIPL  
'tall horses'

If two nouns of different genders are joined in a coordinate noun phrase, the gender agreement on their modifiers must be resolved. Resolved agreement defaults to the plural (this contrasts, however, with the more complex gender agreement found among coordinate noun phrases within clauses, which will be discussed in section 3.2 below). The rules are as follows:

- (2) a. If at least one noun belongs to gender I, resolve gender agreement to I plural (IPL)
- b. If all the nouns belong to other genders, resolve gender agreement to non-I plural (nIPL)

The order of nouns within the coordinate noun phrase does not matter. However, some examples below are ambiguous; ambiguity arises when the plural gender marker on the adjective is homophonous with the singular gender marker that matches the first of the coordinated nouns. For instance, *bexora žek’ubi* in (4b) can mean ‘tall people’ on its own:

- (3) a. b-exora uži-n kid-no  
       IPL-tall boy.ABS.I-and girl.ABS.II-and  
       'tall boy and girl' /NOT 'a tall boy and a girl'  
 b. b-exora kid-no uži-n  
       IPL-tall girl.ABS.II-and boy.ABS.I-and  
       'tall girl and boy' /NOT: 'a tall girl and a boy'
- (4) a. b-exora žek'u-bi-n y'utku-n  
       IPL-tall person-ABS.IPL-and house.ABS.IV-and  
       'tall [people and house]' // 'tall people and a house'  
 b. b-exora y'utku-n žek'u-bi-n  
       IPL-tall house.ABS.IV-and person-ABS.IPL-and  
       'tall [house and people]' /NOT: 'a tall house and people'
- (5) a. r-igu t'ek-no kino-n  
       nIPL-good book.ABS.II-and movie.ABS.IV-and  
       'good [book and movie]' /NOT: 'a good book and a movie'  
 b. r-igu kino-n t'ek-no  
       nIPL-good movie.ABS.IV-and book.ABS.II-and  
       'good [movie and book]' / 'a good movie and a book'

In section 3.2, we discuss resolved vs. closest conjunct agreement on verbs agreeing with coordinate phrases and show that closest conjunct agreement is widespread. Within nouns, the agreement on the adjective is typically resolved, but occasionally one finds instances of closest conjunct agreement as well, where the modifier agrees only with the adjacent conjunct. For example, (6) may be used in the meaning of (5a). Such examples are quite rare, however, and when elicited in isolation are judged awkward or inappropriate. This finding contrasts with the pervasive closest agreement in the verbal domain.

- (6) y-edu t'ek-no kino-n  
       II-good book.ABS.II-and movie.ABS.IV-and  
       'good [book and movie]'

When two or more nouns are joined by *ya* 'or', we find a preference for repeating the adjective on each of the conjuncts, with the agreement determined only by each individual noun (7b,c); examples such as (7a) are considered awkward or confusing:

- (7) a. #r-igu ya t'ek ya kino  
       nIPL-good or book.ABS.II or movie.ABS.IV  
       ('good book or movie')  
 b. ya r-igu kino ya y-igu t'ek  
       or IV-good movie.ABS.IV or II-good book.ABS.II  
       'a good movie or a good book'  
 c. ya y-igu t'ek ya r-igu kino  
       or II-good book.ABS.II or IV-good movie.ABS.IV  
       'a good book or a good movie'

A special case of agreement is observed with two noun phrases combined paratactically in one compound noun, for example, *ħal-ruħ* ‘might (lit.: health-strength)’ or *y'ana-xedīw* ‘couple (lit.: woman-husband)’, *eni-babiw* ‘parents (lit.: mother-father)’. These compound nouns follow the agreement rules presented in (2). For example, both *ħal* and *ruħ* are gender III nouns but the compound *ħal-ruħ* is nIPL; conversely, the compounds *y'ana-xedīw* and *eni-babiw* are gender IPL, following rule (2a), since even though the words for ‘woman’ and ‘mother’ belong to gender II, the words for husband and father belong to gender I and therefore determine agreement. It may be tempting to treat such compound nouns as separate lexical items, which is not improbable for such set phrases as *y'ana-xedīw* ‘couple’ or *eni-babiw* ‘parents’. However, compounding of this sort is extremely productive, and compounds, often involving reduplication, are created quite regularly, including ones with borrowed new words, as in (12) (where *pamidor* is a borrowing from Russian) and (13).

- (8) šeħ' u=boħ' u  
[clothes.IV=clothes.IV].nIPL  
‘clothes’
- (9) muži=q'uri  
[bed.III-bench.IV].nIPL  
‘bedding’
- (10) meš(i)=kuro  
[broom.IV-washtub.IV].nIPL  
‘house cleaning supplies’
- (11) hawa=baq  
[air.IV-sun.III].nIPL  
‘weather’
- (12) hiħ'i=baq'i  
[care.III-life.III].nIPL  
‘greetings’
- (12) pamidor-mumidor  
[tomato.III-tomato.III].nIPL  
‘vegetables’
- (13) ewro-dolar  
[euro.II-dollar.II].nIPL  
‘hard currency’

Since speakers use this model very productively, it is unlikely that all such compound nouns can be listed in the lexicon. In light of the productivity of this pattern, it may make sense to treat at least the more occasional compounds as paratactic noun phrases, whose agreement is determined by the regular rules presented in (2) above. However, these compound nouns never trigger closest conjunct agreement with an adjective (as in (6) above) or with the verb (as will be discussed in section 3.2), and this sets them apart from regular coordinate noun phrases.

Concord within the noun phrase is based on the binary distinction between absolute case and all other forms of the head noun. The following modifiers have direct and oblique forms: attributives in *-si*; some demonstratives (see CH. YY for details); numerals, and adnominal genitives. For attributives and adnominal genitives, the direct/oblique distinction is associated

with the markers *-s-* and *-z-* respectively (glossed as ATTR). In demonstratives and numerals, the marking of this distinction is more varied. Consider some examples below, and see also CH. YY [Noun phrase] for more examples and discussion.

(14) *concord in attributive adjectives*

- a. huday-λ'-ay-si(-ni) mužmar  
next-SUPER-ABL-ATTR-DEF Friday.prayer.ABS.III  
'(the) next Friday prayer'
- b. huday-λ'-ay-zo-ni mužmar-λ'o  
next-SUPER-ABL-ATTR.OS-DEF Friday.prayer-SUPER.ESS  
'at the next Friday prayer'

(15) *concord in adnominal genitives* (GEN1 vs. GEN2)

- |                 |               |            |              |
|-----------------|---------------|------------|--------------|
| Gamuš-yo-z-ä    | aḥozi-z       | oz-äy      | is-e-s       |
| ox-OS-PL.OS-ERG | shepherd-GEN2 | eye-IN.ABL | bull-OS-GEN1 |
| c'iyu           | y-oý-no.      |            |              |
- shoulder.blade.ABS.II II-pull-PST.nWIT

'The oxen pulled the bull's shoulder-blade out of the shepherd's eye.'

(based on Yizałay hič'č'a ixiw šebi yoł?:10)

(16) *concord in numerals*

- a. oc'ino ḥono saṣat  
ten three hour.ABS.III  
'thirteen hours'
- b. oc'ira ḥora saṣat-y-ä  
ten.OS three.OS hour-OS-IN.ESS  
'in thirteen hours'

(17) *concord in demonstratives*

- a. yedu gulu  
DEM horse.ABS.III  
'this horse'
- b. yiła gulu-λ'  
DEM.OS horse-SUPER.ESS  
'on this horse'

### 3. Agreement within the clause

#### 3.1. Agreement is always with the absolutive

As mentioned above, verbs and agreeing predicative complements (and those adverbs that can show overt agreement) all agree with the absolutive argument—the sole argument of an intransitive verb and the object of a verb with two or more arguments. Any other agreement is

ungrammatical, as is the absence of agreement if an agreement slot is present.<sup>2</sup> Such agreement is therefore never optional. For example:

- (18) *intransitive verb*

Isi	*(y)-ay-s.
snow.ABS.II	II-come-PST.WIT
'It snowed.'	

- (19) *transitive verb*

Uži-z-ä	t'ek	y-is-si/*b-is-si/*is-si.
boy-PL.OS-ERG	book.ABS.II	II-take-PST.WIT/*IPL-take-PST.WIT/take-PST.WIT
'The boys bought a book.'		

Predicative adjectives agree with the absolutive argument as well; if the verb the predicative adjective combines with also has an agreement slot, the verb shows agreement too.

- (20) Yedu      halt'i      b-ṣeye      ānu.
- DEM.nI      work.ABS.III      III-small      be.PRS.NEG
- 'This work is not light.'

If the predicative complement is expressed by a participle, that participle agrees with the absolutive it selects. Thus, an intransitive participle agrees with the absolutive subject of the clause it is derived from, and a transitive or ditransitive participle agrees with its verb's absolutive object (see CH. YY [Relative clauses] for details).

- (21) a. Nesi-r      šebin      r-ig      r-iy-x.
- DEM.I-LAT      thing.ABS.IV      IV-well      IV-know-PRS
- 'He is knowledgeable.' (lit.: knows things well)
- b. [šebin      r-ig      r-iy-xosi]      žek'u
- thing.ABS.IV      IV-well      IV-know-PRS.PTCP      person
- 'the person who is knowledgeable (knows things well)'
- (22) a. K'et'-ä      aw-bi      r-iqir-si/riqir-xo.
- cat-ERG      mouse-PL.ABS.nIPL      nIPL-catch-PST.WIT/nIPL-catch-PRS
- 'The cat caught/catches mice.'
- b. [k'et'-ä      r-iqä-ru/r-iqir-xosi]      awbi
- cat-ERG      nIPL-catch-PST.PTCP/nIPL-catch-PRS.PTCP      mice
- '(the) mice that the cat caught/catches'
- c. [aw-bi      r-iqä-ru/r-iqir-xosi]      k'et'u
- mouse- ABS.PL.nIPL      nIPL-catch-PST.PTCP/nIPL-catch-PRS.PTCP      cat
- 'the cat that caught/catches mice'

If a participial clause, with or without its constituents, appears as a predicative complement, it retains the agreement marking of the corresponding finite verb. For example, in (23), the

---

<sup>2</sup> In the singular, the absence of agreement can be construed as marking gender I, whose agreement marker is null.

predicate is *riyxosi oqsi*. The corresponding verb AGR-*oq-* agrees with the absolute subject ‘this student’ in gender I, but the participle maintains the agreement form determined by the corresponding finite clause in (21b):<sup>3</sup>

- (23) Ža c’alduqan r-ig r-iy-xosi Ø-oq-si.  
DEM student.ABS.(I) IV-well IV-know-PRS.PTCP I-become-PST.WIT  
‘This (male) student became very knowledgeable.’

Likewise, the following statement about a cat’s hunting talents includes a participle that continues to agree with the absolute denoting mice, even though this noun phrase is not actually present:

- (24) Elu-s k’et’u r-iqir-xosi/b-iqir-xosi ānu.  
1PL-GEN1 cat.ABS.III nIPL-catch-PRS.PTCP/III-catch-PRS.PTCP be.PRS.NEG  
‘Our cat does not catch mice.’ (lit.: is not catching)

Verbs of motion often combine with converbs forming complex predicate structures; if all the constituents of such a complex verbal structures have an agreement slot, agreement appears multiple times. For example, in (25), we find two such complex verbal structures. The predicate of the embedded converbal clause *k’ołin* takes the agreeing converb *bet’un*, and the main predicate *boxis* (itself an agreeing one) combines with the agreeing manner converb *bizin*:

- (25) Boc’i b-et’u-n k’ołi-n b-iži-n b-oxi-s  
wolf.ABS.III III.jump-PFV.CVB run-PFV.CVB III-rise-PFV.CVB III-run-PST.WIT  
el-äy.  
there-ABL  
‘The wolf jumped quickly and ran away.’ (lit.: having jumped running rising ran) (based on K’et’un zirun:28)

In complex verbs consisting of a noun and a light verb, the light verb always agrees with that noun. If the light verb is intransitive, the noun takes the position of the sole absolute argument: consider *xot’o bič-* in (26), *ro’ku rik’-* in (27), or *roł’i boq-* in (28):

- (26) Dey q”eca-l xot’o b-iči-x.  
1SG.GEN1 mud-CONT.ESS foot.ABS.III III-stay-PRS  
‘I stepped in the mud.’ (lit.: my foot stays in dirt)  
(27) Eniw-s rok’u q’idar r-ik’i-n.  
mother-GEN1 heart.ABS.IV down IV-go-PST.nWIT  
‘Mother calmed down.’ (lit.: Mother’s heart went downward)

---

<sup>3</sup> The object of ‘know’ can appear in any gender, so the agreement on *-iyxosi* could vary. However, when ‘know’ is used generically as in (16), the presupposed object is taken to be gender IV, the gender of abstract nouns. In (17), the presupposed object can either be gender nIPL (any animals the cat could catch) or gender III (any singular animal the cat could catch).

- (28) Babiw-s      b-oq-ä...      mesed-yo-z      t'akan-yo-qo-r  
  father-GEN1    III-become-PST.WIT.INTERR    gold-OS-GEN1    glass-OS-POSS-LAT  
  roλ'i?  
  love.ABS.III  
  'Did the father fall in love with a glass filled with gold?' (Besurozaqu:66)  
  (lit.: did the father's love with a glass filled with gold happen?)

If the light verb is transitive, the noun takes the position of its absolute object, as *lumru bod-* in (29), or *huni ric-* in (30). See CH. YY [Basic clause types] and CH. YY [verb derivation] for details.

- (29) El-ä      b-ig      lumru      b-oy-x.  
  1PL-ERG    III-well    life.ABS.III    III-do-PRS  
  'We live well.' (lit.: we do life well)
- (30) Žek'u-z      žek'u-za-ł-or      huni      r-ic-o!  
  person-GEN2    person-PL.OS-CONT-LAT    road.ABS.IV    IV-tie-IMPER  
  'Watch after (the) strangers.' (lit.: tie the road...)

In the biabsolutive construction without the resultative participle, the converb always agrees with the patient absolute:

- (31) a. Kid      ḥak'o      b-oy-x      zow-s.  
  girl.ABS.II    xinkal.ABS.III    III-do-IPFV.CVB    AUX.PST-PST.WIT  
  'The girl was making dumplings.'

In the biabsolutive construction with the resultative participle AGR-*ičäsi* (see CH. YY [Basic clause types]), that participle always agrees with the agent absolute; the converb agrees with the patient absolute. No other agreement options are available:

- (32) a. Kid      ḥak'o      b-oy-x      y-ič-äsi      yoł.  
  girl.ABS.II    xinkal.ABS.III    III-do-IPFV.CVB    II-stay-RES.PTCP    AUX.PRS  
  'The girl is busy making dumplings.'
- b. \*Kid      ḥak'o      y-oy-x      y-ič-äsi      yoł.  
  girl.ABS.II    xinkal.ABS.III    II-do-IPFV.CVB II-stay-RES.PTCP    AUX.PRS
- c. \*Kid      ḥak'o      b-oy-x      b-ič-äsi      yoł.  
  girl.ABS.II    xinkal.ABS.III    III-do-IPFV.CVB    III-stay-RES.PTCP    AUX.PRS
- d. \*Kid      ḥak'o      y-oy-x      b-ič-äsi      yoł.  
  girl.ABS.II    xinkal.ABS.III    II-do-IPFV.CVB    III-stay-RES.PTCP    AUX.PRS

### 3.2. Resolved vs. closest conjunct agreement

If a coordinate noun phrase appears in the absolute position, there are two agreement options: resolved agreement (agreement with the entire noun phrase) or agreement with only one of the conjuncts (closest conjunct agreement). Resolved agreement is illustrated for English in (33a) and (34a); closest conjunct agreement, where the verb agrees only with the conjunct that is next to it, is shown in (33b) and (34b).

- (33) a. A Scotsman, an Englishman and an Irishman are sitting in a bar in New York...  
       b. A Scotsman, an Englishman and an Irishman is sitting in a bar in New York...
- (34) a. There are a philosopher and a linguist in the room.  
       b. There is a philosopher and a linguist in the room.

Tsez has both patterns of agreement. When two or more nouns are joined within a coordinate noun phrase, resolved agreement follows the rules outlined for adjectival agreement with coordinated nouns in (2a, b): if at least one noun belongs to gender I, gender agreement is in IPL; if the nouns all belong to other genders (in the singular or plural), gender agreement is in nIPL.

The following examples illustrate these principles in verbal resolved agreement; they also show that the order of nouns inside the coordination, and the order of the agreeing element and the noun phrase, do not play a role in resolved agreement:

- (35) a. Uži-n              kid-no              b-ik'i-s.  
          boy.ABS.I-and    girl.ABS.II-and    IPL-go-PST.WIT  
       ‘A boy and a girl left.’
- b. B-ik'i-s              k'et'u-n              uži-n.  
          IPL-go-PST.WIT    cat.ABS.III-and    boy.ABS.I-and  
       ‘A cat and a boy left.’
- (36) a. Kid-no              ayi-n              roržizi r-oq-si.  
          girl.ABS.II-and    bird.ABS.III-and    flying nIPL-become-PST.WIT  
       ‘A girl and a bird flew.’
- b. Q'edar              r-aλ'i-s              qabi-n              safat-no.  
          downward    nIPL-fall-PST.WIT    tray.ABS.IV-and    clock.abs.III-and  
       ‘A tray and a clock fell down.’

Nouns conjoined with ‘or’ can also determine plural agreement, as shown below. This contrasts with the facts on adjectival agreement with such nouns (see section 2 above).

- (37) Ya    q'ec              ya              isi              r-oγ-o.  
       or    dirt.ABS.IV    or              snow.ABS.II    nIPL-pull-IMPER  
       ‘Clean up either the dirt or the snow.’
- (38) Ya    gulu              ya              mašina              r-ege-xo    nes-ä.  
       or    horse.ABS.III    or              car.ABS.III    nIPL-send-PRS DEM.I-ERG  
       ‘He is sending either a horse or a car.’

Under closest conjunct agreement, the verb agrees with the coordinate noun phrase that is closest to it. Since an agreeing verb can either precede or follow the noun phrase it agrees with, the choice of closest conjunct is determined by the relative position of the verb and the noun phrase. Compare the following examples:

- (39) a. Ya    uži              ya              kid              y-ege-xo    nes-ä.  
       or    boy.ABS.I    or              girl.ABS.II    II-send-PRS    DEM.I-ERG  
       b. Nes-ä              Ø-ege-xo              ya              uži              ya              kid.  
          DEM.I-ERG    I-send-PRS              or              boy.ABS.I    or              girl.ABS.II

- (40) a. ‘He is sending either a son or a daughter.’
- |                    |                   |             |
|--------------------|-------------------|-------------|
| Baša-n             | k’icu-n           | y-oλ-xo.    |
| finger.ABS.III-and | tooth. ABS.II-and | II-hurt-PRS |
- b. B-oλ-xo      baša-n      k’icu-n.  
 III-hurt-PRS      finger.ABS.III-and      tooth. ABS.II-and  
 ‘A finger and a tooth hurt.’

Closest conjunct agreement is quite frequent in texts and spontaneous speech. Consider some text examples:

- (41) Xalq’i-n      faλ-no      b-ukay-nosi...<sup>4</sup>  
 people.ABS.III-and      village.ABS.III-and      III-see-ANT.CVB  
 ‘When they saw the people and the village...’ (Č’ikayn, murin, hiλun:29)
- (42) Mesed-yo-s      saħ-no      t’as-no      reλ’iqoy-n  
 gold-OS-GEN1      measure.ABS.IV-and      washbasin.ABS.III-and      glove.ABS.IV-and  
 pandur-no      b-oγ-no      xan-ez      kid-be-q-äy.  
 lute.ABS.III-and      III-pull-PST.nWIT      king-GEN2      girl-OS-POSS-ABL  
 ‘He took away from the king’s daughter, the measure of gold, the washbasin, the glove,  
 and the lute.’ (Xanes Ḵono užin, sis kidno:97)

Closest conjunct agreement is possible only under adjacency; it becomes impossible if the agreeing constituent and the absolute noun phrase are separated by intervening material (see also Benmamoun et al. 2009 for further discussion). Even compound verbs present an obstacle to closest conjunct agreement: compare (36a) above and its unacceptable counterpart below:

- (43) \*Kid-no      ayi-n      roržizi b-oq-si.  
 girl.ABS.II-and      bird.ABS.III-and      flying III-become-PST.WIT  
 (‘A girl and a bird flew.’)

When asked to adjudicate instances of closest conjunct agreement, speakers’ judgments vary; sometimes the same example receives a positive and a negative assessment on different days. Even minor lexical changes in an example may sway judgments. Meanwhile, resolved agreement is always judged acceptable, although closest conjunct agreement is preferred over resolved agreement with disjunctive phrases such as (39). Overall, Tsez judgments on closest conjunct agreement are reminiscent of the judgments of English respondents queried by Green (1984) on sentences such as (34b) above<sup>5</sup>—except that we did not have the luxury of consulting nineteen Tsez speakers.

Finally, closest conjunct agreement is never observed with paratactically conjoined compound nouns such as those shown in examples (8) through (12) above. For instance, in the example

<sup>4</sup> Although both nouns are gender III, the resolved agreement would have been nIPL.

<sup>5</sup> Green writes: “[N]o two of [19 consultants] accepted exactly the same set of sentences, ... vacillating from moment to moment or day to day about whether certain examples were acceptable or not” (Green 1984: 29).

below, the verb has to agree with the compound noun *ħal-ruħ* in gender nIPL. Only one pattern of agreement is possible despite the adjacency of the noun and the verb:

- (44) Nesi-ħ-er                        hal-ruħ  
           DEM.I-CONT-LAT              [health.ABS.III-strength.ABS.III].nIPL  
           r-ay-ä/\*b-ay-ä?  
           nIPL-come-PST.INTERR/III-come-PST.INTERR  
           'Did his might come back to him?'

### 3.3. Concord in specificational copular clauses

The subject position of a specificational copular clause is filled by a headless relative,<sup>6</sup> and the predicate consists of the copula and its predicative complement, which can be expressed by a number of categories. If the predicative complement is a noun, it shows case concord with the presupposed head of the headless relative.

We will first illustrate this concord for a headless relative with an intransitive predicate. Consider the following baseline sentence:

- (45) Debi                uži                žek'u-z                žek'u-qo-r                xabaryay-s.  
           2SG.GEN1        boy.ABS.I        person-GEN2        person-POSS-LAT        speak-PST.WIT  
           'Your son was talking to a stranger.' (lit.: to a person's person)

Two headless relatives can be formed from (45): one denoting the person doing the speaking, and one denoting the person spoken to (46); in both cases, the wh-word inside the headless relative clause, namely, the absolutive *šebi* or the poss-lative *luqor*, can be omitted:

- (46) a. (Šebi)                žek'u-z                žek'u-qo-r                xabaryay-ä-si  
           who.ABS            person-GEN2        person-POSS-LAT        speak-PST.WIT.INTERR-ATTR  
           '(one) who was talking to a stranger'  
       b. (lu-qo-r)                debi                uži                xabaryay-ä-si  
           who-POSS-LAT        2SG.GEN1        boy.ABS.I        speak-PST.WIT.INTERR-ATTR  
           '(one) whom your son was talking to'

When such a headless relative clause appears as the subject of a specificational copular clause, the predicative complement must match the case of the gap/wh-word. In (47a), the gap corresponds to the absolutive noun phrase (the wh-word *šebi*), and the predicative nominal must be in the absolutive as well. In (47b), the wh-word is in the poss-lative (the gap corresponds to a poss-lative nominal), and the predicative nominal must appear in that form and no other:

- (47) a. [(Šebi)                žek'u-z                žek'u-qo-r                xabaryay-ä-si]  
           who.ABS            person-GEN2        person-POSS-LAT        speak-PST.WIT.INTERR-ATTR

---

<sup>6</sup> See CH. YY[RC] for more on headless relatives, and CH.YY [Binding] for connectivity effects in reflexives associated with headless relatives.

- debi                uži/ \*debe-z                už-ä/\*debe-z                uži-qo-r                (yoł).  
 2SG.GEN1        boy.ABS/2SG.GEN2        boy-ERG/2SG.GEN2        boy-POSS-LAT be.PRS  
 ‘It was your son who was talking to a stranger.’
- b. [(lu-qo-r)                debi                uži                xabary-ä-si]  
 who-POSS-LAT        2SG.GEN1        boy.ABS        speak-PST.WIT.INTERR-ATTR  
 žek’u-z                žek’u-qo-r/\*žek’u-s                žek’u                zow-s.  
 person-GEN2        person-POSS-LAT/person-GEN1        person.ABS.I be.PST-PST.WIT  
 ‘It was a stranger that your son was talking to.’ (lit.: to the one whom your son  
 was talking to was to a stranger)

The same case matching holds regardless of the transitivity of the headless relative clause; compare the following examples, where (48) is the baseline sentence:

- (48) Eni-y-ä                bazar-y-äy                kunta                b-is-si.  
 mother-OS-ERG        market-OS-IN.ABL        dress.ABS.III III-take-PST.WIT  
 ‘Mother bought a dress at the market (lit.: from the market).’

In the copular clauses below, the predicative complement again matches the case of the wh-word/gap in the headless relative:

- (49) a. [(lu)                bazar-y-äy                kunta                b-is-ä-si]  
 who-ERG        market-OS-IN.ABL        dress.ABS.III III-take-PST.WIT.INTERR-ATTR  
 dä-z                eni-y-ä /\*eniw                (yoł).  
 1SG-GEN2        mother-OS-ERG/mother.ABS be.PRS  
 ‘It is my mother who bought a dress at the market.’
- b. [(Šebi)                eni-y-ä                bazar-y-äy                b-is-ä-si]  
 what.ABS.(III)        mother-OS-ERG market-OS-IN.ABL        III-take-PST.WIT.INTERR-ATTR  
 bercinaw                kunta                (yoł).  
 beautiful        dress.ABS.III be.PRS  
 ‘It is a beautiful dress that mother bought at the market.’

The examples in (49) point to another property of agreement in copular clauses: if the referent of the absolute is known or presupposed, the verb in the headless relative agrees with the corresponding noun phrase in gender. The wh-word *šebi* does not have a fixed gender; its gender is assigned based on the context or the lexical properties of the verb it pairs with. For example, when *šebi* occurs with the verbs of motion AGR-*ay* or AGR-*ik*-, it is assumed to reflect an animate noun; in this case, it can occur in gender I, II, or III, but not IV, in the singular. When its verbal context suggests that *šebi* is reflecting an inanimate noun with unspecified gender, *šebi* appears in gender IV. However, in (49b), the verbal form *b-isäsi* shows agreement in gender III, matching the gender of the word ‘dress’. Similarly, in the following example, the predicative nominal has to be in gender II because the predicate of the headless relative, the participle *y-ičixosi*, agrees with a gender II noun:

- (50) [Šebi]                q’cir-yo-ž’                y-iči-xo-si]                madina/\*ramazan.  
 who.ABS.(II)        floor-OS-SUPER.ESS        II-sit-PRS-ATTR        Madina.ABS.II/Ramazan.ABS.I  
 ‘It is Madina that likes to sit on the floor.’

Accordingly, in (51), the presupposed predicative nominal is either gender I plural or gender III singular:

- (51) a. [(\u010c\u0107ebi) zarema-r b-et-\u0107-si]  
           whoABS.(IPL) Zarema-LAT IPL-like-PST.WIT.INTERR-ATTR  
       \u0107ali-n pat'i-n yo\u0107.  
       Ali.ABS.I-and Fatima.ABS.II-and be.PRS  
       ‘It was Ali and Fatima who/that Zarema liked.’  
   b. [(\u010c\u0107ebi) zarema-r b-et-\u0107-si]  
       what.ABS.(III) Zarema-LAT III-like-PST.WIT.INTERR-ATTR  
       elu-s sayyat yo\u0107.  
       1PL-GEN1 gift.ABS.III be.PRS  
       ‘It was our gift that Zarema liked.’

#### 4. Agreement under restructuring

The agreeing restructuring verbs are: the modal AGR-*ay-* ‘must’; the modal AGR-*\u0107esu-* ‘may’; the verb AGR-*oq-* in the modal meaning ‘can, be able to’ (co-occurring with a converb), and complex modals formed with this verb; the verb AGR-*i\u0107-* in the meaning ‘continue’; the verb AGR-*et-* in the meaning ‘want’, and the specialized use of the verb AGR-*esu-* ‘appear’ in conditionals. For details on the use of restructuring verbs, see CH. YY [Complement clauses]. These verbs obligatorily agree with the absolute argument they share with the lower verb in the complex predicate structure.<sup>7</sup> No other agreement is possible. Consider the examples below. In (52), the modal AGR-*\u0107ay* is part of the complex predicate with a transitive infinitive. In (53), the verb AGR-*oq-* as ‘can’ also forms a complex predicate with a transitive verb, showing appropriate agreement. In (54), the modal AGR-*\u0107esu* forms a complex predicate with a converbal cognition/perception verb. In (56), it forms a complex predicate in the accidental construction, agreeing with the absolute subject.

- (52) Xalq-em-\u0107 \u0107uka \u0107ebin e\u0107-a r-\u0107ay-in\u0107'i.  
       people-OS-ERG bad thing.ABS.IV say-INF IV-must-NEG  
       ‘People should not (lit.: must not) say bad things.’
- (53) Ne\u0107a k'\u0107'-\u0107 aw b-iqir-xo b-oq-n-\u0107anu.  
       DEM.nI cat-ERG mouse.ABS.III III-get-IPFV.CVB III-can-PST.nWIT-NEG  
       ‘That cat could not catch a mouse.’
- (54) Ne\u0107a-s kayat \u0107u\u0107'i-n y-\u0107esu debe-r.  
       DEM.nI-GEN1 letter.ABS.II forget-PFV.CVB II-may 2SG-LAT  
       ‘You possibly forgot/may have forgotten her letter.’
- (55) Irbahine-e-r yedu \u0107alt'i b-et-a b-\u0107esu.  
       Ibrahim-OS-LAT DEM work.ABS.III III-like-INF III-may  
       ‘Ibrahim may like this work.’

---

<sup>7</sup> It does not matter whether or not the lower verb itself shows agreement.

- (56) Nesa c'aldoqan-qo tetrad gug-a/gugi-n  
 DEM.I student-POSS.ESS notebook.ABS.II disappear-INF/disappear-PFV.CVB  
 y-äsu-nč'i.  
 II-may-NEG  
 ‘This student may not lose a notebook.’
- (57) Ža debi rež'iqoy bat'iyaw-tow-ä r-ič-a r-ay-x?  
 DEM 2SG.GEN1 glove.ABS.IV different-FOC-INTERR IV-stay-INF IV-must-PRS  
 ‘That glove of yours must be really special, mustn’t it?’ (Xanes ḥono užin, sis kidno:30)

Several of these verbs also take a genuine clausal complement, forming a biclausal construction, and since the meaning differences between these constructions may be very subtle, agreement becomes one of crucial diagnostics for differentiating between a biclausal structure and a restructuring clause. The details of biclausal structures are presented in CH. YY [Complement clauses].

## 5. Long-distance agreement

### 5.1. The phenomenon

Long-distance agreement (often appearing under the abbreviation LDA in the literature) arises when the absolute argument in an embedded clause, which is itself in the absolute argument position, determines agreement on the predicate of the clause immediately above it.<sup>8</sup> For example, in (58), the matrix verb AGR-ukad- ‘see’ agrees with the absolute noun phrase *elus yʷčay* ‘our dog’ contained in the embedded nominalized clause (that clause is shown in brackets):

- (58) Dä-r [elu-s yʷčay k'et'u-za-ł xizay k'āli-ru-łi]  
 1SG-LAT 1PL-GEN1 dog-ABS.III cat-PL.OS-CONT.ESS behind run-PST.PTCP-NMLZ  
 b-ukay-s.  
 III-see-PST.WIT  
 ‘I saw how our dog was chasing cats.’ (lit.: ran behind cats)

In (59), the verbal part of the compound verb ‘remember’ (lit. ‘come upon heart’) agrees with the absolute of the embedded clause, *pat'i*, in gender II:

- (59) Nesi-r rok'-ž'o-r y-ay-n [nāzon  
 DEM.I-LAT heart-SUPER-LAT II-come-PST.nWIT all.OS  
 c'aldoqan-za-ž'āy pat'i hič'č'a 'aq'luyaw  
 student-PL.OS-SUPER-ABL Fatima.ABS.II most clever  
 yäl-ru-łi].  
 be.PRS-PST.PTCP-NMLZ  
 ‘He remembered that Fatima was the smartest among the students.’

---

<sup>8</sup> This phenomenon is sometimes referred to as “transparent agreement” (see Corbett 2006:65).

As these preliminary examples show, long-distance agreement is possible regardless of the position of the complement clause in relation to the agreeing verb; in (58), the verb follows the clausal complement, and in (59), it precedes it.

Long-distance agreement alternates with a pattern where the verb agrees with the entire complement clause in gender IV (clauses, as derived abstract nouns, are always gender IV); compare the agreement pattern in (58) with the one in (60), and the pattern in (59) with the one in (61). Below, we will be referring to the latter pattern as “properly local agreement”.

- (60) Dä-r [elu-s y<sup>w</sup>ay k'et'u-za-ł xizay  
1SG-LAT [1PL-GEN1 dog-ABS.III cat-PL.OS-CONT.ESS behind  
k'äli-ru-łi] r-ukay-s.  
run-PST.PTCP-NMLZ].ABS.IV IV-see-PST.WIT  
'I saw that our dog was chasing cats.' / 'I saw our dog chase/chasing cats.'
- (61) Nesi-r rok'-ł'o-r r-ay-n [näzon  
DEM.I-LAT heart-SUPER-LAT IV-come-PST.nWIT [all.os  
c'alduqan-za-ł'āy pat'i hič'č'a 'aq'luyaw  
student-PL.OS-SUPER-ABL Fatima.ABS.II most clever  
yäł-ru-łi]  
be.PRS-PST.PTCP-NMLZ].ABS.IV  
'He remembered that Fatima was the smartest among the students.'

The choice between the two agreement patterns is determined by information-structural considerations, which we discuss in section 5.3 below.

Generally, long-distance agreement takes some effort to spot because several conspiring factors may obscure it. First, only a subset of Tsez verbs show agreement overtly anyway. Next, since long-distance agreement alternates with properly local agreement (as shown in (60) and (61)), the difference between the two cannot be observed if the embedded absolutive is also gender IV or nIPL. Finally, long-distance agreement is only possible if the clausal complement is a nominalization in *-li*; as we show in (66), verbs that take complements with quotative *-łin* never show long-distance agreement (and verbs that take infinitival complements show agreement under restructuring, as discussed in section 4). Taking all these restrictions into consideration, we find that the following predicates can participate in long-distance agreement when they take a nominalized clausal complement:

- (62) a. AGR-iy-  
'know'  
b. AGR-ukad-  
'see'  
c. AGR-ac-  
'dislike, disprefer'  
d. bičzi AGR-oq-  
'be clear'  
e. rok'-ł'o-r AGR-ay-  
heart-SUPER-LAT come

- f. ‘remember, memorize’  
 rok'-e-r AGR-it-  
 heart-OS-LAT touch  
 ‘learn, internalize’  
 g. č'alsizi AGR-oq-  
 enough become  
 ‘bother, irk’

The number of long-distance-agreeing predicates can be increased by adding their causative counterparts: AGR-*iyr-* ‘let s.o. know, make known’ (causative of (62a)), AGR-*ukar-* ‘show’ (causative of (62b)), *biczi* AGR-*od-* ‘make clear; explain’ (causative of (62d)), and so on.

## 5.2. Structural conditions on long-distance agreement

Long-distance agreement is only possible if the clausal complement is itself in the absolute position. For example, in (64), the clausal complement appears in an oblique form and long-distance agreement is impossible:<sup>9</sup>

- (63) Nesi-r [yedu t'ek t'et'ä-ru-[li]-r  
 DEM.I-LAT DEM book.ABS.II read.PRS-PST.PTCP-[NMLZ-]LAT  
 kumak b-od-o/\*y-od-o.  
 help.ABS.III III-do-IMPER/II-do-IMPER  
 ‘Help him with the reading of this book.’

In (64), the absolute noun phrase *eli* also appears in an adjunct clause and the main clause already has an absolute subject *eniw*. The lower absolute cannot compete because it is inside the clause, which is not in the absolute position:

- (64) Eniw [mi eli b-aλ'ä-ru-[li]-λ]  
 mother.ABS.II 2SG.ERG 1PL.ABS.IPL IPL-deceive-PST.PTCP-[NMLZ-]SUPER.ESS  
 hayran y-oq-si/\*b-oq-si.  
 surprised II-become-PST.WIT/IPL-become-PST.WIT  
 ‘Mother was surprised that you deceived us.’ (lit.: at your deceiving us)

In the next example, the candidate absolute noun phrase *λirba* appears in an adjunct clause and long-distance agreement is again impossible. (Note that, crucially, *šida* ‘why’ is the matrix question-word, and not part of the periphery of the embedded clause.)

- (65) [λirba debe-r Ø-esu-näy] šida mi  
 guest.ABS.I 2SG-LAT I-find-COND why 2SG.ERG  
 r-iy-r-inč'u/\*Ø-iy-r-inč'u?  
 IV-know-CAUS-PST.WIT.NEG/I-know-CAUS-PST.WIT.NEG

---

<sup>9</sup> When clausal nominalizations appear in cases other than the absolute, the nominalizer *-li* is not present. The verb stays in the perfective participle form, indicating nominalization. For such instances, we show the morpheme *-li* and the corresponding gloss NMLZ in brackets.

'If you noticed the guest why did you not make that known?'

Long-distance agreement is only possible if the clausal complement is a nominalization in *-li*. Verbs that take infinitival complements show agreement under restructuring (see CH.clausal compl), and verbs that take complements with the quotative *-λin* never show long-distance agreement. Compare (59) and (66):

- (66) Nesi-r      rok'-λ'o-r      r-ay-n/\*y-ay-n  
DEM.I-LAT      heart-SUPER-LAT      IV-come-PST.nWIT/II-come-PST.nWIT  
[nāzon      c'aldoqan-za-λ'āy      pat'i      hič'č'a      'aq'luyaw  
[all.OS student-PL.OS-SUPER-ABL      Fatima.ABS.II      most      clever  
yoł]-λin.  
be.PRS-QUOT].ABS.IV

'He remembered that Fatima was the smartest among the students.'

If several clauses are embedded one under another, long-distance agreement cannot take place through more than one clause; in other words, long-distance agreement is clause-bounded. This is not the only instance where Tsez syntax shows a strong insistence on clause-boundedness; wh-movement is also clause-bounded, as shown by the data from embedded interrogatives (see Ch. "Interrogatives" and see also Polinsky and Potsdam 2001:599-600, for a discussion).

- (67) \*[ [Elu-s      y<sup>wc</sup>ay      k'et'u-za-ł      xizay  
1PL-GEN1      dog-ABS.III      cat-PL.OS-CONT.ESS      behind  
k'äli-ru-li]      dä-r      b-äci-ru-łi]      debe-r      b-iy-x.  
run-PST.PTCP-NMLZ].ABS.IV 1SG-LAT III-dislike-PST.PTCP-NMLZ 2SG-LAT III-know-PRS  
'You know that I can't stand that our dog chases cats.'

Next, if several clauses are embedded one under another long-distance agreement cannot skip an intervening clause and be registered on a higher verb:<sup>10</sup>

- (68) \*[[Elu-s      y<sup>wc</sup>ay      k'et'u-za-ł      xizay  
1PL-GEN1      dog-ABS.III      cat-PL.OS-CONT.ESS      behind  
k'äli-ru-li]      dä-r      r-äci-ru-łi]      debe-r      b-iy-x.  
run-PST.PTCP-NMLZ].ABS.IV 1SG-LAT IV-dislike-PST.PTCP-NMLZ 2SG-LAT III-know-PRS  
('You know that I can't stand that our dog chases cats.')

This unusual pattern of agreement raises the question of whether the agreed-with noun phrase is actually present in the same clause as the agreeing verb. To represent this schematically, one could imagine that the actual absolute noun phrase was in the clause above the clausal complement, not inside the clausal complement. This structure is shown in (69), with the English translation illustrating a similar type of construction (where *our dog* is a complement of *see*):

---

<sup>10</sup> Of course, properly local agreement on both embedding verbs, AGR-*ac-* and AGR-*iy-*, is fully acceptable.

- (69) Dä-r elu-s  $\gamma^w$ ay [k'et'u-za-ł xizay  
 1SG-LAT 1PL-GEN1 dog-ABS.III [cat-PL.OS-CONT.ESS behind  
 k'äli-ru-li] b-ukay-s.  
 run-PST.PTCP-NMLZ].ABS.IV III-see-PST.WIT  
 'I saw our dog [chasing cats].'

One of the considerations against (69) has to do with the numerous instances in which the absolute noun phrase is separated from the agreeing higher verb and found in the middle of the embedded clause, as for example in (61). In no other instances are Tsez clausal complements discontinuous, so proposing a discontinuity under long-distance agreement is unmotivated.

Another analytical possibility is *prolepsis*: the appearance of a proleptic or “prothetic” pronoun, which anticipates the actual DP that the verb seems to agree with; in such a structure, the agreement is actually with the proleptic pronoun. On one implementation of this proposal, the silent anticipatory pronoun occurs in the matrix (higher) clause and is simply coreferential with the absolute noun phrase in the lower clause, as shown in (70):

- (70) Dä-r *pro<sub>i</sub>*/\*ža [elu-s  $\gamma^w$ ay<sub>i</sub> k'et'u-za-ł xizay  
 1SG-LAT DEM.ABS [1PL-GEN1 dog-ABS.III cat-PL.OS-CONT.ESS behind  
 k'äli-ru-li] b-ukay-s.  
 run-PST.PTCP-NMLZ].ABS.IV III-see-PST.WIT  
 'I saw our dog chasing/chase cats.' (lit.: "I saw of it<sub>i</sub> that our dog<sub>i</sub> was chasing cats.")

Prolepsis is attested across a number of languages, see Frantz (1978; 1980) for proleptic agreement in Blackfoot (Algonquian), and see Branigan and McKenzie (2002) for arguments against prolepsis in another Algonquian language, Innu-aimûn. See also Polinsky (2003), Davies (2005) for a more general discussion of prolepsis and further references.

A consideration against prolepsis is the fact that the hypothetical null pronoun or demonstrative in the higher clause can never be overt, as we show in (72). Noun phrase omission is very common in Tsez, but in all other cases, the missing constituent can be overtly represented, so the absence of an overt form in (72) would be mysterious on a prolepsis analysis.

An additional consideration against both (69) and (70) comes from observations of quantifier scope and scope of numerical phrases. If the agreed-with absolute noun phrase were indeed in the same clause as the higher agreeing verb, then we would expect that the agreed-with absolute noun phrase could interact with other constituents in that clause; in particular, it should be able to take scope over these constituents, leading to ambiguities in meaning. Independent evidence shows that Tsez has both surface and inverse quantifier scope. Consider the ambiguity in (71), which permits two interpretations: a single girl was carrying all the balloons (one > every), or for each balloon, there was a girl carrying it (every > one). Such scopal ambiguity is very similar to what is observed in the English equivalent of (71).

- (71) Sida            kid-b-ä            šibaw šar            b-ow-xo            zow-s  
      one.OS            girl-OS-ERG     every     balloon.ABS.III III-carry-IPFV.CVB     AUX-PST.WIT  
      ‘One girl was carrying every balloon.’ (one > every; every > one)

However, the absolute noun phrase that induces long-distance agreement does not interact scopally with constituents of the higher clause. If that absolute noun phrase were present in the higher clause we would expect the same ambiguity we see in (71). But the example in (72) is unambiguous; it can only be interpreted to mean that a single person saw the demise of ten balloons. This is unexpected if the noun phrase *oc’ino šar* is in the same clause as *sida žek’ur*, but is consistent with the conception that these two noun phrases are in different clauses. We conclude that long-distance agreement occurs across a clausal boundary.

- (72) Sida            žek’u-r            [oc’ino            šar            p’säλi-ru-li]  
      one.OS            person-LAT     ten            balloon.ABS.III     burst-PST.PTCP-NMLZ  
      b-ukay-s  
      III-see-PST.WIT  
      ‘Someone saw how ten balloons burst.’ (someone > ten; \*ten > someone)

The final structural condition on long-distance agreement has to do with locality. Although the agreed-with absolute noun phrase and the agreeing verb are in different clauses, they have to be structurally close to each other, and cannot be separated by intervening material that blocks long-distance agreement. Such intervening material includes complementizers like *-λin* (recall example (66) above, which showed that long-distance agreement is impossible across *-λin*) or wh-words, which are structurally higher than topics (see Polinsky and Potsdam 2001 for a detailed structural analysis). For example, only properly local agreement is possible in (73) and (74), where the wh-words ‘who’ and ‘where’ intervene to block the agreement between the embedded absolute and the higher verb.

- (73) Eniw-r            [hu            sult’an            gäλ’-ru-li]  
      mother-LAT     who.ERG     Sultan.ABS.I     call-PST.PTCP-NMLZ  
      r-iy-s/\*Ø-iy-s  
      IV-know-PST.WIT/I-know-PST.WIT  
      ‘Mother knew who had called Sultan.’
- (74) Dä-r            r-iy-x-ānu/\*y-iy-x-ānu            [na-z-āy  
      1SG-LAT            IV-know-PRS-NEG/II-know-PRS-NEG     where-OS-IN.ABL  
      yedu            kid            y-äy-ru-li].  
      DEM.nI            girl.ABS.II     II-come-PST.PTCP-NMLZ  
      ‘I don’t know where this girl comes from.’

Long-distance agreement as a syntactic phenomenon has generated quite a bit of interest in the literature; for various syntactic analyses, see Polinsky (2000), Polinsky and Potsdam (2001). Genuine cross-clausal long-distance agreement has been observed in Algonquian languages (see Bruening 2001 for Passamaquoddy; Branigan and MacKenzie 2002 for Innu-aimûn; Lochbiler 2012 for Ojibwe), possibly in Greek and Romanian (Alexiadou et al. 2012), and in at least some other Nakh-Dagestanian languages (see Forker 2013: 628-638 for long-distance agreement in Hinuq; Khalilova 2009: 383-390 for long-distance agreement in Khwarshi, and van den Berg

1995: 190, 211, 240 for Hunzib examples). In these languages, the agreed-with embedded argument is interpreted as a discourse topic, as a contrastive constituent, or both. Care should be taken, however, to distinguish between long-distance agreement that takes place across a clause boundary, as in Tsez, and agreement that operates over several verbal constituents which form a complex verb phrase (as under restructuring, which was discussed in section 4 above); see Polinsky (2003) for further discussion.

### 5.3. The choice between two agreement patterns

The choice between long-distance agreement and properly local agreement is determined by the information-structural status of the absolute noun phrase that triggers agreement. In Tsez, long-distance agreement occurs when the absolute noun phrase is identified as having topic properties. A referent is interpreted as the topic of a proposition “if in a given situation the proposition is construed as being about this referent; ... a constituent is a topic expression if the proposition expressed by the clause with which it is associated is pragmatically construed as being about the referent of this constituent” (Lambrecht 1994: 131). Establishing topic and focus interpretations requires relying on the context in which an utterance is used, which is why some examples with and without long-distance agreement may seem unclear out of context. Particularly telling with respect to Tsez long-distance agreement are those expressions that *cannot* induce such agreement. They fall consistently into the class of phrases that cannot be interpreted as topics.

In particular, noun phrases denoting non-specific referents cannot be topics. Dedicated non-topics include quantified expressions, expressions in the form ‘such a ...’, and noun phrases whose reference depends on an antecedent (reflexives). Noun phrases from these categories cannot determine long-distance agreement in Tsez. In (75), the embedded absolute is the understood negative polarity item; in (76), it is the weakly quantified expression ‘many people’, which can be interpreted as an existential phrase; in (77), it is the noun phrase ‘such a dress’, and in (78), it is a compound reflexive.

- |      |  |                          |                           |                       |             |                       |
|------|--|--------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------|-------------|-----------------------|
| (75) | Dä-r   | r-iy-x/*Ø -iy-x          | [mi                       | taraw                 | teł-xor     | <i>pro</i>            |
|      | 1SG.DAT                                      | IV-know-PRS/I-know-PRS   | 2SG.ABS                   | except                | inside-VERS | ABS.I                 |
|      | Ø-äq-inč'i-ru-li].                           |                          |                           |                       |             |                       |
|      | I-become-NEG-PST.PTCP-NMLZ                   |                          |                           |                       |             |                       |
|      | ‘I know that nobody except you came in.’     |                          |                           |                       |             |                       |
| (76) | Dä-r   | r-iy-x/*b-iy-x           | [b- <sup>s</sup> aq'u-si  | xalq'i                |             |                       |
|      | 1SG.DAT                                      | IV-know-PRS/IPL-know-PRS | IPL-many-ATTR             | people.ABS.IPL        |             |                       |
|      | samolyot-žo                                  | zow-ani-q                | b- <sup>s</sup> äλ-ru-li. |                       |             |                       |
|      | plane-SUPER.ESS                              | climb-MSD-POSS.ESS       | IPL-fear-PST.PTCP-NMLZ    |                       |             |                       |
|      | ‘I know that many people are afraid to fly.’ |                          |                           |                       |             |                       |
| (77) | Dä-r   | [neł-ä                   | nesiw                     | kunta                 | y-is-a      | y-äy-ru-li]           |
|      | 1SG-LAT                                      | DEM.nI-ERG               | such                      | dress.ABS.II          | II-take-INF | II-must-PST.PTCP-NMLZ |
|      | r-iy-x/*y-iy-x.                              |                          |                           |                       |             |                       |
|      | IV-know-PRS/II-know-PRS                      |                          |                           |                       |             |                       |
|      | ‘I know that she must buy such a dress.’     |                          |                           |                       |             |                       |
| (78) | Dä-r   | [neł-ä                   | nełä ža                   | y-ägi-ru-li]          | r-iy-x/     |                       |
|      | 1SG-LAT                                      | DEM.nI-ERG               | REFL.nI.ABS               | II-send-PST.PTCP-NMLZ | IV-know-PRS |                       |

- \*y-iy-x.  
 II-know-PRS  
 'I know that she advanced (lit.: sent) herself.'

Existential pivots likewise fail to induce long-distance agreement:

- (79) Dä-r [eniw-q micxir yäl-ru-li] r-iy-x/  
 1SG-LAT mother-POSS.ESS money.ABS.III be-PST/PTCP-NMLZ IV-know-PRS  
 \*b-iy-x.  
 III-know-PRS  
 'I know that Mother has money.'

Topic and focus are normally mutually exclusive (although see some additional considerations below), and absolutive noun phrases explicitly marked for focus (with the focus particles *-kin* or *-tow*)<sup>11</sup> cannot induce long-distance agreement. Compare example (58) and the following sentence where 'dog' is in focus:

- (80) Dä-r [elu-s y<sup>w<sub>c</sub></sup>ay-kin/y<sup>w<sub>c</sub></sup>ay-tow k'et'u-za-l xizay  
 1SG-LAT 1PL-GEN1 dog-ABS.III-FOC/dog-ABS.III-FOC cat-PL.OS-CONT.ESS behind  
 k'ähi-ru-li] r-ukay-s/\*b-ukay-s.  
 run-PST.PTCP-NMLZ IV-see-PST.WIT/III-see-PST.WIT  
 'I saw that it was our dog that was chasing cats.'

Generic sentences are often characterized as lacking a topic, and indeed, if a genuine generic clause is embedded under one of the long-distance-agreement-taking verbs, only local agreement is possible. For example, in (81a) we find an embedded generic statement, whereas (81b) is interpreted as a comment on certain properties of the earth, and is judged odd:

- (81) a. Nāzon r-iy-x [dunyal buq-qo šet'u  
 all.OS IV-know-PRS earth.ABS.III sun-POSS.ESS around  
 b-äti-ru-li].  
 III-turn-PST.PTCP-NMLZ  
 'Everybody knows that the earth rotates around the sun.'  
 b. #Nāzon b-iy-x [dunyal buq-qo šet'u  
 all.OS III-know-PRS earth.ABS.III sun-POSS.ESS around  
 b-äti-ru-li].  
 III-turn-PST.PTCP-NMLZ  
 'As for the earth, everybody knows that it rotates around the sun.'

Now that we have identified the expressions that are unable to determine long-distance agreement, let us consider the eligible absolutives. Three groups of expressions are permitted under long-distance agreement: topics proper, contrastive topics, and discourse-linked wh-words. In the following excerpt, the camel is an established topic and the matrix clause shows long-

---

<sup>11</sup> For details on the use of these particles, see Ch. YY[PARTicles].

distance agreement with the inferential topic (“its right leg”), represented by the absolute argument *nełas kut'jos k'onč'u*; this constituent is the main topic in its clause (“its right leg is limping”), embedded under AGR-*iy-* ‘know’:

- (82) Debe-r ža īhumukuli b-ukay-n b-esu-nč'i-näy  
 2SG-LAT DEM camel.ABS.III III-see-PFV.CVB III-appear-NEG-COND.CVB  
 na-z-āy debe-r neła-s kut'jos k'onč'u  
 where-OS-IN.ABL 2SG-LAT DEM.nI-GEN1 right leg.ABS.II  
 šiq'ono yäl-ru-ħi y-iy-x?  
 limping be.PRS-PST.PTCP-NMLZ II-know-PRS  
 ‘Assuming you have not seen that camel, how (lit.: from where) do you know that its right leg is limping?’ (Xanno, nesisgon ḥono užin:88)

In the same text, as the protagonists are discussing the aforementioned camel (which they have not seen but can describe based on the traces he left), that camel is clearly a topic, and the demonstrative *ža* associated with it in the example below determines long-distance agreement on the converb:

- (83) [Ža nediw yäl-ru] mi b-iy-r-zaħ'...  
 DEM.ABS.(III) such be.PRS-PST.PTCP 2SG.ERG III-know-CAUS-because  
 ‘Since you learned what it [the camel] is ...’ (Xanno, nesisgon ḥono užin:19)

While main clause topics are normally marked with the enclitic *-n(o)*, the presence of that enclitic on the embedded absolute noun phrase under long-distance agreement is judged redundant. This suggests that *-n(o)* and long-distance agreement serve the same function. Compare the root clause with a *no*-marked topic in (84a) and the same clause under embedding in (84b):

- (84) a. Nes-ä eniw-n goħ'is.  
 DEM.I-ERG mother.ABS.II-TOP call-PST.WIT  
 ‘Mother, he called.’  
 b. Debe-r [nes-ä eniw(-n) għaħ'is]  
 2SG-LAT DEM.I-ERG mother.ABS.II-TOP call-PST.PTCP-NMLZ  
 y-iy-ä?  
 II-know-PST.WIT.INTERR  
 ‘Speaking of Mother, did you know that he called her?’

A contrastive topic is a special subtype of topic, which not only identifies the referent that the sentence is “about”, but also instructs the listener to construct a contrast set and then select an item out of that set (see further discussion in CH. YY [Particles]). Such topics, often explicitly compared with other members of the contrast set, also permit long-distance agreement. For example, in (59), which is repeated below, Fatima can be construed as the referent selected out of the contrast set ‘all students’.

- (85) Nesi-r rok'-ħ'o-r y-ay-n [nāzon  
 DEM.I-LAT heart-SUPER-LAT II-come-PST.nWIT [all.OS

c'alduqan-za-λ'āy	pat'i	hič'č'a	faq'luyaw
student-PL.OS-SUPER-ABL	Fatima.ABS.II	most	clever
yäł-ru-li] be.PRS-PST.PTCP-NMLZ].ABS.IV			

'He remembered that FATIMA was the smartest among the students.'

Contrastive topics in Tsez are often marked with the enclitic *-gon*, and if an absolute nominal with that enclitic appears in a clausal complement, long-distance agreement is necessary. For example:<sup>12</sup>

- (86) [Ø-<sup>s</sup>eye-ni-gon                esiw                Ø-äk'i-ru-li]    pro      Ø-iy-r-ān.  
 I-young-DEF-CONTR.TOP        sibling.ABS(.I) I-go-PST.PTCP-NMLZ    I-know-CAUS-FUT.DEF  
 'I will find out that the YOUNGER BROTHER has gone (there).'

Contrastive sets also play a role in the interpretation of discourse-linked phrases (including wh-words). It is possible to draw a distinction between discourse-linked interrogatives like *which person* (which implies the existence of a set of people from which one needs to make a choice) and regular (non-discourse linked) interrogatives such as *who*, which do not carry such an implication (see Pesetsky 1987 and much subsequent literature on this distinction; see also our discussion in CH. YY [Interrogatives]). Discourse-linked phrases imply the existence of a familiar set, and are therefore good candidates for topichood. On the other hand, discourse-linked phrases also have an interrogative interpretation, which makes them focus-like (see Radó 1997; Rizzi 2004 for a discussion of this interpretive duality). The topic interpretation allows discourse-linked wh-phrases to determine long-distance agreement, especially when the discourse-linking is made explicit by the presence of *which*. Two modifiers encode the meaning 'which' in Tsez: *nāsi* (lit.: where-ATTR) and *didiw*. In the following examples, the discourse-linked wh-phrase 'which camel' induces long-distance agreement in (87), as does the wh-phrase 'which old woman', in (88):

- (87) [Didiw                þumukuli                b-äk'i-ru[-li]]                b-iy-r-ān.  
 what.ATTR        camel.ABS.III        III-go-PST.PTCP-NMLZ        III-know-CAUS-FUT.DEF  
 'I will find out which camel has left (from here).' ((Xanno, nesisgon ꝑono užin:17)  
 (88) Debe-r                [nāsi                ečru-ni                y<sup>v</sup>anabi                y-äx-ru-li]  
 2SG-LAT        which old.one-DEF        woman.ABS.II        II-die-PST.PTCP-NMLZ  
 y-iy-x-an-ä?  
 II-know-PRS-NEG-INTERR  
 'Don't you know which old woman died?'

In extended contexts, regular wh-phrases can also receive a discourse-linked interpretation. For instance, in the following example, there is a clearly delimited group (two or three people), from whom a single member (the one who did the talking) must be selected. Although the wh-word is

---

<sup>12</sup> As with regular topics, the presence of *-gon* on the embedded absolute is often judged redundant.

just a regular one (*šebi*), it can be interpreted as discourse-linked. Without such a context, the only acceptable agreement would be the properly local pattern:

- (89) Q'ano-k'ono žek'u yisi-de dandir nex-no  
 two-three person.ABS.I DEM.I-APUD.ESS across come-PFV.CVB  
 šebi yisi-q xabaryä-ru-li Ø-iy-x-ānu.  
 who.ABS(.I) DEM.I-POSS.ESS talk-PST.PTCP-NMLZ I-know-PRS-NEG  
 'Two or three people came up to him but (I) don't know who [among them]  
 talked to him.'
- (90) Šebi yisi-q xabaryä-ru-li r-iy-x-ānu.  
 who.ABS DEM.I-POSS.ESS talk-PST.PTCP-NMLZ IV-know-PRS-NEG  
 '(I) don't know who talked to him.'

Plain wh-words are normally not discourse-linked, but given a specific context, they can be interpreted as such. Thus, it is typically within sentences with plain wh-words in the embedded absolute position that one finds variation between long-distance and properly local agreement. The presence of long-distance agreement with an embedded absolute wh-expression implies a limited range of felicitous answers; wh-expressions that do not trigger long-distance agreement do not impose a finite set of possible answers on the question at hand.

A non-discourse-linked wh-word always blocks long-distance agreement, regardless of what element has induced that agreement. The word 'why' is a typical interrogative expression that does not show discourse-linked properties. Now compare (86) and the following example, where long-distance agreement with the absolute topic is blocked by *šida* 'why':

- (91) [Šida esiw Ø-äk'i-ru-li] r-iy-r-ān/  
 why sibling.ABS(.I) I-go-PST.PTCP-NMLZ IV-know-CAUS-FUT.DEF/  
 \*Ø-iy-r-ān  
 I-know-CAUS-FUT.DEF  
 'I will find out why Brother left.'

Likewise, long-distance agreement with a discourse-linked absolute is impossible in the following example:<sup>13</sup>

- (92) Debe-r [šida nāsi y'anabi y-äx-ru-li]  
 2SG-LAT why which woman.ABS.II II-die-PST.PTCP-NMLZ  
 r-iy-x-ä/\*y-iy-x-ä?  
 IV-know-PRS-INTERR/II-know-PRS-INTERR  
 'Do you know which woman died why?'

An utterance can have more than one topic, and these topics are hierarchically arranged (see Polinsky and Potsdam 2001; Polinsky 2002 for more discussion). The absolute topic can only

---

<sup>13</sup> In general, Tsez does not permit multiple wh-questions (see CH.YY [Interrogatives]), but a discourse-linked wh-phrase is compatible with another wh-phrase.

induce long-distance agreement when it is the highest topic in a given sentence. This is consistent with the locality condition discussed in section 5.2; the agreeing verb and the agreed-with noun phrase should not be separated by other material that may have topic properties. For example, (93) presents a discussion about what the girl did to the jam and tea, but the main topic is ‘the girl’, and although the absolute in the embedded clause is also understood as a topic it cannot determine long-distance agreement.

- (93) [Yedu kid-b-ä<sub>i</sub> [pro<sub>i</sub> wareniya magala-λ’ r-iħ-no]  
DEM girl-OS-ERG jam.ABS.IV bread-SUPER.ESS IV-put-PFV.CVB  
čay b-uq<sup>f</sup>äk’-ru-ħi] r-ukay-s/\*b-ukay-s.  
tea.ABS.III III-hide-PST.PTCP-NMLZ IV-see-PST.WIT/III-see-PST.WIT  
‘I saw this girl spread the jam over bread and hide the tea.’

These examples underscore the fact that long-distance agreement in and of itself is a means of indicating that a given absolute noun phrase is the main topic. We could therefore compare the use of long-distance agreement in Tsez to the marking of a constituent with a special topic particle, like Japanese *wa*. In those contexts where long-distance agreement is in principle possible, like in (93), its presence identifies the absolute as the main topic, and its absence indicates that some expression other than the absolute is the main topic.

## References

- Alexiadou, Artemis , Elena Anagnostopoulou, Gianina Iordachioaia, and Mihaela Marchis. 2012. In support of Long-Distance Agree. In Artemis Alexiadou, Tibor Kiss & Gereon Müller (eds.) *Local modelling of nonlocal dependencies in syntax*, 55-81. Berlin: de Gruyter.
- Branigan and MacKenzie 2002. [Ling Inquiry](#)
- Bruening, Benjamin. 2001. [PhD diss](#)
- Corbett, Greville. 2006. Agreement. Cambridge: CUP.
- Davies, William. 2005. Madurese prolepsis and its implications for a typology of raising. *Language* 81:645-665.
- Green, Georgia M. 1984. Why Agreement Must be Stipulated for There-Insertion. In Alvarez, Gloria, Brodie, Belinda & McCoy, Terry (eds.) *ESCOL '84: Proceedings of the First Eastern States Conference on Linguistics*. Columbus, Ohio: Ohio State University. 27-34.
- Lambrecht, Knud. 1994. [Information structure and ...](#)
- Lochbiler, Bethany. 2012. Aspects of argument licensing. Ph. D. Dissertation, McGill University.
- Rado, Janina. 1997. Processing Hungarian: The role of topic and focus in language comprehension. Ph.D. Dissertation, University of Massachusetts at Amherst.
- Rizzi, Luigi. 2004. Locality and left periphery. In Belletti, Structures and beyond. v. 3,

## The expression of reflexive and reciprocal meanings. Anaphora

## 1 General remarks

Tsez uses several means of expressing the identity of the primary participants in an event and, correspondingly, the identity of their denotations in a clause or sentence. The main strategies include: use of verbs with an inherently reflexive or reciprocal reading (section 2); use of complex reflexives/reciprocals dedicated to expressing the coreference between two noun phrases (section 3); use of the focus enclitic *-tow* to mark a pronoun or demonstrative coreferential with an antecedent (section 4). To anticipate the discussion below, complex reflexives/reciprocals are strictly local, and forms in *-tow* are used to track coreference across clauses.

## 2 Verbs with reflexive and reciprocal meaning

Many constructions that would be expressed as overt reflexives in some other languages are expressed as intransitives, i.e. lexical or intrinsic reflexives, in Tsez. In this respect, Tsez parallels English, except that Tsez overtly distinguishes transitive and intransitive verb stems, as we showed in CH. YY [VERB MORPHOLOGY]. Thus, the normal translation of ‘Fatima is washing (herself) (in the river)’ uses the intransitive verb *esanad-* ‘wash’ (cf. transitive *esad-* ‘wash’), as in the example below:<sup>1</sup>

- (1) Pat'i                            ker-ā                    y-esanay-xo.  
      Fatima.ABS.II                river-IN.ESS        II-wash-PRS  
      ‘Fatima is washing (herself) in the river.’

(2) Debi        y<sup>ẘ</sup>ay        hih-xo                    yoł.  
      2SG.GEN1 dog.ABS.III scratch-IPFV.CVB AUX.PRS  
      ‘Your dog is scratching (itself).’

Likewise, intransitive symmetrical predicates, discussed in CH. YY [Basic clause types], can readily assume a reciprocal interpretation. For example:

- (3) yudes sasaq-āz-a                elo-r-no                r-ay-n                ...        miλ'-bi  
     daily morning-DIST-IN.ESS     there-LAT-and     nIPL-come-PFV.CVB     ram-PL.ABS.nIPL  
     r-ihanay-xosi                yoł.  
     nIPL-fight-PRS.PTCP        AUX.PRS  
     'Every day since morning, (two) rams go there and are fighting (with each other).' (FAlqilič:117)

In some cases other constructions are used, as in (4) and (5), which include transitive verbs, and (6), which illustrates a “ditransitive transitive”:

<sup>1</sup> Compare the transitive counterpart of this verb in (64).

- (4) ҪAl-ä k’ot’u y-ey-xo.  
     Ali-ERG beard.ABS.II II-shave-PRS  
     ‘Ali is shaving (himself).’
- (5) Pat’-ä kočuri b-oy-x.  
     Fatima-ERG bangs.ABS.III III-do-PRS  
     ‘Fatima is making up her hair.’
- (6) Kid-b-ä hižu kodi-q y-iħ-xo.  
     girl-OS-ERG comb.ABS.II hair-POSS.ESS II-put-PRS  
     ‘The girl is combing her hair.’ (putting a comb to hair)

In all such instances, the reflexive or reciprocal interpretation is determined by context or general world knowledge.

### **3 Dedicated reflexive/reciprocal forms: Distribution within a clause**

In this section, we discuss binding within a clause. For binding within a noun phrase, see Ch. YY [Noun phrase]. Unless explicitly stated below, compound reflexives are in complementary distribution with regular pronouns/demonstratives.

The use of a reflexive/reciprocal element does not affect the transitivity of a clause; the compound form appears in (non-subject) argument position, in the same case as an equivalent non-reflexive argument.

#### **3.1 Reflexive/reciprocal formation**

All reflexives and reciprocals in Tsez are complex, consisting of two parts. Tsez uses two strategies to derive complex reflexives and reciprocals, both of which involve repetition of the relevant pronoun or demonstrative (for details, see CH.YY [DEMS]). In one of these formations, the first component of the complex reflexive appears in the ergative, and the second component appears in the case required by the verb or postposition. The case of the compound reflexive is therefore expressed by the second component. For example, in (7a), the compound reflexive is in the poss-lative form, and in (7b) it appears in the absolute. This formation is available for all cases other than the ergative.

- (7) a. el-ä elu-quo-r  
     1PL-ERG 1PL-POSS-LAT  
     ‘to ourselves’
- b. el-ä eli  
     1PL-ERG 1PL.ABS  
     ‘ourselves’

In the second formation, the order of the constituents in the compound reflexive is reversed, and the case called for by the verb or postposition in question appears on the first constituent; the second constituent is in the absolute. This formation is available for all cases other than the ergative and the absolute.

- (8) a. elu-*qo-r* eli  
       1PL-POSS-LAT 1PL.ABS  
       ‘to ourselves’
- b. debi mi  
       2SG.GEN1 2SG.ABS  
       ‘your own’

First- and second-person reflexives are formed using pronouns. Third person is expressed by demonstratives, and these demonstratives are used to form reflexives as well. For ease of presentation, we will be referring to all these forms as reflexives.

In the third-person singular, the reflexive consists of two forms of the demonstrative *ža*, the oblique stem of which differs by gender (*nes-* for gender I, *nel-* for all other genders). Thus, the third-person singular reflexive shows gender concord with the antecedent. Third-person plural uses the demonstratives *žedi* (gender I) and *žedu* (all other genders), also showing gender concord with the antecedent.

In addition to the use of pronouns (for first and second person) and demonstratives (for third person), Tsez uses compound forms with the noun *q’im* ‘head’ to encode generic reflexives; such forms are only used with generic animate antecedents, for example:

- (9) a. *pro<sub>arb</sub>* q’im-ä q’im-λ’o-r boko b-ay-r-xosi  
       self-ERG self-SUPER-ALL felt.cloak.ABS.III III-come-CAUS-PRES.PRT  
       (yoł).  
       be.PRS
- b. *pro<sub>arb</sub>* q’im-λ’o-r q’im boko b-ay-r-xosi  
       self-SUPER-ALL self.ABS felt.cloak.ABS.III III-come-CAUS-PRES.PRT  
       (yoł).  
       be.PRS
- ‘Everybody is looking out for Number One.’ (i.e.: one brings a felt cloak for oneself)
- (10) a. [*pro<sub>arb</sub>* q’im-ä q’im-e-s mec  
       self-ERG self-OS-GEN1 language.ABS.III  
       b-iy-r-ani-x] hažetaw šebin (yoł).  
       III-know-CAUS-MASD-AD.ESS important thing.ABS.IV be.PRS
- b. [*pro<sub>arb</sub>* q’im-e-s q’im mec  
       self-OS-GEN1 self.ABS language.ABS.III  
       b-iy-r-ani-x] hažetaw šebin (yoł).  
       III-know-CAUS-MASD-AD.ESS important thing.ABS.IV be.PRS
- ‘It is important to know one’s own language.’

Plural reflexives can also receive a reciprocal interpretation, as shown in the translations below. In most cases, the choice between the reflexive and reciprocal readings is determined contextually. In the description below, for ease of exposition, we will be referring to the relevant forms as “reflexives,” regardless of their potential reciprocal interpretation.

The compounds [*sidä sis-/sid-nABS sis*] and [*sid-nABS sis*] ‘one another’ have a dedicated reciprocal interpretation, just as their English counterparts do. These compounds also have two formations. In the first formation, the first component is the ergative *sidä*, and the second component takes the form called for by the verb or postposition. In the second formation, the first component appears in the form called for by the verb or postposition, and the second component is the invariable *sis* ‘one’. For example:

- (11) Žed-ä sidä sis žek'-si.  
DEM.IPL-ERG RECP.ABS hit-PST.WIT  
‘They beat/hit each other.’
- (12) γ<sup>c</sup>ana-z-ä sis sida-r muri-bi teλ-si.  
woman-PL.OS-ERG RECP-LAT needle-PL.ABS.nIPL give-PST.WIT  
‘The women gave each other needles.’

In the discussion below, we will assume the information presented here and will only show the case of the entire reflexive, without identifying its component parts. The binding principles discussed in the subsequent sections pertain equally to all the types of anaphors presented in this section, namely pronominal reflexives, demonstrative reflexives, generic reflexives with *q'ṣim*, and reciprocals with *sis*.

### 3.2 Reflexives/reciprocals in intransitive clauses: The absolutive noun phrase as antecedent

Let us consider some simple cases first. With some principled exceptions to be discussed below, an intransitive absolutive argument can bind a reflexive in its own clause. In (13), the intransitive verb AGR-ez- ‘look at’ takes the absolutive subject and a super-lative adjunct; the reflexive appears in the super-lative form.

- (13) a. (Di) dä-λ'o-r di y-ezu-s.  
1SG.ABS.(II) 1SG.REFL.SUPER-LAT II-look-PST.WIT  
‘I (woman speaking) looked at myself.’
- b. (Mi) dow-λ'o-r mi y-ezu-s.  
2SG 2SG.REFL.SUPER-LAT II-look-PST.WIT  
‘You (addressing a woman) looked at yourself.’
- c. Madina nełā nełā-λ'o-r y-ezu-s.  
Madina.ABS.II REFL.SUPER-LAT II-look-PST.WIT  
‘Madina looked at herself.’

The opposite pattern is impossible: the super-lative cannot bind the absolutive argument. The ungrammaticality is pretty much the same as in the English translation of the following sentence:

- (14) \*Nełā ža Madina-λ'o-r y-ezu-s.  
REFL. nI.ABS Madina-SUPER-LAT II-look-PST.WIT  
(“Herself looked at Madina.”)

In (15), the intransitive predicate is the complex verb *šak AGR-oq-* ‘doubt’ (‘be doubtful’):

- (15) a. (Di) dä-λ'-äy di šak Ø-oq-xo.  
       1SG.ABS(.I) 1SG.REFL.SUPER-ABL doubtful I-become-PRS  
       'I (man speaking) doubt myself.'
- b. (mi) dow-λ'-äy mi šak Ø-oq-xo.  
       2SG.(II) 2SG.REFL.SUPER-ABL doubtful I-become-PRS  
       'You (addressing a man) doubt yourself.'
- c. ፩Ali nesä nesi-λ'-äy šak Ø-oq-xo.  
  Ali.ABS.I REFL.I.SUPER-LAT doubtful I-become-PRS  
  'Ali doubts himself.'

The antecedent of the reflexive does not have to precede it; it can also follow, as shown below:

- (16) Nesä nesi-λ'-äy šak Ø-oq-xo ፩Ali.  
       REFL.I.SUPER-LAT doubtful I-become-PRS Ali.ABS.I  
       'Ali doubts himself.'

While the antecedent can occur in different positions in the clause, postverbal reflexives are dispreferred in elicitations, with judgments ranging from outright rejection to strong dispreference; we have not found postverbal reflexives in texts either.<sup>2</sup> (See more discussion of the postverbal domain in CH. YY [Word order].)

- (17) a. ??/\*፩Ali šak Ø-oq-xo nesä nesi-λ'-äy.  
       Ali.ABS.I doubtful I-become-PRS REFL.I.SUPER-LAT  
       b. ??/\*Šak Ø-oq-xo ፩Ali nesä nesi-λ'-äy.  
           doubtful I-become-PRS Ali.ABS.I REFL.I.SUPER-LAT  
       c. ??/\*Šak Ø-oq-xo nesä nesi-λ'-äy ፩Ali.  
           doubtful I-become-PRS REFL.I.SUPER-LAT Ali.ABS.I  
       ('Ali doubts himself.')

An antecedent in the absolute can bind a reflexive in the adnominal genitive modifying a constituent in the same clause.<sup>3</sup>

- (18) a. (Di) däz di otax-ā zow-s.  
       1SG.ABS 1SG.REFL.GEN2 room-IN.ESS be.PST-PST.WIT  
       'I was in my room.'
- b. (Mi) debe-z mi otax-ā zow-s.  
       2SG 2SG.REFL.GEN2 room-IN.ESS be.PST-PST.WIT  
       'You were in your room.'

---

<sup>2</sup> To anticipate the discussion in section 4 below, this is one of several points of divergence between compound reflexives and regular pronouns/demonstratives with the particle *-tow*.

<sup>3</sup> The examples in (19) include idiomatic expressions meaning 'to annoy', literally 'rise in the tooth' and 'attach oneself to the tooth'.

- (19) a. fAli nesä nesi-z-tow k'ic-ā Ø-iz-äsi.  
           Ali.ABS.I REFL.GEN2-FOC tooth-IN.ESS II-rise-RES  
           ‘Ali annoys even himself.’

b. Es-na-bi žedä žedu-z k’ica-λ  
       sibling-PL.STEM-PL.ABS.IPL REFL.PL.GEN2 tooth-SUB.ESS  
       b-it-i-s.  
       IPL-touch-PST.WIT  
       ‘The siblings annoy each other/themselves.’

c. fIsa-n fali-n žedä žedu-λ raziyaw  
       Isa.ABS.I-and Ali.ABS.I-and REFL.PL-SUPER.ESS content  
       zow-n.  
       be.PST-PST.nWIT  
       ‘Isa and Ali were happy with each other/themselves.’

(20) Tawadi nesä nesi-z mež-ä kec-no.  
       Tawadi.ABS.I REFL.I-GEN2 bed-IN.ESS sleep-PST.nWIT  
       ‘Tawadi slept in his own bed.’ (based on Ražbadinno, Tawadin:79)

And the absolute can also antecede a reflexive inside a postpositional phrase:

- (21) Babiw nesä nesi-z y<sup>c</sup>utk-o-q šet'ur Ø-iči-x.  
     father.ABS.I REFL.I.GEN2 house-OS-POSS around I-stay-PRS  
     ‘Father is (somewhere) around his house.’

A compound reflexive is impossible with antecedents that are subconstituents of clause constituents. For example, in (22), the adnominal genitive cannot antecede the reflexive (note that because the noun ‘bull’ is gender III, there is no gender ambiguity in the interpretation of the reflexive; it can only refer to the teacher):

- (22) \*[Učitel-e-s            is]            nesā nesi-z    roč-yo-x-āy    b-egi-s.  
       teacher-OS-GEN1    bull.ABS.III    REFL.I-GEN2    rope-OS-AD-ABL III-get.loose-PST.WIT  
       ('The teacher<sub>i</sub>'s bull broke away from his<sub>i</sub> rope.)

There are no restrictions on the animacy of the antecedent. The following examples illustrate inanimate antecedents:

- (23) Dunyal neña-q ža šet'u b-uti-x.  
       earth.ABS.III REFL.nI.POSS.ESS around III-turn-PRS  
       ‘The earth turns around itself.’

(24) Yedu lak neña neña-λ'-äy qiqi-x.  
       DEM paint.ABS.III REFL-SUPER-ABL get.bad-PRS  
       ‘This paint is getting bad from/by itself.’

So far the pattern we see is unsurprising; the absolute argument, which looks like a subject, binds reflexives in its own clause. However there are several subtypes of intransitive clauses where the absolute cannot antecede a reflexive but can be bound by some other constituent. We turn to these clauses in the next section.

### 3.3 Reflexives/reciprocals in existential, possessive, and accidental clauses

Recall that existential, possessive, and accidental clauses include both an absolute noun phrase and an additional expression denoting the scene (in existentials), possessor (in possessive clauses), or inadvertent agent (in accidental clauses)—these expressions can be characterized as obligatory adjuncts (see CH YY [Basic clause types]). The table below represents this schematically:

Table 2. Constructions with intransitive predicate and obligatory adjuncts

	Obligatory adjunct	ABS Argument	Predicate
Existential clause	Scene-setting expression	Existential pivot	BE
Possessive clause	Possessor (GEN or POSS-ESS)	Possessum	BE
Accidental clause	Inadvertent agent (POSS-ESS)	Patient	Unaccusative verb

In these clauses, the absolute constituent can antecede a reflexive in any constituent other than the obligatory adjunct.

- (25) Nelä nelä-z      ciq-ko      bikori-aždah      zow-n/  
       REFL.nI-GEN2     forest-POSS.ESS    snake-dragon.ABS.III    be.PST-PST.nWIT/  
       b-iči-n.  
       III-stay-PST.nWIT  
       ‘A/The evil snake<sub>i</sub> was in its<sub>i</sub> forest.’  
       NOT: ‘There was an evil snake<sub>i</sub> in its<sub>i</sub> forest.’
- (26) Nesä nesi-z      idu      žek’u      yoł-ä?  
       REFL.I-GEN2     home person.ABS.I    be.PRS.INTERR  
       ‘Is there someone<sub>i</sub> in his<sub>j/\*i</sub> home?’

In the following example we see that the absolute in a possessive clause cannot antecede a reflexive in the possessor genitive or in any other constituent of the possessive clause:

- (27) \*Nesä      nesi-z      k’et’u-s      bet’erhan      yoł.  
       REFL.I-GEN2     cat-GEN1     master.ABS.I    be.PRS  
       (‘The cat’s owner exists.’)

Examples (28), (29) show that the absolute cannot antecede a reflexive in the noun phrase denoting the inadvertent agent:

- (28) \*Eniw      nelä nelä-q/nelä-q ža      žek’-si.  
       mother.ABS.II    REFL.nI-POSS.ESS     hit-PST.WIT  
       (‘Mother accidentally hit herself.’)
- (29) \*Kid      nelä nelä-z/nelä-z ža      eniw-q      y-eč’e-ł-si.  
       girl.ABS.II    REFL.nI-GEN2     mother-POSS.ESS    II-cut-INTR-PST.WIT  
       (“Her mother accidentally cut the girl.”)

In contrast, scene-setting expressions in existentials, possessors in possessive clauses, and inadvertent agent noun phrases in accidental clauses can antecede reflexives, for example:

- (30) Ma<sup>f</sup>qir-zo ciq-ko nelä nelä-s bikori-aždah  
far-OS forest-POSS.ESS REFL.NI-GEN1 snake-dragon.ABS.III  
zow-n.  
be.PST-PST.nWIT  
'In the faraway forest, there was its<sub>i</sub> (own) evil snake.'
- (31) Yiła k'et'u-s nelä nelä-s bet'erhan yoł-ä?  
DEM.NI cat-GEN1 REFL.NI-GEN1 master.ABS.I be.PRS-INTERR  
'Does this cat have an owner?'
- (32) Eniw-q nelä ža žek'-si.  
mother-POSS.ESS REFL.NI.ABS hit-PST.WIT  
'Mother accidentally hit herself.'
- (33) Kid-be-q nelä nelä-s/nelä-s ža baša b-eč'e-ł-si.  
girl-OS-POSS.ESS REFL.NI-GEN1 finger.ABS.III III-cut-INTR-PST.WIT  
'The girl accidentally cut her own finger.'

While the absolute noun phrase cannot bind the obligatory adjunct, it can antecede reflexives in other constituents. For example:

- (34) Uži-s k'et'u nelä nelä-z xoxoya-za-de yoł.  
boy-GEN1 cat.ABS.III REFL.NI-GEN2 youngling-PL.OS-APUS.ESS be.PRS  
'The boy has a cat<sub>i</sub> with its<sub>i</sub> kittens.'

### 3.4 Reflexives/reciprocals in clauses with cognition/perception verbs

Recall that the cognition/perception verbs discussed in Ch.YY [Basic clause types] take the lative experiencer and absolute stimulus. Depending on the number of arguments (i.e. transitive versus ditransitive), these verbs show two different patterns of causativization, though the case-marking pattern is the same (CH. YY [Basic clause types, Section 6.3]). The patterns are as follows:

- (35) Pattern 1: Transitive verb
 

affective:	Experiencer-LAT	Stimulus-ABS	V
causative:	Agent-ERG	Stimulus-ABS	V-CAUS
- (36) Pattern 2: Ditransitive verb
 

affective:	Experiencer-LAT	Stimulus-ABS	V
causative:	Agent-ERG	Causee-POSS-ESS	Stimulus-ABS
			V-CAUS

We find that the difference in causativization corresponds to differences in the way reflexive binding is structured. Psychological verbs which causativize following Pattern 1 ('know'-verbs,

see CH. YY [Basic clause types]) show the lative argument binding the absolutive, but not the other way around.<sup>4</sup>

- (37) a. Irbahin-e-r nesir že surat-yo-ł Ø-esu-s.  
Ibrahim-OS-LAT REFL.I.ABS picture-OS-CONT.ESS I-find-PST.WIT  
'Ibrahim found himself in the picture.'
- b. \*Irbahin nesä nesi-r/nesir že surat-yo-ł Ø-esu-s.  
Ibrahim.ABS REFL.I-LAT picture-OS-CONT.ESS I-find-PST.WIT
- (38) a. Eniw-r neła-r že šuł'i-x.  
mother-LAT REFL.nI.ABS forget-PRS  
'Mother forgets about herself.'
- b. \*Eniw nełä neła-r/neła-r že šuł'i-x.  
mother.ABS REFL.nI-LAT forget-PRS
- (39) a. Yiła kid-be-r neła-r že y-iy-x-ānu.  
DEM.nI.OS girl-OS-LAT REFL.nI.ABS II-know-PRS-NEG  
'This girl does not know herself.'
- b. \*Yedu kid nełä neła-r/neła-r že y-iy-x-ānu.  
DEM.nI.OS girl.ABS.II REFL.nI-LAT II-know-PRS-NEG

In contrast, those cognition and perception verbs that causativize as ditransitives, following Pattern 2 ('like'-verbs), allow binding both ways, from the lative to the absolutive and from the absolutive to the lative:

- (40) a. Eniw-r neła-r že y-ukay-s.  
mother-LAT REFL.nI.ABS(.II) II-see-PST.WIT  
'Mother saw herself.'
- b. Eniw neł-ä neła-r y-ukay-s.  
mother.ABS.II REFL.nI-LAT II-see-PST.WIT  
'Mother saw herself.'
- (41) a. Madina-r neła-r že y-eti-x.  
Madina-LAT REFL.nI.ABS(.II) II-like-PRS  
'Madina loves herself.'
- b. Madina neł-ä neła-r y-eti-x.  
Madina.ABS.II REFL.nI-LAT II-like-PRS  
'Madina loves herself.'
- (42) a. ʃIsa-r-no ʃAli-r-no žeđä žeđu b-eti-x.  
Isa-LAT-and Ali-LAT-and REFL.PL.ABS(.IPL) IPL-like-PRS  
'Isa and Ali like each other/themselves.'
- b. ʃIsa-n ʃAli-n žeđä žeđu-r b-eti-x.  
Isa.ABS.I-and Ali.ABS.I-and REFL.PL.ABS-LAT IPL-like-PRS  
'Isa and Ali like each other/themselves.'

---

<sup>4</sup> There is only one formation for the reflexive in the absolutive position, which explains the unique form used in the (a) examples here.

### 3.5 Reflexives/reciprocals in transitive and ditransitive clauses

In transitive and ditransitive clauses, the ergative noun phrase can antecede the reflexive in the absolutive position; the opposite pattern is impossible. For example:

- (43) a. Eni-y-ä      nelä ža      duduý-ir-xo.  
mother-OS-ERG   REFL.nI.ABS.II   berate-CAUS-PRS  
'Mother is berating/scolding herself.'
- b. \*Eniw      nelä nelä      duduý-ir-xo.  
mother.ABS.II   REFL.nI-ERG   berate-CAUS-PRS
- (44) a. Es-na-z-ä      žedä žedu-qo-r      kayat-ya-bi  
sibling-PL-PL.OS-ERG   REFL.IPL-POSS-LAT   letter-OS-PL.ABS.nIPL  
r-eger-si.  
nIPL-send-PST.WIT  
'The siblings sent each other/themselves letters.'
- b. \*Es-na-bi      žedä žedä      eniw-qo-r      b-eger-xo.  
sibling-PL-PL.ABS.IPL   REFL.IPL-ERG   mother-POSS-LAT   IPL-send-PRS  
('The siblings send each other/themselves to Mother.')
- (45) a. Xalq'i-m-ä ...      žedä žedu-s      c'ik'iw      ŋaλ-no  
people-OS-ERG   REFL.IPL-GEN1   entire      village.ABS.III-and  
kuši-n.  
demolish-PST.nWIT  
'The people demolished their entire village.' (Yizaläy hič'č'a ixiw šebi yoł?:12)
- b. Žed-ä      xalq'i-mo-s      c'ik'iw      ŋaλ-no  
DEM.IPL-ERG   people-OS-GEN1   entire      village.ABS.III  
kuši-n.  
demolish-PST.nWIT  
'They<sub>j/\*i</sub> demolished the people<sub>i</sub>'s entire village.'

A gap in the reflexive paradigm underscores the impossibility of another argument binding a reflexive in the ergative position; there are no reflexive forms of the ergative. For most nouns, the ergative coincides with the in-essive form, and in-essive reflexives are possible, but they cannot be used as ergatives.

If the antecedent is a subconstituent of the ergative noun phrase, reflexivization is impossible:

- (46) \*Učitel-e-z      y<sup>f</sup>way-ä      nesä ža      ũhan-si.  
teacher-OS-GEN2 dog-ERG   REFL.I.ABS bite-PST.WIT  
('The teacher<sub>i</sub>'s dog bit himself<sub>i</sub>.)'

In addition to serving as antecedent to a reflexive in the absolutive, the ergative noun phrase can also serve as the antecedent of a reflexive in other case forms, as illustrated in (48), or a reflexive which is a subconstituent of its clause-mate noun phrase. To illustrate the latter, in (48), the ergative antecedes the adnominal genitive in the absolutive noun phrase, and in (49), in the adnominal genitive of the poss-essive causee. In (50) the ergative serves as the antecedent to the adnominal genitive within a lative noun phrase:

- (47) *⌚Al-ä-n* Irbahin-ä-n žedä žedu-l-äy gazyat-λ'o  
 Ali-ERG-and Ibrahim-ERG-and REFL.PL-CONT-ABL newspaper-SUPER.ESS  
*t'et'er-xo.*  
 read-PRS  
 'Ali and Ibrahim are reading about themselves/each other in the newspaper.'
- (48) *Nes-ä* nesä nesi-s īurmat b-oy-nč'u.  
 DEM.I-ERG REFL.I-GEN1 respect.ABS.III III-do-PRS.NEG  
 'He does not respect himself.'
- (49) *Sult'an-ä* kino nesä nesi-z xex-za-q  
 Sultan-ERG movie.ABS.IV REFL.I-GEN2 child-OS-POSS.ESS  
*r-uka-r-si.*  
 IV-see-CAUS-PST.WIT  
 'Sultan<sub>i</sub> showed a movie to his<sub>i</sub> children.'
- (50) *⌚Al-ä-i* nes-ä nesi-z<sub>i</sub> qizanyo-r yčutku r-oy-s.  
 Ali-ERG REFL-GEN2 family-LAT house.ABS.IV IV-do-PST.WIT  
 'Ali<sub>i</sub> built a house for his<sub>i</sub> family.'

In ditransitive or causative-of-transitive clauses, the recipient/causee, which appears in an oblique form, cannot antecede a reflexive in the ergative position:

- (51) \*Es-na-za-qo-r žedä žedä kayat-ya-bi r-eger-si.  
 sibling-PL-OS-POSS-LAT REFL.IPL-ERG letter-OS-PL.ABS.nIPL nIPL-send-PST.WIT  
 ('The siblings sent each other/themselves letters.')

We already noted positional restrictions on reflexives (but not on their antecedents) in section 3.2. As in intransitive clauses, postverbal reflexives in transitive or ditransitive clauses are impossible or strongly dispreferred. Compare the following examples:

- (52) a. *Nełä* yčana-z-ä nełä neła-s uži Ø-exuy-s.  
 DEM.nI woman-OS-ERG REFL.nI-GEN1 boy.ABS.I I-kill-PST.WIT  
 b. ??/\**Nełä* yčana-z-ä Ø-exuy-s nełä neła-s uži.  
 DEM.nI woman-OS-ERG I-kill-PST.WIT REFL.nI-GEN1 boy.ABS.I  
 'That woman killed her own son.'

Again, as with intransitives, there are no restrictions on the animacy of the antecedent. Consider the following example:

- (53) *Hawa=baq'č-oq-ä* nełä ža r-aλ'ir-nč'u.  
 weather-OS-ERG REFL.nI.ABS.IV IV-deceive-PRS.NEG  
 'Weather does not deceive itself.'

Though unable to bind the ergative, the absolute can antecede reflexives in other constituents of a transitive/ditransitive clause. In the next pair of sentences, it is possible to tell which noun phrase antecedes the reflexive because the reflexive shows gender concord with the antecedent; in (54a), it matches the gender I feature of *užā* 'boy', and in (54b) it matches the gender II feature of the noun phrase *ac* 'door':

- (54) a. Už-ä ac nesä nesi-z reka-re-d hiš-si.  
          boy-ERG door.ABS.II REFL.I-GEN2 key-OS-INS lock-PST.WIT  
          ‘The boy locked the door with his key.’
- b. Už-ä ac nelä nelä-z reka-re-d hiš-si.  
          boy-ERG door.ABS.II REFL.NI-GEN2 key-OS-INS lock-PST.WIT  
          ‘The boy locked the door with its proper (its own) key.’

If both the ergative and absolutive noun phrases anteceding a reflexive have the same gender feature, this may result in ambiguity, as in the next example. The preferred reading is still ‘Ali’, which means that the preferred association is between the reflexive and the structurally superior argument:

- (55) ɬAl-ä wac’al-qo nesä nesi-ł-äy esir-si.  
          Ali-ERG cousin-POSS.ESS REFL.I-CONT-ABL ask-PSTWIT  
          ‘Ali<sub>i</sub> asked his cousin<sub>j</sub> about himself<sub>i/\*j</sub>.’

The marginal ability of a poss-essive noun phrase to antecede a reflexive, as in (55), disappears if the reflexive precedes the poss-essive; compare (55) and (56):

- (56) ɬAl-ä nesä nesi-ł-äy wac’al-qo esir-si.  
          Ali-ERG REFL.I-CONT-ABL cousin-POSS.ESS ask-PSTWIT  
          ‘Ali<sub>i</sub> asked his cousin<sub>j</sub> about himself<sub>i/\*j</sub>.’

In the alternating sentence where the reflexive is replaced with a regular demonstrative, the preference flips; now ‘cousin’ is the preferred antecedent, and this preference persists despite changes in word order:

- (57) a. ɬAl-ä wac’al-qo nesi-ł-äy esir-si.  
          Ali-ERG cousin-POSS.ESS DEM.I-CONT-ABL ask-PSTWIT  
       b. ɬAl-ä nesi-ł-äy wac’al-qo esir-si.  
          Ali-ERG DEM.I-CONT-ABL cousin-POSS.ESS ask-PSTWIT  
          ‘Ali<sub>i</sub> asked his cousin<sub>j</sub> about him<sub>j</sub>/??himself<sub>i</sub>.’

In the potential construction, the poss-essive agent can antecede a reflexive in the absolutive position, but the opposite pattern is impossible, regardless of word order:<sup>5</sup>

- (58) a. Doxtur-qo nesä nesi-s kumak b-oy-ł-xo.  
          doctor-POSS REFL.I-GEN help.ABS.III I II-do-POT-PRS  
          ‘The/A doctor is able to help himself.’
- b. \*Nesä nesi-q doxtur-e-s kumak b-oy-ł-xo.  
          REFL.I-POSS doctor-OS-GEN help.ABS.III III-do-POT-PRS
- c. \*Doxtur-e-s kumak nesä nesi-q b-oy-ł-xo.

---

<sup>5</sup> In our earlier work (Polinsky and Comrie 2003) we reported the opposite pattern, but this finding did not withstand scrutiny.

doctor-OS-GEN help.ABS.III REFL.I-POSS III-do-POT-PRS

In the biabsolutive construction, the agent, represented by the first absolutive noun phrase preceding the verb, can antecede a reflexive in the second absolutive position, as in (59a).<sup>6</sup> It can also appear postverbally and bind the preverbal reflexive, as in (59b).

- (59) a. Pat'i nełä ža y-ži-y-oŷ-xo (y-ič-äsi)  
          Fatima.ABS.II REFL.NI.ABS II-bother-IPFV.CVB II-stay-RES  
          zow-n.  
          AUX.PST.-PST.nWIT
- b. Nełä ža y-ži-y-oŷ-xo (y-ič-äsi) zow-n  
          REFL.NI.ABS II-bother-IPFV.CVB II-stay-RES AUX.PST.-PST.nWIT  
          Pat'i.  
          Fatima.ABS.II  
          ‘Fatima was discomfiting herself.’

However, the opposite pattern, whereby the reflexive appears before the preverbal absolutive antecedent, is impossible:

- (60) \*Nełä ža Pat'i y-ži-y-oŷ-xo (y-ič-äsi) zow-n.  
          REFL.NI.ABS Fatima.ABS.II II-bother-IPFV.CVB II-stay-RES AUX.PST.-PST.nWIT

### 3.6 Dedicated reflexive/reciprocal forms across clauses

Compound reflexives are locally bound; their antecedents have to be in the same clause (with the exception of reflexives in infinitive and masdar clauses, which we discuss below). Antecedent-reflexive coreference across the boundary of a tensed complement clause is impossible. This is shown below with an example involving a nominalized clause (61) and a clause introduced by the quotative particle *-λin* (62).<sup>7</sup> The embedded clauses are shown in brackets.

- (61) Kid-be-r [eni-y-ä ža/\*nełä ža beczi y-äy-ru-li]  
       girl-OS-LAT mother-OS-ERG DEM.ABS/REFL.NI.ABS praise II-do-PST.PTCP-NMLZ  
       teq-no.  
       hear-PST.nWIT  
       ‘The girl<sub>i</sub> heard that mother praised her<sub>i/j</sub>/\*herself.’
- (62) fAl-ä [Pat'-ä nesi-r/\*nesä nesi-r kumak  
       Ali-ERG Fatima-ERG DEM-LAT/REFL.I-LAT help.ABS.III  
       b-oy-xosi-λin] eλi-s.  
       III-do-PRS.PTCP-QUOT say-PSTWIT  
       ‘Ali<sub>i</sub> said that Fatima was helping him<sub>i/j</sub>/\*himself.’

<sup>6</sup> The lexical verb appearing in (59) and (60) is a compound AGR-*iž*-AGR-*oŷ*-, literally ‘carry-pull’; each component of the compound shows gender agreement.

<sup>7</sup> Coreference in clauses introduced by *-λin* is actually more complex than described here, as it involves indexical shifts, which we discuss in CH. YY. For present purposes, it is only important that dedicated reflexives are not allowed in such clauses.

Likewise, antecedents cannot bind compound reflexives inside tensed relative clauses (shown in brackets). For example:

- (63) \* $\emptyset$ Al-ä-n Irbahin-ä-n [žedä žedu-ł-āy gazyat-ł'o  
     Ali-ERG-and Ibrahim-ERG-and REFL.PL.I-CONT-ABL newspaper-SUPER.ESS  
     cäx-ru] šebin t'et'er-xo.  
     write-PST.PTCP thing.ABS.IV read-PRS  
     ('Ali and Ibrahim are reading the thing written about themselves in a newspaper.')  
 (64) \*Kid-b-ä tungi [nełä neł-ä teł zäw-ru]-zo  
     girl-OS-ERG jug.ABS.III DEM.nI-IN.ESS-FOC inside be.PST-PST.PTCP-ATTR.OS  
     łi-d esay-s.  
     water-INS wash.TR-PST.WIT  
     ('The girl washed the jug with the water that was in itself.')

The only case where locality is not observed is across the boundary of an infinitival or masdar complement (see CH.YY [Complement clauses]). In Tsez, infinitival and masdar complements are transparent to a number of syntactic processes, so this behavior of reflexives is unsurprising. In the following example, the reflexive can refer back to Ali:

- (65)  $\emptyset$ Al-ä Pat'i-q [nesä nesi-r kumak b-od-a] esir-xo.  
     Ali-ERG Fatima-POSS.ESS REFL.I-LAT help.ABS.III III-do-INF ask-PRS  
     'Ali<sub>i</sub> is asking Fatima to help him<sub>i</sub> (lit.: himself).'

Also in contrast to participial relative clauses, compound reflexives can occur inside infinitival and masdar relative clauses, provided that they are bound from outside that clause:

- (66) Kid-be-s [nełä neła-s at' q'uq'-ani-r] łi  
     girl-OS-GEN1 REFL.nI-GEN1 dough.ABS.IV knead-MASD-LAT water.ABS.IV  
     r-oq-inc'i.  
     IV-become-PST.WIT.NEG  
     'The girl<sub>i</sub> had no water to knead her<sub>i</sub> dough.' (based on  $\emptyset$ Aliqilič:43)  
 (67) [Nełä neła-s ac y-a'γ-ani-x] hal ānu  
     REFL.nI-GEN1 door.ABS.II II-open-MASD-AD.ESS ability.ABS.III be.PRS.NEG  
     dä-z ečuy-s.  
     1SG-GEN2 grandmother-GEN1  
     'My grandmother<sub>i</sub> cannot even open her<sub>i</sub> door.'

However, if the infinitival or masdar clause contains a noun phrase that is an appropriate antecedent for a reflexive inside that clause, the local antecedent takes precedence over the long-distance one. Consider the following sentence:

- (68) Pat'-ä kul er-xo [eni-y-ä nełä neło-z  
     Fatima-ERG hope.ABS.III put-PRS mother-OS-ERG REFL.nI-GEN2  
     maduhal-e-r kumak b-od-a]  
     neighbor-OS-LAT help.ABS.III III-do-INF  
     'Fatima<sub>i</sub> hopes that Mother<sub>j</sub> will help her<sub>j/??i</sub> neighbor.'

Both potential antecedents of the reflexive, ‘Fatima’ and ‘Mother’ are of the same gender, so it is theoretically possible for *nelä neloz* to be interpreted as coreferential with either of them. There is a strong preference, however, for interpreting the reflexive as coreferential with the subject of the infinitival clause rather than the subject of the matrix clause. We officially classify coreference with the matrix subject as “highly questionable,” but for some lexicalizations, our consultants reject it altogether.

#### 4 Reflexive/reciprocal interpretation of regular pronouns and demonstratives

In addition to the use of dedicated reflexive pronouns, Tsez can also convey reflexive/reciprocal meaning through the use of a regular pronoun or demonstrative combined with the emphatic enclitic *-tow* (dialectal variant *-tew*). In CH. YY [Particles], we identify *-tow* as one of the focus particles; it combines with noun phrases only. Its most general meaning can be described as the reversal of expectations: “based on expectations of the relationships between the referents or events, pick the (most) unlikely one.” To illustrate the use of *-tow*, let us start with a simple example. Example (69a) presents a simple statement about the weather. The addition of *-tow* in (69b) turns it into a comment on an unexpected weather event.

- (69) a. Isi y-ay-x.  
          snow.ABS.II II-come-PRS  
          ‘It is snowing.’ (lit.: snow is coming)  
       b. Isi-tow y-ay-x.  
          snow.ABS.II-FOC II-come-PRS  
          ‘It is even SNOWING.’

In (70), the violation of expectation is stated explicitly in the sentence; the father does not want the son to go fishing, but the son still does. The noun phrase *uži* appears with the particle *-tow*:

- (70) ḥono-äλiru yude-ł-no babiw-s hal  
       three-ORD day-CONT.ESS-TOP father-GEN1 state.ABS.III  
       b-ayr-inc'ey besuro-za-λ'o-r uži-tow Ø-ik'i-n.  
       III-bring-PFV.CVB.NEG fish-OS-POSS-LAT boy.ABS.I-FOC I-go-PST.nWIT  
       ‘On the third day, against Father’s wish (lit.: not bringing Father’s state), the SON  
       went fishing.’ (Besurozaqu:9)

This particle can also combine with the familiar compound reflexive. In (71a), the absolute subject expectedly binds a reflexive in the adnominal genitive of the ad-essive noun phrase. In (71b), where that reflexive appears with the focus particle, the interpretation is that the boy was supposed to go with someone else (or on the road suggested by someone else); instead, contrary to expectation, he chose his own way.

- (71) a. Uži nesä nesi-z huni-x Ø-ik'i-x.  
       boy.ABS.I REFL.I-GEN2 road-AD.ESS I-go-PRS  
       ‘The boy goes his own way.’

- b. Uži        nesä nesi-z-tow        huni-x        Ø-ik'i-x.  
 boy.ABS.I REFL.I-GEN2-FOC        road-AD.ESS        I-go-PRS  
 'The boy goes his own way.'

In (71b), the use of *-tow* does not alter the relationship between the antecedent and the compound reflexive, but when used with a regular pronoun or demonstrative, it does. Compare the following two sentences, which are close to (71a,b) but contain a simple demonstrative instead of a compound reflexive:

- (72) a. Uži        nesi-z        huni-x        Ø-ik'i-x.  
 boy.ABS.I DEM.I-GEN2        road-AD.ESS        I-go-PRS  
 'The boy<sub>i</sub> goes his<sub>j/\*i</sub> way.'  
 b. Uži        nesi-z-tow        huni-x        Ø-ik'i-x.  
 boy.ABS.I DEM.I-GEN2-FOC        road-AD.ESS        I-go-PRS  
 'The boy<sub>i</sub> goes his<sub>i/\*j</sub> own way.'

When a noun phrase that can serve as an antecedent occurs in the same clause as a pronoun, a standard expectation is that the two NPs point to different participants, as in the case of (72a). The addition of the focus particle reverses this standard expectation, and the result is a reading in which both expressions indicate the same referent, as in (72b).

Recall an earlier example, repeated below, which contained a compound reflexive whose antecedent was ambiguous, but showed preference for the ergative:

- (73) ֆAl-ä        wac'al-qo        nesä nesi-l-äy        esir-si.  
 Ali-ERG        cousin-POSS.ESS        REFL.I-CONT-ABL        ask-PSTWIT  
 'Ali<sub>i</sub> asked his cousin<sub>j</sub> about himself<sub>i/\*j</sub>.

When it includes a regular demonstrative with *-tow*, the sentence has the opposite interpretation:

- (74) ֆAl-ä        wac'al-qo        nesi-l-äy-tow        esir-si.  
 Ali-ERG        cousin-POSS.ESS        DEM.I-CONT-ABL-FOC        ask-PST.WIT  
 'Ali<sub>i</sub> asked his cousin<sub>j</sub> about him<sub>j/\*him<sub>i</sub></sub>.

Compound reflexives and regular pronouns/demonstratives can be co-indexed with an antecedent regardless of word order. For expressions with *-tow*, word order matters. Compare example (74) with the following sentence, where the pattern of coreference has been reversed:

- (75) ֆAl-ä        nesi-l-äy-tow        wac'al-qo        esir-si.  
 Ali-ERG        DEM.I-CONT-ABL-FOC        cousin-POSS.ESS        ask-PSTWIT  
 'Ali<sub>i</sub> asked his cousin<sub>j</sub> about himself<sub>i/\*him<sub>j</sub></sub>.

In addition to free variation within a single clause, *tow*-forms and dedicated reflexives are also in free variation in infinitival and masdar clauses (recall that dedicated reflexives can accept antecedents across the boundary of such clauses). Compare example (67) above, repeated below as (76), and its *tow*-form counterpart:

- (76) [Nelä nelä-s ac y-a<sup>č</sup>y-ani-x] hal ānu  
 REFL.nI-GEN1 door.ABS.II II-open-MASD-AD.ESS ability.ABS.III be.PRS.NEG  
 dä-z ečuy-s.  
 1SG-GEN2 grandmother-GEN1  
 'My grandmother<sub>i</sub> cannot even open her<sub>i</sub> door.'
- (77) [Nelä-s-tow ac y-a<sup>č</sup>y-ani-x] hal ānu  
 DEM.nI-GEN1-FOC door.ABS.II II-open-MASD-AD.ESS ability.ABS.III be.PRS.NEG  
 dä-z ečuy-s.  
 1SG-GEN2 grandmother-GEN1  
 'My grandmother<sub>i</sub> cannot even open her<sub>i</sub> door.'

If the embedded infinitival or masdar clause contains a potential local antecedent for a regular pronoun or demonstrative, the addition of *-tow* tilts the balance of coreference in favor of the long-distance antecedent. For example, in the sentence below, which is only minimally different from (68) above, the use of *-tow* makes the interpretation 'Fatima's neighbor' most likely; the interpretation 'Mother's neighbor' is judged highly unlikely or even unacceptable. Therefore, in this context, the *tow*-form and the dedicated reflexive constitute a minimal pair.

- (78) Pat'-ä kul er-xo [eni-y-ä neło-z-tow  
 Fatima-ERG hope.ABS.III put-PRS mother-OS-ERG DEM.nI-GEN2-FOC  
 maduhal-e-r kumak b-od-a]  
 neighbor-OS-LAT help.ABS.III III-do-INF  
 'Fatima<sub>i</sub> hopes that Mother<sub>j</sub> will help her<sub>i/???</sub> neighbor.'

We have observed that dedicated reflexives are close to unacceptable in the postverbal position. No such restriction is observed with *tow*-forms, and in fact, quite a few of these reflexives occur postverbally. Compare the unacceptable example below, repeated from (52), and its counterpart with a *tow*-form:

- (79) ??/\*Nelä y<sup>č</sup>ana-z-ä Ø-exuy-s nelä nelä-s uži.  
 DEM.nI woman-OS-ERG I-kill-PST.WIT REFL.nI-GEN1 boy.ABS.I  
 ('That woman killed her own son.')  
 (80) Nelä y<sup>č</sup>ana-z-ä Ø-exuy-s nelä-s-tow uži.  
 DEM.nI woman-OS-ERG I-kill-PST.WIT DEM.nI-GEN1-FOC boy.ABS.I  
 'That woman killed her own son.' (after Imnajšvili 1963:125)

Naturally, when two expressions occur in what seems to be a free variation, a question arises as to what kind of difference may exist between them. First of all, as we just noted, the distribution of dedicated reflexives is subject to more rigid structural constraints than the distribution of *tow*-forms, which is determined largely on the basis of plausible coreference. Second, there seems to be a preference for the use of dedicated reflexives in infinitival clauses. Other than that, as far as we can tell, the use of a *tow*-form entails greater emphasis; after all, this is the form associated with an element of surprise or violated expectations.

The particle *-tow* is offered in elicitations and also occurs in narrative texts. In addition, in texts

we find another information-structural marker, the contrastive topic marker *-gon* (see CH.YY [Particles]). This particle can also be used to indicate coreference between an unlikely antecedent and a subsequent pronoun or demonstrative. For instance, *-gon* is used in the title of one of the Tsez fairy tales (Abdulaev and Abdulaev 2010), shown in (81), and it can be replaced by *-tow* in this context with no change in interpretation (Higgins, 1979).<sup>8</sup>

- (81) xan-no nesi-s-gon ꙗono uži-n  
king.ABS.I-and DEM.I-GEN1-CONTR three boy.ABS.I-and  
'the king<sub>i</sub> and his<sub>i</sub> three sons'
- (82) xan-no nesi-s-tow ꙗono uži-n  
king.ABS.I-and DEM.I-GEN1-FOC three boy.ABS.I-and  
'the king<sub>i</sub> and his<sub>i</sub> three sons'

To summarize the discussion in sections 3 and 4, reflexive/reciprocal relationships in Tsez are strictly local. With the exception of infinitival and masdar clauses, which do not have their own tense, reflexive/reciprocal relationships cannot be established across a clausal boundary. This raises the question of how, if at all, coreference is established across clauses. We discuss this question in other chapters (CH. YY [Coordination] and CH. YY [Adverbial clauses]). To summarize the relevant discussion in that chapter, we show that regular pronouns and demonstratives are the primary devices used to establish coreference between two expressions in different clauses.

## 5 Copular clauses and reflexive/reciprocal expressions

Binding relations are put to the test in examples such as the English sentences below, where the reflexive is interpreted properly without the relevant antecedent (see Higgins 1979, Mikkelsen 2005 for a detailed discussion). In the examples below, the subject is a relative clause and the reflexive is contained in the predicate, but that predicate is not connected to the antecedent inside the relative clause. The phenomenon in question is known as connectivity: the binding relation is established in the absence of a clause-mate antecedent.

- (83) [What she is good at] [is talking about herself].  
SUBJECT PREDICATE
- (84) [What every racetrack driver likes] [is his car].  
SUBJECT PREDICATE

Across languages, constructions like these often use a relative clause in the subject position, and Tsez is no exception. Tsez has a headless correlative clause, the details of which we discuss in CH. YY [Relative clauses]. The examples below show headless relatives with predicates in the present and past tense.<sup>9</sup> The wh-word in such headless relative clauses can be omitted:

---

<sup>8</sup> On the other hand, when asked whether *-gon* can replace *-tow* in the examples presented earlier in this chapter, our consultants prefer to keep *-tow*.

<sup>9</sup> See CH.YY [RCs] for details on headless relatives.

- (85) (šebi) Zarema-r y-eti-xo-si  
 who.ABS.(II) Zarema-LAT II-like-PRS-ATTR  
 'whom Zarema likes'
- (86) (šebi) Zarema-r y-et-ä-si  
 who.ABS.(II) Zarema-LAT II-like-PST.WIT.INTERR-ATTR  
 'whom Zarema liked'

When used as subjects of specifical clefts, these correlative clauses can be followed by a predicate-internal reflexive. The case of the reflexive matches the case of the wh-word:

- (87) (lu-r) ſAl-ä micxir teλ-ä-si nesä nesi-r  
 who-LAT Ali-ERG money.ABS.III give-PST.INTERR-ATTR REFL.I-LAT  
 zow-S.  
 be.PST-PST.WIT  
 'To whom Ali gave money was to himself.'
- (88) (Šebi) Zarema-r y-eti-xo-si nelä ža (yoł).  
 who.ABS.(II) Zarema-LAT II-like-PRS-ATTR REFL.nI.ABS-FOC be.PRS  
 'Whom Zarema likes is herself.'

A dedicated reflexive can also alternate with a regular pronoun or demonstrative with the enclitic *-tow*, again matching case with the wh-word. Although the form in *-tow* can be used in the predicate of the specifical cleft, it seems less preferred.

- (89) (lu-r) ſAl-ä micxir teλ-ä-si nesi-r-tow  
 who-LAT Ali-ERG money.ABS.III give-PST.INTERR-ATTR DEM.I-LAT-FOC  
 zow-S.  
 be.PST-PST.WIT  
 'To whom Ali gave money was to himself.'
- (90) (Šebi) Zarema-r y-eti-xo-si ža-tow (yoł).  
 who.ABS.(II) Zarema-LAT II-like-PRS-ATTR DEM.ABS-FOC be.PRS  
 'Whom Zarema likes is herself.'

However, there is one specific context where the form in *-tow* is the only option available. Recall that there is no ergative form of the reflexive (see section 3.5). When the wh-word in the headless relative is in the ergative case, it has to be matched in the predicate by the form in *-tow*:

- (91) (lu) ſAli-s mašina b-ecur-ä-si nes-ä-tow/  
 who.ERG Ali-GEN1 car.ABS.III III-break-PST.INTERR-ATTR DEM.I-ERG-FOC  
 \*nes-ä nes-ä zow-S.  
 REFL.I-ERG be.PST-PST.WIT  
 'It was Ali himself who broke his car.' (lit.: who broke Ali's car was himself)

## Particles

Particles are short invariant words that serve a grammatical or information-structural function. None of the particles considered here affect the truth conditions of the sentence they occur in, either because the sentence is not a statement to begin with, or because only its conditions of use are affected. Most Tsez particles are enclitic (there are no proclitics in the language at all) and appear at the right edge of the word, following suffixes. Several particles can co-occur, and their order in such co-occurrences is not random. We are reasonably sure that the items described in this section are particles. Nevertheless, the distributional criteria are much less clear than for such categories as nouns and verbs, so it is not always easy to distinguish between enclitics and suffixes.<sup>1</sup>

### 1 Topic-marking particles

There are four main particles in this group: *-λa*, *-n(o)*, *-gon*, and *-yoli*. All these particles have a variety of specific meanings that nevertheless can be subsumed under a more general meaning. With the exception of *yoli*, the particles presented in this section do not combine with finite verbs. The same three particles participate in the derivation of quantified expressions whose paradigm is discussed in section 3.

Following Reinhart (1981), we define “topic” roughly as “the entity that the sentence adds new information about.” We refer to this standard type of topic as an “aboutness topic”. We also recognize the notion of “contrastive topic”. This type of topic has been defined in very different terms by different researchers. Some scholars define it as a topic that is explicitly contrasted to some other members of a contrast set. Under such a definition, it is critical to know whether “topic” is understood as a semantic, syntactic, or pragmatic notion. Different approaches bring different assumptions about the nature of topichood, which in turn alter the notion of “contrastive topic” as well. There are also researchers who understand contrastive topic as its own basic information-structural category; for these authors, the definition of “topic” is irrelevant to the determination of a contrast (see Constant 2014: Ch. 1, for a discussion of these approaches). In this chapter, we adopt a maximally inclusive approach, assuming that as long as the conception of a contrastive set is available, one can talk about a contrastive topic.

#### 1.1 *-λa*

The particle *-λa* marks external topics; its general meaning is ‘as for; speaking of’, but without the pronounced contrastive reading that is observed with the particles *-yoli* and *-gon*, discussed below.

External topics introduced by *-λa* can but do not necessarily have a structural representation in the clause. They normally appear at the left edge of the clause and can be separated from the rest of the clause by a pause. For example:

- (1) Howži-*λa* # r<sup>a</sup>lay                  r-od-a                  zaman                  b-ay-x.

---

<sup>1</sup> See Forker (2013: 412) for similar difficulties in distinguishing enclitics and suffixes in Hinuq.

- now-TOP threshing.ABS.IV IV-do-INF time.ABS.III III-come-PRS  
 ‘Now is when it is time to do the threshing.’ (Q<sup>c</sup>ay:62)
- (2) Sult’an-λa # (nesi-s) wac’al-bi šahar-y-āy b-ay-s.  
 Sultan-TOP DEM.I-GEN1 cousin-PL.ABS.IPL city-OS-IN.ABL IPL-come-PST.WIT  
 ‘Sultan, his cousins came from the city.’
- (3) Gulu-λa pro b-iqi-s, idu r-ac’-a  
 horse.ABS.III-TOP III-be.gotten-PST.WIT home IV-eat.TR-INF  
 šebin-wa ānu!  
 thing.ABS.IV-EMPH be.PRS.NEG  
 ‘A horse, he got, but there is nothing to eat at home!’ (Imnajšvili 1963:273)

At the root clause level, topics can appear in the preverbal and postverbal domains. However, topics marked with -λa are infelicitous postverbally. Compare example (3), where the topic phrase can appear sentence-initially, with the following example:

- (4) #pro/nes-ä b-iqi-s gulu-λa.  
 DEM.I-ERG III-be.gotten-PST.WIT horse.ABS.III-TOP  
 (‘A horse, he got.’)

The particle -λa also appears attached to conditional and concessive converbs, which underscores the backgrounded, presuppositional status of the clauses headed by these converbs (see CH.YY [Coordination] and CH. YY [Adverbial clauses] for the topic status of conditionals). For example:

- (5) [B-aq’<sup>s</sup>u micxir b-oq-näy]-λa qala-m-ä-yor-no  
 III-much/many money.ABS.III III-become-COND.I.CVB-TOP fortress-OS-IN-VERS-and  
 Ø-izi-n, Ø-ik’-ān di neł-dä-yor.  
 I-rise-PFV.CVB I-go-FUT.DEF 1SG.ABS(.I) DEM.nI-APUD-VERS  
 ‘If I had a lot of money I would go up into the fortress and go to her chambers  
 (lit.: ...go toward by her).’  
 (K’esonad mi, pakmos ŋabasi!:17)
- (6) [Dice-gon nes-ä dafba b-ič-ir-łin]-λa  
 how.much-CONTR.TOP DEM.I-ERG dispute.ABS.III III-stay-CAUS-CONCESS.CVB-TOP  
 žedu ŋenekizi b-oq-x-ānu.  
 DEM.ABS.IPL listen IPL-become-PRS-NEG  
 ‘No matter how much he disagreed, they would not listen.’

Expressions marked with -λa are limited to root clauses and cannot occur in clausal nominalizations in -li or masdar/infinitival clauses (see CH. YY [Complement clauses]). Within root clauses, these expressions typically occur in the clause-initial position, as attested in the examples above.

The particle -λa is also used to derive indefinite expressions from interrogatives; this use is discussed in section 3 below.

## 1.2 -yoli

The particle *-yoli* is probably a contraction of *yol* ‘be.PRS’ and the conditional marker *-li*. Like *-gon*, which is discussed in section **Error! Reference source not found.** below, it marks contrastive topics, but its distribution is broader than that of *-gon*, as it can attach to finite verb. In combining with finite verbs, *-yoli* appears on the predicate of a clause that encodes the antecedent of a conditional, as shown below. For the details of *-yoli* in conditionals, see CH. YY [Coordination].

- (7) Mi y-ik'-äsi zow-s-yołi, elo-tow ɬemu  
 2SG.ABS.(II) II-go-RES.PTCP be.PST-PST.WIT-CONTR.TOP there-FOC HYP.CONS  
 ɬäxu.  
 remain.FUT  
 ‘If you had gone there you would have stayed there.’ (Besurozaqu:35)

In the rest of this section, we will concentrate on the use of *-yoli* with constituents other than finite clauses. Since *-yoli* expresses contrast, its use requires the establishment of a relevant contrastive set, either explicitly or contextually. In the following example, ‘treasure’ and ‘wisdom’ are explicitly compared, and *yoli* appears with the noun phrase *aq'slu* ‘advice’:

- (8) Ukru dä-q-äy kʷaxa-tow läy, aq'slu-yołi  
 silver.ABS.III 1SG-POSS-ABL soon-FOC stop.FUT advice.ABS.III-CONTR.TOP  
 net-äy netintow dä-de sadaq ɬäxu.  
 when-ABL always 1SG-APUD.ESS together remain.FUT  
 ‘Silver will run out quickly; but as for advice, it will stay with me forever.’  
 (Hasanno Husenno:23)

In (9) and (10), the referent is selected from a defined set (several brothers) and explicitly contrasted to the other members of that set; again, *-yoli* appears on the relevant noun phrase expressing contrastive topic:

- (9) Ø-ṣeye-ni esi-y-ä-yołi sisxoli riɬu-n  
 I-young-DEF sibling-OS-ERG-CONTR.TOP alone cultivated.land.ABS.IV-and  
 r-iɬi-n...  
 IV-plough-PFV.CVB  
 ‘As for the younger brother, he was ploughing alone...’ (ɬelä bečed adiru miskin žek'u:4)
- (10) ɬAliqilič-yołi yudes neširu-x-äy babiw-z  
 Aliqilič.ABS.I-CONTR.TOP daily evening-AD-ABL father-GEN2  
 šuda-ɬ'o-r-t'a Ø-ik'i-x...  
 grave-SUPER-LAT-DISTR I-go-PRS  
 ‘As for Aliqilič, every evening he went to his father’s grave...’ (ɬAliqilič:17)

In the following example, *-yoli* appears on a constituent whose referent is contrasted to a contextually inferable set; thus, it still carries the contrastive meaning. The implication in the response below is that someone (but not the speaker) went to the meeting:

- (11) A: Sabraniya liy-ä?

The particle *-yoli* is not limited to nominal constituents. It can occur with adverbial phrases as well. For example;

- (12) Mečo-ł-xor-yołi di-tow y-ik'i-s.  
 field-CONT-VERS-CONTR.TOP 1SG.ABS.II-FOC II-go-PST.WIT  
 'To the fields, I am going.' (lit.: I am gone)

Like *-λa*, *-yoλi* is limited to root clauses and cannot occur in clausal nominalizations in *-li*, in masdar/infinitival clauses, or in relative clauses.

### 1.3 -gon

The particle *-gon* is formed by the emphatic particle *-go* (a borrowing from Avar) and the particle *-n(o)* just discussed. Synchronously, *-gon* seems to function as a single unit; however, there are instances when it still alternates with *-go*, in particular in concessive clauses, which will be discussed below.

The main function of *-gon* is to mark contrastive topic. In the following example, the contrast set is introduced explicitly, and *-gon* appears on the name of one of the members of that set.

- (13) *λ’ir-äy λ’iy-or y-oλ’u-n q’ano k’emot’ y-āy,*  
 above-ABL down-LAT II-fall-PFV.CVB two trunk.ABS.II II-come.FUT  
*sid-ä “qurun-qaran-λin” qäλi, side-n-ä-gon*  
*one-ERG qurun-qaran-QUOT shout.FUT one-DEF-ERG-CONTR.TOP*  
*“c’urun-c’aran-λin” qäλi.*  
*c’urun-c’aran-QUOT shout.FUT*  
 ‘Two trunks will fall down from above; one will make the noise “qurun-qaran”, and the other, “c’urun-c’aran”.’ (Best’al kid:59)

In the example below, the preceding context implies a contrast (a character in a fairy tale is undergoing magical transformations), and the next sentence starts with a contrastive topic:

A contrast set may simply be presupposed, and the only overtly mentioned member can then appear marked with *-gon*, as in the following example, where ‘we’ is implicitly contrasted with other groups of people:

- (15) Idu cezi-ya-x-or xabaryad-a q'arlizi b-oq-xo  
at.home Tsez-OS-AD-LAT speak-INF effort 1PL-become-PRS  
eli-gon.  
1PL.ABS.IPL-CONTR.TOP  
'We try to speak Tsez at home.'

In root clauses, contrastive topics with *-gon* are quite common postverbally; the postverbal placement is associated with the topic interpretation, and material marked with *-gon* is a good fit for this interpretation. For example:

- (16) Ža armi-ł Ø-iži-n el-ā-za-gon.  
DEM.ABS(.I) army-CONT.ESS I-lead-PST.nWIT there-ABL-DIST-CONTR.TOP  
'They recruited him in the army right from there.'

All told, the placement of topics marked with *-gon* is not limited to the clause-initial position, as is reportedly common for contrastive topics in Nakh-Dagestanian languages (see Testelec 1997: 263-264 for a discussion). As he saw above, contrastive topics with *-yoli* are also quite free in their placement. It remains to be seen whether this flexibility of linear position is observed in other languages of the family.

Another major function of *-gon* is to indicate repetition and/or addition (Imnajšvili 1963:273). A similar function is observed for the cognate particle in Hinuq (Forker 2013: 415-417). Although this function may be related to the contrastive topic function diachronically, we recognize it as a separate one in the current state of the language and refer to it as *additive* (ADD). Additive particles are attested cross-linguistically, for example, in Quechua (Cole 1982: 164, 169). The additive function is typically observed with numerals and adverbs; for example:

- (17) Ø-ay-n sis-gon žek'u.  
I-come-PST.nWIT one-ADD person.ABS.I  
'Another person came.' (Imnajšvili 1963:273)
- (18) k'ox-äλiru-gon  
twice-ORD-ADD  
'for a/the second time'
- (19) sasaq-gon  
tomorrow-ADD  
'again tomorrow'
- (20) huday-gon  
next-ADD  
'(the) next day'

Some adverbs with the particle *-gon* are lexicalized and their meanings are quite different from the corresponding adverbs without *-gon*; for example *žigon* ‘again’ (*ži* ‘now’), *dahawgon* ‘more,

more so' (*dahaw* 'a little'), *xizyogon* 'again' (*xizyo* 'afterwards'), AGR-*uygon* 'already' (AGR-*uy* 'really; indeed').

Finally, *-gon* is used to derive free choice expressions from interrogative words or phrases. Free-choice items with *-gon* are often found in concessive converbal clauses, as shown below (see also CH.YY [Relative clauses] and CH.YY[Adverbial clauses]). In this use, *-gon* alternates with the particle *-go*.

Some examples (see also example (6) above):

- (21) Dice-gon bar-ä eλi-łin šebin-kin  
     how.much-CONTR.TOP wife-ERG say-CONCESS.CVB thing.ABS.IV-FOC  
     r-oy-xo zow-nč'us.  
     IV-do-IPFV.CVB AUX.PST-PST.WIT.NEG  
     ‘No matter what his wife said, he did not lift a finger.’

(22) Dice-go zahmat b-oq-łin  
     how.much-CONTR.TOP hardship.ABS.III III-become-CONCESS.CVB  
     yił-ä ziru-r xexoy kur-no.  
     DEM.nI-ERG fox-LAT youngling.ABS.III throw-PST.nWIT  
     ‘No matter how hard it was, it (the bird) threw its chick to the fox.’  
     (Debeq ža äsirus haqu yoč'ik'oλ:7)

1.4 -n(o)

The particle *-n(o)* is structurally ambiguous between a linking particle (which we gloss as ‘and’) and a topic particle. The linking functions are all related, as we show below. The topic-marking function may be related to the linking functions diachronically, but in the current use, the two functions differ sufficiently; in particular, they exhibit different distributions. As a topic-marking particle, *-n(o)* is incompatible with the other topic particles discussed in this section: *-gon*, *-yoli*, and *-λa*, because its co-occurrence with them would lead to duplication in the expression of the same notion. Likewise, as a topic marker, *-n(o)* cannot co-occur with the focus particles *-tow* or *-kin* because topic and focus are mutually exclusive. However, when it is used as a linking element, *-n(o)* can combine with these particles. We will discuss examples of such co-occurrence in section 1.4.1.

The topic-marking  $-n(o)$  and the linking  $-n(o)$  can also themselves co-occur, for example, in the following exclamative utterance, where the coordinate phrase ‘Musa and Ali’ is marked as a single topic:

- (23) Mus-ä-n(o-n)      ŋal-ä-no-n      ža-wa      r-oy-n!  
       [Musa-ERG-and-TOP Ali-ERG-and]-TOP      DEM.ABS.IV-EXCL      IV-do-PST.nWIT  
       'For Musa and Ali, to do that!'

Based on these facts, we distinguish two separate homophonous particles, the linking  $-n(o)$  and the topic-marking  $-n(o)$ .

### 1.4.1 The linking *-n(o)*

If *-n(o)* is used iteratively, it becomes a marker of coordination, conjoining all categories except finite verbs. This function is described in Ch.YY [Noun phrase], CH.YY [Adverbial clauses], and CH.YY [Nominalizations]. When joining constituents within a coordinate structure, *-n(o)* attaches to the head of each constituent and cannot be omitted.

A coordinate structure can be topicalized or focused with the help of information structure-marking particles. In such a case, an information structure-marking particle appears at the right edge of the relevant constituent, thus following the linking *-n(o)*. For example, in **Error! Reference source not found.**) above, the entire coordinate noun phrase is topicalized, with the topic-marking *-n* following the final coordinating *-n*. In (24) below, the contrastive topic is the coordinate noun phrase *zirun k'et'un*, and the particle *-yoli* appears after *-n*:

- (24) [Ziru-n                    k'et'u-n]-yoli                    boc'-ä-n                    zey-ä-n  
       fox.ABS.III-and            cat.ABS.III-and-CONTR.TOP    wolf-ERG-and bear-ERG-and  
       b-ay-ä[r]-ru                dawla-λ'                žin                        yoł-λax.  
       III-come-CAUS-PST.PTCP    prey-POSS.ESS now            be.prs- INDIRECT.EVID  
       'As for the fox and the cat, they came upon the prey that the wolf and the bear had  
       brought.' (K'et'un zirun:31)

The next function of *-n(o)* can be characterized as that of ancillary clause linkage. In these contexts, *-n(o)* is optional, although native speakers prefer to see it used and comment on its presence as indicative of authentic, well-flowing texts.<sup>2</sup> In this function, *-n(o)* appears on the immediately preverbal constituent of a converbal clause; its presence underscores the connection between the converbal clause and the clause it is joined with (see CH.YY [Adverbial clauses]). The particle can be used in a similar way under the coordination of finite clauses, where it either appears on the immediate preverbal constituent (if the finite clause is verb final), or on the last constituent in the right periphery of the finite clause. The three contexts are illustrated below using similar baseline sentences. This function of *-n(o)* is dependent on linear order only and is not sensitive to constituency; for example, it can attach to a subconstituent of a light verb, to a clausal constituent, or to a subconstituent of a discontinuous noun phrase.

- (25) *converbal clause—finite clause*  
       [Roλiqur        elu-r                zurma-q'ili-s                ruk'-no  
       at.midnight    1PL-LAT            zurna-drum-GEN1          loud.sound.ABS.IV-and  
       teq-no]            moλ-a-x-āy                č'ari-l-si                        eli.  
       hear-PFV.CVB    dream-OS-AD-ABL          wake-INTR-PST.WIT    1PL.ABS  
       'At midnight we heard loud sounds of music and woke up.'
- (26) *two finite clauses, the first clause is verb-final*  
       Roλiqur        elu-r                zurma-q'ili-s                ruk'-no  
       at.midnight    1PL-LAT            zurna-drum-GEN1          loud.sound.ABS.IV-and  
       teq-si,            moλ-a-x-āy                č'ari-l-si                        eli.

<sup>2</sup> See also example **Error! Reference source not found.**) below, where *-n(o)* appears in the same function, on the constituent preceding the perfective converb.

- hear-PST.WIT dream-OS-AD-ABL wake-INTR-PST.WIT 1PL.ABS  
 'At midnight we heard loud sounds of music, and woke up.'
- (27) *two finite clauses, the first clause has postverbal material*
- |             |                 |                   |              |
|-------------|-----------------|-------------------|--------------|
| Roλiquur    | zurma-q'ili-s   | ruk'              | teq-si       |
| at.midnight | zurna-drum-GEN1 | loud.sound.ABS.IV | hear-PST.WIT |
| elu-r-no,   | moλ-a-x-āy      | č'ari-l-si        | eli.         |
| 1PL-LAT-and | dream-OS-AD-ABL | wake-INTR-PST.WIT | 1PL.ABS      |
- 'At midnight we heard loud sounds of music, and woke up.'

In both of these functions, that of a genuine coordination marker and that of ancillary clause linkage, *-n(o)* appears in contexts where two or more parallel structures are joined together. Its next function, conveying the meaning of 'also', 'too', is also contingent on parallelism, but that parallelism may be contextual rather than structural. For instance, in (28) and (29), parallelism is made explicit (the director does what father did; tomorrow will be like today), but in (30) and (31), parallelism is simply inferred.

- (28) Babi-y-ä uži šahar-y-ā-r Ø-egera-ani-x hukmu  
 father-OS-ERG boy.ABS.I city-OS-IN-LAT I-send-MASD-AD.ESS decision.ABS.III  
 b-oy-n director-y-ä-n b-oy-x.  
 III-do-PFV.CVB director-OS-ERG-and III-do-PRS  
 'Father decided to send the boy to the city and the director has decided that too.'
- (29) Yaqül Ø-iłe yude-n goλ'-a Ø-āy nesi-q  
 today I-similar tomorrow-and call-INF I-must DEM.I-POSS.ESS  
 di idu-yor.  
 1SG.ABS(.I) home-VERS  
 'Tomorrow also, just as today, he has to invite me home.' (Wasiyat:17)
- (30) Zir-ä mati-n b-iqir-si.  
 fox-ERG duck.ABS.III-and III-catch-PST.WIT  
 'The fox caught a duck too.' (in addition to other catch)
- (31) Bahana-r šeλ'ur-ko xur-no b-ihi-s.  
 reason-LAT clothing-POSS.ESS stain.ABS.III-and III-put-PST.WIT  
 'For looks, he made his clothing stained (with dirt) too.' (Aelä bečed adiru  
 miskin žek'u:7)

In its linking function, *-n(o)* follows other particles. Compare example (24) above, where the coordinating *-n(o)* precedes *-yołi*, and the following example, where *-n* appears at the very right edge of the contrastive topic expression, connecting it to the rest of the utterance:

- (32) li haλ-a-yołi-n y-et-as yedu.  
 water.ABS.IV drink-INF-CONTR.TOP-and II-want-FUT DEM.ABS(.II)  
 'But/and I may need this at least for drinking water.' (Besurozaqu:14)

Similarly, in the next example, the linking *-n* follows the focus particle *-tow*:

- (33) yowlo-tow-n Ø-<sup>f</sup>eye-ni esiw-n muk'ur Ø-oq-no.  
 there-FOC-and I-young-DEF sibling.ABS(.I)-TOP confess I-become-PST.nWIT

‘And right there, the youngest brother confessed to everything.’ (Xanno, nesisgon k<sup>w</sup>ono užin:134)

The table below presents a summary of the functions associated with the linking *-n(o)*.

Table 1. Linking particle *-n(o)* and its functions

Main function and meaning	Tied to a particular linear position	Tied to a particular structural position	Requires structural parallelism
Coordinating conjunction ‘and’	No	Appears on the heads of conjoined phrases	Yes
‘and’ in clausal coordination and clause linkage	Yes: immediately preverbal (and last postverbal if available)	No	Yes
‘and’ = ‘also’	No	No	No

#### 1.4.2 *-n(o)* as a topic marker

The next function of *-n(o)* is that of marking a sentence topic. Unlike the particle *-λa*, which marks what can be characterized as ‘aboutness’-topics or external topics, *-n(o)* marks topics that appear internal to clause structure. Topics marked with *-n(o)* are often (although not always) continuing topics, ones that can be expressed by a pronoun or a demonstrative.

In its topic-marking function, *-n(o)* can appear on a constituent in any position in the clause. We noted above that topics marked with *-λa* are unacceptable or at least strongly dispreferred in the postverbal position; topics marked with *-n(o)* are quite common postverbally. Postverbal constituents tend to have a topic interpretation (see CH.YY [Word order]), and the appearance of the topic marker reinforces that. When the marker appears with a postverbal pronoun or demonstrative, it is sometimes judged redundant, as in (35):

- (34) a. Ukru-micxir-yo-z gonad-λ'o-r-no k<sup>w</sup>eze b-oq-no ānu  
          gold-silver-OS-GEN2 pit-SUPER-LAT-TOP meet IPL-become-PST.nWIT NEG  
          žedu.  
          DEM.PL.ABS.IPL  
       b. K<sup>w</sup>eze b-oq-no ānu žedu ukru-micxir-yo-z  
          meet IPL-become-PST.nWIT NEG DEM.PL.ABS.IPL gold-silver-OS-GEN2  
          gonad-λ'o-r-no.  
          pit-SUPER-LAT-TOP  
       ‘The pit with treasures they did not find.’ (based on Aelä bečed adiru miskin žek'u:29)
- (35) a. Di-n ciq-e-s xan yoł.  
          1SG.ABS-TOP forest-OS-GEN1 king.ABS be.PRS  
       b. Ciq-e-s xan yoł di(-n).  
          forest-OS-GEN1 king.ABS be.PRS 1SG.ABS-TOP  
       ‘I am the king of the forest.’

The topic particle *-n(o)* can appear on noun phrases, as in the examples above, and also on adverbial phrases and postpositional phrases, as illustrated below:

- (36) Tax-mo-λ-no            k'emot'-yo-s xal            b-od-o.  
       couch-OS-SUB-TOP    box-OS-GEN1 looking.ABS.III    III-do-IMPER  
       'Under the couch, look for a/the box.'

In the absence of context, it is not always possible to tell apart the functions of *-n(o)* as a linking particle and as a topic marker. For example, in the next sentence, *-n(o)* appears on the noun phrase immediately preceding the converb *zown*. It could equally play a role as an ancillary clause-linkage device or mark the word *guluλ'* as topic, which is warranted by the broader context (where that horse is introduced in the preceding sentence).

- (37) Guluλ'-no            zow-n ...            Mus-ä            čuret'  
       horse-SUPER-ESS-TOP/and    climb-PFV.CVB        Musa-ERG    whip.ABS.III  
       b-ok'-nosi,    ...        yizira-bi            xan-zo        γ'utk-o-x  
       III-hit-ANT.CVB        DEM-PL.ABS.IPL        king-GEN2    house-OS-AD.ESS  
       igo-r            b-ay-n.  
       near-LAT        IPL-come-PST.nWIT  
       'They took the horse, and as soon as Musa cracked his whip, they were at the king's palace.' (Qacis gulu:39)

The particle *-n(o)* is also used to derive universally-quantified expressions from interrogatives; we discuss this function in section 3 below.

## 1.5 Co-occurrence of topic-marked constituents in a sentence

The particles discussed in this section all encode information-structural distinctions and in that function, they cannot be added iteratively to a single constituent, so sequences such as \**X-gon-no*, \**X-no-yoli*, etc. are impossible. The exception is the linking *-n(o)*, which can combine with information-structural particles (see section 1.4.1 above).

The particles do not co-occur on a single constituent, but it is possible for a clause to have a contrastive topic and a regular topic, as in the examples below. The usual linear order is as follows: external topic with *-λa*—contrastive topic—regular topic. It is rather unnatural for all three topic types to be represented in the same utterance, and the examples below show just two expressions at a time.

- (38) a. Že-λa            Abakar-λ'-āy-gon            ader    Ø-exu-s.  
       DEM.ABS(.I)-TOP    Abakar-SUPER-ABL-CONTR.TOP    before I-die-PST.WIT  
       'As for him, he died before Abakar.'  
       b. #Abakar-λ'-āy-gon            že-λa            ader    Ø-exu-s.  
       Abakar-SUPER-ABL-CONTR.TOP    DEM.ABS(.I)-TOP    before I-die-PST.WIT
- (39) a. Elo-gon            č'ač'ane-ł-no            [yā]    simindi  
       there-CONTR.TOP    Chechnya-CONT.ESS-TOP    or    corn.ABS.IV  
       r-iλ-a            koλ'i-nčey]            [yā    b-eynod-a    b-iz-a  
       IV-cutlivate-INF    know-PFV.CVB.NEG    or    IPL-work-INF    IPL-rise-INF

- koł'i-nčey]      furaw      qvarili      r-ay-si  
 know-PFV.CVB.NEG    numerous    hardship.ABS.IV    IV-come-PST.WIT  
 axo-s.  
 stomach-GEN1  
 ‘And there, in Chechnya, because we did not know how to sow corn or how to run a household (lit.: to stand to work), we suffered a lot of hardship.’
- (40) b. #Č'ač'ane-ł-no      elo-gon...  
       Chechnya-CONT.ESS-TOP    there-CONTR.TO  
 a. Ža      nediw      yäł-ru      mi  
       DEM.ABS(.III)    such    be.PRS-PST.PTCP    2SG.ERG  
 b-iy-r-zał' ...      ozura-bi      didiw      yäł-ru-gon  
 III-know-CAUS-CAUSAL.I.CVB    eye-PL.ABS.nIPL    what    be.PRS-PST.PTCP-CONTR.TOP  
 di-n      r-iy-r-ān.  
 1SG.ERG-TOP    IV-know-CAUS-FUT.DEF  
 ‘You found out what it (=the camel) is like, and as for what its eyes are like, I will find that out.’ (Xanno, nesisgon ḥono užin:19)
- b. ...# di-n      ozura-bi      didiw      yäł-ru-gon  
       1SG.ERG-TOP    eye-PL.ABS.nIPL    what    be.PRS-PST.PTCP-CONTR.TOP  
 r-iy-r-ān.  
 IV-know-CAUS-FUT.DEF
- (41) a. Ža-yoli      žedu-r-no      Ø-ukay-nč'us.  
       DEM.ABS(.I)-CONTR.TOP    DEM.IPL-LAT-TOP    I-see-PST.WIT.NEG  
 Him, they did not see.’  
 b. #Žedu-r-no      ža-yoli      Ø-ukay-nč'us.  
       DEM.IPL-LAT-TOP    DEM.ABS(.I)-CONTR.TOP    I-see-PST.WIT.NEG

The table below summarizes the main properties of topic-marking particles.

Table 2. Tsez topic-marking particles

	<b>Contrastive</b>	<b>Co-occurrence restrictions</b>	<b>Possible in embedded clauses</b>
-ła	No	Impossible on finite verbs	No
-yoli	Yes	None	No
-n(o)	No	Impossible on finite verbs	Yes
-gon	Yes	Impossible on finite verbs	Yes

## 2 Focus-marking particles

### 2.1 -kin

The particle *-kin* can be loosely translated as ‘indeed’ or ‘even’ and it can occur with any clausal constituent or subconstituent other than the finite predicate. Thus, it combines the properties of a general focus marker and a scalar focus marker. The general focus reading, close to ‘indeed,’ is typical of sentences in the affirmative, and in that function *-kin* is optional. The use of *-kin* alternates with strong prosodic prominence on the focused constituent, which is pronounced with a rising-falling intonation.

- (42) Nesi-q(-kin)                dey                kid                y-uy-xo-r  
       DEM.I-POSS.ESS-FOC-HYP      1SG.GEN1      girl.ABS.II     II-true-AD-LAT  
       y-ut-ān.  
       II-turn-FUT.DEF  
       'He is the one that is able to return my daughter to me (lit.: to turn my daughter back).'

In this example, the constituent focused with *-kin* may appear fronted; however, the sentence-initial position is just what is typical of the potential agent in the poss-essive. The following example shows that the expression marked with *-kin* can appear either fronted or in a regular position appropriate for a given clausal constituent:

- (43) a. Hudu(-kin)    žed-ä                hal                b-ay-r-xo.  
       so-FOC                DEM.IPL-ERG      health.ABS.III   III-come-CAUS-FUT.DEF  
       b. Žed-ä                hudu(-kin)      hal                b-ay-r-xo.  
               DEM.IPL-ERG    so-FOC                health.ABS.III   III-come-CAUS-FUT.DEF  
       'It is in such a way that they will be useful.'

The scalar focus reading ‘even’ is also possible in the affirmative, where it is often determined contextually. For example, the following sentence is ambiguous out of the context:

- (44) Nełä-s                kuc-kin-wa                b-igu                ānu!  
       DEM.nI-GEN1    appearance.ABS.III-FOC-EXCL   III-good        be.PRS.NEG  
       'It is her face that is ugly!'  
       'Even her face is ugly!' (Bašiq<sup>č</sup>oy:25)

But in the following sentence, the reading is clearly ‘even’, and there is no ambiguity:

- (45) Sidä side-r    sisini    muhu-kin                b-oλi    b-ok'-xo  
       RECP-LAT        single    seed.ABS.III-FOC        III-half   III-hit-IPFV.CVB  
       zow-n.  
       AUX.PST-PST.nWIT  
       'They used to split even a single seed to share with each other.' (Zirun, y<sup>č</sup>wadin:3)

Overall, the scalar function of the particle *-kin* is particularly apparent in negative contexts. In such contexts, *-kin* has the meaning ‘even; at least’ and often marks negative polarity items or expressions that are interpreted as such. However, the negative reading is contributed by the verbal negation in this case, not by *-kin* itself.

- (46) B-oλik'u-ni-gon                sida                q'orol                y<sup>č</sup>ana-za-s  
       III-half-DEF-CONTR.TOP        one.OBL                widowed        woman-OS-GEN1  
       kuła                r-od-a-ce-kin                ſeze                b-oq-no                ānu.  
       sleeve.ABS.IV   IV-make-TERM.CVB        enough                III-become-PFV.CVB   be.PRS.NEG  
       'From the other half (of the hide), they could not even make a sleeve for the (giant)  
       widow.' (Yizaläy hič'č'a ixiw šebi yo??:17)
- (47) Biš<sup>č</sup>a                r-ac'a-kin                Ø-utik'-x-ānu.  
       food.ABS.IV   IV-eat.TR-INF-FOC        I-manage-PRS-NEG

- 'I cannot even manage to eat.'
- (48) Nes-ä            xabar-kin            b-oy-nč'u.  
 DEM.I-ERG        story.ABS.III-FOC     III-do-PST.WIT.NEG
- 'He did not say a word.'
- (49) Eniw            razi            y-oq-xo            zow-n-ānu            ža  
 mother.ABS.II    agree        II-become-IPFV.CVB    AUX.PST-PST.nWIT-NEG    DEM.ABS(.II)  
 sid-xo-kin        y-egir-ani-x.  
 one-AD.ESS-FOC    II-send-MASD-AD.ESS
- 'Mother refused to give her away in marriage to any suitor.' (Allahes ašuni:11)

As a scalar particle, *-kin* is used to derive negative polarity items from interrogatives and from universally quantified expressions (see section 3 below).

## 2.2 -tow

The emphatic particle *-tow* is widely used and combines with all categories except the finite form of the verb. Its characterization is similar to the characterization of its Hinuq counterpart offered by Forker (2013: 423), who writes that "the overall function of *=tow* is the expression of emphasis and contrast. It highlights linguistic items that contradict the expectations of the hearer." Although a precise semantic analysis of *-tow* is rather elusive, two properties are important in defining the meaning of this particle: the notion of contrast and the notion of reversal of expectations.

The particle is commonly found with adverbial phrases and adverbial clauses (with the latter, it attaches to the converbal predicate), where it serves to intensify the expression of place, manner, location, or reason conveyed by the adverbial. This emphatic nature of *-tow* becomes clear from the comparison of bare adverbials to adverbials accompanied by the particle:

- (50) a. hudayziko  
           'the next day'  
 b. hudayziko-tow  
       next.day-FOC  
       'the very next day'
- (51) a. lil-yo-x  
       shore-OS-AD.ESS  
       'at the river-bank/at the shore'  
 b. lil-yo-x-tow  
       shore-OS-AD.ESS-FOC  
       'right at the river bank/shore, at the very edge of a river bank/shore'
- (52) a. nedur  
       'so; in such a way'  
 b. nedur-tow  
       so-FOC  
       'exactly that way'
- (53) a. dahaw  
       'a little; some'  
 b. dahaw-tow

a.little-FOC  
 ‘a tiny bit’

Below we present examples of *-tow* combining with the converb predicate of adverbial clauses:

- (54) Howža      λeli      b-äy-run-tow,      neła-s      eniw  
 DEM.nI      lamb.ABS.III      III-do-IMM.CVB-FOC      DEM.nI-GEN1      mother.ABS(.III)  
 b-exu-s.  
 III-die-PST.WIT  
 ‘As soon as the lamb was born, its mother died.’ (Xanno, nesisgon ḫono užin:75)
- (55) Xan-e-s      kid-gon      ʃiyay-x-tow      ʃiyay-x  
 king-OS-GEN1      girl.ABS.II-CONTR.TOP      cry-IPFV.CVB-FOC      cry-IPFV.CVB  
 zown-n.  
 AUX.PST-PST.nWIT  
 ‘As for the king’s daughter, she was crying her eyes out (lit.: really crying cried).’  
 (Qacis gulu:14)
- (56) B-ex-ur-a-tow      b-ex-ur-xo      yił-ä      di!  
 III-die-CAUS-INF-FOC      III-die-CAUS-PRS      DEM.nI-ERG      1SG.ABS(.III)  
 ‘It (=the cat) is going to kill me (=the wolf)!’ (K’et’un, zirun...:28)
- (57) B-iš-λ’oräy-tow      b-ex-ur-ān      yizi.  
 Ipl-eat.intr-DUR.I.CVB-FOC      IPL-CAUS-FUR.DEF      DEM.IPL.ABS  
 ‘They will die right away, while they are eating.’ (Qacis gulu:40)

When used with noun phrases, *-tow* often serves to express the notion that the referent’s participation is unexpected, out of the ordinary, or surprising. For example, (58) can be used in response to a request to look for something; the expectation is that the speaker will do the looking, and the speaker rejects that assumption.

- (58) Mež-ä-tow      xal      b-od-o!  
 2PL-ERG-FOC      looking.ABS.III      III-do-IMPER  
 ‘You yourselves go look.’

#### Example

(59) implies that the father is opposed to marrying the girl to the speaker:

- (59) Di-λa      mi      y-ow-ān ...      debe-z-tow  
 1SG.ERG-CONTR.TOP      2SG.ABS(.II)      II-take-FUT.DEF      2SG-GEN2-FOC  
 babi-y-ä      y-egir-näy.  
 father-OS-ERG      II-send-COND.CONV  
 ‘As for me, I will of course marry you if only your father would agree to give you to me in marriage.’ (Qacis gulu:12)

Finally, the following sentence can only be uttered if there was no wind in the forecast.

- (60) Łaci=muši-tow      r-izi-s.  
 wind.ABS.IV-FOC      IV-rise-PST.WIT

‘A strong wind blew.’ (implication: unexpectedly)

The role of *-tow* as an expression of the reversal of expectations is particularly apparent in its use with pronouns and demonstratives, which need to be associated with a cross-clausal antecedent. There are several core cases where *-tow* helps establish and maintain coreference. First, as we discuss in CH.YY [Complement clauses], if a potentially ambiguous pronoun in a finite complement clause is marked with the focus enclitic *-tow*, only the shifted interpretation is possible. Compare (61a) and (61b) for first person pronouns. In (61a), both readings of *däq* are possible: in the first reading, *däq* points to the speaker (indexical reading) and the other, it indexes the attitude holder (shifted reading). In (61b), only the shifted reading is possible. The particle therefore reinforces whatever interpretation is less expected or likely:

- (61) a. Nes-ä [rä-q q'anoquno λeb yoł-λin]  
DEM.I-ERG 1SG-POSS.ESS forty year.ABS.III be.PRS-QUOT  
eλi-s.  
say-PST.WIT  
‘He said that I was 40 years old.’  
‘He<sub>i</sub> said that he<sub>i</sub> was 40 years old.’
- b. Nes-ä [rä-q-tow q'anoquno λeb yoł-λin]  
DEM.I-ERG 1SG-POSS.ESS-FOC forty year.ABS.III be.PRS-QUOT  
eλi-s.  
say-PST.WIT  
‘He<sub>i</sub> said that he<sub>i</sub> was 40 years old.’ (SR)  
NOT: ‘He<sub>i</sub> said that I was 40 years old.’ (IR)

In a related pattern of use, *-tow* accompanies demonstratives and pronouns to establish a coreferential reflexive/reciprocal interpretation in non-local contexts, namely across clauses (recall that compound reflexives are strictly local; see CH.YY [Reflexives and anaphora]). Compare the ill-formed compound reflexives in relative clauses and the licit use of a *tow*-form in the parallel examples:

- (62) a. \*fäl-ä-n Irbahin-ä-n [žedā žedu-ł-äy gazyat-λ'o  
Ali-ERG-and Ibrahim-ERG-and REFL.PL.I-CONT-ABL newspaper-SUPER.ESS  
cāx-ru] šebi-n t'et'er-xo.  
write-PST.PTCP something.ABS.IV-INDEF read-PRS  
(‘Ali and Ibrahim are reading the thing written about themselves in a newspaper.’)
- b. fäl-ä-n Irbahin-ä-n [žedu-ł-äy-tow  
Ali-ERG-and Ibrahim-ERG-and DEM.PL.I-CONT-ABL-FOC  
gazyat-λ'o cāx-ru] šebi-n t'et'er-xo.  
newspaper-SUPER.ESS write-PST.PTCP something.ABS.IV-INDEF read-PRS  
(‘Ali and Ibrahim are reading the thing written about themselves in a newspaper.’)
- (63) a. Kid-b-ä tungi [nelä neł-ä teł zāw-ru]-zo  
girl-OS-ERG jug.ABS.III REFL.nI-IN.ESS inside be.PST-PST.PTCP-ATTR.OBL  
li-d esay-s.  
water-INS wash-PST.WIT  
(‘The girl washed the jug with the water that was in itself.’)

- b. Kid-b-ä tungi [neł-ä-tow teł  
           girl-OS-ERG jug.ABS.III DEM.nI-IN.ESS-FOC inside  
      zāw-ru]-zo li-d esay-s.  
     be.PST-PST.PTCP-ATTR.OBL water-INS wash-PST.WIT  
     ‘The girl washed the jug with the water that was in it.’

In (64a), in the absence of *-tow*, the demonstrative in the complement clause is interpreted ambiguously (as referring to Ali or to a third party); in (64b), the form with *-tow* is interpreted as referring to Ali and Ali only:

- (64) a. ʃAl-ä [Pat'-ä nesi-r kumek  
           Ali-ERG Fatima-ERG DEM.I-LAT help.ABS.III  
      b-oy-xosi-λin] eλi-s.  
     III-do-PRS.PTCP-QUOT say-PST.WIT  
     ‘Ali<sub>i</sub> said that Fatima was helping him<sub>i/j</sub>.’
- b. ʃAl-ä [Pat'-ä nesi-r-tow kumek  
           Ali-ERG Fatima-ERG DEM.I-LAT-FOC help.ABS.III  
      b-oy-xosi-λin] eλi-s.  
     III-do-PRS.PTCP-QUOT say-PST.WIT  
     ‘Ali<sub>i</sub> said that Fatima was helping him<sub>i/\*j</sub>.’

The antecedent and the *tow*-form can be separated by more than one clause:

- (65) ʃAl-ä eλi-x [Irbahin-e-r r-iy-x [Pat'-ä  
           Ali-ERG say-PRS Ibrahim-OS-LAT IV-know-PRS Fatima-ERG  
      nesi-r-tow kumek b-oy-xosi-λin]].  
     DEM.I-LAT-FOC help.ABS.III III-do-PRS-QUOT  
     ‘Ali<sub>i</sub> says that Ibrahim knows that Fatima is helping him<sub>i</sub>.’

If only one noun phrase can be construed as the antecedent of a *tow*-form across clauses (either because it is the only antecedent present, or because the gender feature on the demonstrative matches the gender feature of that noun phrase alone), the grammatical function of the antecedent does not matter. If, however, there are several potential antecedents present, their structural relationship appears to play a role. The noun phrase that occupies the higher structural position is the likeliest antecedent for coreference across clauses if the coreferential pronoun or demonstrative appears without *-tow*. The addition of *-tow* again serves to reverse this expectation, and the coreference is established with the less likely antecedent: one in a lower structural position. For instance, in (66a), the ergative subject is a better antecedent than the poss-essive argument; but in (66b), the presence of *-tow* on the demonstrative reverses that expectation in favor of the poss-essive:

- (66) a. Tawad-ä nesi-s roλ'i b-äq-ru-ni  
           Tawadi-ERG DEM.I-GEN love.ABS.III III-become-PST.PTCP-DEF  
      kid Ražbadin-qo y-uka-r-no.  
     girl.ABS.II Rajbadin-POSS.ESS II-see-CAUS-PST.nWIT  
     ‘Tawadi<sub>i</sub> showed Rajbadin<sub>j</sub> the girl that he<sub>i/??j</sub> had fallen in love with.’

(based on Ražbadinno Tawadin:96)

- b. Tawad-ä              nesi-s-tow              roλ'i              b-äq-ru-ni  
  Tawadi-ERG            DEM.I-GEN-FOC            love.ABS.III    III-become-PST.PTCP-DEF  
 kid              Ražbadin-qo              y-uka-r-no.  
 girl.ABS.II    Rajbadin-POSS.ESS            II-see-CAUS-PST.nWIT  
 'Tawadi<sub>i</sub> showed Rajbadin<sub>j</sub> the girl that he<sub>j/??/\*i</sub> had fallen in love with.'

(based on Ražbadinno Tawadin:96)

### 2.3 -uy

The interpretation of the particle AGR-*uy* is close to 'indeed, certainly'; we will characterize it as a validator particle (VAL) which indicates a strong degree of certainty on the part of the speaker. The particle agrees with the absolutive argument of the clause:

- (67) Huł              b-uy              neł-ä              micxir              b-iqir-si.  
  yesterday        III-VAL            DEM.nI-ERG    money.ABS.III        III-catch-PST.WIT  
 'It was indeed yesterday that she received the money.'

This particle has the properties of a second-position clitic; it attaches to the right edge of the first clausal constituent (not necessarily the first word in a clause).<sup>3</sup> In the next two examples, the first constituent is a single word:

- (68) Micxir              b-uy              huł              b-iqir-si              neł-ä.  
  money.ABS.III    III-VAL            yesterday        III-catch-PST.WIT        DEM.nI-ERG  
 'It was indeed (the) money that she received yesterday.'  
 (69) B-iqir-si              b-uy              micxir              neł-ä              huł.  
  III-catch-PST.WIT        III-VAL            money.ABS.III    DEM.nI-ERG        yesterday  
 'She did receive the money yesterday.'

In the following examples, the validator clitic follows an entire adverbial, infinitival, or masdar clause:

- (70) [Xex-z-ä              xabar              teq-er-no]              b-uy              b-ič-ix.  
  child-OS-ERG        story.ABS.III        hear-CAUS-PFV.CVB        III-VAL    III-stay-PRS  
 'The children were listening with rapt attention.' (lit.: stayed indeed listening to the story)  
 (71) [Gut              kur-a]              r-uy              r-oq-si              peč.  
  smoke.ABS.II        throw-INF            IV-VAL        IV-begin-PST.WIT        furnace.ABS.III  
 'The furnace began to smoke really bad.'  
 (72) [Masukuw-ā-yor              Ø-ik'-ani-x]              b-uy              kul              er-xo    ſal-ä.  
  Moscow-IN-VERS        I-go-MASD-AD.ESS        III-VAL        hope.ABS.III        put-PRS Ali-ERG  
 'Ali hopes to go to Moscow indeed.'

AGR-*uy* can appear only once in a clause, so the following sentence is ungrammatical:

---

<sup>3</sup> In narrative texts, we have found several examples where AGR-*uy* does not appear at the edge of the first constituent, but these are judged awkward when tested in elicitations.

(73)	*Huł	b-uy	neł-ä	micxir	b-uy	b-iqir-si.
	yesterday	III-VAL	DEM.NI-ERG	money.ABS.III	III-VAL	III-catch-PST.WIT

AGR-*uy* resembles the validator clitics that have been described for Quechua (see Cole 1982: 164-168). As in Quechua, the Tsez validator clitic associates with the focus of the clause, is limited to root clauses, and can only occur once in a clause. A priori, there is no pragmatic or semantic reason that a focus expression should be limited to the root clause. We hypothesize that the restriction has to do with the structural size of the root clause as compared to the embedded clause; the latter may not have a structural position in which to host the focused constituent.

### 3 Topic and focus particles in the formation of quantified expressions

#### 3.1 The formation of quantificational expressions

The particles *-λa*, *-n(o)*, *-gon*, and *-kin* serve to derive quantified expressions from interrogative words/expressions and from the numeral *sis* ‘one’. The derivation is extremely regular, as the table below shows.

Table 3. Tsez quantificational expressions

Interrogative	Meaning	Existential	Universal	Negative polarity <i>any</i>	Negative polarity <i>any</i>	Free choice <i>any</i>
Šebi <sup>4</sup>	What/ Who	Šebi-λa	(Šebi-n)	Šebi-kin	Šebi-n-kin	Šebi-gon
Šow	What/ who	Šow-λa	(Šow-no)	Šow-kin	Šow-no-kin	Šow-gon
Nā	Where	Nā-λa	Nā-n	Nā-kin	Nā-n-kin	Nā-gon
Nāsi	Which <sub>DET</sub>	Nāsi-λa	Nāsi-n	Nāsi-kin	Nāsi-n-kin	Nāsi-gon
Didiw	What one/ Which one	Didiw-λa	Didiw-no	Didiw-kin	Didiw-no-kin	Didiw-gon
Neti	When	Neti-λa	Neti-n/ Neti-non	Neti-kin	Neti-n-kin	Neti-gon
Dice	How much	Dice-λa	Dice-no	Dice-kin	Dice-no-kin	Dice-gon
Šomo	How many	Šomo-λa	Šomo-no	Šomo-kin	Šomo-no-kin	Šomo-gon
Šida	Why	Šida-λa	--	Šida-kin	--	Šida-gon
Didur	How	Didur-λa	Didur-no	Didur-kin	Didur-no-kin	Didur-gon
Sis	One	---	Sis-no	Sis-kin	Sis-no-kin	---

If a given form changes according to case, the particle always follows the case endings; for example:

- (74) a. šebi-λa  
what-TOP  
'something'
- b. īina-qo-r-λa  
what.OBL-POSS-LAT-TOP  
'to something'
- (75) a. nā-r-kin  
where-LAT-FOC  
'to nowhere'
- b. na-z-āy-kin  
where-DIST-ABL-FOC  
'from nowhere'

However, if two quantificational forms are coordinated, the linking *-n(o)* follows the particles:

---

<sup>4</sup> Šebi and šow are dialectal variants.

- (76) nā-r-kin-no na-z-āy-kin-no  
 where-LAT-FOC-and where-DIST-ABL-FOC-and  
 ‘to nowhere and from nowhere’

### 3.2 An overview of the series

The topic particle *-λa*, which we gloss as indefinite in this function, combines with interrogative expressions to form existential expressions with the core meaning ‘some’. Such existential expressions are possible in any type of clause, be it declarative, interrogative, or exclamative. For example:

- (77) a. lu-λa                       debe-λ’               xal                       b-oy-s.  
 who.ERG-INDEF               2SG-SUPER.ESS looking.ABS.III               III-do-PST.WIT  
 ‘Someone was looking for you.’  
 b. lu-λa                       däw-λ’o               xal                       b-oy-ä?  
 who.ERG-INDEF               1SG-SUPER.ESS looking.ABS.III               III-do-PST.WIT.INTERR  
 ‘Was someone looking for me?’

When used in a negative clause, existential expressions do not acquire a negative polarity interpretation:

- (78) Šomo-λa               surat                       xec-ač’in.  
 some-INDEF               picture.ABS.III               leave-FUT.NEG  
 ‘Several pictures won’t last (lit.: be left).’  
 NOT: ‘No pictures will last.’

The topic particle *-n(o)* derives universally quantified expressions, as shown in (79), with the exception of the form *šebin*, which is lexicalized in the meaning ‘thing’ and cannot be used to denote ‘all’ (the word *nāsi* is used in its stead)—compare (80).<sup>5</sup> We gloss *-n(o)* in this function as universal (UNIV):

- (79) Meši-bi                       nā-r-no                       k’oλi-x                       zow-s.  
 calf-PL.ABS.nIPL               where-LAT-UNIV               run-IPFV.CVB           AUX.PST-PST.WIT  
 ‘The calves were running in all directions (everywhere).’  
 (80) Nāzon                       yedu ...               loč-ya-λ’                       y-oy-xo  
 all.ERG                       DEM.ABS.(II)               dance-OS-SUPER.ESS   II-pull-IPFV.CVB  
 zow-n.

---

<sup>5</sup> The expressions involving *na-* ‘where’ vary depending on the spatial form, indicating stative location and direction toward/away from a reference point. In addition, in the universal series we find the form *naysinan* ‘everywhere’, which historically was probably compositional, as shown below:

- (i) nāy-si-na-n  
 where.ABL-ATTR-DEF.OBL-TOP

AUX.PST-PST.nWIT

‘Everybody (lit.: all) was inviting her to dance.’ (Bašiq<sup>oy</sup>:29)

The universal reading is often reinforced by the focus particle *-tow*, as shown in (81) Meši-bi nā-r-no-tow k’oλi-x zow-s.

calf-PL.ABS.nIPL where-LAT-UNIV-FOC run-IPFV.CVB AUX.PST-PST.WIT  
‘The calves were running all over the place.’

(82):

(81) Meši-bi nā-r-no-tow k’oλi-x zow-s.  
calf-PL.ABS.nIPL where-LAT-UNIV-FOC run-IPFV.CVB AUX.PST-PST.WIT

‘The calves were running all over the place.’

(82) Nāzon-tow yedu ... loč-ya-λ’ y-oγ-xo  
all.ERG-FOC DEM.ABS(.II) dance-OS-SUPER.ESS II-pull-IPFV.CVB  
zow-n.

AUX.PST-PST.nWIT

‘Everybody was inviting her to dance.’

In some instances, the topic particle and the particle *-tow* seem no longer synchronically divisible from the interrogative. This is the case with the expression *netintow* ‘always’, which includes *neti* ‘when’ and *-n* and *-tow*. (In example (8) above we present it as a unit.)

Negation takes scope over universal expressions, thus giving them the flavor of negative polarity items. For example:

(83) Neti-n t’ut’-λ’o-r-kin reλ'a r-iz-ir-inč'u nes-ä.  
when-UNIV fly-SUPER-LAT-FOC hand.ABS.IV IV-rise-CAUS-PST.WIT.NEG DEM.I-ERG  
‘He can’t say boo to a goose.’ (lit.: never lifted his hand over a fly)

The particle *-gon/-go* derives free-choice expressions which regularly appear in concessive clauses. Examples of such clauses can be found in CH.YY [Adverbial clauses]. See also examples (6), **Error! Reference source not found.**, and **Error! Reference source not found.** earlier in this chapter.

The particle *-kin* serves as a marker of negative polarity items; it is used to derive two sets of negative polarity *any*, one formed from interrogatives, the other from universal expressions. Regardless of their morphological make-up, the expressions with *-kin* carry existential quantificational force.

The system presented here is reminiscent of indeterminate expressions in such languages as Japanese or Korean (see Haspelmath 1997; Shimoyama 2008; Giannakidou 2000; Gil and Tsoulas 2009). In Japanese and Korean, indeterminates receive the interrogative interpretation when they associate with the overt interrogative particle (which is attached to the predicate). Tsez indeterminates also receive their interrogative interpretation in the presence of an interrogative operator; however, recall that the interrogative may not always have a morphological realization (see CH.YY [Interrogatives]).

The presence of two series of negative polarity items is cross-linguistically less common. The interrogative-based series is a typical one, and there are multiple cross-linguistic correlates to it, including the Japanese and Korean systems just mentioned (see Haspelmath 1997: Ch.8 for further cross-linguistic parallels). The universal-based series is less typical, although elements of such polarity systems are observed even in familiar languages like English, where *at all* is a negative polarity item, or French, where *tout à fait* is also widely used under negation. Partial doubling of negative polarity items is observed in Mandarin, where *wh*-words may function as polarity-sensitive items of some kind and carry an indefinite meaning, but there is also another NPI-like element whose morphological form is based on ‘all’ (*ren-he*); see Hsieh (2012). Likewise, in Turkish, certain polarity items are based on universally quantified expressions (Kornfilt 1997: 126-128). In Tsez, however, the paradigm is almost complete, and universal-based negative polarity items are not limited to adverbials. In the following subsection, we present more details of the two series of negative polarity items.

### 3.3 Negative polarity items

The two series derived with the particle *-kin* overlap in their interpretation but show systematic differences in distribution. They are summarized in the following table, and we illustrate them below.

Table 4. Differences in the distribution of interrogative-based and universal-based negative polarity items in *-kin*

	Universal-based NPIs	Interrogative-based NPIs
Occurrence in infinitival or masdar clauses under matrix negation	Yes	No
Occurrence as an adnominal modifier	Yes	No
Co-occurrence with the adverbial <i>t'ok'aw/t'ok'ow</i> ‘further; more’	Yes	No
Occurrence in negative imperatives (prohibitives)	Yes	No
Occurrence in generic statements	No	Yes

Infinitival clauses and masdar clauses are transparent to binding and negation, so a negative predicate that dominates such clauses can license a negative polarity item inside them. The polarity items licensed in this way are always based on universal expressions. For example:

- (84) a. Nā-r-no-kin                      b-ik'-a              koλ'-inč'i      žedu-r.  
           where-LAT-UNIV-FOC              IPL-go-INF        know-PST.WIT DEM.IPL-LAT  
           'They did not know where to go.' (lit.: they did not know anywhere to go to)  
   b. \*Nā-r-kin                      b-ik'-a              koλ'-inč'i      žedu-r.  
           where-LAT-FOC                    IPL-go-INF        know-PST.WIT DEM.IPL-LAT

Just as negative polarity items can be licensed across the infinitival or masdar boundary in the verbal domain, they can be licensed across the noun phrase boundary in the nominal domain. We

thus find adnominal modifiers, expressed either by a genitive or an attributive phrase, licensed by matrix negation. Again, only universal-based negative polarity items are possible. Consider the following example, where one type of genitive negative polarity item is illustrated, and see example (88) below for the same pattern with the attributive *didiw*:

- (85) ɬina-s-no-kin/\*ɬina-s-kin                         pikru                ānu                dey.  
      what-GEN1-UNIV-FOC/what-GEN1-FOC                 thought.ABS.III be.PRS.NEG 1SG.GEN1  
      'I have no idea.'

In negative clauses with the adverbial *t'ok'ow/t'ok'aw*, only universal-based negative polarity items are possible; the general meaning is that of *any more* in English. Compare the clause with this adverb in (85a), in which only one type of polarity itemsis possible, and the clause without *t'ok'ow* in (85b), where both types are allowed:

- (86) a. Žed-ä                ɬa-ł-no-kin/\*ɬa-ł-kin                         t'ok'ow  
      DEM.IPL-ERG        who-CONT.ESS-INDEF-FOC/who-CONT.ESS-FOC        more  
      halikataw        šebin                r-oy-n-ānu.  
      vile                thing.ABS.IV        IV-do-PST.nWIT-NEG  
      'They no longer did bad things to anyone.' (Λelä bečed adiru miskin žek'u:32)  
      b. Žed-ä                ɬa-ł-no-kin/ɬa-ł-kin                         halikataw  
      DEM.IPL-ERG        who-CONT.ESS-INDEF-FOC/who-CONT.ESS-FOC        vile  
      šebin        r-oy-n-ānu.  
      thing.ABS.IV        IV-do-PST.nWIT-NEG  
      'They did not do bad things to anyone.'

It appears that the role of *t'ok'ow/t'ok'aw* is to reinforce the notion that the set whose existence is negated is complete.

Negative imperatives (prohibitives) co-occur only with universal series-based quantified expressions, thus:

- (87) Mi                ɬina-q-no-kin/\*ɬina-q-kin                         hayran  
      2SG.ABS(.II)        what-POSS.ESS-UNIV-FOC/what-POSS.ESS-FOC        surprised  
      y-äq-no.  
      II-become-PROH  
      'Don't be surprised by anything.'
- (88) ɬu-qo-r-no-kin/\*ɬu-qo-r-kin                         didiw-no-kin/\*didiw-kin  
      who-POSS-LAT-UNIVE-FOC /who-POSS-LAT-FOC        what-UNIV-FOC/what-FOC  
      xabar                b-äy-no.  
      conversation.ABS.III        III-do-PROH  
      'Don't talk to anyone.' (lit.: don't make any conversation with anyone)

Non-specific negative polarity expressions, derived from interrogatives, are found in generic statements, such as the proverb in (89). In such contexts, universal-based negative polarity items do not occur:

- (89) Žek'u-z      rok'-λ'o-si      ɬa-r-kin/\*ɬa-r-no-kin  
 person-GEN2   heart-SUPER.ESS-ATTR   who-LAT-FOC/who-LAT-UNIV-FOC  
 r-iy-xosi      ānu.  
 IV-know-PRS.PTCP   be.PRS.NEG  
 'You can never see into another heart.' (lit.: Another person's heart is not known to anyone)

Both types of negative polarity items can occur in conditional clauses with negative predicates, but they give rise to different readings in that context. Compare the following contrast:

- (90) Ža      ɬu-quo-r-kin      xabary-inč'i-näy      mi-gon  
 DEM.ABS   who-POSS-LAT-FOC   speak-NEG-COND.CVB 2SG.ABS-CONTR.TOP  
 šibaw   maduhal-quo-r/\*nesi-quo-r      xabarayad-a   r-āy.  
 every   neighbor-POSS-LAT/DEM.I-POSS-LAT   speak-INF   IV-must  
 'If s/he does not talk to anyone, you should speak to all the neighbors/\*to him.'  
 (91) Ža      ɬu-quo-r-no-kin      xabary-inč'i-näy      mi-gon  
 DEM.ABS   who-POSS-LAT-UNIV-FOC   speak-NEG-COND.CVB 2SG.ABS-CONTR.TOP  
 šibaw   maduhal-quo-r/nesi-quo-r      xabarayad-a   r-āy.  
 every   neighbor-POSS-LAT/DEM.I-POSS-LAT   speak-INF   IV-must  
 'If s/he does not talk to anyone/someone, you should speak to all the neighbors/to him.'

In (90), the use of the interrogative-based negative polarity item in the antecedent of the conditional gives rise to a meaning that is close to free choice ('if she does not talk to anyone/whoever'); this expression is interpreted as non-specific and the determiner *nesiqor*, coindexed with the negative polarity item in the apodosis of the conditional, is infelicitous, the same way *it* is infelicitous in the following English example:

- (92) I have not been able to find any good cobblers in this town, but she found one/#him.

In contrast, the negative polarity item in ) can be interpreted existentially, and coindexation with *nesiqor* is possible.

Finally, universal-based negative polarity items can be interpreted as meaning 'not a single X', as in example (93) below.

- (93) a. ɬa-r-no-kin      y-ukay-nčey      yedu   kid      idu-yor  
 who-LAT-UNIV-FOC   II-see-IPFV.CVB.NEG   DEM   girl.ABS.II   home-VERS  
 y-ik'i-n.  
 II-go-PST.nWIT  
 'Without a single person seeing her, the girl went into the house.' (Bašiq'oy:30)  
 b. ɬa-r-kin      y-ukay-nčey      yedu   kid      idu-yor  
 who-LAT-FOC   II-see-IPFV.CVB.NEG   DEM   girl.ABS.II   home-VERS  
 y-ik'i-n.  
 II-go-PST.nWIT  
 'Without anyone seeing her, the girl went into the house.' (Bašiq'oy:30)

The differences between the two series of negative polarity items are quite subtle, and further work may be needed to determine if additional distinctions exist.

#### 4 Clausal particles

Most of the particles discussed so far can be defined negatively by their inability to associate with finite verbs (the only exception above is the particle *-yoli*, which combines with finite verbs). The particles discussed in this section are in essence clausal; they often attach to the predicate or some other constituent, but their non-truth-conditional import extends to the entire utterance. Regardless of their attachment site, they all share the same property: namely, they can only appear in root clauses.

##### 4.1 -čo, -če(y)

The general meaning of *-čo/-če(y)* is ‘indeed, already, definitely, let’s’; it puts special emphasis on the command, question, or exclamation, regardless of its attachment site. It is possible that *čey* is actually a combination of *-čo* and *-ey* (see section 4.2 below), but currently *-čo* and *-čey* are used interchangeably, so any diachronic connection is obscured.

This particle appears with verbs in the imperative or optative, and with interrogative verbs (cf. Imnajšvili 1963: 270). For example:

- (94) Hay hor-o-čo, babi-la-bi.  
hey come-IMPER-EMPH father-DIMIN-PL.ABS.IPL  
'Come, come my dears.' (Alicilič:1)
- (95) Nāsin xalq'i b-ay-oλ-čey.  
all people.ABS.IPL IPL-come-OPT-EMPH  
'Let all the people come in!'
- (96) Šebi-čo di r-od-ān, nā-r-čo k'oλ-ān?  
what.ABS.IV-EMPH 1SG.ERG IV-do-FUT.DEF where-LAT-EMPH run-FUT.DEF  
'What oh what will I do, where oh where will I go?' (C'irdux:51)

The particle *-čo/-če(y)* does not occur in simple declarative clauses, which is probably due to the incompatibility of its meaning with the meaning of such clauses.

In interrogative clauses the particle appears either on the verb or on the interrogative expression:

- (97) a. Šebi-čey yił-ä r-ädi?  
what.ABS.IV-EMPH DEM.nI-ERG IV-do.FUT  
b. Šebi yił-ä r-ädi-čey?  
what.ABS.IV DEM.nI-ERG IV-do.FUT-EMPH  
'Really, what can she do?'

The particle can also appear on interjections associated with vocatives and exclamatives (see Ch.YY [Exclamatives]).

- (98) Way-čo, baħarči, Ø-egi-x-wa mi dä-q.

- oh.dear-EMPH brave.man I-tear.away-PRS-EXCL 2SG.ABS.I 1SG-POSS.ESS  
 ‘Oh brave man, I cannot hold on to you!’ (♀Aliqilič:154)

Unlike some other verbal particles, *-čo/-če(y)* can be doubled in an utterance; compare (98) and (99):

- (99) Way-čo, baħarči, Ø-egi-x-wa mi-čo dä-q.  
 o.dear-EMPH brave.man I-tear.away-PRS-EXCL 2SG.ABS.I-EMPH 1SG-POSS.ESS  
 ‘Oh brave man, I cannot hold on to you!’

#### 4.2 –ey

This particle appears only in root interrogatives and is possible in both *yes-no* questions and *wh*-questions. It usually follows the verb or another constituent marked with the interrogative suffix *-(y)ā*, but it can also occur on interrogative words, as in (101b) below. When combining with the interrogative suffix, *-ey* causes the *ā* in that suffix to be deleted, which suggests that *-ey* is a genuine suffix rather than a particle. However, we still chose to include it in this chapter, given its irregular occurrence and the general meaning of vagueness, doubt, or uncertainty that it adds to the interpretation of a question.<sup>6</sup> For example, the disjunctive question in (100b) is minimally different from its counterpart in (100a) in being less precise and implying that the speaker is not quite certain as to what s/he is seeing:

- (100) a. Elo ſomo-yā gulu-yā?  
 there donkey.ABS.III-INTERR horse.ABS.III-INTERR  
 ‘Is it a donkey or a horse there?’  
 b. Elo ſomo-y-ey gulu-y-ey?  
 there donkey.ABS.III-INTERR-UNCERT horse.ABS.III-INTERR-UNCERT  
 ‘Could it possibly be a donkey or a horse there?’ (Imnajšvili 1963:270)

If a question is not disjunctive, the particle can appear only once, either on the predicate or on the *wh*-word, as shown below:

- (101) a. Šebi neħa-r ela-q žukli  
 what.ATTR DEM.nI-LAT 1PL-POSS.ESS badness.ABS.IV  
 r-oq-ān-ey?  
 IV-become-FUT.DEF-UNCERT  
 b. Šebi-ey neħa-r ela-q žukli  
 what-UNCERT DEM.nI-LAT 1PL-POSS.ESS badness.ABS.IV  
 r-oq-ān?  
 IV-become-FUT.DEF  
 ‘What kind of misfortune (bad thing) could we arrange for her?’ (Beqes ♀Uneyzat:39)

In this last example, the particle *-ey* appears on the verb in the future definite form, and the potential agent (the poss-essive) is indeed first plural. However, with this particle, the usual

<sup>6</sup> Imnajšvili (1963:270) characterizes this particle as marking “indirect questions”, but based on the examples he provides, it conveys indecision and uncertainty nonetheless.

restriction of future definite to the first person does not hold, and the highest argument could be second or third person; for example:

- (102) Žaqsuł-gon      nā-r-ey      mi      dä-q-āy  
       today-CONTR.TOP    where-LAT-UNCERT    2SG.ABS(.I)    1SG-POSS-ABL  
       Ø-ok'ł-ān?  
       I-escape-FUT.DEF  
       'Where oh where can you escape from me today?' (C'irdux:80)

#### 4.3 –wa, -ba

The particle *wa* (*-ba*) functions as an optional marker of exclamatives. The overall function of –*wa* is to reinforce the exclamative nature of the utterance, but we have not been able to determine its more specific semantic contribution. The particle –*wa* is compatible with the particle *-čo/-če(y)* discussed above.

This particle can appear on the predicate of the exclamative, as in (103a), or on some other constituent of an exclamative clause, as in (103b). It cannot, however, be doubled, as (103c) shows. It is possible in negative exclamatives, as shown in (104) and (105):

- (103) a. Šahar-y-a-yor      Ø-ik'-a-wa!  
          city-OS-IN-VERS    I-go-INF-EXCL  
       b. Šahar-y-a-yor-wa      Ø-ik'-a!  
          city-OS-IN-VERS-EXCL I-go-INF  
          'Oh, to go to the city!'  
       c. #Šahar-y-a-yor-wa      Ø-ik'-a-wa!  
          city-OS-IN-VERS-EXCL I-go-INF-EXCL
- (104) Way-čo,      baħarči,      Ø-egi-x-wa      mi      dä-q.  
       o.dear-EMPH    brave.man    I-tear.away-PRS-EXCL 2SG.ABS.I    1SG-POSS.ESS  
       'Oh brave man, I cannot hold on to you!' (Aliqilič:154)
- (105) Idu      r-ac'-a      šebin-wa      ānu!  
       home    IV-eat.TR-INF    thing.ABS.IV-EMPH    be.PRS.NEG  
       'There is nothing to eat at home!' (Imnajšvili 1963:273)

Furthermore, –*wa* can follow another particle; in the next example, it attaches to the particle *-žax* (see section 7 for the discussion of *-žax*):

- (106) žoř-e-ł-no      axran-łi      r-od-er-xo-žax-wa!  
       war-OS-CONT.ESS-TOP    guard-NMLZ.ABS.IV    IV-do-CAUS-PRS-INDIRECT.EVID-EXCL  
       'In wartime, they apparently still need the work of guards!'

#### 4.4 –da

The particle –*da* expresses the speaker's certainty about the future and can be translated as 'maybe'. It occurs only in clauses whose predicate is in the definite future. As with the particle –*ey* (section 4.2 above), the usual restriction of future definite to first person does not apply in the

presence of *-da*, and hypothetical sentences with this particle can have non-first person subjects as well. Consider example (107):

- (107) Yedu b-<sup>s</sup>o<sup>λ'</sup>-ān-da/\*b-<sup>s</sup>o<sup>λ'</sup>-as-da.  
 DEM.nI.ABS(.III) III-fall-FUT.DEF-HYP III-fall-FUT-HYP  
 'This thing may fall down.' ('This thing will maybe fall down.')

In the following sentence, the lative argument is first person, so the future definite tense is warranted. The particle *-da* adds the same hypothetical reading to the sentence as in (107).

- (108) Sis neļa-r-no kur-no sis-kin dä-r  
 one DEM.nI-LAT-and throw-PFV.CVB one-FOC 1SG-LAT  
 λex-ān-da/\*λex-as-da.  
 remain-FUT.DEF-HYP/remain-FUT-HYP  
 'I will throw it one (chick), and maybe I will have at least one left.'  
 (Debeq ža äsirus haqu yoč'ik'oλ:10)

The particle can also occur in negative future sentences; in those sentences, 'maybe' takes scope over negation, as indicated by the example below:

- (109) Yedu b-<sup>s</sup>o<sup>λ'</sup>-āčin-da.  
 DEM.nI.ABS(.III) III-fall-FUT.DEF.NEG-HYP  
 'Maybe this thing will not fall down.'  
 NOT: 'This thing is not likely to fall down.' (it is not the case that this thing may fall down)

The particle *-da* does not necessarily appear on the predicate; it can also follow a different constituent, as in (113) and (114). In that case, it still takes scope over the entire clause; compare (107) and (109) with the following examples:

- (110) Yedu-da b-<sup>s</sup>o<sup>λ'</sup>-ān.  
 DEM.nI.ABS(.III)-HYP III-fall-FUT.DEF  
 'This thing will maybe fall down.'
- (111) Yedu-da b-<sup>s</sup>o<sup>λ'</sup>-āčin.  
 DEM.nI.ABS(.III)-HYP III-fall-FUT.DEF.NEG  
 'Maybe this thing will not fall down.'

The particle *-da* can only appear once in a clause, so the following sentence is ungrammatical:

- (112) \*Yedu-da b-<sup>s</sup>o<sup>λ'</sup>-ān-da.  
 DEM.nI.ABS(.III)-HYP III-fall-FUT.DEF-HYP  
 ('This thing will maybe fall down.')

Finally, as examples (113) and (114) show, the particle *-da* often co-occurs with expressions that bear the focus particle *-kin*. In textual examples, the majority of sentences where *-da* occurs also

include a *kin*-marked expression, and *-da* can attach to that expression, following *-kin*. For example:<sup>7</sup>

- (113) Nesi-q-kin-da               dey               kid               y-uy-xo-r  
DEM.I-POSS.ESS-FOC-HYP      1SG.GEN1      girl.ABS.II     II-true-AD-LAT  
y-ut-ān?  
II-turn-FUT.DEF  
‘What if he is the one that is able to turn my daughter back?’  
(Xanes ꝑono užin, sis kidno:90)
- (114) R-ac’-a               šebin-kin-da           t’o       teł       r-es<sup>w</sup>-ān!  
IV-eat.TR-INF   thing.ABS.IV-FOC-HYP   there   inside   IV-find-FUT.DEF  
‘What if there is something to eat inside?’ (Zirun, y<sup>sw</sup>adin:41)

#### 4.5   -xa

This enclitic is an Avar loan; in Avar it has an emphatic function, indicating that the speaker has a strong commitment to or investment in a given eventuality. The same epistemic commitment, which signals that the speaker has enough evidence to be sure about the proposition in question, is carried over to Tsez. Most commonly, *-xa* occurs on finite verbs and interjections, but it can also occur on other clausal constituents, in which case it still takes scope over the entire clause. The next example shows the variable positions of *-xa*:

- (115) a.   Ele-xa,       ža       Oxoyo       di       yoł.  
here-EMPH    DEM    Oxoyo.ABS.I   1SG.ABS(.I)   be.PRS  
b.    Ele       ža       Oxoyo       di       yoł-xa.  
here    DEM    Oxoyo.ABS.I   1SG.ABS(.I)   be.PRS-EMPH  
‘So, I am that very Oxoyo.’ (based on Oxoyo:13)

The particle is mentioned in Imnajšvili (1963) and is also used in Hinuq, likewise as a borrowing from Avar (Forker 2013: 425-426), but it is not widely used in Tsez.

#### 5   The vocative particle *-yu*

The particle *-yu* is a vocative marker, mainly used with kinship terms; it combines with the oblique stem of the corresponding noun; for example:

- (116) Lē,    kid-be-yu!  
hey    girl-OS-VOC  
‘Hey, girl/daughter!’
- (117) Uži-za-yu!  
boy-OS.PL-VOC  
‘Boys/Sons!’
- (118) Lē,    xedi-yu       (<    xedi-y-yu)  
hey    husband-VOC        husband-OS-VOC

---

<sup>7</sup> If asked to modify such examples, speakers allow the placement of *-da* on the verb, so this is clearly possible, but the tendency to combine *-kin* and *-da* is apparent from the examples.

'Hey, husband!'

## 6 The quotative particle *-λin*

We gloss the particle *-λin* uniformly as a quotative marker, but as the discussion below shows, its functions actually vary between that of a quotative marker and a generalized complementizer. This particle is extremely frequent, as numerous examples throughout this grammar show. Diachronically, it is probably derived from the unwitnessed past form of the verb *eλ-* ‘say’ (*eλin*), which appears as the matrix verb in (119) below. As a genuine quotative, this particle marks reported speech, appearing on the last word of the quoted material, regardless of the word order of the clause:

- (119) Y-eže-ni      esi-y-ä      eλi-n ...      nāzon      debe-z  
 II-young-DEF    sibling-OS-ERG      say-PST.nWIT    all.OBL 2SG-GEN2  
 nukar-za-z      gulu-za-λ'      λ'iri      kur-ani-x  
 bodyguard-OS.PL-GEN2      horse-OS.PL-SUPER.ESS      above      throw-MASD-AD.ESS  
 xaliča-bi      r-iš-ān      di-λin.  
 rug-PL.ABS.nIPL      nIPL-weave-FUT.DEF      1SG.ERG-QUOT  
 ‘The younger sister said, ... ‘I will be weaving saddle covers for all your bodyguards.’  
 (Beqes fUneyzat:19)

The quotative can appear multiple times, usually on the first and last word of a direct quotation, for example:

- (120) Šebi-λin      debe-r      r-eti-x-ä-λin      nes-ä  
 what.ABS.IV-QUOT    2SG-LAT      IV-want-PRS-INTERR-QUOT    DEM.I-ERG  
 esir-si.  
 ask-PST.WIT  
 ‘“What do you want?” asked he.’

As an extension of its quotative function, *-λin* marks proper nouns when they are introduced as names of people, places, or things, as in the following example, where the characters all have silly names.<sup>8</sup>

- (121) Sida      ſomoy-ä      eλi-n      dä-λ'      ci      Hišo-λin  
 one.OBL      donkey-ERG      say-PST.nWIT    1SG-SUPER.ESS name.ABS.III    Close-QUOT  
 yoł-λin,      side-n-ä-gon      ſAbdal      yoł-λin,  
 be.PRS-QUOT    one.OBL-DEF-ERG-ADD      Idiot      be.PRS-QUOT  
 ſora-äλir-ä-gon      Q<sup>c</sup>aλu-λin      yoł-λin.  
 three.OBL-ORD-ERG-ADD      Shouting-QUOT      be.PRS-QUOT  
 ‘One donkey said, “My name is Shut,” the other donkey said, “My name is Idiot,” and the third one said, “My name is Shouter.”’ (Sis boc’i, ſono ſomoyn:9)

In addition to its quotative function, *-λin* is also used as a genuine complementizer introducing

---

<sup>8</sup> Note that one of the names appears without the quotative marker, which confirms that it is optional in this function.

finite complement clauses. The differences between its use as a quotative and complementizer are discussed in CH.YY [Clausal complements].

Finally, this particle is used to mark purpose clauses with the predicate in the future definite tense. This use of the future definite is not restricted to first person subjects, as the following example shows:

- (122) Ža gagali b-et'-ur-ān-λin raład-yo-z  
DEM flower.ABS.III III-tear.away-CAUS-FUT.DEF-QUOT sea-OS-GEN2  
lil-yo-xar y-ik'i-n ža-s eniw.  
shore-OS-AD.VERS II-go-PST.nWIT boy-GEN1 mother.ABS.II  
‘The boy’s mother went to the seashore to pick that flower.’ (Eniwn, Ḵonon kidno:35)

Purpose clauses can also have a masdar predicate, and *-λin* can attach to those as well; in such instances it is optional:

- (123) Nes-ä daru b-is-si [unto-de dandir  
DEM.I-ERG medicine.ABS.III III-take-PST.WIT sickness-APUD.ESS against  
haλ-ani-x-(λin)].  
drink-MASD-AD.ESS-QUOT  
‘He bought a medication to take against sickness.’

In summary, the particle *-λin* has three main functions, which may all be related: marking direct quotation, appearing as a complementizer on finite embedded clauses, and marking purpose clauses by attaching to the predicate in the future or masdar form.

## 7 The particle *-λax*

The particle *-λax* is probably a frozen present tense form of the verb *eλ-* ‘say’ (Imnajšvili 1963:274), but unlike the related *-λin*, which also derives from that verb, it is not a quotative marker in the proper sense. It occurs primarily with verbs in the unwitnessed past, to emphasize the indirect, non-evidential nature of the information conveyed by the verb. Thus, it serves as a marker of an indirect evidential. Typical fairy tale openers have a verb marked with *-λax*, for example:

- (124) Zow-n-λax zow-n-ānu-λax sis  
be.PST.nWIT-INDIRECT.EVID be.PST.nWIT-NEG- IND.EVID one  
y'ana-xediw.  
wife-husband.ABS.IPL  
‘Once upon a time there lived a married couple.’ (Beqes ʕUneyzat:1)

In the following example, which is not formulaic, the non-evidential interpretation contributed by the particle is more apparent:

- (125) Č'uħaraw šeλ'u-n šeλ'un idu-z-ā,  
luxurious clothes.ABS.IV-and put.on-PFV.CVB home-DISTAL-IN.ESS  
mada-za-x Ø-ahna-Ø-ik'i-x yoł-λax xan.

outside-OS.PL-AD.ESS I-walk-I-go-IPFV.CVB AUX.PRS-IND.EVID king.ABS.I  
'The king put on his royal robes and apparently went back and forth around the house and outside.' (Beqes ḲUneyzat:43)



## Word order and information structure

### 1 Head-final properties

Tsez has a number of properties characteristic of head-final languages. Its noun phrases, adverbial phrases, adjectival phrases, relative clauses, converbal clauses, masdar clauses, and infinitival clauses are all head-final. The language is strictly postpositional. All other factors being equal, the auxiliary follows the lexical verb, and in complex verbs, the non-verbal constituent (noun, adverb, or other) precedes the light verb. Interrogative markers are suffixal, as are negation and causative marking; however, agreement with the absolute is marked with a prefix. Coordination is expressed by the enclitic *-n(o)* attached to each of the conjoined expressions. The order of personal names and surnames in Tsez is also typical of head-final languages: surname first, with the personal (first) name appearing in the final position. In traditional Tsez names, the closest equivalent to a surname is either the father's name in the genitive, as in (1a), or the name of the clan (*tuqum*), also in the genitive, as shown in (1b). In such instances, the order surname >> personal name naturally follows from the order adnominal genitive >> head noun. However, even if a surname is foreign and is not represented as genitive, the same order is maintained, as shown in (2).

- (1)    a. Paxrudin-e-s               Ayšat  
             Paxruddin-OS-GEN1     Ayshat  
             ‘Ayshat, Paxruddin’s daughter’
- b. Budum-za-s               Abakar  
             Budum-OS.PL-GEN1     Abakar  
             ‘Abakar from the Budum clan’
- (2)    a. Puškin Aleksandar  
             ‘Alexander Pushkin’
- b. Yašin Lew  
             ‘Lev Yashin’

Names also precede titles; for example:

- (3)    a. Mahama               reyun-yo-s               bet’er  
             Mohammed             district-OS-GEN1     master  
             ‘Head of District Administration Mohammed’
- b. Raziyat               doxtur  
             Raziyat             doctor  
             ‘Doctor Raziyat’
- c. c’aq’aw               Suleyman               xan  
             magnificent         Suleiman             king  
             ‘Sultan Suleiman the Magnificent’

For the order of constituents inside a noun phrase, see CH.YY [Noun phrase]. For adverb and adverbial clause placement tendencies, see CH. YY [Adverbial phrase] and CH.YY [Adverbial clauses] respectively.

## 2 Word order in root clauses: A brief overview

As we already noted, dependent clauses are strictly head-final. Despite the heavy clustering of prominent head-final properties, however, root clauses in Tsez are not rigidly verb-final, and there is some flexibility in the preverbal/postverbal area. There is no difference between declarative, interrogative, and exclamative clauses with respect to word order.

As a head-final language, Tsez does not have many verb-initial orders, but such orders are not impossible. VS structures are regularly observed in story openers, even with wh-words, which are otherwise unacceptable in this context (see CH. YY [Interrogatives]):

- (4) Esi-n šebi, xeci-n šebi...
   
say-PST.nWIT what leave-PST.nWIT what
   
'Once upon a time'/'What should I tell...'
- (5) Zow-n-λax sis c'odoraw xan.
   
be.PST-PST.nWIT one rich king.ABS.I
   
'There lived a rich king.'

Beyond these story-openers, the VS or VO order can be understood as a side effect of argument drop. Tsez allows argument drop for subjects and objects, leading to the appearance of verb-initiality. For example, in (6), the subject is omitted and the sentence has (apparent) verb-initial order. In (7), if the object's referent of the object is clear from the context, the object itself can be dropped; the subject appears postverbally (we will return to this point in section 3), and the whole sentence again has a verb-initial surface order:

- (6) *pro* b-egir-si huni-x λirba-bi.
   
IPL-send-PST.WIT road-AD.ESS guest-PL.ABS(.IPL)
   
'(She/He/They) send the guests on their way.'
- (7) *pro* r-egir-si nes-ä.
   
IV-send-PST.WIT DEM.I-ERG
   
'He sent (it).'

In a similar vein, presentational constructions, which usually have the order scene-setting expression >> predicate >> subject, as in (8a), may omit the scene-setting expression, again yielding the appearance of verb-initial order, as in (8b):

- (8) a. Id-āz-ay b-oλi-x qaci-s gulu.
   
home-DIST-IN.ABL III-appear-PRS wood-GEN1 horse.ABS.III
   
'Out of the house appeared a wooden horse.'
- b. B-oλi-x qaci-s gulu.
   
III-appear-PRS wood-GEN1 horse.ABS.III
   
'A wooden horse appeared.'

Despite relatively free word order in root clauses, there are certain constructions where word order plays a disambiguating role. First, in existential and possessive clauses, the order of the existential pivot and scene-setting expression or possessor affects the interpretation. If a clause is interpreted as existential or possessive, the pivot has to precede the verb and follow the scene-

setting expression / possessor. For example, (9) has an existential interpretation, but (10) can be interpreted only as a statement about location (see also CH.YY [Basic clause types]).

- (9) K'emot-y-ä        kid        zow-s.  
           trunk-OS-IN.ESS    girl.ABS.II    be.PST-PST.WIT  
           'There was a girl in the trunk.'
- (10) Kid        k'emot-y-ä        zow-s.  
           girl.ABS.II    trunk-OS-IN.ESS    be.PST-PST.WIT  
           'A/The girl was in the trunk.'  
           NOT: 'There was a girl in the trunk.'

The sentence in (11) is a possessive clause, but (12) is a copular clause with the genitive appearing as a predicative nominal:

- (11) Kid-be-s        k'et'u        zow-s.  
           girl-OS-GEN1    cat.ABS.III    be.PST-PST.WIT  
           'A/the girl had a cat.'
- (12) K'et'u        kid-be-s        zow-s.  
           cat.ABS.III    girl-OS-GEN1    be.PST-PST.WIT  
           'The cat belongs to the girl.' (lit.: is girl's)  
           NOT: 'A/the girl had a cat.'

Another clausal domain where word order plays a disambiguating role is in polyvalent causatives, which may include multiple poss-essive noun phrases. Consider (13), which in principle has two interpretations, with Sultan or the girl interpreted as the causee. Word order is used to resolve this ambiguity: the first poss-essive is always interpreted as the cause (see also CH.YY [Basic clause types] for more discussion):

- (13) a. Učitel-ä        sult'an-qo        kid-be-q  
           teacher-ERG      Sultan-POSS.ESS      girl-OS-POSS.ESS  
           sual            bič'zi            b-oy-er-si.  
           question.ABS.III    understand      III-do-CAUS-PST.WIT  
           'The teacher made Sultan explain the question to the girl.'
- b. Učitel-ä        kid-be-q        sult'an-qo  
           teacher-ERG      girl-OS-POSS.ESS      Sultan-POSS.ESS  
           sual            bič'zi            b-oy-er-si.  
           question.ABS.III    understand      III-do-CAUS-PST.WIT  
           'The teacher made the girl explain the question to Sultan.'

Word order also plays a role in the interpretation of ditransitives. Tsez does not have a double object construction, and in ditransitives, the theme appears in the absolute and the recipient/goal in the lative, poss-essive or poss-lative. All other factors being equal, the order recipient >> theme >> predicate leads to an English double-object-like interpretation, while the order theme >> recipient >> predicate is associated with an English dative-like interpretation. Compare:

- (14) a. Nes-ä uži-q ŋaq'lu moŋl-si.  
DEM.I-ERG boy-POSS.ESS advice.ABS.III teach-PST.WIT  
‘He gave the boy advice.’
- b. Nes-ä ŋaq'lu uži-q moŋl-si.  
DEM.I-ERG advice.ABS.III boy-POSS.ESS teach-PST.WIT  
‘He gave advice to the boy.’

Since root clauses are also located postverbally, in the position typically associated with given/backgrounded information (see section 3 below), the placement of one of the objects after the verb allows speakers to manipulate interpretation in predictable ways. Thus, (15a) is close to (14a) in interpretation, and (15b) is like (14b).

- (15) a. Nes-ä ŋaq'lu moŋl-si uži-q.  
DEM.I-ERG advice.ABS.III teach-PST.WIT boy-POSS.ESS  
‘He gave the boy advice.’
- b. Nes-ä uži-q moŋl-si ŋaq'lu.  
DEM.I-ERG boy-POSS.ESS teach-PST.WIT advice.ABS.III  
‘He gave advice to the boy.’

The word order generalizations presented here are strong tendencies, not ironclad rules, and they are sensitive to such properties of constituents as specificity (referentiality), information-structural status, and weight. In the next two sections we will explore word order in the postverbal and preverbal domains.

### 3 Postverbal domain (root clauses only)

To explore the differences between verb-final clauses and verb-medial clauses, let us first consider the following minimal pair:

- (16) a. Däz esi-yä bercinaw ged y-is-si.  
1SG.GEN2 mother-ERG beautiful dress.ABS.II II-take-PST.WIT
- b. Bercinaw ged y-is-si däz esi-yä.  
beautiful dress.ABS.II II-take-PST.WIT 1SG.GEN2 mother-ERG  
‘My mother bought a beautiful dress.’

The prosodic contours of these sentences are shown in the figures below.

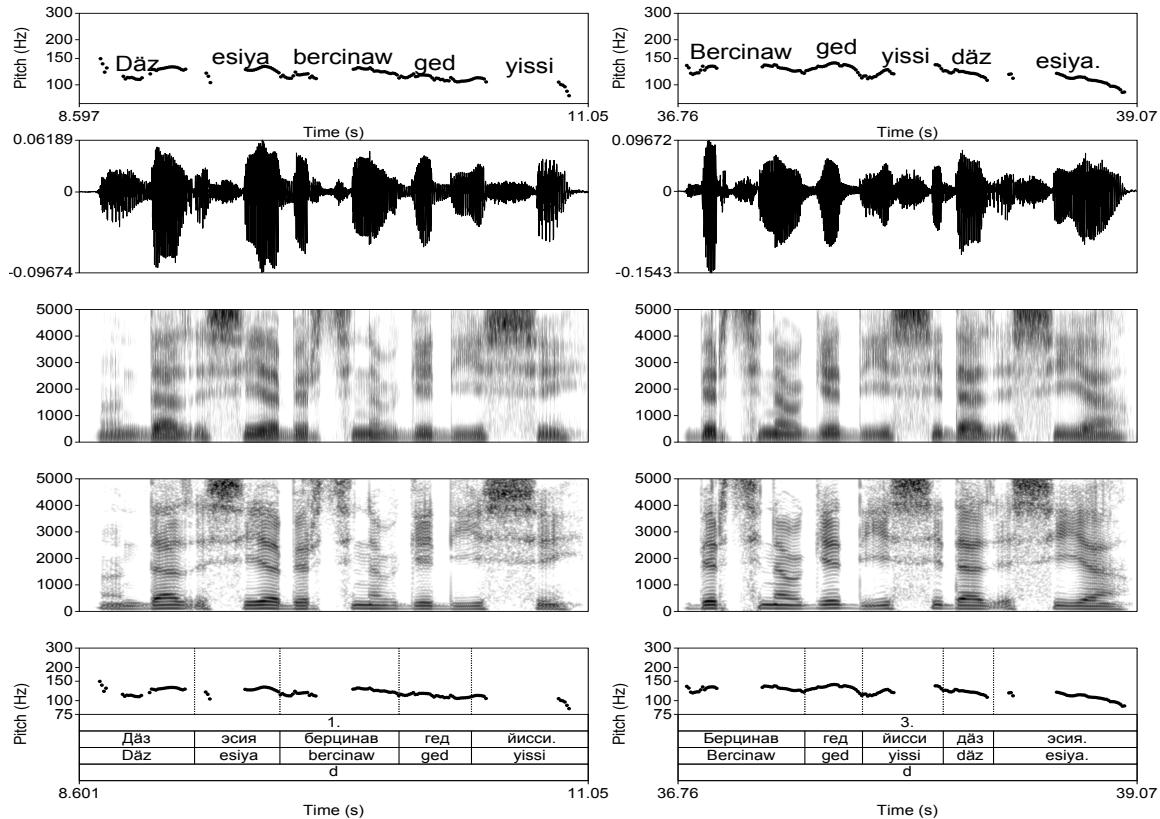


Figure 1. Prosodic contours: verb-final and verb-medial declarative clauses.

The two sentences share a similar falling contour. Furthermore, the first constituent (subject or object) of each clause receives prominence, with a peak on the head of the constituent (*esiyä* in (a) and *ged* in (b)). In both examples, the last slot is also prosodically prominent. However, the contour in the postverbal domain is slightly higher, and there is longer break between the predicate and the postverbal DP. Additionally, there is a secondary fall on the predicate in (16b), which suggests that *yissi* in (16a) is in some kind of a default (unmarked stress) position. These

prosodic observations are preliminary, and more work is needed to explore the differences between verb-final and verb-medial structures in Tsez and related languages. In the remainder of this section we will concentrate on structural properties of the postverbal domain.

As long as a clause is not embedded, postverbal material is possible in all types of sentences: declarative, interrogative, or exclamative. Negation on the matrix predicate does not prevent the appearance of postverbal material. Some examples:

- (17) Xizzo y-ok'el-si nesi-d-äy.  
then II-escape-PST.WIT DEM.I-APUD-ABL  
'Then I finally escaped from my marriage to him.'
- (18) ſezeſan č'ič'iru zow-nč'-ä ža?  
extremely vigorous be.PST-PST.nWIT.NEG-INTERR DEM.ABS(I)  
'Wasn't he in extremely good health?'
- (19) Hemece-wa Ø-‘eže yoł Sult'an dā-λ'-äy!  
so-EXCL I-big be.PRS Sultan.ABS.I 1SG-SUPER-ABL  
'Sultan is so much older than me!'
- (20) Kid-ba-bi bat'iyaw žuka ānu dä-q.  
girl-OS-PL.ABS.nIPL other bad be.PRS.NEG 1SG-POSS.ESS  
'My daughters are good.' (lit: I don't have other bad girls)

Despite the relative flexibility of the material appearing in the postverbal position, some restrictions apply. The first has to do with the referential (specific) nature of the postverbal material. Non-referential (non-specific) expressions cannot occur postverbally. This restriction means that existential and universal expressions, free choice or negative polarity items, and reflexives cannot follow the predicate. Compare the following minimal pairs:

- (21) a. Šebi-λa žedu-qo-r r-oq-si.  
what.ABS.IV-INDEF DEM.IPL-POSS-LAT IV-become-PST.WIT  
'Something happened to them.'
- b. \*Žedu-qo-r r-oq-si šebi-λa.  
DEM.IPL-POSS-LAT IV-become-PST.WIT what.ABS.IV-INDEF
- (22) a. Nes-ä nāsin b-aλ'ir-xosi yoł.  
DEM.I-ERG all.ABS.IPL IPL-deceive-PRS.PTCP be.PRS  
'He deceives everyone.'
- b. \*Nes-ä b-aλ'ir-xosi yoł nāsin.  
DEM.I-ERG IPL-deceive-PRS.PTCP be.PRS all.ABS.IPL
- (23) a. Yiła kid-be-r sis-kin šebin kʷeze  
DEM.nI.ATTR girl-OS-LAT one-FOC thing.ABS.IV meet  
r-oq-x-ānu.  
IV-become-PRS-NEG  
'This girl will not get anything.' (Eynayru gurow išxosi anu:21)
- b. \*Yiła kid-be-r kʷeze r-oq-x-ānu  
DEM.nI.ATTR girl-OS-LAT meet IV-become-PRS-NEG  
sis-kin šebin.  
one-FOC thing.ABS.IV

- (24) a. *y<sup>c</sup>ana-z-ä sis sida-r muri-bi teλ-si.*  
          woman-OS.PL-ERG RECP-LAT needle-PL.ABS.nIPL give-PST.WIT  
          ‘The women gave each other needles.’
- b. *\*y<sup>c</sup>ana-z-ä muri-bi teλ-si sis sida-r.*  
          woman-OS.PL-ERG needle-PL.ABS.nIPL give-PST.WIT RECP-LAT

Furthermore, wh-words can only appear postverbally if they are part of an echo-question rather than a genuine information question. Compare the following examples, where (25b) can only be used if the speaker did not hear, or forgot, the name (see also CH. YY[Interrogatives]).

- (25) a. Šebi debe-z babiw-λ'o ci (yoł-ä)?  
          what 2SG-GEN2 father-SUPER.ESS name.ABS.III be.PRS-INTERR  
          ‘What is your father’s name?’
- b. Debe-z babiw-λ'o ci (yoł-ä) šebi?  
          2SG-GEN2 father-SUPER.ESS name.ABS.III be.PRS-INTERR what  
          ‘Your father’s name is WHAT?’  
          NOT: ‘What is your father’s name?’

In yes-no questions, where the interrogative marker can attach to almost any constituent or subconstituent of the question other than the predicate, such interrogative expressions must occur preverbally. Compare the following two examples. Example (26) is ambiguous between a genuine yes-no question concerning the truth of the proposition ‘the one who is tired is Mother’, and an exclamative. Example (27), on the other hand, cannot be interpreted as a question, because the non-predicate constituent that combines with the interrogative marker is postverbal; in this position, the questioned constituent must be non-focused, and hence incompatible with an interrogative reading. The utterance is unambiguously exclamative.

- (26) Eniw-ä akił-no?/  
       mother.ABS.II-INTERR get.tired-PST.nWIT  
       ‘Is it Mother that is tired?’  
       ‘Is Mother tired?’
- (27) Akił-no eniw-ä!  
       get.tired-PST.nWIT mother-INTERR  
       ‘Is Mother tired?’

Overall, the expressions that cannot occur in the Tsez right periphery are those items that cannot be topics, either because they are referentially dependent on an antecedent (the way reflexives are), or because they are not under the presupposition of existence (as quantified expressions are).

Consistent with this generalization, we find that the material that actually occurs in the postverbal domain is associated with the topic interpretation. For instance, postverbal subjects are commonly expressed by pronouns or demonstratives, which are typical topics. In a hundred clauses of a dialogical text (“Ayshat”), we find 39 clauses with postverbal material, of which 25 have postposed pronouns or demonstratives. Pronouns and demonstratives are typical continuing

topics, and the right periphery seems to be a natural place for them.<sup>1</sup> In the same sample, we find that out of 39 postverbal constituents, 28 are subjects. The correlation between subjects and topics is well known, and these data are again consistent with an association between the postverbal domain and topichood. It is important to underscore that the postverbal position is not the *only* place where such topics can occur; nevertheless, it is certainly a common place for them in root clauses.

Additional support for the correlation between postverbal placement and topic interpretation comes from restrictions on focus-marked expressions. Setting aside contrastive material, topic and focus are mutually exclusive (see Bach 1972; Büring 1997; Lambrecht 1994; Erteschik-Shir 2007, a.o. for a detailed discussion). Assuming that the postverbal domain is topic-oriented, we can expect that focused material will be either impossible or severely restricted in this position. This expectation is borne out by the language data. Recall that there are two focus particles, *-kin* and *-tow*. Material with the particle *-kin* is unacceptable in the postverbal domain, thus:

- (28) a. Es-na-bi halmay-za-λ'-āy-kin b-ok'eł-si.  
           **sibling**-PL-PL.ABS(IPL)      friend-OS.PL-SUPER-ABL-FOC IPL-tear.away-PST.WIT  
           ‘The brothers got separated even from their friends.’

b. #Es-na-bi b-ok'eł-si halmay-za-λ'-āy-kin.  
           **sibling**-PL-PL.ABS(IPL)      IPL-tear.away-PST.WIT friend-OS.PL-SUPER-ABL-FOC

The situation with the particle *-tow* is more nuanced. Generally, material marked with *-tow* is unacceptable or marginally acceptable postverbally. For instance, in the following example, *-tow*'s postverbal placement is dispreferred:

- (29) a. Neł-ä ay-bi idu-tow xec-xosi (yoł).  
DEM.nI-ERG bird-PL.ABS.nIPL at.home-FOC leave-PRS.PTCP be.PRS  
‘She keeps birds at home.’

b. #Neł-ä ay-bi xec-xosi (yoł) idu-tow.  
DEM.nI-ERG bird-PL.ABS.nIPL leave-PRS.PTCP be.PRS at.home-FOC

However in addition to its work as a focus marker, *-tow* is also regularly used to indicate coreference between a pronoun/demonstrative and an antecedent, either in the same clause or across clauses (see CH. YY [Particles], CH.YY [Reflexives and anaphora], and CH.YY[Coordination]). In this function, the particle is fully acceptable postverbally; this discrepancy accounts for the contrast between regular demonstratives and pronouns, which can appear postverbally, and reflexives, which cannot, as shown in (30):

- (30) a. Di                dä-λ'o-r di                y-ezu-s.  
           1SG.ABS(.II) 1SG.REFL.SUPER-LAT II-look-PST.WIT  
           'I (woman speaking) looked at myself.'  
   b. \*Di                y-ezu-s                dä-λ'o-r di.  
           1SG.ABS(.II) II-look-PST.WIT            1SG.REFL.SUPER-LAT

<sup>1</sup> New topics, including topics which are introduced by the particle  $\lambda a$ , do not appear in the right periphery (see CH. YY[PART]).

- (31) a. Di                    dä-λ'o-r-\*(tow)                    y-ezu-s.  
       1SG.ABS(.II)    1SG-SUPER-LAT-FOC    II-look-PST.WIT  
       'I (woman speaking) looked at myself.'  
   b. Di                    y-ezu-s                    dä-λ'o-r(-tow).  
       1SG.ABS(.II)    II-look-PST.WIT            1SG-SUPER-LAT-FOC  
       'I (woman speaking) looked at myself.'

In (30b), the reflexive pronoun cannot appear postverbally because it does not have independent reference, and therefore does not meet the criteria for inclusion in the postverbal domain. A regular pronoun meets those criteria and can appear preverbally or postverbally, as in (31); in both placements, it can still be co-indexed with the subject. Note that the focus particle *-tow* is optional postverbally, whereas it is obligatory in the preverbal domain.

The postverbal domain can include more than one constituent; in such instances, the order of constituents is quite flexible, and we can only suggest some tendencies. The first tendency is a preference for placing the subject to the right of all other material; for example, although both (32a,b) are acceptable, there is a slight preference for (32a):<sup>2</sup>

- (32) a. B-ay-si                    [armi-l-āz-ay]                    [es-na-bi].  
       IPL-come-PST.WIT        army-CONT-DISTAL-ABL        sibling-PL-PL.ABS(.IPL)  
   b. B-ay-si                    [es-na-bi]                    [armi-l-az-āy].  
       IPL-come-PST.WIT        sibling-PL-PL.ABS(.IPL)        army-CONT-DISTAL-ABL  
       'The brothers came back from serving in the army.'

The second tendency has to do with the size of constituents. In the postverbal domain, longer constituents tend to follow shorter ones, just as they do in familiar languages such as English. This preference often outweighs the subject-final preference. Consider the following examples. In (33), the subject demonstrative *že* is lighter (shorter) than the object, which appears last; likewise, in (34), a sizeable directional phrase, which includes a relative clause, follows the demonstrative subject.<sup>3</sup> In (35), there are three postverbal constituents; the adverbial precedes the subject, and the heavy object again appears last.

- (33) di                    y-ok'eł-xoy-tow                    esir-a    Ø-ay-si  
       1SG.ABS(.II)    II-tear.away-CAUSAL.II.CVB-FOC    ask-INF   I-come-PST.WIT  
       [že]                    [dä-z]                    [obi-z        esiy-de-r].  
       DEM.ABS(.I)    1SG-GEN2    father-GEN2    sibling-APUD-LAT  
       'As soon as I was divorced from him, he went to ask for my father's sister's hand.'
- (34) B-ay-n                    [yizi]                    [aziroy-n        xalq'i-mo-l-äy]  
       IPL-come-PST.nWIT        DEM.PL(.IPL)    freeze-PFV.CVB        people-OS-CONT-ABL  
       bero-bi                    r-äq-ru                    hon-λ'o-r].  
       ice-PL.ABS.nIPL        nIPL-become-PST.PTCP        mountain-SUPER-LAT  
       'They went up to the mountain that was formed from frozen people.'

<sup>2</sup> Here and below, we use brackets to show the pertinent constituents.

<sup>3</sup> The heavy postverbal constituent in (34) is structurally complex, including a relative clause which in turn includes a converb. We do not mark this additional constituency with brackets.

- (Beqes f'Uneyzat:219)
- (35) Xizyo Ø-egiri-nč'u [maħo-r] [nes-ä] [uži-s muħalim].  
 after I-send-PST.WIT.NEG outside-LAT DEM.I-ERG boy-GEN1 teacher.ABS.I  
 'After that, he did not let the son's teacher go outside.'

#### 4 Preverbal domain

Preverbal placement is quite flexible but several generalizations emerge. We will first consider the position immediately before the verb. Any expression in that position, regardless of its constituent status, combines with the linking particle *-n(o)* if the clause in question is converbal, adjoined to another clause. See Ch. YY[Adverbial clauses] for details.

Negative polarity items tend to appear in the immediate preverbal position. Consider the following examples. In (37), there are two negative polarity items, the adverbial *netinkin* and the adnominal modifier *linasnokin*.

- (36) Neħ-ä yisi-qo-r xabar-kin b-oy-n-ānu.  
 DEM.nI-ERG DEM.I-POSS-LAT conversation.ABS.III-FOC III-do-PST.nWIT-NEG  
 'It [=the dragon] would not talk to him.' (f'Aliqilič:59)
- (37) Nes-ä neti-n-kin hina-s-no-kin pikru  
 DEM.I-ERG when-UNIV-FOC what-GEN1-UNIV-FOC thought.ABS.III  
 b-oy-xosi zow-s  
 III-do-PRS.PTCP be-PST.WIT  
 'He never paid any attention to anything.'

Adverbs on the other hand do not have a strong association with the preverbal position. They can appear in the middle field before the verb, at the beginning of the clause, or postverbally (see example (35) above). See Ch. YY [Adverbial phrase] for details.

In a reasonable number of head-final languages, the immediate preverbal position is associated with focus or new information (cf. Kiss 1998 for Hungarian; Lambrecht 1994 for a general discussion; Yamashita et al. 2011 for syntactic and processing considerations, and Testelec 1997: 267-271 for Nakh-Dagestanian languages). This association is rather weak in Tsez. Preverbal material can be in focus, but focus can also appear anywhere in the clause, and constituents with focus particles can appear anywhere in the preverbal domain. For example, the focus particles *-tow* and *-kin* can appear on any constituent, and that constituent does not have to move closer to the verb when it is overtly marked as focused.

- (38) Debe-q-no hemedur-tow harizi r-oy-x di.  
 2SG-POSS.ESS-and so-FOC requestIV-do-PRS 1SG.ERG  
 'I am asking you the same thing.' (Xanno, nesisgon f'ono užin:119)
- (39) Hemedur-tow huni-x dandir c'äx-ru xalq'i-mo haħlu-n.  
 so-FOC road-AD.ESS across hit-PST.PTCP people-OS.ERG drink-PST.nWIT  
 'The people he met also drank (water) the same way.' (f'Aliqilič:60)
- (40) Kid-b-ä neħa neħa-s k'et'u iškola-yor-kin b-iż-s.  
 girl-OS-ERG REFL.nI-GEN1 cat.ABS.III school-IN.VERS-FOC III-lead-PST.WIT  
 'The girl took her cat TO SCHOOL.'

- (41) Idu-kin xexbi q'ecenyay-x.  
 at.home-FOC chidren.ABS.PL argue-PRS  
 'Children argue AT HOME.'

Likewise, wh-words, which are focus elements, can but do not have to be preverbal or in the left clausal periphery. Consider some examples below and see CH.YY [Interrogatives] for more discussion:

- (42) Yedu šebin neti dow-qo r-oq-ä?  
 DEM thing.ABS.IV when 2SG-POSS.ESS IV-become-PST.WIT.INTERR  
 'When did that happen to you?'
- (43) Howži īina-s hal debe-λ' (yoł)?  
 now what-GEN1 condition.ABS.III 2SG-POSS.ESS be.PRS  
 'What is weighing upon you now?'
- (44) Žed-ä šebi istowli-λ' er-ä?  
 DEM.IPL-ERG what.ABS(.IV) table-SUPER.ESS put-PST.WIT.INTERR  
 'What did they put on the table?'

The placement of *šida* 'why' is an exception to this generalization; this interrogative expression tends to appear clause-initially.

- (45) a. Šida yedu w<sup>č</sup>ał-er r-ešnad-a  
 why DEM.ABS(.IV) downward-LAT IV-drip-INF  
 r-oq-ä?  
 IV-become-PST.WIT.INTERR  
 'Why did it (=the roof) begin dripping water?' (Alicilič:34)
- b. ??Yedu w<sup>č</sup>ał-er šida r-ešnad-a  
 DEM.ABS(.IV) downward-LAT why IV-drip-INF  
 r-oq-ä?  
 IV-become-PST.WIT.INTERR
- (46) a. Šida mi yaq<sup>č</sup>uł-gon at'iw qaca  
 why 2SG.ERG today-CONTR.TOP wet firewood.ABS.IV  
 r-ay-r-ä?  
 IV-come-CAUS-PST.WIT.INTERR  
 'And today, why did you bring wet firewood?' (Onočun, mamalayn:5)
- b. ??Mi yaq<sup>č</sup>uł-gon šida at'iw qaca  
 2SG.ERG today-CONTR.TOP why wet firewood.ABS.IV  
 r-ay-r-ä?  
 IV-come-CAUS-PST.WIT.INTERR
- c. ?? Mi yaq<sup>č</sup>uł-gon at'iw qaca šida  
 2SG.ERG today-CONTR.TOP wet firewood.ABS.IV why  
 r-ay-r-ä?  
 IV-come-CAUS-PST.WIT.INTERR

Example (46a) illustrates yet another word order tendency: topic-marked constituents do not have to undergo displacement, but can appear in the middle field of a sentence, in a position

which can be characterized as *in situ*. The placement of *yaq'ulgon* illustrates this possibility. The examples below illustrate the same option for constituents marked with the particles *-yołi* and *-n(o)*:

- (47) Žedu-r      Ø-ukay-nč'i-z-ā-yor      ža-yołi      xexliž'  
       DEM.IPL-LAT I-see-NEG-ATTR.OBL-IN-VERS DEM.ABS(.I)-CONTR.TOP quickly  
       Ø-ik'i-n.  
       I-go-PST.nWIT  
       'As for him, he quickly went to a place where they could not see him.'  
       (based on Hibos hunar:54)
- (48) Nes-ä      t'akan-y-ā-r      b-äy-ru      mesed-no  
       DEM.I-ERG glass-OS-IN-LAT III-come-PST.PTCP gold.ABS.III-TOP  
       híλ'oq-a-x      b-ut-ir-no.  
       handkerchief-OS-AD.ESS III-turn-caus-PST.nWIT  
       'The gold that appeared in the glass, he put inside a handkerchief.'  
       (based on Besurozaqu:17)

It seems that particle marking is sufficient and that Tsez feels no need to mark the information-structural status of a given constituent by word order. Topicalized adjuncts, however, do tend to be fronted (see also Polinsky and Potsdam 2001 for a discussion and syntactic analysis). This tendency of the language to front adjuncts — and note that it is only a tendency — is independent of these adjuncts' being marked with topic particles. For example, consider the near minimal pair below, where the adjunct may appear with or without a particle and is fronted in regardless.

- (49) Žek'u-z      ŋaλ-ā-yor      q'wärfel-yo-ž'      Ø-ik'i-n      ža.  
       person-GEN2 village-IN-VERS need-OS-SUPER.ESS I-go-PST.nWIT DEM.ABS(.I)  
       'He went to another village out of need.'
- (50) Ečru-ni      ŋaλ-ā-yor-gon      yedu      uži      Ø-egir-si  
       old-DEF village-IN-VERS-CONTR.TOP DEM boy.ABS.I I-send-PST.WIT  
       babi-y-ä.  
       father-OS-ERG  
       'As to the old village, Father sent the boy there.'

The final generalization that we will discuss here has to do with the size (weight) of constituents. We noted that, postverbally, heavy constituents tend to follow lighter ones, thus instantiating a pattern that can be described as 'short-before-long'. In the preverbal domain, we find a mirror image of this principle, the 'long-before-short' effect; all factors being equal, long constituents appear further away from the verb. Compare examples (34) and (35) above and the preferred order of their constituents when they appear preverbally; in the corresponding examples (51) and (52), the long-before-short order is desirable:

- (51) a. [Aziroy-n      xalq'i-mo-ł-äy      bero-bi  
       freeze-PFV.CVB      people-OS-CONT-ABL ice-PL.ABS.nIPL  
       r-äq-ru      hon-ž'o-r]      [yizi]      b-ay-n.  
       nIPL-become-PST.PTCP      mountain-SUPER-LAT DEM.PL(.IPL) IPL-come-PST.nWIT

- b. ??[Yizi] [aziroy-n xalq'i-mo-ł-äy bero-bi  
DEM.PL(.IPL) freeze-PFV.CVB people-OS-CONT-ABL ice-PL.ABS.nIPL  
r-äq-ru hon-ł'o-r] b-ay-n.  
nIPL-become-PST.PTCP mountain-SUPER-LAT IPL-come-PST.nWIT  
‘They went up to the mountain that was formed from frozen people.’
- (52) a. [Uži-s muñalim] [maño-r] Ø-egiri-nč'u nes-ä.  
boy-GEN1 teacher.ABS.I outside-LAT I-send-PST.WIT.NEG DEM.I-ERG  
b. ?[Maño-r] [uži-s muñalim] Ø-egiri-nč'u nes-ä.  
outside-LAT boy-GEN1 teacher.ABS.I I-send-PST.WIT.NEG DEM.I-ERG  
‘He did not let the son’s teacher go outside.’

Compare also the examples in (14a,b), where the subject and both objects are of equal weight, and the following example, where the longer constituent appears first:

- (53) Dice ixiw faq'lu nes-ä dä-q mošł-ä!  
how.much big advice.ABS.III DEM.I-ERG 1SG-POSS.ESS teach-PST.WIT.INTERR  
‘What great advice he gave me!’ (Wasiyat:48)

The tendency to place long constituents before short ones is attested in other head-final languages (Yamashita and Chang 2001; Yamashita et al. 2011). Yamashita and Chang’s (2001) main evidence for this tendency comes from Japanese, which is rigidly verb-final. At the end of their paper, they raise the question of word order in the postverbal domain, for those head-final languages that allow postverbal material. We can now weigh in on this debate with evidence from Tsez: in this language, the long-before-short preference in the preverbal domain is mirrored by a short-before-long preference postverbally. A similar combination of preferences is found in Basque (Erdicia et al. 2012) and Finnish (Mitchell 2012), which suggests that the tendencies are common and warrant further cross-linguistic examination.

Long constituents tend to express new information, which requires more detailed lexical specification. After all, if a referent has already been introduced, its identity is already known and one can refer to it using a short description, a demonstrative, or a pronoun (null or overt). Thus, “long” in the preverbal domain tends to mean “non-topical” — but it is typical of topical constituents to appear close to the beginning of a sentence, away from the verb. Therefore, the long-before-short preference may be at odds with the topic-before-focus preference, thus putting pressure on head-final languages. Inasmuch as these tendencies may be in conflict, Tsez is in an opportune position, for at least two reasons. First, as we just noted, Tsez topics are not required to displace to the left; they can stay in situ. Second, as we saw earlier in this chapter, light topics, which are hearer-old or discourse-old, commonly occur postverbally, thus leaving the preverbal domain for constituents that are comparable from an information-structural standpoint. As for hearer-new or discourse-new topics, which have just been introduced, inferred, or switched to (from a previous topic), they tend to be lexically specified (Gundel 1985; Gundel 1988; Gundel et al. 1993; Prince 1992; Lambrecht 1994), so their appearance in the initial position of an utterance meets both the need to put longer constituents before shorter ones (the need necessitated by head-final preferences) and the need to start an utterance with topic rather than comment.



- Buring, Daniel. 1997. *The Meaning of Topic and Focus: The 59th Street Bridge Accent*. London—New York: Routledge.
- Erdocia, Kepa, Itziar Laka, and Antoni Rodriguez-Fornells. 2012. Processing verb medial word orders in a verb final language. In Monique Lamers and Peter de Swart (eds.) *Case, word order and orominence: Interacting cues in language production and comprehension*, 217-238. Dordrecht: Springer.
- Gundel, Jeanette K. 1985. Shared knowledge and topicality. *Journal of Pragmatics* 9: 83-107.
- Gundel, Jeanette K. 1988. Universals of topic-comment structure. In M. Hammond et al, eds., *Studies in Syntactic Typology*, John Benjamins, 209-239..
- Gundel, Jeanette K, Nancy Hedberg and Ron Zacharski. 1993. Cognitive status and the form of referring expressions in discourse. *Language* 69:274-307.
- Lambrecht, Knud. 1994. *Information Structure and Sentence Form: Topic, Focus and the Mental Representation of discourse referents*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Mitchell, Lauren. 2012. Beyond the postverbal domain: Heavy noun phrase shift in Finnish and the effect of constituent surface position. Senior Thesis, Harvard University.
- Prince, Ellen. 1992. The ZPG letter: subjects, definiteness, and information status. In S. Thompson and W. Mann (eds.) *Discourse Description: Diverse Analyses of a Fund Raising Text*. John Benjamins , 295-325.
- Testelec, Jakov. 1997. Word order in Daghestanian languages. In Anna Siewerska (ed.) *Constituent order in the languages of Europe*, 257-282. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.
- Yamashita, Hiroko, Yuki Hirose, and Jerome Lee Packard (eds.). 2011. *Processing and Producing Head-final Structures*. Dordrecht: Springer.